



**JUNOS<sup>™</sup>e Software  
for E Series<sup>™</sup> Broadband Services Routers**

**System Basics Configuration Guide**

*Release 10.3.x*

**Juniper Networks, Inc.**  
1194 North Mathilda Avenue  
Sunnyvale, California 94089  
USA  
408-745-2000  
**[www.juniper.net](http://www.juniper.net)**

Published: 2009-10-07

Juniper Networks, the Juniper Networks logo, JUNOS, NetScreen, ScreenOS, and Steel-Belted Radius are registered trademarks of Juniper Networks, Inc. in the United States and other countries. JUNOSe is a trademark of Juniper Networks, Inc. All other trademarks, service marks, registered trademarks, or registered service marks are the property of their respective owners.

Juniper Networks assumes no responsibility for any inaccuracies in this document. Juniper Networks reserves the right to change, modify, transfer, or otherwise revise this publication without notice.

Products made or sold by Juniper Networks or components thereof might be covered by one or more of the following patents that are owned by or licensed to Juniper Networks: U.S. Patent Nos. 5,473,599, 5,905,725, 5,909,440, 6,192,051, 6,333,650, 6,359,479, 6,406,312, 6,429,706, 6,459,579, 6,493,347, 6,538,518, 6,538,899, 6,552,918, 6,567,902, 6,578,186, and 6,590,785.

*JUNOSe™ Software for E Series™ Broadband Services Routers System Basics Configuration Guide*

Release 10.3.x

Copyright © 2009, Juniper Networks, Inc.

All rights reserved. Printed in USA.

Writing: Mark Barnard, Diane Florio, Bruce Gillham, Sarah Lesway-Ball, Brian Wesley Simmons, Fran Singer, Megha Shaseendran, Krupa Chandrashekar, Chander Aima, Poornima Goswami, Hema Priya J, Subash Babu Asokan, Sairam Venugopalan

Editing: Benjamin Mann

Illustration: Nathaniel Woodward

Cover Design: Edmonds Design

Revision History

October 2009—FRS JUNOSe 10.3.x

The information in this document is current as of the date listed in the revision history.

YEAR 2000 NOTICE

Juniper Networks hardware and software products are Year 2000 compliant. The JUNOS Software has no known time-related limitations through the year 2038. However, the NTP application is known to have some difficulty in the year 2036.

## END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT

**READ THIS END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT ("AGREEMENT") BEFORE DOWNLOADING, INSTALLING, OR USING THE SOFTWARE.** BY DOWNLOADING, INSTALLING, OR USING THE SOFTWARE OR OTHERWISE EXPRESSING YOUR AGREEMENT TO THE TERMS CONTAINED HEREIN, YOU (AS CUSTOMER OR IF YOU ARE NOT THE CUSTOMER, AS A REPRESENTATIVE/AGENT AUTHORIZED TO BIND THE CUSTOMER) CONSENT TO BE BOUND BY THIS AGREEMENT. IF YOU DO NOT OR CANNOT AGREE TO THE TERMS CONTAINED HEREIN, THEN (A) DO NOT DOWNLOAD, INSTALL, OR USE THE SOFTWARE, AND (B) YOU MAY CONTACT JUNIPER NETWORKS REGARDING LICENSE TERMS.

1. **The Parties.** The parties to this Agreement are (i) Juniper Networks, Inc. (if the Customer's principal office is located in the Americas) or Juniper Networks (Cayman) Limited (if the Customer's principal office is located outside the Americas) (such applicable entity being referred to herein as "Juniper"), and (ii) the person or organization that originally purchased from Juniper or an authorized Juniper reseller the applicable license(s) for use of the Software ("Customer") (collectively, the "Parties").

2. **The Software.** In this Agreement, "Software" means the program modules and features of the Juniper or Juniper-supplied software, for which Customer has paid the applicable license or support fees to Juniper or an authorized Juniper reseller, or which was embedded by Juniper in equipment which Customer purchased from Juniper or an authorized Juniper reseller. "Software" also includes updates, upgrades and new releases of such software. "Embedded Software" means Software which Juniper has embedded in or loaded onto the Juniper equipment and any updates, upgrades, additions or replacements which are subsequently embedded in or loaded onto the equipment.

3. **License Grant.** Subject to payment of the applicable fees and the limitations and restrictions set forth herein, Juniper grants to Customer a non-exclusive and non-transferable license, without right to sublicense, to use the Software, in executable form only, subject to the following use restrictions:

- a. Customer shall use Embedded Software solely as embedded in, and for execution on, Juniper equipment originally purchased by Customer from Juniper or an authorized Juniper reseller.
- b. Customer shall use the Software on a single hardware chassis having a single processing unit, or as many chassis or processing units for which Customer has paid the applicable license fees; provided, however, with respect to the Steel-Belted Radius or Odyssey Access Client software only, Customer shall use such Software on a single computer containing a single physical random access memory space and containing any number of processors. Use of the Steel-Belted Radius or IMS AAA software on multiple computers or virtual machines (e.g., Solaris zones) requires multiple licenses, regardless of whether such computers or virtualizations are physically contained on a single chassis.
- c. Product purchase documents, paper or electronic user documentation, and/or the particular licenses purchased by Customer may specify limits to Customer's use of the Software. Such limits may restrict use to a maximum number of seats, registered endpoints, concurrent users, sessions, calls, connections, subscribers, clusters, nodes, realms, devices, links, ports or transactions, or require the purchase of separate licenses to use particular features, functionalities, services, applications, operations, or capabilities, or provide throughput, performance, configuration, bandwidth, interface, processing, temporal, or geographical limits. In addition, such limits may restrict the use of the Software to managing certain kinds of networks or require the Software to be used only in conjunction with other specific Software. Customer's use of the Software shall be subject to all such limitations and purchase of all applicable licenses.
- d. For any trial copy of the Software, Customer's right to use the Software expires 30 days after download, installation or use of the Software. Customer may operate the Software after the 30-day trial period only if Customer pays for a license to do so. Customer may not extend or create an additional trial period by re-installing the Software after the 30-day trial period.
- e. The Global Enterprise Edition of the Steel-Belted Radius software may be used by Customer only to manage access to Customer's enterprise network. Specifically, service provider customers are expressly prohibited from using the Global Enterprise Edition of the Steel-Belted Radius software to support any commercial network access services.

The foregoing license is not transferable or assignable by Customer. No license is granted herein to any user who did not originally purchase the applicable license(s) for the Software from Juniper or an authorized Juniper reseller.

4. **Use Prohibitions.** Notwithstanding the foregoing, the license provided herein does not permit the Customer to, and Customer agrees not to and shall not: (a) modify, unbundle, reverse engineer, or create derivative works based on the Software; (b) make unauthorized copies of the Software (except as necessary for backup purposes); (c) rent, sell, transfer, or grant any rights in and to any copy of the Software, in any form, to any third party; (d) remove any proprietary notices, labels, or marks on or in any copy of the Software or any product in which the Software is embedded; (e) distribute any copy of the Software to any third party, including as may be embedded in Juniper equipment sold in the secondhand market; (f) use any 'locked' or key-restricted feature, function, service, application, operation, or capability without first purchasing the applicable license(s) and obtaining a valid key from Juniper, even if such feature, function, service, application, operation, or capability is enabled without a key; (g) distribute any key for the Software provided by Juniper to any third party; (h) use the Software in any manner that extends or is broader than the uses purchased by Customer from Juniper or an authorized Juniper reseller; (i) use Embedded Software on non-Juniper equipment; (j) use Embedded Software (or make it available for use) on Juniper equipment that the Customer did not originally purchase from Juniper or an authorized Juniper reseller; (k) disclose the results of testing or benchmarking of the Software to any third party without the prior written consent of Juniper; or (l) use the Software in any manner other than as expressly provided herein.

5. **Audit.** Customer shall maintain accurate records as necessary to verify compliance with this Agreement. Upon request by Juniper, Customer shall furnish such records to Juniper and certify its compliance with this Agreement.

6. **Confidentiality.** The Parties agree that aspects of the Software and associated documentation are the confidential property of Juniper. As such, Customer shall exercise all reasonable commercial efforts to maintain the Software and associated documentation in confidence, which at a minimum includes restricting access to the Software to Customer employees and contractors having a need to use the Software for Customer's internal business purposes.

7. **Ownership.** Juniper and Juniper's licensors, respectively, retain ownership of all right, title, and interest (including copyright) in and to the Software, associated documentation, and all copies of the Software. Nothing in this Agreement constitutes a transfer or conveyance of any right, title, or interest in the Software or associated documentation, or a sale of the Software, associated documentation, or copies of the Software.

8. **Warranty, Limitation of Liability, Disclaimer of Warranty.** The warranty applicable to the Software shall be as set forth in the warranty statement that accompanies the Software (the "Warranty Statement"). Nothing in this Agreement shall give rise to any obligation to support the Software. Support services may be purchased separately. Any such support shall be governed by a separate, written support services agreement. TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY LAW, JUNIPER SHALL NOT BE LIABLE FOR ANY LOST PROFITS, LOSS OF DATA, OR COSTS OR PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES, OR FOR ANY SPECIAL, INDIRECT, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF THIS AGREEMENT, THE SOFTWARE, OR ANY JUNIPER OR JUNIPER-SUPPLIED SOFTWARE. IN NO EVENT SHALL JUNIPER BE LIABLE FOR DAMAGES ARISING FROM UNAUTHORIZED OR IMPROPER USE OF ANY JUNIPER OR JUNIPER-SUPPLIED SOFTWARE, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PROVIDED IN THE WARRANTY STATEMENT TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY LAW, JUNIPER DISCLAIMS ANY AND ALL WARRANTIES IN AND TO THE SOFTWARE (WHETHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED, STATUTORY, OR OTHERWISE), INCLUDING ANY IMPLIED WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT DOES JUNIPER WARRANT THAT THE SOFTWARE, OR ANY EQUIPMENT OR NETWORK RUNNING THE SOFTWARE, WILL OPERATE WITHOUT ERROR OR INTERRUPTION, OR WILL BE FREE OF VULNERABILITY TO INTRUSION OR ATTACK. In no event shall Juniper's or its suppliers' or licensors' liability to Customer, whether in contract, tort (including negligence), breach of warranty, or otherwise, exceed the price paid by Customer for the Software that gave rise to the claim, or if the Software is embedded in another Juniper product, the price paid by Customer for such other product. Customer acknowledges and agrees that Juniper has set its prices and entered into this Agreement in reliance upon the disclaimers of warranty and the limitations of liability set forth herein, that the same reflect an allocation of risk between the Parties (including the risk that a contract remedy may fail of its essential purpose and cause consequential loss), and that the same form an essential basis of the bargain between the Parties.

9. **Termination.** Any breach of this Agreement or failure by Customer to pay any applicable fees due shall result in automatic termination of the license granted herein. Upon such termination, Customer shall destroy or return to Juniper all copies of the Software and related documentation in Customer's possession or control.

10. **Taxes.** All license fees payable under this agreement are exclusive of tax. Customer shall be responsible for paying Taxes arising from the purchase of the license, or importation or use of the Software. If applicable, valid exemption documentation for each taxing jurisdiction shall be provided to Juniper prior to invoicing, and Customer shall promptly notify Juniper if their exemption is revoked or modified. All payments made by Customer shall be net of any applicable withholding tax. Customer will provide reasonable assistance to Juniper in connection with such withholding taxes by promptly: providing Juniper with valid tax receipts and other required documentation showing Customer's payment of any withholding taxes; completing appropriate applications that would reduce the amount of withholding tax to be paid; and notifying and assisting Juniper in any audit or tax proceeding related to transactions hereunder. Customer shall comply with all applicable tax laws and regulations, and Customer will promptly pay or reimburse Juniper for all costs and damages related to any liability incurred by Juniper as a result of Customer's non-compliance or delay with its responsibilities herein. Customer's obligations under this Section shall survive termination or expiration of this Agreement.

11. **Export.** Customer agrees to comply with all applicable export laws and restrictions and regulations of any United States and any applicable foreign agency or authority, and not to export or re-export the Software or any direct product thereof in violation of any such restrictions, laws or regulations, or without all necessary approvals. Customer shall be liable for any such violations. The version of the Software supplied to Customer may contain encryption or other capabilities restricting Customer's ability to export the Software without an export license.

12. **Commercial Computer Software.** The Software is "commercial computer software" and is provided with restricted rights. Use, duplication, or disclosure by the United States government is subject to restrictions set forth in this Agreement and as provided in DFARS 227.7201 through 227.7202-4, FAR 12.212, FAR 27.405(b)(2), FAR 52.227-19, or FAR 52.227-14(ALT III) as applicable.

13. **Interface Information.** To the extent required by applicable law, and at Customer's written request, Juniper shall provide Customer with the interface information needed to achieve interoperability between the Software and another independently created program, on payment of applicable fee, if any. Customer shall observe strict obligations of confidentiality with respect to such information and shall use such information in compliance with any applicable terms and conditions upon which Juniper makes such information available.

14. **Third Party Software.** Any licensor of Juniper whose software is embedded in the Software and any supplier of Juniper whose products or technology are embedded in (or services are accessed by) the Software shall be a third party beneficiary with respect to this Agreement, and such licensor or vendor shall have the right to enforce this Agreement in its own name as if it were Juniper. In addition, certain third party software may be provided with the Software and is subject to the accompanying license(s), if any, of its respective owner(s). To the extent portions of the Software are distributed under and subject to open source licenses obligating Juniper to make the source code for such portions publicly available (such as the GNU General Public License ("GPL") or the GNU Library General Public License ("LGPL")), Juniper will make such source code portions (including Juniper modifications, as appropriate) available upon request for a period of up to three years from the date of distribution. Such request can be made in writing to Juniper Networks, Inc., 1194 N. Mathilda Ave., Sunnyvale, CA 94089, ATTN: General Counsel. You may obtain a copy of the GPL at <http://www.gnu.org/licenses/gpl.html>, and a copy of the LGPL at <http://www.gnu.org/licenses/lgpl.html>.

15. **Miscellaneous.** This Agreement shall be governed by the laws of the State of California without reference to its conflicts of laws principles. The provisions of the U.N. Convention for the International Sale of Goods shall not apply to this Agreement. For any disputes arising under this Agreement, the Parties hereby consent to the personal and exclusive jurisdiction of, and venue in, the state and federal courts within Santa Clara County, California. This Agreement constitutes the entire and sole agreement between Juniper and the Customer with respect to the Software, and supersedes all prior and contemporaneous

agreements relating to the Software, whether oral or written (including any inconsistent terms contained in a purchase order), except that the terms of a separate written agreement executed by an authorized Juniper representative and Customer shall govern to the extent such terms are inconsistent or conflict with terms contained herein. No modification to this Agreement nor any waiver of any rights hereunder shall be effective unless expressly assented to in writing by the party to be charged. If any portion of this Agreement is held invalid, the Parties agree that such invalidity shall not affect the validity of the remainder of this Agreement. This Agreement and associated documentation has been written in the English language, and the Parties agree that the English version will govern. (For Canada: Les parties aux présentes confirment leur volonté que cette convention de même que tous les documents y compris tout avis qui s'y rattache, soient rédigés en langue anglaise. (Translation: The parties confirm that this Agreement and all related documentation is and will be in the English language)).



# Abbreviated Table of Contents

About the Documentation

xxvii

## Part 1

### Chapters

---

Chapter 1	Planning Your Network	3
Chapter 2	Command-Line Interface	29
Chapter 3	Installing JUNOS Software	127
Chapter 4	Configuring SNMP	149
Chapter 5	Managing the System	245
Chapter 6	Managing Modules	349
Chapter 7	Passwords and Security	413
Chapter 8	Writing CLI Macros	471
Chapter 9	Booting the System	507
Chapter 10	Configuring the System Clock	519
Chapter 11	Configuring Virtual Routers	537

## Part 2

### Reference Material

---

Appendix A	Abbreviations and Acronyms	551
Appendix B	References	569

## Part 3

### Index

---

Index	593
-------	-----





# Table of Contents

---

## About the Documentation xxvii

---

E Series and JUNOS <sup>e</sup> Documentation and Release Notes .....	xxvii
Audience .....	xxvii
E Series and JUNOS <sup>e</sup> Text and Syntax Conventions .....	xxvii
Obtaining Documentation .....	xxix
Documentation Feedback .....	xxix
Requesting Technical Support .....	xxix
Self-Help Online Tools and Resources .....	xxx
Opening a Case with JTAC .....	xxx

## Part 1

## Chapters

---

### Chapter 1

### Planning Your Network 3

---

Platform Considerations .....	3
Interface Specifiers .....	4
Edge Applications Overview .....	4
Private Line Aggregation .....	4
xDSL Session Termination .....	5
Layered Approach .....	6
Line Modules, I/O Modules, and IOAs .....	7
Interfaces .....	8
Subinterfaces .....	8
interface Command .....	9
General Configuration Tasks .....	9
Configuring Virtual Routers .....	10
Configuring IPSec .....	10
Configuring Physical Layer Interfaces .....	10
Line Module Features .....	11
Configurable HDLC Parameters .....	12
Configuring Channelized T3 Interfaces .....	12
Configuring T3 and E3 Interfaces .....	13
Configuring OCx/STMx and OC48 Interfaces .....	14
Configuring Channelized OCx/STMx Line Interfaces .....	15
Configuring Ethernet Interfaces .....	16
Configuring IPSec-Service Interfaces .....	16
Configuring Tunnel Service Interfaces .....	16

Configuring Data Link-Layer Interfaces .....	17
Configuring IP/Frame Relay .....	17
Configuring IP/ATM .....	19
Configuring IP/PPP .....	20
Configuring IP/HDLC .....	22
Configuring IP/Ethernet .....	22
Configuring IP Tunnels, Shared IP Interfaces, and Subscriber Interfaces .....	23
Configuring IP Tunnels .....	23
Configuring Shared Interfaces and Subscriber Interfaces .....	23
Configuring Routing Protocols .....	24
Configuring VRRP .....	25
Configuring Routing Policy .....	25
Configuring QoS .....	25
Configuring Policy Management .....	26
Configuring Remote Access .....	26

## Chapter 2

## Command-Line Interface 29

Overview .....	29
Command Modes .....	29
Command-Line Prompts .....	31
Keywords and Parameters .....	31
Keywords .....	31
Parameters .....	32
Keywords and Parameters Together .....	32
Using CLI Commands .....	33
Abbreviated Commands .....	33
The ? Key .....	33
Backspace or Delete .....	34
Enter .....	34
Tab .....	34
Arrow Keys .....	34
The no Version .....	35
run and do Commands .....	35
show Commands .....	37
Redirection of show Command Output .....	40
Regular Expressions .....	41
The -More- Prompt .....	43
Responding to Prompts .....	46
CLI Status Indicators .....	47
Levels of Access .....	48
User Level .....	48
Privileged Level .....	48
Initialization Sequence .....	48
Platform Considerations .....	48
Accessing the CLI .....	48
Logging In .....	48
Privileged-Level Access .....	49
Defining CLI Levels of Privilege .....	49
Accessing the Privileged Exec Level .....	50

Moving from Privileged Exec to User Exec Mode .....	51
Logging Out .....	52
CLI Command Privileges .....	52
CLI Privilege Groups .....	52
Examples Using Privilege Group Membership .....	53
CLI Command Exceptions .....	57
CLI Keyword Mapping .....	58
Setting Privileges for Ambiguous Commands .....	58
Setting Privilege Levels for no or default Versions .....	59
Setting Privilege Levels for Multiple Commands .....	59
Setting Privilege Levels for All Commands in a Mode .....	59
Setting Privilege Levels for a Group of Commands .....	60
Using the Order of Precedence .....	60
Superseding Privilege Levels with the all Keyword .....	61
Removing the all Keyword .....	61
Setting Default Line Privilege .....	61
Viewing CLI Privilege Information .....	62
Viewing the Current User Privilege Level .....	62
Viewing Privilege Levels for All Connected Users .....	63
Viewing Privilege Levels for Changed CLI Commands .....	63
Using Help .....	64
? (Question Mark Key) .....	64
help Command .....	66
Partial-keyword < Tab > .....	67
Using Command-Line Editing .....	67
Basic Editing .....	67
Command-Line Editing Keys .....	67
Command History Keys .....	69
Pagination Keys .....	69
Accessing Command Modes .....	70
Exec Modes .....	87
Password Protection .....	87
Global Configuration Mode .....	89
Executing a Script File .....	89
AAA Profile Configuration Mode .....	90
Address Family Configuration Mode .....	90
ATM VC Configuration Mode .....	90
ATM VC Class Configuration Mode .....	91
Classifier Group Configuration Mode .....	92
Color Mark Profile Configuration Mode .....	92
Control Plane Configuration Mode .....	93
Controller Configuration Mode .....	93
DHCP Local Pool Configuration Mode .....	93
Domain Map Configuration Mode .....	94
Domain Map Tunnel Configuration Mode .....	95
DoS Protection Group Configuration Mode .....	95
Drop Profile Configuration Mode .....	96
Explicit Path Configuration Mode .....	96
Flow Cache Configuration Mode .....	97
Interface Configuration Mode .....	97
IP NAT Pool Configuration Mode .....	98

IP PIM Data MDT Configuration Mode .....	98
IP Service Profile Configuration Mode .....	99
IPSec CA Identity Configuration Mode .....	99
IPSec Identity Configuration Mode .....	99
IPSec IKE Policy Configuration Mode .....	100
IPSec Manual Key Configuration Mode .....	100
IPSec Peer Public Key Configuration Mode .....	101
IPSec Transport Profile Configuration Mode .....	101
IPSec Tunnel Profile Configuration Mode .....	102
IP Tunnel Destination Profile Mode .....	102
IPv6 Local Pool Configuration Mode .....	103
L2 Transport Load-Balancing-Circuit Configuration Mode .....	103
L2TP Destination Profile Configuration Mode .....	104
L2TP Destination Profile Host Configuration Mode .....	104
L2TP Tunnel Switch Profile Configuration Mode .....	105
Layer 2 Control Configuration Mode .....	105
Layer 2 Control Neighbor Configuration Mode .....	105
LDP Configuration Mode .....	106
Line Configuration Mode .....	106
Local IPSec Transport Profile Configuration .....	107
Local User Configuration Mode .....	107
Map Class Configuration Mode .....	108
Map List Configuration Mode .....	108
Parent Group Configuration Mode .....	109
Policy List Configuration Mode .....	109
Policy List Parent Group Configuration Mode .....	110
Policy Parameter Configuration Mode .....	110
PPPoE Service Name Table Configuration Mode .....	110
Profile Configuration Mode .....	111
QoS Interface Set Configuration Mode .....	111
QoS Interface Superset Configuration Mode .....	112
QoS Parameter Definition Configuration Mode .....	112
QoS Profile Configuration Mode .....	113
QoS Shared Shaper Control Configuration .....	113
Queue Profile Configuration Mode .....	114
RADIUS Configuration Mode .....	114
RADIUS Relay Configuration Mode .....	115
Rate Limit Profile Configuration Mode .....	115
Redundancy Configuration Mode .....	116
Remote Neighbor Configuration Mode .....	116
Route Map Configuration Mode .....	117
Router Configuration Mode .....	117
RSVP Configuration Mode .....	118
RTR Configuration Mode .....	119
Scheduler Profile Configuration Mode .....	119
Service Session Profile Configuration Mode .....	120
SNMP Event Manager Configuration Mode .....	120
Statistics Profile Configuration Mode .....	120
Subinterface Configuration Mode .....	121
Subscriber Policy Configuration Mode .....	121
Traffic Class Configuration Mode .....	122

Traffic Class Group Configuration Mode .....	122
Tunnel Group Configuration Mode .....	123
Tunnel Group Tunnel Configuration Mode .....	123
Tunnel Profile Configuration Mode .....	124
Tunnel Server Configuration Mode .....	124
VRF Configuration Mode .....	124
VR Group Configuration Mode .....	125

## Chapter 3

## Installing JUNOS Software

**127**

Overview .....	127
Identifying the Software Release File .....	128
Platform Considerations .....	129
Installing Software When a Firewall Exists .....	129
Task 1: Obtain the Required Information .....	129
Task 2: Divert Network Traffic to Another Router .....	130
Task 3: Access Privileged Exec Mode .....	130
Task 4: Configure IP on an Interface .....	130
Task 5: Copy the Release Files to the Network Host .....	131
Task 6: Configure Access to the Network Host .....	131
Task 7: Enable the FTP Server on the Router .....	132
Task 8: Identify the Files to Transfer .....	132
Task 9: Transfer Files to the User Space .....	133
Task 10: Install Files on the System Space .....	133
Task 11: Save the Current Configuration .....	133
Task 12: Reboot the System .....	133
Installing Software When a Firewall Does Not Exist .....	134
Installing Software in Normal Operational Mode .....	134
Task 1: Obtain the Required Information .....	135
Task 2: Divert Network Traffic to Another Router .....	135
Task 3: Access Privileged Exec Mode .....	135
Task 4: Configure IP on an Interface .....	135
Task 5: Configure Access to the Network Host .....	136
Task 6: Copy the Release Files to the Network Host .....	137
Task 7: Copy the Software Release File to the Router .....	137
Task 8: Save the Current Configuration .....	138
Task 9: Reboot the System .....	138
Installing Software in Boot Mode .....	139
Task 1: Obtain the Required Information .....	139
Task 2: Divert Network Traffic to Another System .....	139
Task 3: Access the Boot Mode .....	140
Task 4: Assign an IP Address .....	140
Task 5: Configure Access to the Network Host .....	140
Task 6: Resetting the SRP Module .....	141
Task 7: Copy the Release Files to the Network Host .....	141
Task 8: Copy the Software Release File to the Router .....	141
Task 9: Reboot the System .....	141
Copying Release Files from One Router to Another .....	142
Upgrading Systems That Are Operating with Two SRP Modules .....	143

Upgrading from Release 5.1.1 or Lower-Numbered Releases .....	144
Upgrading Software Remotely Through Telnet or FTP .....	145
Upgrading Software from an NVS Card .....	145
Upgrading a System That Contains One SRP Module .....	145
Upgrading a System That Contains Two SRP Modules .....	146
Downgrading JUNOS Software .....	147

## Chapter 4

## Configuring SNMP 149

Overview .....	149
Terminology .....	150
SNMP Features Supported .....	151
SNMP Client .....	151
SNMP Server .....	152
SNMP MIBs .....	152
Standard SNMP MIBs .....	152
Juniper Networks E Series Enterprise MIBs .....	152
Accessing Supported SNMP MIBs .....	152
SNMP Versions .....	152
Security Features .....	153
Management Features .....	154
Virtual Routers .....	155
Creating SNMP Proxy .....	155
Disabling and Reenabling SNMP Proxy .....	156
Communicating with the SNMP Engine .....	156
SNMP Attributes .....	157
SNMP Operations .....	157
SNMP PDU Types .....	158
Platform Considerations .....	158
References .....	159
Before You Configure SNMP .....	159
SNMP Configuration Tasks .....	160
Enabling SNMP .....	161
Configuring SNMP v1/v2c Community .....	161
Community Name .....	161
Privilege Levels .....	161
IP Access List .....	162
Configuring SNMPv3 Users .....	162
Configuring SNMP Dynamic Groups and Views .....	162
Setting Server Parameters .....	163
Configuring SNMP Packet Size .....	164
Configuring Memory Warning .....	164
Configuring Encoding Method .....	164
Managing Interface Sublayers .....	165
Compressing Interfaces .....	165
Controlling Interface Numbering .....	168
Monitoring Interface Tables .....	168
Configuring Traps .....	169
IP Hosts .....	169
Trap Categories .....	170

Trap Severity Levels .....	171
Specifying an Egress Point for SNMP Traps .....	176
Configuring Trap Queues .....	176
Configuring Trap Notification Logs .....	177
Recovering Lost Traps .....	179
Configuring the SNMP Server Event Manager .....	180
Event MIB Purpose .....	180
Event MIB Structure .....	180
Trigger Table .....	180
Objects Table .....	181
Event Table .....	181
Configuration Tasks .....	182
Defining a Boolean Test .....	184
Defining an Existence Test .....	185
Defining a Threshold Test .....	186
Monitoring Events .....	192
Collecting Bulk Statistics .....	197
Interface Strings .....	199
Understanding Counter Discontinuity .....	201
Configuring Collectors and Receivers .....	201
Deleting All Bulkstats Configurations .....	207
Monitoring Collection Statistics .....	207
Configuring Schemas .....	218
igmp Objects .....	218
if-stats Objects .....	219
policy Objects .....	220
Mapping Bulkstats Output to MIB Flies and CLI Configurations .....	222
Monitoring Schema Statistics .....	229
Configuring Interface Numbering Mode .....	230
Using the Bulk Statistics Formatter .....	231
Setting Remote Filenames .....	231
Guidelines .....	232
Specifying End of Line Format .....	232
Managing Virtual Routers .....	233
Monitoring SNMP .....	233
Establishing a Baseline .....	233
Viewing SNMP Status .....	234
Output Filtering .....	243

## Chapter 5

## Managing the System 245

Overview .....	246
Platform Considerations .....	246
Naming the System .....	246
Configuring the Switch Fabric Bandwidth .....	247
Configuring Timing .....	247
Monitoring Timing .....	249
Using the CLI .....	249

Managing vty Lines .....	252
Configuring vty Lines .....	253
Monitoring vty Lines .....	254
Clearing Lines .....	255
Monitoring the Current Configuration .....	255
Defining the Configuration Output Format .....	256
Customizing the Configuration Output .....	260
Detecting Corrupt File Configurations .....	265
Automatically Recovering Corrupt Configuration Files .....	266
Configuring the System Automatically .....	270
Saving the Current Configuration .....	271
Using the Desktop Tool for Viewing Uncompressed Text Configuration .....	274
Installation Prerequisites for the Desktop Tool .....	274
Requirements for Microsoft Windows Systems .....	274
Requirements for Sun Solaris Systems .....	275
Requirements for Linux Systems .....	275
Usage Notes for the Perl Script .....	275
Customizing the User Interface .....	276
Setting the Console Speed .....	276
Configuring the Display Terminal .....	276
Specifying the Character Set .....	277
Configuring Login Conditions .....	278
Setting Time Limits for User Login .....	278
Setting Time Limits for User Input .....	279
Configuring CLI Messages .....	279
Monitoring the Console Settings .....	281
Sending Messages .....	283
Managing Memory .....	284
Managing Files .....	284
Managing the User Space from a Network Host .....	286
File Commands and FTP Servers .....	287
Renaming Files .....	287
Deleting Files .....	289
Monitoring Files .....	290
Viewing Files .....	294
Transferring Files .....	295
References .....	295
Copying and Redirecting Files .....	296
Using the copy Command .....	297
copy Command Examples .....	302
Using TFTP to Transfer Files .....	303
Configuring the FTP Server .....	303
Features .....	304
FTP Passive Mode .....	304
Configuring Authentication .....	304
Configuration Tasks .....	305
Configuration Example .....	305
Monitoring the FTP Server .....	306
Copying Partial Releases .....	308



Configuring the NFS Client .....	310
References .....	310
Prerequisites .....	311
Configuration Tasks .....	311
Monitoring the NFS Client .....	312
Using a Loopback Interface .....	312
Using the Telnet Client .....	313
Configuring DNS .....	314
References .....	315
Assigning Name Servers .....	315
Using One Name Resolver for Multiple Virtual Routers .....	316
Monitoring DNS .....	317
Troubleshooting the System .....	317
Creating Core Dump Files .....	317
Boot Mode .....	318
Global Configuration Mode .....	318
Managing Core Dump Files .....	321
Enabling and Disabling the Core Dump Monitor .....	322
Specifying the Core Dump Monitor Interval .....	322
Viewing Core Dump Monitor Status .....	323
Accessing the Core Dump File .....	324
Capturing and Writing Core Dumps .....	325
Understanding the Core Dump File .....	325
Tracking IP Prefix Reachability .....	326
Gathering Information for Customer Support .....	328
Managing and Monitoring Resources .....	329
Enabling and Disabling the Resource Threshold Monitor .....	329
Viewing Resource Threshold Information .....	330
Monitoring the System .....	331

## Chapter 6

<b>Managing Modules</b>	<b>349</b>
Overview .....	349
Platform Considerations .....	350
ERX7xx Models, ERX14xx Models, and the ERX310 Broadband Services	
Router .....	350
Line Modules and I/O Modules .....	350
SRP Modules .....	350
E120 and E320 Broadband Services Routers .....	351
Line Modules and IOAs .....	351
SRP Modules and SFMs .....	353
Disabling and Reenabling Line Modules, SRP Modules, and SFMs .....	354
Disabling and Reenabling IOAs .....	356
Removing an SRP Module .....	357
Replacing Line Modules on ERX Routers, the E120 Router, and the E320	
Router .....	358
Replacing a Line Module by Erasing the Slot Configuration .....	359
Replacing a Line Module Without Erasing the Slot Configuration .....	360
Replacing IOAs on the E120 Router and the E320 Router .....	362
Replacing SRP Modules and SFMs .....	363

Software Compatibility .....	366
Line Modules .....	366
I/O Modules and IOAs .....	367
Configuring Performance Rate of Line Modules on ERX7xx Models and the	
ERX1410 Router .....	367
Choosing a Combination of Line Modules .....	367
Slot Groups .....	368
SRP Modules Bandwidth .....	368
Line Modules Bandwidth and Switch Usage .....	368
Allowed Combinations for Line Rate Performance .....	369
Specifying the Type of Performance .....	371
Monitoring Bandwidth Oversubscription .....	371
Troubleshooting Bandwidth Oversubscription .....	372
Managing Flash Cards on SRP Modules .....	373
Flash Features .....	373
Flash Features on the E120 Router and the E320 Router .....	374
Installing and Removing Flash Cards .....	375
Synchronizing Flash Cards .....	376
Synchronizing Flash Cards of Different Capacities .....	377
Disabling Autosynchronization .....	378
Validating and Recovering Redundant SRP File Integrity .....	378
Reformatting the Primary Flash Card .....	381
Copying the Image on the Primary SRP Module .....	382
Scanning Flash Cards .....	383
Monitoring Flash Cards .....	385
Updating the Router with JUNOS Hotfix Files .....	387
Hotfix Compatibility and Dependency .....	388
Removing Hotfixes .....	389
Hotfixes and Backup Settings .....	389
Hotfixes and Standby SRP Modules .....	389
Hotfixes and Line Modules .....	389
Monitoring Hotfixes .....	392
Example: Using and Monitoring Hotfixes .....	395
Managing the Ethernet Port on the SRP Module .....	397
Monitoring Statistics .....	398
Monitoring the Ethernet Configuration for the SRP Module .....	398
Enabling Warm Restart Diagnostics on Modules .....	400
Enabling Warm Restart Diagnostics .....	400
Enabling Diagnostics .....	401
Ignoring Diagnostic Test Failures .....	402
Monitoring Modules .....	403

## Chapter 7

## Passwords and Security

**413**

Overview .....	413
Platform Considerations .....	413
Setting Basic Password Parameters .....	414
Creating Encrypted Passwords .....	414
Creating Secrets .....	415

Encrypting Passwords in Configuration File .....	415
Commands and Guidelines .....	415
Setting and Erasing Passwords .....	417
Privilege Levels .....	417
Accessing Privilege Levels .....	418
Setting Enable Passwords .....	418
Erasing Enable Passwords .....	418
Setting a Console Password .....	420
Erasing the Console Password .....	422
Monitoring Passwords .....	422
Vty Line Authentication and Authorization .....	423
Configuring Simple Authentication .....	423
Configuring AAA Authentication and AAA Authorization .....	426
Virtual Terminal Access Lists .....	431
Secure System Administration with SSH .....	432
Transport .....	432
User Authentication .....	433
Connection .....	433
Key Management .....	433
User Key Management .....	433
Host Key Management .....	433
Performance .....	434
Security Concerns .....	434
Before You Configure SSH .....	435
SSH Configuration Tasks .....	435
Configuring Encryption .....	435
Configuring User Authentication .....	437
Configuring Message Authentication .....	438
Enabling and Disabling SSH .....	439
Displaying SSH Status .....	440
Terminating an SSH Session .....	442
Restricting User Access .....	442
Restricting Access to Commands with RADIUS .....	443
Per-User Enable Authentication .....	443
Restricting Access to Virtual Routers .....	444
VSA Configuration Examples .....	445
Commands Available to Users .....	445
Denial of Service (DoS) Protection .....	446
Suspicious Control Flow Detection .....	447
Suspicious Control Flow Monitoring .....	448
Configurable Options .....	449
Display Options .....	449
Traps and Logs .....	449
Suspicious Control Flow Commands .....	450
Monitoring Suspicious Control Flow .....	452
Denial-of-Service Protection Groups .....	457
Group Parameters .....	458
Attaching Groups .....	459
Protocol Mapping .....	459
DoS Protection Group Configuration Example .....	462

DoS Protection Group Commands .....	463
Monitoring DoS Protection Groups .....	468

<b>Chapter 8</b>	<b>Writing CLI Macros</b>	<b>471</b>
Platform Considerations .....	471	
Writing Macros .....	471	
Environment Commands .....	473	
Capturing Output of Commands .....	474	
Adding Regular Expression Matching to Macros .....	474	
Extracting a Substring Based on Regular Expression Matching .....	475	
Adding Global Variables for Availability to the onError Macro .....	475	
Unique IDs for Macros .....	476	
Accurate Use of Error Status When Accessed Outside of onError		
Macro .....	476	
Variables .....	477	
Literals .....	477	
Operators .....	478	
Assignment .....	480	
Increment and Decrement .....	480	
String Operations .....	481	
Extraction Operations .....	481	
Arithmetic Operations .....	482	
Relational Operations .....	482	
Logical Operations .....	482	
Miscellaneous Operations .....	483	
Conditional Execution .....	484	
If Constructs .....	484	
While Constructs .....	485	
Passing Parameters in Macros .....	486	
Generating Macro Output .....	487	
Invoking Other Macros .....	487	
Detecting and Recording Macro Errors .....	489	
Detectable Macro Errors .....	489	
Logging Macro Results .....	490	
Viewing Macro Errors .....	490	
onError Macro Examples .....	491	
Detecting Invalid Command Formats .....	491	
Detecting Invalid Commands .....	492	
Detecting Missing Macros .....	493	
Running Macros .....	494	
Scheduling Macros .....	497	
Practical Examples .....	501	
Configuring Frame Relay .....	501	
Configuring ATM Interfaces .....	505	

<b>Chapter 9</b>	<b>Booting the System</b>	<b>507</b>
	Platform Considerations .....	507
	Configuring Your System for Booting .....	507
	Booting the GE-2 Line Module .....	508
	Rebooting Your System .....	512
	Rebooting When a Command Takes a Prolonged Time to Execute .....	514
	Configuration Caching .....	515
	Operations in Boot Mode .....	515
	Displaying Boot Information .....	516
	Output Filtering .....	518
 <b>Chapter 10</b>	 <b>Configuring the System Clock</b>	 <b>519</b>
	Overview .....	519
	NTP .....	519
	System Operation as an NTP Client .....	520
	Synchronization .....	521
	System Operation as an NTP Server .....	522
	Platform Considerations .....	522
	References .....	522
	Setting the System Clock Manually .....	523
	Before You Configure NTP .....	525
	Choosing NTP Servers .....	525
	NTP Configuration Tasks .....	525
	Enabling NTP Services .....	525
	NTP Client Configuration .....	526
	Directing Responses from NTP Servers .....	527
	Refusing Broadcasts from NTP Servers .....	528
	NTP Server Configuration .....	528
	Configuration Examples .....	530
	Monitoring NTP .....	531
 <b>Chapter 11</b>	 <b>Configuring Virtual Routers</b>	 <b>537</b>
	Overview .....	537
	Default Virtual Router .....	537
	Virtual Router Instances .....	537
	Routing Protocols .....	538
	VPNs and VRFs .....	538
	VPNs .....	538
	VRFs .....	538
	Platform Considerations .....	539
	References .....	539
	Configuring Virtual Routers .....	539
	Monitoring Virtual Routers .....	543

<b>Part 2</b>	<b>Reference Material</b>	
<b>Appendix A</b>	<b>Abbreviations and Acronyms</b>	<b>551</b>
<b>Appendix B</b>	<b>References</b>	<b>569</b>
	RFCs .....	569
	Draft RFCs .....	582
	Other Software Standards .....	585
	Hardware Standards .....	588
<b>Part 3</b>	<b>Index</b>	
	Index .....	593

# List of Figures

## Part 1

## Chapters

<b>Chapter 1</b>	<b>Planning Your Network</b>	<b>3</b>
	Figure 1: Private Line Aggregation with the E Series Router .....	5
	Figure 2: B-RAS Application .....	6
	Figure 3: Network Configuration Using a Bottom-Up Approach .....	7
	Figure 4: E Series Router Support for Fractional T1/E1 Through T3/E3 Interfaces .....	11
	Figure 5: Channelized T3 Interface Configuration Parameters .....	13
	Figure 6: T3 Interface Configuration Parameters .....	14
	Figure 7: SONET Interfaces .....	14
	Figure 8: Parameters for T1 over DS3 Interface Configuration .....	15
	Figure 9: Frame Relay Interface Design .....	17
	Figure 10: Structure of Frame Relay Protocols .....	18
	Figure 11: Serial Interface Configuration Parameters for a Frame Relay Connection .....	18
	Figure 12: E Series Router IP/ATM Access Connection .....	19
	Figure 13: Structure of the ATM Interface Design .....	19
	Figure 14: Structure of ATM Protocol .....	20
	Figure 15: ATM Interface Configuration Parameters .....	20
	Figure 16: IP/PPP Connections from the CPE on an E Series Router .....	21
	Figure 17: Structure of PPP .....	21
	Figure 18: PPP Interface Configuration Parameters .....	21
	Figure 19: Structure of Cisco HDLC Protocol .....	22
	Figure 20: Example of IP over Ethernet Stacking Configuration Steps .....	23
<b>Chapter 2</b>	<b>Command-Line Interface</b>	<b>29</b>
	Figure 21: Command Mode Architecture .....	30
<b>Chapter 5</b>	<b>Managing the System</b>	<b>245</b>
	Figure 22: Transferring System Files to the E Series Router .....	295
	Figure 23: FTP Configuration Example .....	305
	Figure 24: DNS Hierarchy Example .....	314
<b>Chapter 7</b>	<b>Passwords and Security</b>	<b>413</b>
	Figure 25: Location of the Software Reset Button .....	419
	Figure 26: Typical Control Packet Processing .....	447
<b>Chapter 10</b>	<b>Configuring the System Clock</b>	<b>519</b>
	Figure 27: Example of an NTP Hierarchy .....	520
<b>Chapter 11</b>	<b>Configuring Virtual Routers</b>	<b>537</b>
	Figure 28: Virtual Routers .....	538





# List of Tables

<b>About the Documentation</b>	<b>xxvii</b>
Table 1: Notice Icons .....	xxviii
Table 2: Text and Syntax Conventions .....	xxviii

## Part 1

### Chapters

<b>Chapter 1</b>	<b>Planning Your Network</b>	<b>3</b>
	Table 3: Common Access/Uplink Pairings .....	5
<b>Chapter 2</b>	<b>Command-Line Interface</b>	<b>29</b>
	Table 4: Redirect Operators .....	40
	Table 5: Supported Regular Expression Metacharacters .....	42
	Table 6: Help Commands .....	64
	Table 7: Command-Line Editing Keys .....	67
	Table 8: Command History Keys .....	69
	Table 9: Pagination Keys .....	69
	Table 10: Command Mode Overview .....	70
<b>Chapter 3</b>	<b>Installing JUNOS Software</b>	<b>127</b>
	Table 11: Software Release Files .....	128
	Table 12: Software Installation Procedure When a Firewall Exists .....	129
	Table 13: Software Installation Procedure When a Firewall Does Not Exist .....	135
	Table 14: Software Installation Procedure in Boot Mode .....	139
	Table 15: Release Compatibility .....	145
<b>Chapter 4</b>	<b>Configuring SNMP</b>	<b>149</b>
	Table 16: SNMP Terminology .....	150
	Table 17: Relationship Among Groups, Security Levels, and Views .....	154
	Table 18: SnmpEngineID Structure Object .....	156
	Table 19: Relationship Between SNMPv1/v2c and SNMPv3 Attributes .....	157
	Table 20: SNMP Operations .....	158
	Table 21: SNMP PDU Types .....	158
	Table 22: Trap Severity Descriptions .....	171
	Table 23: Interface Strings .....	199
	Table 24: Data Retrieved According to Schema .....	218
	Table 25: Schema igmp Objects .....	218
	Table 26: Schema ifStats Objects .....	219
	Table 27: Schema Policy Objects .....	220
	Table 28: Mapping Bulkstats Output to MIB Flies and CLI Configurations .....	222
<b>Chapter 5</b>	<b>Managing the System</b>	<b>245</b>
	Table 29: Output Locations for Layer 2 and Layer 3 Interface Configurations .....	256
	Table 30: Categories of Router Settings .....	261

	Table 31: Types of System Files and Corresponding Extensions .....	285
	Table 32: FTP Commands That the System Supports .....	286
	Table 33: File Types You Can Rename .....	288
	Table 34: File Types You Can Delete .....	290
	Table 35: File Types You Can Transfer Using the copy Command .....	297
	Table 36: Chassis Slot Numbers Versus Hardware Slot Numbers .....	326
<b>Chapter 6</b>	<b>Managing Modules</b>	<b>349</b>
	Table 37: IOA Management Information .....	352
	Table 38: Bandwidth Statistics for Line Modules .....	368
	Table 39: Combinations of Line Modules for Line Rate Performance—SRP-10G Module in an ERX7xx Model .....	370
	Table 40: Combinations of Line Modules for Line Rate Performance—SRP-10G Module in an ERX1410 Router .....	370
	Table 41: Combinations of Line Modules for Line Rate Performance—SRP-5G + Module in an ERX705 Router .....	370
	Table 42: Supported Line Modules .....	400
<b>Chapter 7</b>	<b>Passwords and Security</b>	<b>413</b>
	Table 43: Commands Available at Different Privilege Levels .....	417
	Table 44: CLI User Access Levels .....	442
	Table 45: Juniper Networks–Specific CLI Access VSA Descriptions .....	443
	Table 46: Juniper Networks–Specific Virtual Router Access VSA Descriptions .....	444
	Table 47: Layer 2-Related Protocols .....	459
	Table 48: IP-Related Protocols .....	460
<b>Chapter 8</b>	<b>Writing CLI Macros</b>	<b>471</b>
	Table 49: Environment Commands .....	473
	Table 50: Macro Operators .....	478
	Table 51: Operator Actions .....	478
	Table 52: Contents of ds1mac.mac .....	501

## Part 2

## Reference Material

<b>Appendix B</b>	<b>References</b>	<b>569</b>
	Table 53: E Series RFCs .....	569
	Table 54: E Series Draft RFCs .....	582
	Table 55: E Series Non-RFC Software Standards .....	585
	Table 56: E Series Hardware Standards .....	588

# About the Documentation

- E Series and JUNOSe Documentation and Release Notes on page xxvii
- Audience on page xxvii
- E Series and JUNOSe Text and Syntax Conventions on page xxvii
- Obtaining Documentation on page xxix
- Documentation Feedback on page xxix
- Requesting Technical Support on page xxix

## E Series and JUNOSe Documentation and Release Notes

---

For a list of related JUNOSe documentation, see  
<http://www.juniper.net/techpubs/software/index.html>.

If the information in the latest release notes differs from the information in the documentation, follow the *JUNOS Software Release Notes*.

To obtain the most current version of all Juniper Networks® technical documentation, see the product documentation page on the Juniper Networks website at  
<http://www.juniper.net/techpubs/>.

## Audience

---

This guide is intended for experienced system and network specialists working with Juniper Networks E Series Broadband Services Routers in an Internet access environment.

## E Series and JUNOSe Text and Syntax Conventions

---

Table 1 on page xxviii defines notice icons used in this documentation.

**Table 1: Notice Icons**





Icon	Meaning	Description
	Informational note	Indicates important features or instructions.
	Caution	Indicates a situation that might result in loss of data or hardware damage.
	Warning	Alerts you to the risk of personal injury or death.
	Laser warning	Alerts you to the risk of personal injury from a laser.

Table 2 on page xxviii defines text and syntax conventions that we use throughout the E Series and JUNOS documentation.

**Table 2: Text and Syntax Conventions**

Convention	Description	Examples
<b>Bold text like this</b>	Represents commands and keywords in text.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Issue the <b>clock source</b> command.</li> <li>■ Specify the keyword <b>exp-msg</b>.</li> </ul>
<b>Bold text like this</b>	Represents text that the user must type.	host1(config)# <b>traffic class low-loss1</b>
Fixed-width text like this	Represents information as displayed on your terminal's screen.	<pre>host1#show ip ospf 2 Routing Process OSPF 2 with Router ID 5.5.0.250 Router is an Area Border Router (ABR)</pre>
<i>Italic text like this</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Emphasizes words.</li> <li>■ Identifies variables.</li> <li>■ Identifies chapter, appendix, and book names.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ There are two levels of access: <i>user</i> and <i>privileged</i>.</li> <li>■ <i>clusterId</i>, <i>ipAddress</i>.</li> <li>■ <i>Appendix A, System Specifications</i></li> </ul>
Plus sign (+) linking key names	Indicates that you must press two or more keys simultaneously.	Press Ctrl + b.
<b>Syntax Conventions in the Command Reference Guide</b>		
Plain text like this	Represents keywords.	terminal length
<i>Italic text like this</i>	Represents variables.	<i>mask</i> , <i>accessListName</i>
(pipe symbol)	Represents a choice to select one keyword or variable to the left or to the right of this symbol. (The keyword or variable can be either optional or required.)	diagnostic   line

**Table 2: Text and Syntax Conventions** (*continued*)

Convention	Description	Examples
[ ] (brackets)	Represent optional keywords or variables.	[ internal   external ]
[ ]* (brackets and asterisk)	Represent optional keywords or variables that can be entered more than once.	[ level1   level2   l1 ]*
{ } (braces)	Represent required keywords or variables.	{ permit   deny } { in   out }  { <i>clusterId</i>   <i>ipAddress</i> }

## Obtaining Documentation

To obtain the most current version of all Juniper Networks technical documentation, see the products documentation page on the Juniper Networks Web site at <http://www.juniper.net/>.

To download complete sets of technical documentation to create your own documentation CD-ROMs or DVD-ROMs, see the CD-ROM and DVD-ROM Documentation page at

<http://www.juniper.net/techpubs/resources/cdrom.html>

Copies of the Management Information Bases (MIBs) available in a software release are included on the software CDs and at <http://www.juniper.net/>.

## Documentation Feedback

We encourage you to provide feedback, comments, and suggestions so that we can improve the documentation to better meet your needs. Send your comments to [techpubs-comments@juniper.net](mailto:techpubs-comments@juniper.net), or fill out the documentation feedback form at <https://www.juniper.net/cgi-bin/docbugreport/>. If you are using e-mail, be sure to include the following information with your comments:

- Document or topic name
- URL or page number
- Software release version

## Requesting Technical Support

Technical product support is available through the Juniper Networks Technical Assistance Center (JTAC). If you are a customer with an active J-Care or JNASC support contract, or are covered under warranty, and need post-sales technical support, you can access our tools and resources online or open a case with JTAC.

- JTAC policies—For a complete understanding of our JTAC procedures and policies, review the JTAC User Guide located at <http://www.juniper.net/customers/support/downloads/710059.pdf>.

- Product warranties—For product warranty information, visit <http://www.juniper.net/support/warranty/> .
- JTAC hours of operation—The JTAC centers have resources available 24 hours a day, 7 days a week, 365 days a year.

## **Self-Help Online Tools and Resources**

For quick and easy problem resolution, Juniper Networks has designed an online self-service portal called the Customer Support Center (CSC) that provides you with the following features:

- Find CSC offerings: <http://www.juniper.net/customers/support/>
- Search for known bugs: <http://www2.juniper.net/kb/>
- Find product documentation: <http://www.juniper.net/techpubs/>
- Find solutions and answer questions using our Knowledge Base: <http://kb.juniper.net/>
- Download the latest versions of software and review release notes: <http://www.juniper.net/customers/csc/software/>
- Search technical bulletins for relevant hardware and software notifications: <https://www.juniper.net/alerts/>
- Join and participate in the Juniper Networks Community Forum: <http://www.juniper.net/company/communities/>
- Open a case online in the CSC Case Management tool: <http://www.juniper.net/cm/>

To verify service entitlement by product serial number, use our Serial Number Entitlement (SNE) Tool: <https://tools.juniper.net/SerialNumberEntitlementSearch/>

## **Opening a Case with JTAC**

You can open a case with JTAC on the Web or by telephone.

- Use the Case Management tool in the CSC at <http://www.juniper.net/cm/> .
- Call 1-888-314-JTAC (1-888-314-5822 toll-free in the USA, Canada, and Mexico).

For international or direct-dial options in countries without toll-free numbers, see [http://www.juniper.net/support/requesting\\_support.html](http://www.juniper.net/support/requesting_support.html) .

# **Part 1**

## **Chapters**

- Planning Your Network on page 3
- Command-Line Interface on page 29
- Installing JUNOS Software on page 127
- Configuring SNMP on page 149
- Managing the System on page 245
- Managing Modules on page 349
- Passwords and Security on page 413
- Writing CLI Macros on page 471
- Booting the System on page 507
- Configuring the System Clock on page 519
- Configuring Virtual Routers on page 537





## Chapter 1

# Planning Your Network

This chapter describes planning steps that will make it easier to configure the physical interfaces, logical interfaces, and routing protocols for the Juniper Networks E Series Broadband Services Routers in:

- A new network that you are creating and implementing
- An existing network that you are expanding

This chapter contains the following sections:

- Platform Considerations on page 3
- Edge Applications Overview on page 4
- Layered Approach on page 6
- Line Modules, I/O Modules, and IOAs on page 7
- Interfaces on page 8
- General Configuration Tasks on page 9
- Configuring Virtual Routers on page 10
- Configuring IPSec on page 10
- Configuring Physical Layer Interfaces on page 10
- Configuring Data Link-Layer Interfaces on page 17
- Configuring IP Tunnels, Shared IP Interfaces, and Subscriber Interfaces on page 23
- Configuring Routing Protocols on page 24
- Configuring VRRP on page 25
- Configuring Routing Policy on page 25
- Configuring QoS on page 25
- Configuring Policy Management on page 26
- Configuring Remote Access on page 26

## Platform Considerations

---

For information about the modules supported on E Series routers:

- See the *ERX Module Guide* for modules supported on ERX7xx models, ERX14xx models, and the Juniper Networks ERX310 Broadband Services Router.

- See the *E120 and E320 Module Guide* for modules supported on the Juniper Networks E120 and E320 Broadband Services Routers.

## Interface Specifiers

The configuration task examples in this chapter use the *slot/port* format to specify an interface. However, the interface specifier format that you use depends on the router that you are using.

For ERX7xx models, ERX14xx models, and ERX310 router, use the *slot/port* format. For example, the following command specifies an ATM interface on slot 0, port 1 of an ERX7xx model, ERX14xx model, or ERX310 router.

```
host1(config)#interface atm 0/1
```

For E120 and E320 routers, use the *slot/adapter/port* format, which includes an identifier for the bay in which the I/O adapter (IOA) resides. In the software, adapter 0 identifies the right IOA bay (E120 router) and the upper IOA bay (E320 router); adapter 1 identifies the left IOA bay (E120 router) and the lower IOA bay (E320 router). For example, the following command specifies an ATM interface on slot 5, adapter 0, port 0 of an E320 router.

```
host1(config)#interface atm 5/0/0
```

For more information about supported interface types and specifiers on E Series routers, see Interface Types and Specifiers in *JUNOS Command Reference Guide*.

## Edge Applications Overview

---

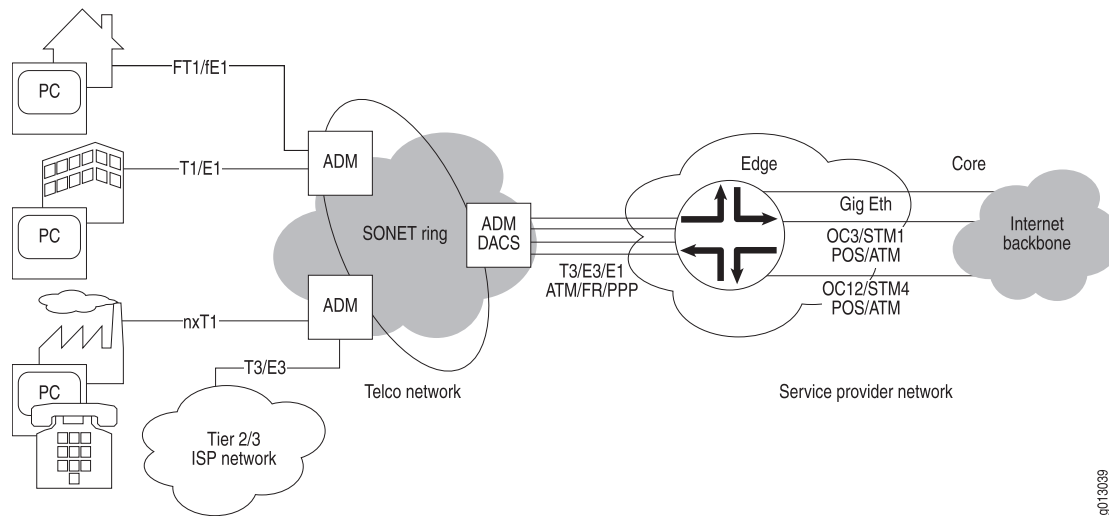
The E Series router can be used for a number of edge aggregation applications. Two of the most common are:

- Private line aggregation
- xDSL session termination

### Private Line Aggregation

A major application of the E Series router is for private line aggregation—the consolidation of multiple high-speed access lines into one access point. See Figure 1 on page 5.

In this application, the service provider can use a single router to offer high-speed access (FT1/FE1 through T3/E3) to thousands of subscribers. The individual subscriber lines can be multiplexed into T3 lines by the service provider and fed into the router. (The router can also accept unchannelized T3 or E3 connections from high-speed users and channelized E1 connections directly into the unit.) Once the traffic is received, the router then handles all IP packet processing, including the assignment of QoS and routing policies. The packets are then routed into the backbone network.

**Figure 1: Private Line Aggregation with the E Series Router**

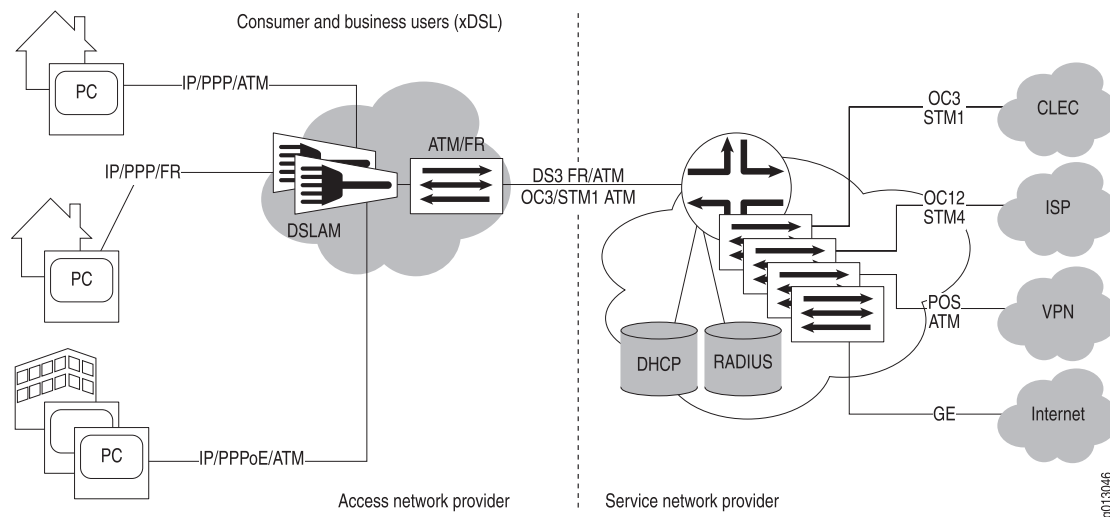
The router supports a number of access and uplink methods; the most common pairings are listed in Table 3 on page 5.

**Table 3: Common Access/Uplink Pairings**

Access	Uplink
PPP	ATM, Fast Ethernet, Gigabit Ethernet, or POS
Frame Relay	
ATM	

### ***xDSL Session Termination***

The router supports Broadband Remote Access Server (B-RAS) applications, as shown in Figure 2 on page 6. In this application, the router handles the aggregated output from the digital subscriber line access multiplexers (DSLAMs). Directly connected to the subscriber premises, the DSLAMs handle the copper termination and aggregate the traffic into a higher-speed uplink. The output from the DSLAM is fed into the router through a DS3 or OC3 link.

**Figure 2: B-RAS Application**

The router then performs several functions:

- PPP session termination and authentication checking through PAP or CHAP
- Coordination with DHCP servers and local IP pools to assign IP addresses
- Connection to RADIUS servers or use of domain names to associate subscribers with user profile information
- Support for RADIUS accounting to gather detailed billing information
- Application of the user profile to the user traffic flow, which could include QoS, VPN, and routing profiles

The output of the router is typically a high-speed link, such as OC3/STM1 to feed a core backbone router. Virtual routers can also be used to keep the traffic logically separate and to direct packets to different destinations. As shown in Figure 2 on page 6, the packets can be directed to a CLEC, ISP, corporate VPN, or the Internet.

A large number of xDSL protocols are supported, including:

- IP/PPP/ATM
- IP/PPP/Ethernet/ATM
- IP/bridged Ethernet/ATM

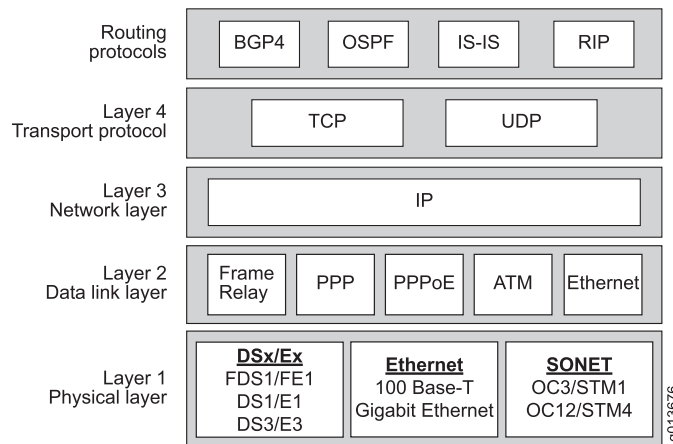
See *JUNOS Broadband Access Configuration Guide*, for information about configuring B-RAS.

## Layered Approach

The JUNOS CLI enables you to configure your network based on the hierarchy of the OSI model. Therefore, the JUNOS configuration guides use a bottom-up approach to describe the configuration process. Figure 3 on page 7 shows the relationship of layers, protocols, and interfaces to the configuration process. Software functions are

layered on top of physical (copper or optical) interfaces. The router supports a number of access protocols (PPP/POS, Frame Relay, ATM) that allow service providers to offer a number of access methods and line speeds to their subscribers. The router is optimized to handle IP connections regardless of the access protocol used. The router also supports a number of protocols that are specific to the B-RAS application. These are shown in Figure 3 on page 7, and include IP/PPP/ATM and IP/PPP/Ethernet/ATM.

**Figure 3: Network Configuration Using a Bottom-Up Approach**



Layer 2 (data link) defines how the data is packaged and sent to an IP data connection point in layer 3 (IP interfaces). In layer 3, you define the global attributes for IP services that serve as a platform from which you add routing information.

## Line Modules, I/O Modules, and IOAs

A range of line modules, I/O modules, and I/O adapters (IOAs) are available for the router. On the ERX14xx models, ERX7xx models, and the ERX310 router, most line modules pair with a corresponding I/O module. On the E120 and E320 routers, a single line module pairs with all available IOAs.

I/O modules and IOAs provide the input and output connections from the network to the router. Line modules connect to their corresponding I/O modules or IOAs through a passive midplane. A line module receives packets through its I/O module or IOA and processes those packets. The router then routes the packets out to the network through the designated I/O module or IOA.

Each line module, I/O module, and IOA has a label on its faceplate. In this documentation, these modules are identified by that label. For example, the high-density Gigabit Ethernet line module has two ports, and is called the GE-HDE line module. Its corresponding I/O modules are the GE-HDE I/O module and the GE-2 SFP I/O module.

When we refer to a related set of line modules, I/O modules, or IOAs, the generic information from the module labels is used in this documentation. For example, the term “OCx/STMx line modules” refers to both the OCx/STMx ATM and the OCx/STMx

POS line modules. Similarly, the term “GE I/O modules” refers to both the GE Multimode I/O module and the GE Single Mode I/O module.

For a complete list of the line modules and I/O modules available for ERX14xx models, ERX7xx models, and the ERX310 router, see *ERX Module Guide, Table 1, Module Combinations*. For more information about line modules and IOAs available with the E120 and E320 routers, see *E120 and E320 Module Guide, Table 1, Modules and IOAs*.

For more information about managing these modules, see “Managing Modules” on page 349.

## Interfaces

---

The term *interfaces* is used in a very specific way in the JUNOS CLI and this documentation. Interfaces are both physical and logical channels on the router that define how data is transmitted to and received from lower layers in the protocol stack. Conceptually, you configure an interface as part of the physical layer, layer 1.

For example, you can configure the physical and logical characteristics of T3 and T1 lines coming directly from the customer premises or from a central office switch and OC3 lines going out to the core of your network infrastructure. These physical and logical characteristics define an interface.

Interface layering must always be configured in order from the lowest layer to the highest layer. For example, if you have already configured IP to run over ATM and you want to reconfigure the interface to run IP over PPP over ATM, you must first remove the IP interface, apply PPP, and then reapply IP.

## Subinterfaces

A subinterface is a mechanism that allows a single physical interface to support multiple logical interfaces or networks. Several logical interfaces or networks can be associated with a single physical interface. Configuring multiple virtual interfaces, or subinterfaces, on a single physical interface allows greater flexibility and connectivity on the network.

Protocols such as Frame Relay and ATM require that you create one or more virtual circuits over which your data traffic is transmitted to higher layers in the protocol stack. The router requires that you define a subinterface on top of a physical interface as a platform for a virtual circuit, such as a permanent virtual circuit (PVC).

Once you have defined the underlying characteristics of an interface, use the interface command to:

1. Assign an *interface type*, such as POS or ATM.
2. Assign the associated *interface specifier* to the interface, such as the *slot/port* or *slot/adaptor/port* and *channel/subchannel*.
3. Assign one or more subinterfaces.

## Interface Command

The **interface** command has the following format:

**interface** *interfaceType interfaceSpecifier*

Each interface type has an interface specifier associated with it. The interface specifier identifies the physical location of the interface on the router, such as the chassis slot and port number, and logical interface information, such as a T1 channel on a channelized T3 interface.

For detailed information about interface types and specifiers and for specific syntax for the **interface** command, see the Interface Types and Specifiers in *JUNOS Command Reference Guide*.

## General Configuration Tasks

---

The configuration process for E Series routers involves the following general tasks:

1. Determine IP-addressing information and information about the physical and logical characteristics of the various interfaces that you want to configure.
2. Determine information about the link-layer protocols.
3. Determine how to organize virtual routers on the router.
4. Determine how IPsec will be used to provide security.
5. Determine routing information that defines all or part of the network.
6. Create the virtual routers.
7. Configure the interfaces and subinterfaces (such as channelized T3, OCx/STMx, and HDLC data channels) over which the higher-layer protocols run.
8. Configure the data link-layer protocols, such as Frame Relay, PPP, and ATM, that run over these physical interfaces.
9. Configure the general IP information from which the other routing protocols will operate.
10. Configure IP tunnels, shared interfaces, and subscriber interfaces.
11. Configure IPsec.
12. Configure the routing protocols that will run on the router, such as IP multicasting protocols, OSPF, IS-IS, RIP, BGP-4, and MPLS.
13. Configure the Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol (VRRP) on IP/Ethernet interfaces.
14. Configure QoS and policy management.
15. Configure the router for remote access.
16. Use the appropriate show commands to display network activity on each of the interfaces that you have configured. Do this to verify that they are operating as you expect and to help improve the management of your network.

## Configuring Virtual Routers

---

Multiple distinct virtual routers are supported within a single router, which allows service providers to configure multiple, separate, secure routers within a single chassis. These routers are identified as *virtual routers (VRs)*. Applications for this function include the creation of individual routers dedicated to wholesale customers, corporate virtual private network (VPN) users, or a specific traffic type.

The router implements the virtual routers by maintaining a separate instance of each data structure for each virtual router and allowing each protocol to be enabled on a case-by-case basis. Virtual routers provide full support for all supported routing protocols (unicast, multicast, and MPLS).

For information about configuring virtual routers, see “Configuring Virtual Routers” on page 537.

## Configuring IPSec

---

IPSec provides security to IP flows through the use of authentication and encryption.

- Authentication verifies that data is not altered during transmission and ensures that users are communicating with the individual or organization that they believe they are communicating with.
- Encryption makes data confidential by making it unreadable to everyone except the sender and intended recipient.

IPSec comprises two encapsulating protocols:

- Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP) provides confidentiality and authentication functions to every data packet.
- Authentication header (AH) provides authentication to every data packet.

For information about configuring IPSec, see *JUNOS IP Services Configuration Guide*.

## Configuring Physical Layer Interfaces

---

The router supports a number of line rates; some of these are listed per line module below.

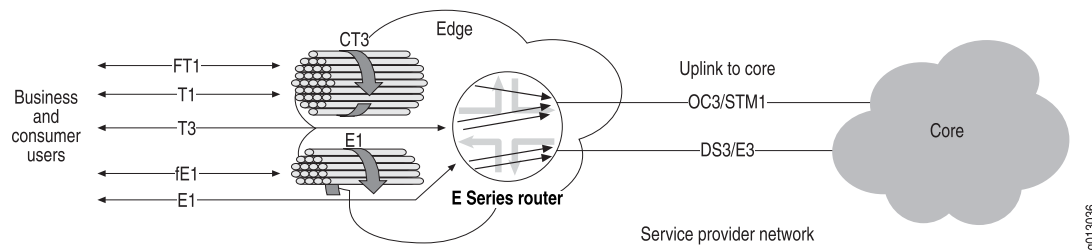
- COCX-F3 line module supports unchannelized E3.
- Channelized OCx/STMx (cOCx/STMx) line module supports DS3 channelized to DS1, fractional DS1, or the DS0 level; unchannelized DS3; E1/T1 channelized to fractional DS1; unframed E1.
- CT3 12-F0 line modules support DS3 channelized to DS1, fractional DS1, or the DS0 level. CT3 12-F0 line modules also support unchannelized T3.
- IPSec Service module provides tunnel service for secure tunnels.
- GE/FE line module supports Gigabit Ethernet and Fast Ethernet.



- GE-2 line module and GE-HDE line module support Gigabit Ethernet.
- OCx/STMx ATM line module supports OC3/STM1 ATM, OC12/STM4 ATM, and unchannelized T3.
- OCx/STMx POS line module supports OC3/STM1 POS and OC12/STM4 POS.
- OC48 line module supports OC48/STM16 POS.
- OC3/STM1 GE/FE line module supports OC3/STM1 ATM and Gigabit Ethernet.
- ES2 4G line module (LM) supports OC48/STM16 POS, OC12/STM1 POS, OC3/STM1 ATM, OC12/STM1 ATM, Gigabit Ethernet, 10-Gigabit Ethernet, and tunnel-service interfaces.
- ES2 10G Uplink LM, ES2 10G LM, and ES2 10G ADV LM supports 10-Gigabit Ethernet interfaces.
- COCX-F3 line module supports unchannelized T3.
- Service Module (SM) provides tunnel service for IP tunnels and LNS termination.

A variety of protocols are supported over these interfaces, including IP/Frame Relay, IP/ATM, IP/PPP, as well as the protocols to enable B-RAS services. The router's DSx and E1/E3 implementations support termination, statistics gathering, alarm surveillance, and performance monitoring. These links can be used for either network ingress or network egress.

**Figure 4: E Series Router Support for Fractional T1/E1 Through T3/E3 Interfaces**



As shown in Figure 4 on page 11, the router can support fractional, full, and channelized interfaces.



**NOTE:** See *ERX Hardware Guide, Chapter 4, Installing Modules* and *E120 and E320 Hardware Guide, Chapter 4, Installing Modules*, for a discussion of slot groups and modules. See the *ERX Module Guide* and the *E120 and E320 Module Guide*, for a discussion of the combination of line modules allowed in E Series routers.

## Line Module Features

The following features are supported by the system line modules:

- Three different clocking options: internal timing, loop timing, and chassis timing
- DS3 framing type—Both M23 framing and C-bit parity

- DS1 framing type—Both D4 framing mode and ESF framing mode
- DS3 loopback—For line, payload, diagnostic, and DS1 loopbacks
- DS1 loopback—For line, payload, and diagnostic loopbacks
- DS3/DS1 line status/alarm monitoring
- DS1 line coding type—Both AMI line encoding and B8ZS line encoding
- Unique IP interface support—For each PPP or Frame Relay PVC interface

### **Configurable HDLC Parameters**

The following HDLC parameters are configurable:

- Mapping of DS0 timeslots for T1/FT1 DS0 mapping
- Setting the speed of the DS0 to Nx56 or Nx64
- HDLC CRC checking (enable/disable)
- HDLC CRC algorithm (CRC16 or CRC32)
- Channel data inversion (enable/disable)
- Maximum receive unit (MRU)
- Maximum transmit unit (MTU)

Statistics are also gathered per line module.

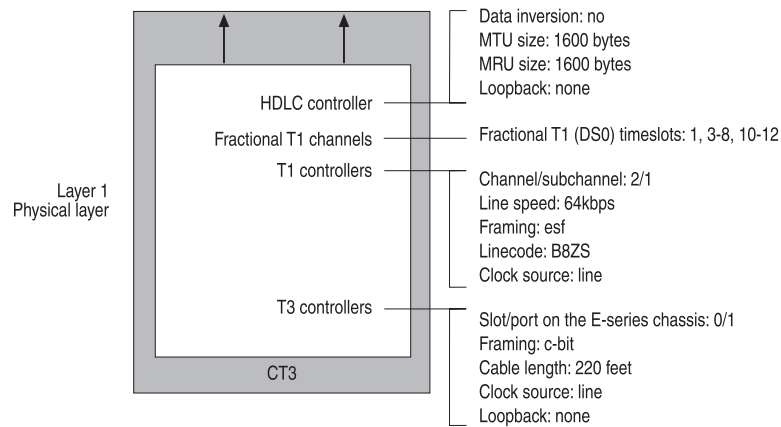
### **Configuring Channelized T3 Interfaces**

There are 12 T3 controllers available on each CT3 12-F0 line module. When you configure these T3 controllers, you are actually configuring T3 (DS3) lines. Each T3 controller has, by definition, 28 T1 controllers representing T1 (DS1) lines.

Use the T3 and T1 commands described in *JUNOS Physical Layer Configuration Guide*, to:

- Specify the line characteristics, such as framing format and clock source, for T3s and associated T1s.
- Assign full and fractional T1 channels (DS0) to a virtual channel.

Figure 5 on page 13 shows sample parameters for a channelized T3 interface configuration.

**Figure 5: Channelized T3 Interface Configuration Parameters**

The following sample command sequence configures a serial interface for a CT3 12-F0 module. See *JUNOS Physical Layer Configuration Guide*, for details.

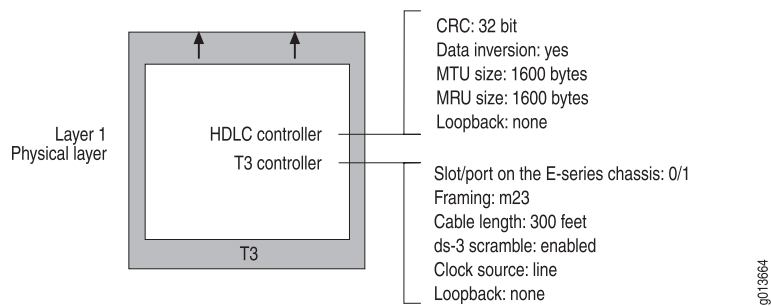
```
host1(config)#controller t3 0/1
host1(config-controll)#framing c-bit
host1(config-controll)#clock source line
host1(config-controll)#cablelength 220
host1(config-controll)#t1 2/1
host1(config-controll)#t1 2 framing esf
host1(config-controll)#t1 2 lineCoding b8zs
host1(config-controll)#t1 2/1 timeslots 2/1 1,3-8,10-12
host1(config-controll)#interface serial 0/1:2/1
```

## Configuring T3 and E3 Interfaces

The COCX-F3 line module supports the following wide area network (WAN) protocol encapsulations:

- IP over PPP
- IP over ATM
- IP over PPP over ATM
- IP over PPP over PPPoE over ATM
- IP over Frame Relay

Figure 6 on page 14 shows sample configuration parameters for a T3 interface configuration.

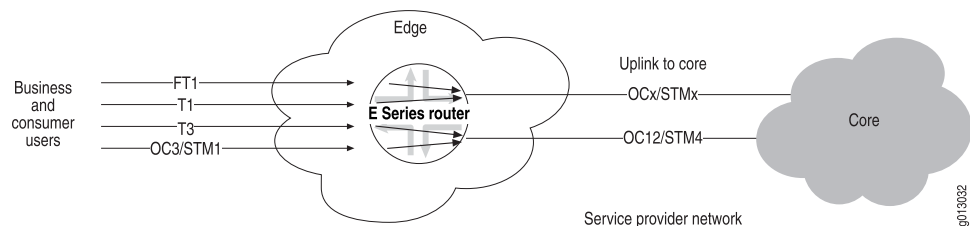
**Figure 6: T3 Interface Configuration Parameters**

The following sample command sequence configures a serial interface for a T3 module. See *JUNOS Physical Layer Configuration Guide*, for details.

```
host1(config)#controller t3 0/1
host1(config-controll)#framing m23
host1(config-controll)#cablelength 300
host1(config-controll)#ds3-scramble
host1(config-controll)#exit
host1(config)#interface serial 0/1
host1(config-if)#invert data
host1(config-if)#mtu 1600
host1(config-if)#mru 1600
```

## Configuring OCx/STMx and OC48 Interfaces

The router supports IP/ATM, IP/Frame Relay, and IP/PPP over SONET on the OCx/STMx interfaces. OC48 interfaces support IP/Frame Relay and IP/PPP over SONET, but do not support ATM operation. This interface support allows service providers to accept incoming optical connections or connect the router to the backbone network through optical connections. The router's SONET implementation supports termination, statistic gathering, and alarm surveillance at the section, line, and path layers of a SONET interface.

**Figure 7: SONET Interfaces**

The following sample command sequence configures POS for an OC3 interface. See *JUNOS Link Layer Configuration Guide*, for details.

```
host1(config)#interface pos 0/1
host1(config-if)#encapsulation ppp
host1(config-if)#clock source internal module
host1(config-if)#loopback line
```

```

host1(config-if)#pos framing sdh
host1(config-if)#mtu 1600
host1(config-if)#mru 1600
host1(config-if)#pos scramble-atm

```

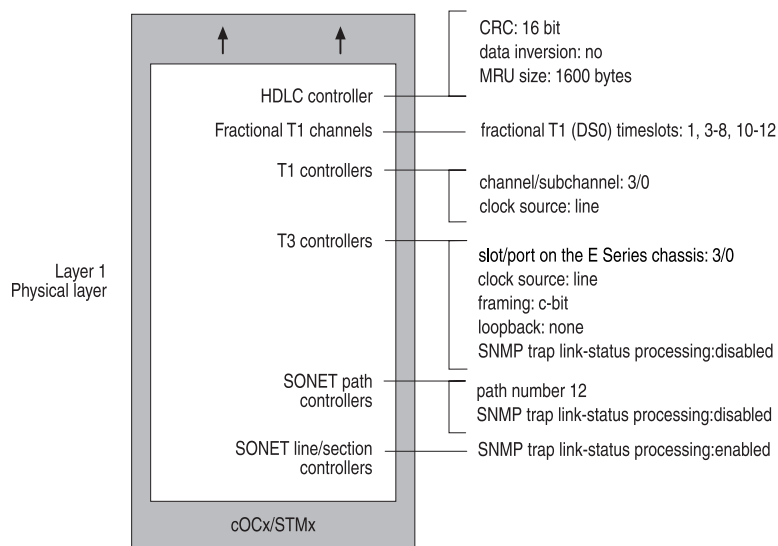
## Configuring Channelized OCx/STMx Line Interfaces

The cOCx/STMx modules are generally used for circuit aggregation on the router. These line modules support the following controllers over OC3/STM1 or OC12/STM4, depending on the I/O module used with the line module:

- Fractional T1/E1 over SONET/SDH virtual tributaries or T3
- Unframed E1
- Unchannelized DS3

Figure 8 on page 15 shows the configuration parameters for a sample T1 over DS3 interface configuration.

**Figure 8: Parameters for T1 over DS3 Interface Configuration**



The following sample command sequence configures T1 over DS3 on a channelized SONET interface as described in Figure 8 on page 15. See *JUNOS Physical Layer Configuration Guide*, for details.

```

host1(config)#controller sonet 3/0
host1(config-controller)#path 12 oc1 4/1
host1(config-controller)#path 12 ds3 1 channelized
host1(config-controller)#path 12 ds3 1 t1 4
host1(config-controller)#path 12 ds3 1 t1 4/2 timeslots 1, 3-8, 10-12
host1(config)#interface serial 3/0:12/1/4/2

```

## Configuring Ethernet Interfaces

Ethernet interfaces support IP, PPPoE, multinetting (multiple IP addresses), and VLANs (subinterfaces). Ethernet modules use the Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) to obtain MAC addresses for outgoing Ethernet frames and support quality of service (QoS) classification. See *JUNOS Physical Layer Configuration Guide*, for a description of limitations of individual modules.

Use the Fast Ethernet, Gigabit Ethernet, and 10-Gigabit Ethernet commands described in *JUNOS Physical Layer Configuration Guide* to:

- Configure with IP only, with PPPoE only, with both IP and PPPoE, and with or without VLANs.
- Specify the line speed and duplex mode.
- Specify the MTU.

The following sample command sequence configures an IP interface on a VLAN on an Ethernet interface:

```
host1(config)#interface fastEthernet 2/0
host1(config-if)#encapsulation vlan
host1(config-if)#interface fastEthernet 2/0.1
host1(config-if)#vlan id 201
host1(config-if)#ip address 192.168.129.5 255.255.255.0
```

The following sample command sequence adds an IP interface over PPPoE to the same VLAN:

```
host1(config)#interface fastEthernet 2/0.1.2
host1(config-if)#encapsulation pppoe
host1(config-if)#interface fastEthernet 2/0.1.2.1
host1(config-if)#encapsulation ppp
host1(config-if)#ip address 192.2.2.1 255.255.255.0
```

## Configuring IPSec-Service Interfaces

IPSec Service modules support interfaces associated with secure IP tunnels. You configure and delete these interfaces statically; however, the router assigns tunnels to the interfaces dynamically. This mechanism means that you must manage the interfaces for tunnels manually; however, the router will add and remove tunnels when required.

For information about configuring secure IP interfaces, see *JUNOS IP Services Configuration Guide*. For information about managing IPSec service interfaces, see *JUNOS Physical Layer Configuration Guide*.

## Configuring Tunnel Service Interfaces

You can configure both dynamic tunnels associated with L2TP and static IP tunnels on your E Series router; however, you must first install a Service Module (SM).

Dynamic tunnels, which are not associated with a particular interface, are described in *JUNOS Broadband Access Configuration Guide*. Static tunnels, in which the tunnel is assigned to a particular interface and specified in slot/port format, are described in *JUNOS IP Services Configuration Guide*.

For information about managing these types of tunnels on the router, see *JUNOS Physical Layer Configuration Guide*.

## Configuring Data Link-Layer Interfaces

You can configure the following data link-layer interfaces:

- IP/Frame Relay or multilink Frame Relay
- IP/ATM
- IP/PPP or multilink PPP
- IP/Cisco HDLC
- IP/Ethernet

### Configuring IP/Frame Relay

The router supports IP over Frame Relay PVCs on the CT3 12-F0 and OCx/STMx POS modules. The interface presented to the incoming traffic is an IP/Frame Relay router. In addition, IP/PPP/Frame Relay is supported on the T3 and E3 modules. With this interface, the service provider can:

- Receive traffic from subscribers that have CPE equipment, such as routers with Frame Relay interfaces
- Take in traffic from other network devices that use Frame Relay, such as DSLAMs and Frame Relay switches
- Use Frame Relay as an uplink technology on an unchannelized T3 or E3 link

Figure 9 on page 17 shows the structure of the Frame Relay interface. Each Frame Relay major interface sits on top of an HDLC interface. The Frame Relay implementation is divided into two levels: a major interface and one or more subinterfaces. This division allows a single physical interface to support multiple logical interfaces. Multiple IP interfaces can also be assigned to each Frame Relay major interface through the subinterfaces.

**Figure 9: Frame Relay Interface Design**

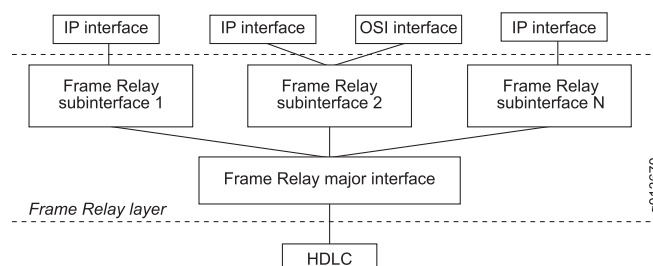
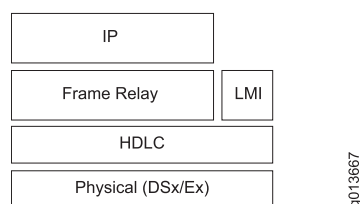


Figure 10 on page 18 shows the structure of the Frame Relay protocols with the physical layer as the foundation. For Frame Relay, the physical layer can be channelized E1, E3, channelized T1, T3, or a fractional service, as supported by the different line module ports. The HDLC layer is on top of the physical layer and can support flexible assignment of physical resources.

For example, an HDLC channel can support one DS0, a fractional T1, or an entire T1. The major Frame Relay interface sits on top of the HDLC resource, and the subinterfaces sit on top of the major interface. The Frame Relay subinterfaces connect to the IP interface layer.

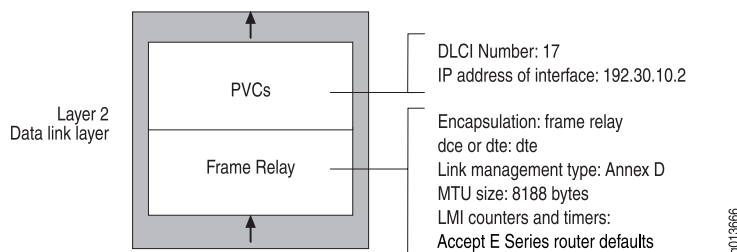
**Figure 10: Structure of Frame Relay Protocols**



The router supports Frame Relay LMI (local management interface) to provide the operator with configuration and status information relating to the Frame Relay VCs in operation. LMI specifies a polling mechanism to receive incremental and full-status updates from the network. The router can represent either side of the User-to-Network Interface (UNI) and supports unidirectional LMI. Bidirectional support for the Network-to-Network Interface (NNI) is also supported.

Figure 11 on page 18 shows sample configuration parameters for Frame Relay on a serial interface.

**Figure 11: Serial Interface Configuration Parameters for a Frame Relay Connection**



The following sample command sequence configures a serial interface for Frame Relay. See *JUNOS Link Layer Configuration Guide*, for information.

```

host1(config)#interface serial 0/1:1/5
host1(config-if)#encapsulation frame-relay ietf
host1(config-if)#frame-relay intf-type dte
host1(config-if)#frame-relay lmi-type ansi
host1(config-if)#interface serial 0/1:1/5.1
host1(config-subif)#frame-relay interface-dlci 17 ietf
host1(config-subif)#ip address 192.32.10.2 255.255.255.0
  
```



## Configuring IP/ATM

The router supports IP over ATM PVCs on ATM line modules. This support allows service providers to receive traffic from subscribers who have CPE equipment, such as routers with ATM interfaces, to take in traffic from other network devices that use ATM, such as DSLAMs, and to connect to service providers with ATM backbone structures.

Figure 12 on page 19 shows an IP/ATM access connection.

**Figure 12: E Series Router IP/ATM Access Connection**

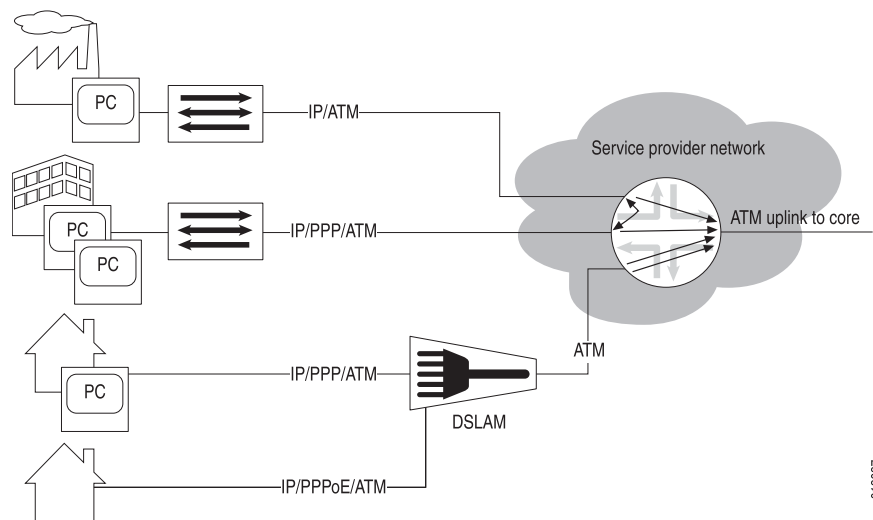


Figure 13 on page 19 shows the structure of the ATM interface. For ATM, this can be SONET, DS3, or E3 as supported by the different line modules. The major ATM interface sits on top of the SONET/DS3/E3 resource, and the subinterfaces sit on top of the major interface. The ATM subinterfaces connect to the IP interface layer.

**Figure 13: Structure of the ATM Interface Design**

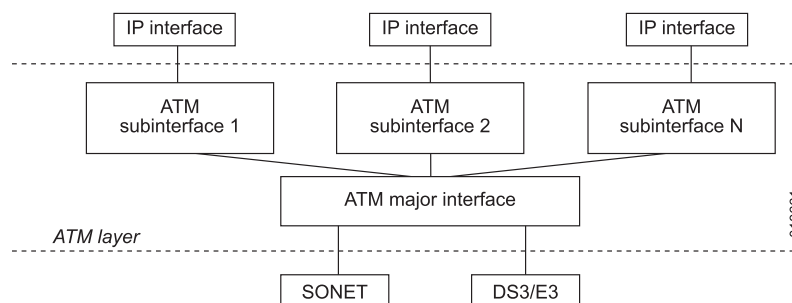


Figure 14 on page 20 shows the structure of the ATM protocols. The physical layer (SONET and/or DSx/Ex) is the foundation and provider of layer 1 framing service. The ATM layer is on top and provides cell, circuit, and OAM services. The AAL5 layer

provides a frame-oriented interface to the ATM layer. The integrated local management interface (ILMI) provides local management across the UNI.

**Figure 14: Structure of ATM Protocol**

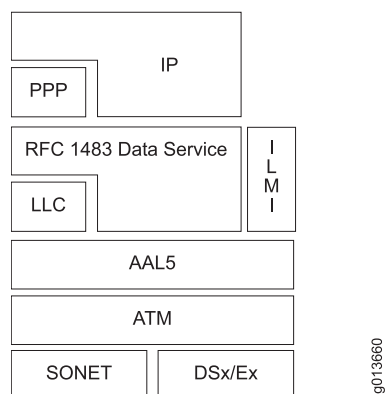
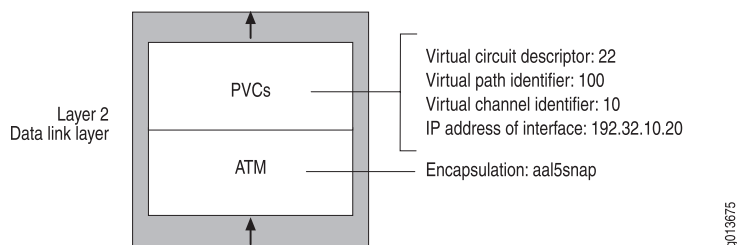


Figure 15 on page 20 shows sample configuration parameters for a typical ATM interface configuration.

**Figure 15: ATM Interface Configuration Parameters**



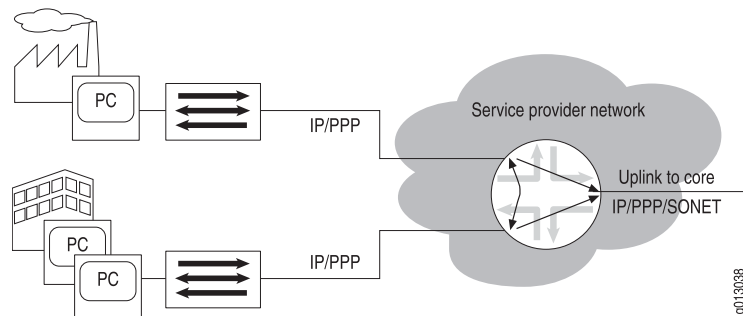
The following sample command sequence configures an ATM interface on port 0 of the line module in slot 1. See *JUNOS Link Layer Configuration Guide*, for information about how to configure an ATM interface.

```
host1(config)#interface atm 0/1
host1(config-if)#interface atm 0/1.22
host1(config-if)#atm pvc 22 100 10 aal5snap
host1(config-subif)#ip address 192.32.10.20 255.255.255.0
```

## Configuring IP/PPP

The router supports IP/PPP on the channelized T3, E1, and T3/E3 interfaces and IP/PPP/SONET on the OC3/STM1 and OC12/STM4 interfaces. This support allows service providers to accept traffic from subscribers who have CPE equipment, such as routers with PPP interfaces, and to transmit traffic in PPP format to other network devices.

Figure 16 on page 21 shows that the router supports the incoming IP/PPP traffic from the CPE. This traffic can then be routed to the uplink(s) attached to the router or to other CPEs that are attached to the router.

**Figure 16: IP/PPP Connections from the CPE on an E Series Router**

As shown in Figure 17 on page 21, the PPP protocol can exist directly on top of the HDLC layer or on top of a layer 2 Frame Relay or ATM interface. In either case, IP rides on top of PPP, providing support for IP/PPP/ATM, IP/PPP/HDLC, and IP/PPP/Frame Relay. Both SONET and DSx/Ex interfaces are supported at the physical layer.

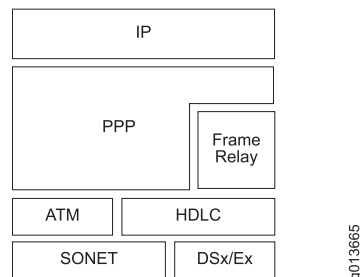
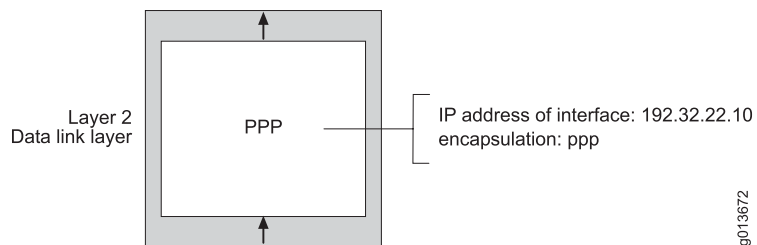
**Figure 17: Structure of PPP**

Figure 18 on page 21 shows sample configuration parameters for PPP on a serial interface.

**Figure 18: PPP Interface Configuration Parameters**

The following sample command sequence configures PPP on a serial interface. See *JUNOS Link Layer Configuration Guide*, for details.

```
host1(config)#interface serial 3/0:2/5
host1(config-if)#encapsulation ppp
host1(config-if)#ip address 192.32.22.10 255.255.255.0
```

## Configuring IP/HDLC

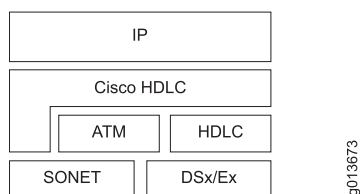
The E Series router supports IP over Cisco HDLC on many types of serial interfaces. Cisco HDLC monitors line status on a serial interface by exchanging keepalive request messages with peer network devices. It also allows routers to discover IP addresses of neighbors by exchanging Serial Link Address Resolution Protocol (SLARP) address request and address response messages with peer network devices.

The E Series router Cisco HDLC is compatible with the Cisco Systems Cisco-HDLC protocol, the default protocol for all Cisco serial interfaces.

The router supports the following framing features:

- HDLC for data-link framing
- 18,000-byte information field size

**Figure 19: Structure of Cisco HDLC Protocol**



As shown in Figure 19 on page 22, the Cisco HDLC protocol can exist directly on top of the HDLC layer or ATM or SONET interface. Both SONET and DSx/Ex interfaces are supported at the physical layer.

The following example configures HDLC on a serial interface. See *JUNOS Link Layer Configuration Guide*, for details.

```

host1(config)#interface serial 3/1:2/1
host1(config-if)#encapsulation hdlc
host1(config-if)#ip address 192.32.10.2 255.255.255.0
  
```

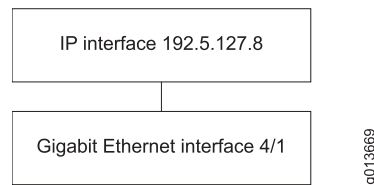
## Configuring IP/Ethernet

The E Series router supports IP/Ethernet. When you select an Ethernet interface, you can assign an IP address to it, as the following example shows:

```

host1(config)#interface fastethernet 4/1
host1(config-if)#ip address 192.5.127.8 255.255.255.0
  
```

Figure 20 on page 23 shows an IP/Ethernet interface stack.

**Figure 20: Example of IP over Ethernet Stacking Configuration Steps**

## Configuring IP Tunnels, Shared IP Interfaces, and Subscriber Interfaces

The E Series router supports IP tunnels, shared IP interfaces, and subscriber interfaces.

### Configuring IP Tunnels

IP tunnels provide a way of transporting datagrams between routers separated by networks that do not support all the protocols that those routers support. To configure an IP tunnel, you must first configure a tunnel-service interface. (See “Configuring Tunnel Service Interfaces” on page 16.)

When you have configured a tunnel-service interface, treat it in the same way as any IP interface on the router. For example, you can configure static IP routes or enable routing protocols on the tunnel interface. The IP configurations that you apply to the tunnels control how traffic travels through the network.

### Configuring Shared Interfaces and Subscriber Interfaces

A shared IP interface is one of a group of IP interfaces that use the same layer 2 interface. Shared IP interfaces are unidirectional—they can transmit but not receive traffic. A subscriber interface is an extension of a shared IP interface. Subscriber interfaces are bidirectional—they can both receive and transmit traffic.

You can create multiple shared IP interfaces over the same layer 2 logical interface—for example, atm 5/3.101—enabling more than one IP interface to share the same logical resources. This capability is useful, for example, when data received in one VRF needs to be forwarded out an interface in another VRF, such as for BGP/MPLS VPNs (see *JUNOS BGP and MPLS Configuration Guide*, for more information). You can configure one or more shared IP interfaces. Data sent over shared interfaces uses the same layer 2 interface. You can configure shared interfaces as you would other IP interfaces. Each shared interface has its own statistics.

The E Series router supports subscriber interfaces on a particular type of layer 2 interface, Ethernet. In the absence of VLANs, Ethernet does not have a demultiplexing layer. A subscriber interface adds a demultiplexing layer for an Ethernet interface that is configured without VLANs. Using subscriber interfaces, the router can demultiplex or separate the traffic associated with different subscribers. You can use subscriber interfaces to separate traffic for cable modem subscribers with different levels of service and to separate traffic for VPNs.

For information about configuring shared interfaces and subscriber interfaces, see *JUNOS IP, IPv6, and IGP Configuration Guide*.

## Configuring Routing Protocols

---

After you have set up the interfaces on which IP traffic flows, you can configure the following routing protocols:

- IP multicast protocols—IP multicasting allows a device to send packets to a group of hosts, rather than to a list of individual hosts. Routers use multicast routing algorithms to determine the best route and transmit datagrams throughout the network. See *JUNOS Multicast Routing Configuration Guide*, for information about how to configure IP multicast.
- Open Shortest Path First (OSPF)—This interior gateway protocol (IGP) advertises the states of network links within an autonomous system. An autonomous system is a set of routers having a single routing policy running under a single technical administration. See *JUNOS IP, IPv6, and IGP Configuration Guide*, for information about how to configure OSPF.
- Integrated Intermediate System-to-Intermediate System (integrated IS-IS)—The integrated IS-IS protocol provides routing for IP networks and is an extension of the original IS-IS protocol, which provides routing for pure Open Systems Interconnection (OSI) environments. This link-state protocol builds a complete and consistent picture of a network's topology by sharing link-state information across network devices in a routing domain. A routing domain is a collection of contiguous networks that provide full connectivity to all end systems located within them. See *JUNOS IP, IPv6, and IGP Configuration Guide*, for information about how to configure IS-IS.
- Border Gateway Protocol (BGP)—BGP, an external gateway protocol (EGP), provides loop-free interdomain routing between autonomous systems. See *JUNOS BGP and MPLS Configuration Guide*, for information about how to configure BGP.
- Routing Information Protocol (RIP)—RIP is an IGP created for use in small, homogeneous networks. RIP uses distance-vector routing to route information through IP networks. See *JUNOS IP, IPv6, and IGP Configuration Guide*, for information about how to configure RIP.
- Multiprotocol Label Switching (MPLS)—MPLS is a hybrid protocol that integrates network layer routing with label switching to provide a layer 3 network with traffic management capability. Traffic engineering enables more effective use of network resources while maintaining high bandwidth and stability. MPLS enables service providers to offer their customers the best service available given the provider's resources. There are two fundamental aspects to MPLS:
  - Label distribution—The set of actions MPLS performs to establish and maintain a label-switched path (LSP), also known as an MPLS tunnel.
  - Data mapping—The process of getting data packets onto an established LSP.

See *JUNOS BGP and MPLS Configuration Guide*, for information about configuring MPLS.

In addition, if you want to make configuration adjustments to IP, see *JUNOS IP, IPv6, and IGP Configuration Guide*, for details.

## Configuring VRRP

---

The Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol (VRRP) can prevent loss of network connectivity to end hosts if the static default IP gateway fails. By implementing VRRP, you can designate a number of routers as “ backup” routers in case the default “ master” router fails. You can configure VRRP on IP/Ethernet interfaces.

For information about configuring VRRP, see *JUNOS IP Services Configuration Guide*.

## Configuring Routing Policy

---

The router supports a number of features that allow the service provider to control the exchange of routing information between virtual routers in the router, between routers in the network, and between protocols within a router:

- Access lists—Provide filters that can be applied to route maps or distribution lists. They allow policies to be created, such as a policy to prevent forwarding of specified routes between the BGP-4 and IS-IS routing tables.
- Route maps—Modify the characteristics of a route (generally to set its metric or to specify additional attributes) as it is transmitted or accepted by a router. Route maps can use access lists to identify the set of routes to modify.
- Distribution lists—Control the routing information that is accepted or transmitted to peer routers. Distribution lists always use access lists to identify routes for distribution. For example, distribution lists could use access lists to specify routes to advertise.
- Redistribute routes—Allow routes to be shared between routing protocols and routing domains. For example, a subset of BGP-4 routes could be leaked into the IS-IS routing tables.

See *JUNOS IP Services Configuration Guide*, for details.

## Configuring QoS

---

QoS is a suite of features that configure queuing and scheduling on the forwarding path of your E Series router. QoS provides a level of predictability and control beyond the best-effort service that is the E Series router’s default data delivery service. Packets not assigned to a specific traffic class are carried in the best-effort traffic class. Best-effort service provides packet transmission with no guarantee of results.

The major QoS features that the E Series router provides are:

- Multiple traffic classes
- Configurable scheduling
- Configurable buffer management

For information about configuring QoS, see *JUNOS Quality of Service Configuration Guide*.

## Configuring Policy Management

---

Policy management allows network service providers to implement packet forwarding and routing specifically tailored to their customer's requirements. Using policy management, customers can implement policies that selectively cause packets to take different paths. Policy management provides several types of services:

- Policy routing—Predefines packet flow to a destination port or IP address
- QoS classification and marking—Marks packets of a packet flow.
- Packet forwarding—Allows forwarding of a packet flow.
- Packet filtering—Drops packets of a packet flow.
- Packet logging—Logs packets of a packet flow.
- Rate limiting—Enforces line rates below the physical line rate of the port and sets limits on packet flows.
- RADIUS policy support—Allows you to attach a preconfigured policy to an interface through RADIUS.

See *JUNOS Policy Management Configuration Guide*, for details about configuring policy management.

## Configuring Remote Access

---

The E Series router supports the following remote access functionality:

- Broadband Remote Access Server (B-RAS)—This application runs on the router and is responsible for:
  - Aggregating the output from DSLAMs
  - Providing user PPP sessions and PPP session termination
  - Enforcing QoS policies
  - Routing traffic into an ISP's backbone network

See *JUNOS Broadband Access Configuration Guide*.

- Layer 2 Tunneling Protocol (L2TP)—A method of encapsulating layer 2 packets, such as PPP, for transmission across a network. In an L2TP relationship, an L2TP access concentrator (LAC) forms a client-server relationship with a destination, known as an L2TP network server (LNS), on a remote network.

You can configure the router to act as an LAC in PPP pass-through mode. The router creates tunnels dynamically by using AAA authentication parameters and transmits L2TP packets to the LNS through IP/UDP. See *JUNOS Broadband Access Configuration Guide*.

- Non-PPP equal access—A method of allowing remote access in which the router provides IP addresses to subscribers' computers through Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP). This method is particularly convenient for



broadband (cable and DSL) environments or environments that use bridged Ethernet over ATM, because network operators can support one central system rather than an individual PPPoE client on each subscriber's computer. See *JUNOS Broadband Access Configuration Guide*.



## Chapter 2

# Command-Line Interface

This chapter provides information about the E Series router command-line interface (CLI).

This chapter contains the following sections:

- Overview on page 29
- Platform Considerations on page 48
- Accessing the CLI on page 48
- CLI Command Privileges on page 52
- Using Help on page 64
- Using Command-Line Editing on page 67
- Accessing Command Modes on page 70

### Overview

---

The CLI is the interface to the software that you use whenever you access the router—whether from the console or through a remote network connection. The CLI, which automatically starts after the router finishes booting, provides commands that you use to perform various tasks, including configuring the JUNOS software and monitoring and troubleshooting the software, network connectivity, and the router hardware.

Managing your router using the CLI gives you access to thousands of commands. The router's CLI uses an industry *de facto* standard look and feel, which might be familiar to you. If you are new to this CLI, it is helpful to read this entire chapter, where you can learn about CLI shortcuts and other helpful information.

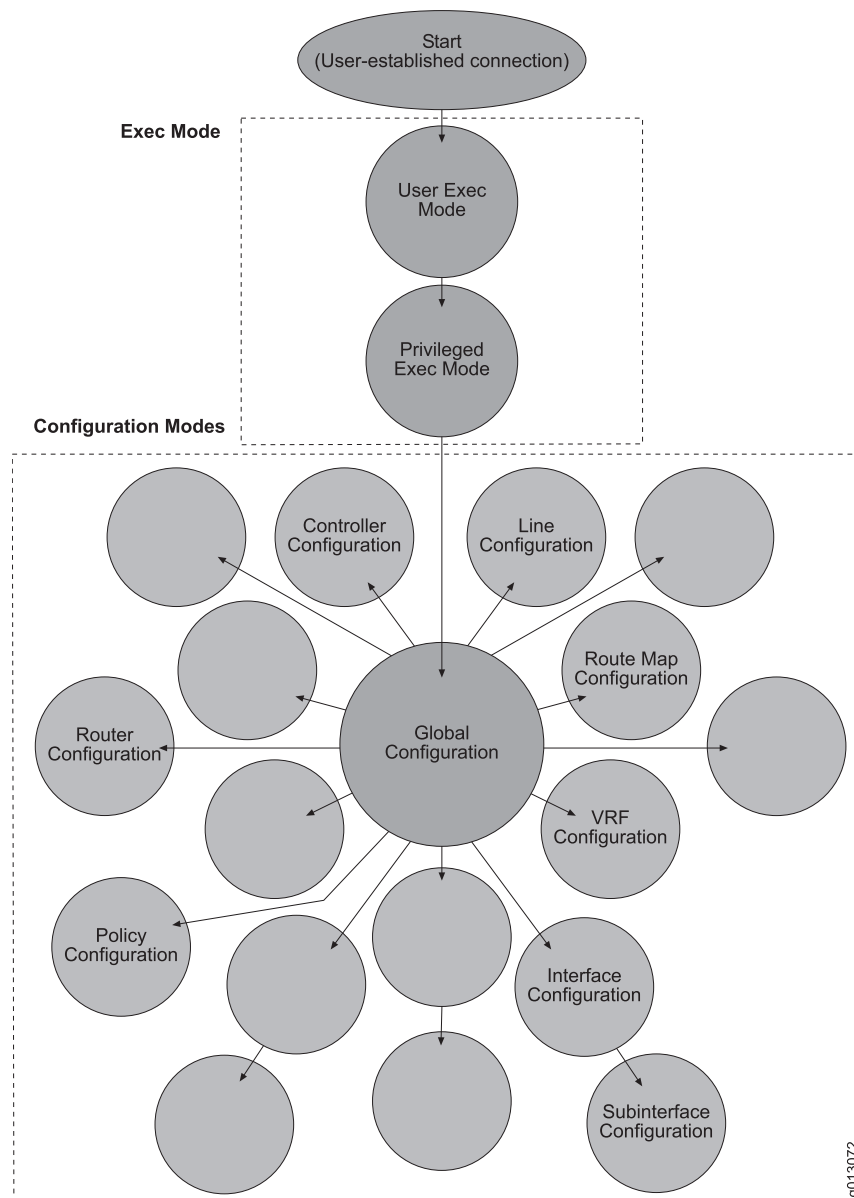
### Command Modes

Command modes set a context for the CLI. Each command in the CLI is available from one or more command modes. From some command modes you can only view router information; from others you can perform configuration tasks. For example, you can access User Exec mode to display information and then access Global Configuration mode to set parameters or enable a particular feature. By recognizing the command-line prompt, you can identify where you are in the CLI at any given point. When you can easily identify where you are, it is easy to get to where you want to be.

Figure 21 on page 30 illustrates the command mode architecture. Only some of the many configuration modes are shown.

Command modes are discussed in greater detail in the section “Accessing Command Modes” on page 70 . See the *JUNOS Command Reference Guide* to find related command modes for any command.

**Figure 21: Command Mode Architecture**



## Command-Line Prompts

Within the CLI, the command-line prompt identifies both the *hostname* and the *command mode*. The hostname is the name of your router; the command mode indicates your location within the CLI system.

For example:

RX-01-01-01(config-router)#

## Keywords and Parameters

CLI commands are made up of two primary elements: *keywords* and *parameters*.

### Keywords

Every command requires at least one keyword; however, a command can contain other optional keywords. The keyword(s) must be typed into the CLI accurately for it to be recognized. These are examples of keywords:

<b>reload</b>
<b>run</b>
<b>router</b>
<b>map-class</b>
<b>map-list</b>
<b>clear ip isis redistribution</b>
<b>show vlan subinterface</b>
<b>qos-port-type-profile</b>
<b>no rtr reset</b>
<b>radius calling-station-delimiter</b>

You can abbreviate keywords; however, you must enter enough initial characters to unambiguously identify the command. For example, if the keyword you want to specify is **map-class** and you enter only **map-**, an error appears. The error indicates that one or more possible keywords begin with **map-**, thus making your entry ambiguous.

## Parameters

Parameters are often required elements of a command; however, for some commands, parameters are not required. A parameter is most often a value that you specify after the keyword. There are different types of parameters, such as strings, integers, or IP addresses.

The CLI indicates the type of parameter that you must enter. When you see a range of numbers or uppercase letters, it indicates that you must specify a value. For example:

CLI Parameter Placeholder or Range	Sample Parameter User Input
ROUTER[:VRF]	charlie:1234
INTERFACE	3/2:20/15
WORD	windtunnel
<0-4294967295>	5600
A.B.C.D	192.56.32.2

## Keywords and Parameters Together

By combining keywords and parameters in the correct sequence, you can begin using the CLI to configure and monitor your router. For example, you could specify the command **hostname** to change the name of your router by entering a keyword and a parameter. You need to type only the portion of the keyword that makes it unambiguous, such as **hostn**. Here, the value of the parameter, which is the name you assign to the host, is a string of up to 64 characters.

```

      command
      /   \
command-line prompt  keyword  parameter
  _____|_____|_____
host1(config)#hostn washington
  
```

When you enter this command, the new hostname appears in the prompt.

```

_____
washington(config)#
new command-line prompt
  
```

Another example is a command that requires you to enter a number from within a given range. The command **ip http port** requires that a value be entered for the *portNumber* parameter. The value of this parameter is a number in the range of 0-65535. For example, you could enter:

```
juniper(config)#ip http port 56789
```



**NOTE:** You can find detailed information about command syntax, with parameter values defined, in the *JUNOS Command Reference Guide*.

## Using CLI Commands

This section introduces some useful shortcuts and command-related highlights. These include:

- Abbreviated Commands on page 33
- The ? Key on page 33
- Backspace or Delete on page 34
- Enter on page 34
- Tab on page 34
- Arrow Keys on page 34
- The no Version on page 35
- run and do Commands on page 35
- show Commands on page 37
- Redirection of show Command Output on page 40
- Regular Expressions on page 41
- The - More- - Prompt on page 43
- Responding to Prompts on page 46

### Abbreviated Commands

Remember, you can abbreviate keywords to save time if you enter at least enough leading characters to uniquely identify the desired keyword. For example:

```
host1(config-if)#ip re
```

This abbreviation is for the command **ip redirects**. The string **ip re** is enough information for the CLI to identify the command you are using. See the section “Using Help” on page 64 for additional information.

### The ? Key

Use the ? key at any time to see all the choices you can enter next. For example:

```
host1(config)#router ?
bgpConfigure the Border-Gateway Protocol (BGP)
isisConfigure ISO IS-IS
ospfConfigure the Open Shortest Path First protocol (OSPF)
ripConfigure the Routing Information Protocol
host1(config)#router
```

When you enter the ? character, all available choices are displayed. The router again displays the command you typed. You then have to type in only the choice you want and press Enter.

A <cr> in the list of choices means that you can press Enter to execute the command. For example:

```
host1(config-if)#isis metric 40 level-2 ?
<cr>
```

```
host1(config-if)#isis metric 40 level-2
```



**NOTE:** If the list of options extends beyond one screen, the last line on your screen displays the --More-- prompt. If you want to use the ? character as part of a string, such as a hostname or a regular expression, you must enter the following key sequence: Ctrl + v + ?. Otherwise, the CLI considers the ? to be a request for assistance in completing the command.

---

## Backspace or Delete

Use either key to delete the character immediately preceding the cursor.

## Enter

Always use this key to execute the command you entered.

## Tab

Use this key to complete the current keyword. For example, if you entered a portion of a lengthy command, such as

```
host1(config)#class
```

and press Tab, the full name of the command appears:

```
host1(config)#classifier-list
```

## Arrow Keys

Some terminals have arrow (or cursor) keys on their keyboards. These arrow keys are very useful; however, to use them you must have an ANSI/VT100 emulating terminal.

The Up Arrow and Down Arrow keys display command history. The Up Arrow key displays the previous command; you can also use Ctrl + p. The Down Arrow key displays the next command; you can also use Ctrl + n.

The Left Arrow and Right Arrow keys allow the user to move the cursor back and forth in the command line.



## The no Version

With very few exceptions, every system configuration command has a **no** version, which you can use to negate a command (or a portion of it as specified by an optional keyword) or to restore its default setting. When you use a command *without* the keyword **no**, you can reenable a disabled feature or override a default setting.

You have the option of using the **default** keyword whenever the **no** keyword is also a choice; simply enter the keyword **default** instead of **no**.

In most cases, when you execute the **default** version of a command, it produces the exact results as the **no** version. There are some commands for which the **default** version yields a different result from the **no** version.

Commands for which the **default** behavior differs from the **no** behavior are clearly identified in the JUNOS Command Reference Guide. Unless otherwise specified, therefore, the **default** command is identical to the **no** command and is neither documented nor discussed.

The syntax for each **no** command is described in the *JUNOS Command Reference Guide*. The few system configuration commands that do not have a **no** version are indicated in the individual command description.

Because **show** commands are for the purpose of monitoring your configurations, they do not have **no** versions. Most User Exec and Privileged Exec mode commands do not have **no** versions.

The CLI can act on **no** versions of commands when you have entered sufficient information to distinguish the command syntactically; the CLI ignores all subsequent input on that line.

To be compatible with some non-Juniper Networks implementations, the **no** versions of commands will accept the same options as the affirmative version of the commands. The CLI ignores the optional input if it has no effect on the command behavior. If using the option changes the behavior of the **no** version, the individual command entry in this guide describes the difference in behavior.

## run and do Commands

You can run Exec mode commands while in any configuration mode by preceding the command with the keyword **run** or **do**. For example:

```
host1(config)#run show users
```



**NOTE:** The **run** and **do** commands are interchangeable.

---

By using the **run** or **do** command in this way, you can obtain **show** command information without leaving configuration mode.

The only commands that cannot be preceded by **run** or **do** are the **configure** command and those commands that are already available in all modes, such as **sleep** or **exit**.

**Example 1** host1(config)#run show config | begin interface

```
interface null 0
!
interface fastEthernet 0/0
  ip address 10.6.129.41 255.255.128.0
!
interface gigabitEthernet 5/0
!
interface atm 6/0
interface atm 6/0.1 point-to-point
  encapsulation pppoe
!
interface atm 6/0.1.7
!
interface atm 6/0.1.5
!
interface atm 6/0.1.2
!
interface atm 6/0.1.9
!
interface atm 6/0.1.11
!
interface atm 6/0.1.15
!
interface atm 6/0.1.18
!
ip route 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0 10.6.128.1
ip route 10.10.121.72 255.255.255.255 10.6.128.1
!
!
route-map adsf permit 10
router dvmrp
!
router igmp
!
snmp-server community private view everything rw
snmp-server contact Mary
snmp-server
!
! End of generated configuration script.
host 1(config)#int fa 0/0
```

**Example 2** host1(config-if)#do dir

Please wait...

file	size	unshared size	date (UTC)	in use
-----	-----	-----	-----	---
reboot.hty	31040	31040	10/30/2001 15:31:10	
system.log	20481	20481	10/26/2001 17:24:16	
soft_clear_in.mac	8578	8578	10/24/2001 14:39:02	
erx_3-3-1.rel	71082105	71082105	10/25/2001 13:02:50	!
erx_3-3-1.rel	70502991	70502991	10/24/2001 19:58:08	
autocfg.scr	355	355	09/28/2001 13:33:04	
Capacity = 224133120, Bytes Free = 44986177, Reserved = 36700160				

host1(config-if)#

## show Commands

You have access to a variety of **show** commands that display router and protocol information. You can filter the output of a **show** command by specifying | (the UNIX pipe symbol), one of the following keywords, and either a case-sensitive text string or a regular expression.

- **begin**—Displays output beginning with the first line that contains the text string or regular expression
- **include**—Displays output lines that contain the text string or regular expression and excludes lines that do not contain the text string or regular expression
- **exclude**—Displays output lines that do not contain the text string or regular expression and excludes lines that do contain the text string or regular expression

For a list of regular expressions, see “Regular Expressions” on page 41. You can press Ctrl + c to interrupt the **show** command output.



**NOTE:** The system does not recognize beginning spaces of the text string. For example, if you enter **include IP** as the text string on which to filter, the system ignores the space and displays lines that include words such as RIP.

---

**Example 1** In the following example, the output display starts with the first line that contains the string *inter*. The system omits all the preceding lines of the output from the display because none of them contains the string *inter*.

```
host1#show config include-defaults | begin inter
Please wait...log verbosity low internalNetwork
log verbosity low ipEngine
log verbosity low ipProfileMgr
log verbosity low ipProfileMgrEngineering
no log engineering
log fields timestamp instance no-calling-task
!
timing select primary
timing source primary internal
timing source secondary internal
timing source tertiary internal
!
no disable-autosync
no disable-switch-on-error
no redundancy lockout 0
!
virtual-router default
ip domain-lookup
ip name-server 10.2.0.3
ip domain-name 789df
!
host f 10.10.133.11 ftp anonymous null
interface null 0
interface ip 0/0
  arp timeout 21600
!
interface ip 2/0
```

```

    arp timeout 21600
    !
interface ip s10
    arp timeout 21600
    !
interface atm 2/0
    no shutdown
    atm sonet stm-1
    loopback line
    atm uni-version 3.0
    atm oam loopback-location 0xFFFFFFFF
    atm vc-per-vp 32768
    atm vp-tunnel 1 10
    load-interval 300
    no atm snmp trap link-status
    no atm shutdown
    !
no atm aal5 snmp trap link-status
no atm aal5 shutdown
    !
interface atm 2/0.1 point-to-point
    no shutdown
    no atm atm1483 shutdown
    no atm atm1483 snmp trap link-status
    !
ip route 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0 10.13.5.1
ip debounce-time 0
ip source-route
    !
router ospf 5
    no ospf shutdown
    ip route-type both
    timers spf 3
    maximum-paths 4
    ospf auto-cost reference-bandwidth 100
    distance ospf intra-area 110
    distance ospf inter-area 112
    distance ospf external 114
    ! Area 0.0.0.0
    !
    ! Trap Source: <not configured>
    ! Note: SNMP server not running.
    !
host1#

```

**Example 2** In the following example, the output display consists only of lines that contain the string *ip*. The system omits all other lines of the output from the display because none of them contains the string *ip*.

```

host1#show config include-defaults | include ip
! Configuration script generated on WED JUN 06 2001 02:17:00 UTC
strip-domain disable
Please wait...log verbosity low ipEngine
log verbosity low ipEngineering
log verbosity low ipGeneral
log verbosity low ipInterface
log verbosity low ipNhopTrackerEngineering
log verbosity low ipNhopTrackerGeneral
log verbosity low ipProfileMgr
log verbosity low ipProfileMgrEngineering

```

```

!
bandwidth oversubscription
ip domain-lookup
ip name-server 10.2.0.3
ip domain-name 789df
interface ip 0/0
interface ip 2/0
interface ip s10
  ip address 10.13.5.61 255.255.255.0
  no ip proxy-arp
  no ip directed-broadcast
  ip redirects
ip route 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0 10.13.5.1
ip debounce-time 0
ip source-route
no ip ftp source-address
  type echo protocol ipIcmpEcho 10.5.0.200 source fastEthernet0/0
  type pathEcho protocol ipIcmpEcho 10.2.0.3
  type echo protocol ipIcmpEcho 10.5.0.11 source-ipaddr 10.13.5.61
!
controller t1 6/0
  framing esf
  lineCoding b8zs
  clock source line
  cablelength short 0
  no remote-loopback
!
log engineering
log verbosity low
no log severity
log verbosity low NameResolverLog
log verbosity low atm
log verbosity low atm1483
log verbosity low atmAal5
log verbosity low bgpConnections
log verbosity low bgpDampening
!
host1#

```

**Example 3** In the following example, the output display consists only of lines that do not contain the string `!`. The system omits all other lines of the output from the display because each line contains the string `!`.

```

host1#show config include-defaults | exclude !
boot config running-configuration
boot system 3-3-1.rel
no boot backup
no boot subsystem
no boot backup subsystem
boot revert-tolerance 3 1800
no boot force-backup
aaa domain-map jacksonville
  virtual-router miami
  strip-domain disable
aaa domain-map jak
  virtual-router default
  strip-domain disable
aaa domain-map northeast
  virtual-router default
  strip-domain disable

```

```

aaa delimiter realmName "/"
hostname host1
no aaa new-model
no service ctrl-x-reboot
no service password-encryption
no baseline show-delta-counts
clock timezone UTC 0 0
no exception dump
exception protocol ftp anonymous null
controller sonet 2/0
  sdh
  loopback network
  clock source line
  no shutdown
  path 0 overhead j1 msg hello
  path 0 overhead j1 exp-msg
ftp-server enable
no login
log engineering
log verbosity low
no log severity
log verbosity low NameResolverLog
log verbosity low aaaAtm1483Cfg
log verbosity low atm1483
log verbosity low atmAal5
log verbosity low bgpConnections
log verbosity low bgpDampening
log verbosity low bgpEng1
log verbosity low bgpEngineering
log verbosity low bgpEvents
log verbosity low bgpKeepAlives
no log engineering
log fields timestamp instance no-calling-task
timing select primary
timing source primary internal
timing source secondary internal
timing source tertiary internal
no atm aal5 snmp trap link-status
no atm aal5 shutdown
interface atm 2/0.1 point-to-point
  no shutdown
  no atm atm1483 shutdown
  no atm atm1483 snmp trap link-status
ip route 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0 10.13.5.1
ip debounce-time 0
ip source-route

```

## Redirection of show Command Output

You can redirect the output of **show** commands to network files or local files (in NVS memory) using the redirection operators described in Table 4 on page 40 .

**Table 4: Redirect Operators**

Redirect Operator	Use
>	Redirects output to the specified file, overwriting the file if it already exists, creating the file if it does not.

**Table 4: Redirect Operators** *(continued)*

Redirect Operator	Use
> >	Appends output to the end of the specified file, creating the file if it does not exist.
&>	Redirects output to the specified file, overwriting the file if it already exists, and displays the output on the screen. The redirection is synchronized with the screen display; for example, if a <code>--More--</code> prompt appears, the redirection halts until you take further action.
&> >	Appends output to the end of the specified file and displays the output to the screen. The redirection is synchronized with the screen display; for example, if a <code>--More--</code> prompt appears, the redirection halts until you take further action.

For example, you can redirect the output of the **show config** command to a script file and later run that script:

```
host1#show config > showconfig.scr
```

The following command *writes* the output to a text file, `version.txt`, on a remote router:

```
host1#show hardware > pc:/erxfiles/version.txt
```

The following command *appends* the output to `version.txt`:

```
host1#show hardware >> version.txt
```

Only one instance of a file can be open for file redirection. An error message is generated if you attempt to redirect output to a file that is already open. You cannot redirect output to a file that includes a local path in the filename.

You can use redirection with output filtering. The general syntax is:

```
show options [ { > | >> | &> | &>> } filename ]
[ [ { begin | include | exclude } filterstring ]
```

The filtering is performed before redirection. In the following example, the `cnfgfltr.txt` file will contain the output of **show config include-defaults** beginning with the first occurrence of the string *inter*.

```
host1#show config include-defaults &> cnfgfltr.txt | begin inter
```

## Regular Expressions

A regular expression uses special characters—often referred to as metacharacters—to define a pattern that is compared with an input string. You can use regular expressions to filter the output of **show** commands and to define AS-path access lists and community lists to more easily filter routes.

For examples of using regular expressions with AS-path access lists and community lists, see *JUNOS IP Services Configuration Guide*.

### Metacharacters

Table 5 on page 42 describes the metacharacters supported for regular expression pattern-matching.

**Table 5: Supported Regular Expression Metacharacters**

Metacharacter	Description
^	Matches the beginning of the input string.  Alternatively, when used as the first character within brackets— <code>[^ ]</code> —matches any number except the ones specified within the brackets.
\$	Matches the end of the input string.
.	Matches any single character, including white space.
*	Matches 0 or more sequences of the immediately previous character or pattern.
+	Matches 1 or more sequences of the immediately previous character or pattern.
?	Matches 0 or 1 sequence of the immediately previous character or pattern.
()	Specifies patterns for multiple use when followed by one of the multiplier metacharacters: asterisk *, plus sign +, or question mark ?
[ ]	Matches any enclosed character; specifies a range of single characters.
– (hyphen)	Used within brackets to specify a range of AS or community numbers.
_ (underscore)	Matches a ^, a \$, a comma, a space, a {, or a }. Placed on either side of a string to specify a literal and disallow substring matching. Numerals enclosed by underscores can be preceded or followed by any of the characters listed above.
	Matches characters on either side of the metacharacter; logical OR.

### Using Metacharacters as Literal Tokens

You can remove the special meaning of a metacharacter by preceding it with a backslash (\). Such a construction denotes that the metacharacter is *not* treated as a metacharacter for that regular expression. It is simply a character or token with no special meaning, just as a numeral has no special meaning. The backslash applies only to the character immediately following it in the regular expression.

On the E Series router, you are likely to do this only for the parentheses characters, ( or ). BGP indicates a segment of an AS path that is of type AS-confed-set or AS-confed-seq by enclosing that segment within parentheses.



## The --More-- Prompt

When command output continues beyond the available space on your monitor screen, the system displays the `--More--` prompt. If you press Enter, the system displays the next line of output. If you press the Spacebar, the system displays the next screen of output.

You can begin filtering the output from the `--More--` prompt, or change a filter that is already in effect, by entering one of the following characters and a text string:

<code>+</code> (plus)	Displays all output lines that contain the text string
<code>-</code> (minus)	Displays all output lines that do not contain the text string
<code>/</code> (forward slash)	Displays all output lines starting at the first line that contains the text string

Initial spaces are not ignored when you filter at the `--More--` prompt.

**Example 1** In the following example, the output is displayed until the screen is filled and the `--More--` prompt appears. By entering the filter `/interf`, the user forces the system to filter out all output lines until the first occurrence of the string *interf*. The system displays that line and all following lines of the output.

```
host1#show config include-defaults
! Configuration script being generated on FRI AUG 04 2006 12:48:48 UTC
! Juniper Edge Routing Switch ERX-700
! Version: 7.3.0 beta-1.6 [BuildId 5672] (July 11, 2006 11:58)
! Copyright (c) 1999-2006 Juniper Networks, Inc. All rights reserved.
!
boot config running-configuration
boot system erx_7-3-0.rel
no boot backup
no boot subsystem
no boot backup subsystem
boot revert-tolerance 3 1800
no boot force-backup
!
aaa domain-map jacksonville
    virtual-router miami
    strip-domain disable
!
aaa domain-map jak
    virtual-router default
    strip-domain disable
!
aaa domain-map northeast
    virtual-router default

/interf
(Suppressing output until 'interf' is found, press ^C to end...)
interface null 0
interface ip 0/0
```

```

    arp timeout 21600
    !
    interface ip 2/0
    arp timeout 21600
    !
    interface ip s10
    arp timeout 21600
    !
    interface atm 2/0
    no shutdown
    atm sonet stm-1
    loopback line
    atm uni-version 3.0
    atm oam loopback-location 0xFFFFFFFF
    --More--

```

**Example 2** In the following example, the output is displayed until the screen is filled and the --More-- prompt appears. By entering the filter **+ip**, the user forces the system to filter out all lines from the remainder of the output that do not contain the string *ip*. The system displays only lines that contain the string *ip*.

```

host1#show config include-defaults
! Configuration script being generated on FRI AUG 04 2006 12:48:48 UTC
! Juniper Edge Routing Switch ERX-700
! Version: 7.3.0 beta-1.6 [BuildId 5672] (July 11, 2006 11:58)
! Copyright (c) 1999-2006 Juniper Networks, Inc. All rights reserved.
!
boot config running-configuration
boot system erx_7-3-0.rel
boot config running-configuration
boot system 3-3.1.rel
no boot backup
no boot subsystem
no boot backup subsystem
boot revert-tolerance 3 1800
no boot force-backup
!
aaa domain-map jacksonville
    virtual-router miami
    strip-domain disable
!
aaa domain-map jak
    virtual-router default
    strip-domain disable
!
aaa domain-map northeast
    virtual-router default
--More--
+ip
(Displaying only lines that include 'ip', press ^C to end...)
    strip-domain disable
log verbosity low ipEngine
log verbosity low ipEngineering
log verbosity low ipGeneral
log verbosity low ipInterface
log verbosity low ipNhopTrackerEngineering
log verbosity low ipNhopTrackerGeneral
log verbosity low ipProfileMgr
log verbosity low ipProfileMgrEngineering
log verbosity low ipRoutePolicy

```

```

log verbosity low ipRoute
log verbosity low ipTraffic
log verbosity low ipTunnel
log verbosity low ripEngineering
log verbosity low ripGeneral
log verbosity low ripRoute
log verbosity low ripRtTable
bandwidth oversubscription
ip domain-lookup
ip name-server 10.2.0.3
ip domain-name 789df
ip explicit-path name xyz disable
interface ip 0/0
interface ip 2/0
--More--

```

**Example 3** In the following example, the output is displayed until the screen is filled and the --More-- prompt appears. By entering the filter -!, the user forces the system to filter out all comments from the remainder of the output; that is, output lines that contain the string !. The system displays only lines that do not contain the string !.

```

host1#show config include-defaults
! Configuration script being generated on FRI AUG 04 2006 12:48:48 UTC
! Juniper Edge Routing Switch ERX-700
! Version: 7.3.0 beta-1.6 [BuildId 5672] (July 11, 2006 11:58)
! Copyright (c) 1999-2006 Juniper Networks, Inc. All rights reserved.
!
boot config running-configuration
boot system erx_7-3-0.rel
boot config running-configuration
boot system 3-3.1.rel
no boot backup
no boot subsystem
no boot backup subsystem
boot revert-tolerance 3 1800
no boot force-backup
!
aaa domain-map jacksonville
    virtual-router miami
    strip-domain disable
!
aaa domain-map jak
    virtual-router default
    strip-domain disable
!
aaa domain-map northeast
    virtual-router default
--More--
-!
(Displaying only lines that exclude '!'. press ^C to end...)
    strip-domain disable
aaa delimiter realmName "/"
hostname host1
no aaa new-model
no service ctrl-x-reboot
no service password-encryption
no baseline show-delta-counts
clock timezone UTC 0 0
no exception dump
exception protocol ftp anonymous null

```

```

line vty 4
  exec-timeout 0 0
  exec-banner
  motd-banner
  timeout login response 30
  data-character-bits 8
  no login
log engineering
log verbosity low
no log severity
log verbosity low NameResolverLog
log verbosity low aaaAtm1483Cfg
log verbosity low aaaEngineGeneral
log verbosity low aaaServerGeneral
log verbosity low aaaUserAccess
log verbosity low addressServerGeneral
log verbosity low atm
log verbosity low atm1483
log verbosity low atmAal5
log verbosity low bgpConnections
log verbosity low bgpDampening
log verbosity low bgpEng1
--More--

```

## Responding to Prompts

For some actions, the system prompts you for a response. The acceptable default responses are the following:

- You can press **y** or Enter to agree with the prompt and continue.
- You can press any other key to disagree with the prompt and cancel the action.

You can use the **confirmations explicit** command to require a more explicit response to CLI prompts.

### **confirmations explicit**

- Use to require an explicit response to a CLI prompt, as follows:
  - To agree with the prompt and continue, you must type **y** and press Enter, type **ye** and press Enter, or type **yes** and press Enter.
  - To disagree with the prompt and cancel the action, you must type **n** and press Enter or type **no** and press Enter.
  - Pressing Enter alone, or entering any other characters, is not an acceptable response, and the CLI will repeat the prompt.
  - Acceptable responses to a prompt are not case sensitive.
  - Use the **no** version to restore the default state, where pressing **y** or Enter alone responds in the affirmative, and any other entry is accepted as a negative response.



**NOTE:** The system's CLI supports a powerful command-line editor, enabling you to easily correct, edit, and recall previously entered commands. For more information, see "Using Command-Line Editing" on page 67.

For a description of the commands that you use to get around the CLI, see "Managing the System" on page 245.

- See confirmations explicit.

## CLI Status Indicators

The E Series software includes two types of indicators to inform you of the status of your CLI operation.

- The **dot service** indicator is used when your operation does not finish within 2 seconds. The service displays the Please wait message and a dot every 5 seconds until the operation is completed. The dot service is used for all CLI operations, except those that use the more descriptive progress indicator.
- The **progress indicator** is an animated representation of how much progress has been made on a CLI operation that does not finish within the expected completion time. This type of status indicator is supported for the file system synchronization application and the file copy application.

The progress indicator displays a series of dots that represents the time required to complete the operation. The dots are followed by the actual percentage of the total that has been completed and by an oscillating asterisk that indicates ongoing activity.

As the application progresses, the dots are replaced with asterisks, starting at the left, to represent how much of the operation is finished. The actual percentage is also adjusted accordingly. When the operation is complete, all dots are replaced by asterisks, and the message DONE replaces the numerical percentage.

The number of dots that appears and the percentage of completion represented by each dot or asterisk are based on the terminal width. For example, if the terminal is set to 80 characters, each of the 50 dots indicates 2 percent of the total time (2 percent x 50 characters = 100 percent). See "Managing the System" on page 245 for information about setting the terminal width.

The following examples show progress indicator output for a 50-character-wide display.

```

****..... (10%) *

*****..... (90%) *

***** (DONE)

```

## Levels of Access

The CLI has two levels of access: *user* and *privileged*.

### User Level

User level allows you only to view a router's status. This level restricts you to User Exec mode.

### Privileged Level

Privileged level allows you to view a router configuration, change a configuration, and run debugging commands. You need a password to access this level. This level gives you full CLI privileges. Passwords are covered in more detail in "Managing the System" on page 245.

## Initialization Sequence

Each line module in a router is initialized independently. As a result, the CLI on the SRP module can become available before the line modules have completed initialization. Commands relating to a line module can fail if the module has not completed initialization. The **show version** command can be used to display line module status. Do not enter commands for a line module until its state is online.

## Platform Considerations

---

The CLI is supported on all E Series routers.

For information about the modules supported on E Series routers:

- See the *ERX Module Guide* for modules supported on ERX7xx models, ERX14xx models, and the ERX310 Broadband Services Router.
- See the *E120 and E320 Module Guide* for modules supported on the E120 and E320 Broadband Services Routers.

## Accessing the CLI

---

This section describes logging in to and exiting from the router.

### Logging In

The system supports a local console session and up to 30 virtual terminal (vty) sessions simultaneously. A virtual terminal session can be a Telnet session, Secure Shell Server (SSH) protocol session, or File Transfer Protocol (FTP) server session.



**NOTE:** The vty session factory default is 5. Use the **line** command to configure up to a maximum of 30 vtys. The configured vtys are shared among all types of connections; for example, if you configure 7 vtys, then no more than a total of 7 SSH plus FTP plus Telnet sessions can simultaneously exist on the router.

To access the system through a local console, attach a terminal to the system console port. To access the system through Telnet, Telnet client software must be installed on your host system. To access the system through SSH, SSH version 2.0 client software must be installed on your host system. To access the system through FTP, FTP client software must be installed on your host system.

You can configure Telnet to validate login requests. See “Vty Line Authentication and Authorization” on page 423 in “Managing the System” on page 245 , for more information. Once Telnet is running on your host system, type in the E Series router name or its IP address and press Enter. To use a name, your network must have a name server.

For example, for Microsoft Windows NT enter:

```
telnet 192.168.1.13
```

or

```
telnet westford2
```

You are connected to your E Series router when the following prompt appears:

```
Logging in.  
host1>
```



**NOTE:** At this point, you have access only to User Exec commands.

To connect through SSH, refer to your SSH client documentation.

## Privileged-Level Access

You access the CLI Privileged Exec commands using the **enable** command.

### Defining CLI Levels of Privilege

The CLI has the ability to map any command to one of 16 levels of command privilege (0 to 15). When you access the Privileged Exec mode, you have access to those commands that map to your access level or below. In other words, if you access the Privileged Exec mode at access level 10 (the default), you have access to all commands with an access level setting of 10 or lower.

In general, command privileges fall within one of the following levels:

- 0—Allows you to execute the **help**, **enable**, **disable**, and **exit** commands
- 1—Allows you to execute commands in User Exec mode plus commands at level 0
- 5—Allows you to execute Privileged Exec **show** commands plus the commands at levels 1 and 0
- 10—Allows you to execute all commands except support commands, which may be provided by Juniper Networks Customer Service, or the **privilege** command to assign privileges to commands
- 15—Allows you to execute support commands and assign privileges to commands

For information about how to set individual command levels, see “CLI Command Privileges” on page 52.

### Accessing the Privileged Exec Level

You can access the Privileged Exec commands using one of 16 levels of command privilege. If you do not enter a privilege level and you are not accessing the router through a RADIUS authentication account, the default CLI access level is 10.

To access the default Privileged Exec mode:

1. At the prompt, type **enable** and press Enter.

```
host1>enable
Password:
```




---

**NOTE:** You will be prompted for a password only if your system has been configured with one. Refer to the **enable secret** and **enable password** Global Configuration commands described in “Managing the System” on page 245.

---

2. Type your password and press Enter.

```
Password:*****<Enter>
host1#
```

You can tell that you have access to Privileged Exec mode when the command prompt changes from a > character to a # character.

#### **enable**

- Use to move from User Exec to Privileged Exec mode.
- Privileged Exec mode allows you to access all other user interface modes. From here you can configure, monitor, and manage all aspects of the router.
- You can access the Privileged Exec commands using one of 16 levels of command privilege. If you do not enter a privilege level and you are not accessing the router through a RADIUS authentication account, the default CLI access level is 10.



- Set a password for this mode by using either the **enable password** or the **enable secret** command in Global Configuration mode. This protects the system from any unauthorized use.
- Once a password is set, anyone trying to use Privileged Exec mode will be asked to provide the password.
- Example 1 (accessing Privileged Exec mode at the default level [10])

```
host1>enable
password:*****
host1#
```

- Example 2 (accessing Privileged Exec mode at the highest level [15]; a password is not set for this example)

```
host1>enable 15
host1#
```

- There is no **no** version.
- See **enable**.

### ***Moving from Privileged Exec to User Exec Mode***

To move from the Privileged Exec mode to the User Exec mode, enter the **disable** command. For example:

```
host1#disable
host1>
```



**NOTE:** Using the **exit** command from either the Privileged Exec or User Exec mode logs out of the CLI.

---

To move to a lower Privileged Exec mode, follow the **disable** command with an access level value. For example:

```
host1#show privilege
Privilege level is 10
host1#disable 5
host1#show privilege
Privilege level is 5
```

#### ***disable***

- Use to exit Privileged Exec mode and return to User Exec mode.
  - Use to shift to a lower Privilege Exec mode level without returning to User Exec mode. Specifying a privilege level after the **disable** command changes the Privileged Exec mode to the lower level that you specify; you do not return to User Exec mode.
  - Example 1

```
host1#disable
host1>
```

- Example 2

```
host1#show privilege
Privilege level is 10
host1#disable 5
host1#show privilege
Privilege level is 5
```

- There is no **no** version.

- See **disable**.

## Logging Out

You can log out of the CLI from either the User Exec and Privileged Exec modes by entering the **exit** command. For example:

```
host1>exit
logging out.
```

or

```
host1#exit
logging out.
```

## CLI Command Privileges

---

You can change the privilege level of most commands by using the **privilege** command that is available in Global Configuration mode. To use this command, you must enable your CLI session to privilege level 15.

### CLI Privilege Groups

You can change privilege group accessibility. Privilege groups are no longer required to be hierarchical. You can modify the privilege group membership and define which privilege group is a member of another privilege group.

A privilege group can contain commands and other privilege groups as members. A group always has access to commands in its own privilege group and in privilege group 0. By default, all groups have one member and a specific privilege group has access to all commands in all privilege groups with a lower number than the specific group.

A privilege group is reachable from another privilege group when it is a member of that privilege group, or a member of a group that is a member of that privilege group until a search of all member groups is exhausted. This can go through several recursions as long as there are no circular dependencies.

Privilege group 0 is not a member of any group and you cannot assign member groups to it, but it is reachable from every privilege group.

Numbers in the range 0—15 identify the 16 privilege groups. Each of the 16 groups can have a name or an alias. The default internal name is the privilege group number. By default, the groups are hierarchical and each group, with the exception of groups 1 and 0, contains one group. When a group contains a group, the contained group is a member of the original group: privilege group *p* has one member, privilege group *p-1*. For example, privilege group 15 has member 14, privilege group 14 has member 13, and privilege group 2 has member 1.

For hierarchical groups, groups 0 through 14 are reachable from privilege group 15, groups 0 through 13 are reachable from privilege group 14, groups 0 to 4 are reachable from 5, and so forth. Hierarchical groups can also contain other privilege groups. For example, group A is reachable from group B if group A is a member of group B or is a member of a group that is a member of group B. If group X has member Y and Y has member Z then Z is reachable from X.

You cannot configure circular dependencies. For example, you cannot configure a circular dependency where group X has member Y, Y has member Z, Z has member P, and X can reach Z and P. Group X cannot have member Z or P because Z and P are reachable through Y.

### Examples Using Privilege Group Membership

In each of the following examples, privilege groups are at the default setting, where privilege group 0 is reachable from every privilege group, 15 contains 14, 14 contains 13, 13 contains 12, and so forth. The commands in each example change the privilege group settings from the default.

**Example 1**     `host1(config)#privilege-group membership clear 11`  
                   `host1(config)#privilege-group membership 15 add 10`

In Example 1:

- Privilege group 11 does not contain any privilege groups
- Privilege group 15 contains group 10. Therefore, privilege group 10 and all groups contained or reachable from privilege group 10 are now reachable from privilege group 15.
- Because privilege group 15 already contains privilege group 14, all groups with the exception of privilege group 11 are reachable from privilege group 15.
- A command that is in privilege group 11 can only be executed by a user at privilege 11. A user at any other privilege does not have access to privilege group 11 commands.

**Example 2**     `host1(config)#privilege-group membership 14 remove 13`

In Example 2:

- Privilege group 14 does not contain any privilege groups.
- Privilege group 15 contains two groups: 14 and 10. The privilege groups 0, 1, 2, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, and 14 are reachable from privilege group 15.

- A user at privilege 15 does not have access to commands in privilege groups 11, 12, or 13.

**Example 3**     `host1(config)#privilege-group membership clear 13`  
                   `host1(config)#privilege-group membership 13 add 10`

In Example 3:

- Commands are executed in the following sequence: 15 contains 14, 14 contains 13, 13 contains 12, and so forth.
- Privilege group 13 contains one privilege group: privilege group 10.
- The privilege groups 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, and 10 are reachable from privilege group 13.

**Example 4**     `host1(config)#privilege-group membership 12 remove 11`  
                   `host1(config)#privilege-group membership 12 add 5`  
                   `host1(config)#privilege-group membership 11 add 5`

In Example 4:

- Commands are executed in the following sequence: 15 contains 14, 14 contains 13, 13 contains 12, and so forth.
- Privilege group 12 contains one privilege group: the privilege group 5.
- Privilege group 11 contains one privilege group: the privilege group 5.
- Privilege groups 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5 are reachable from privilege groups 12 and 11.

**Example 5**     `host1(config)#privilege-group membership clear 9 8 7`  
                   `host1(config)#privilege-group membership 7 add 1`  
                   `host1(config)#privilege-group membership 8 add 14`

In Example 5:

- Privilege group 9 contains no privilege groups.
- Privilege group 8 contains group 14.
- Privilege group 7 contains group 1.

**Example 6**     `host1(config)#privilege-group alias 13 LI`  
                   `host1(config)#privilege-group alias 10 dailyAdmin`  
                   `host1(config)#privilege-group alias 7 weekendAdmin`  
                   `host1(config)#privilege-group alias 6 dailyTroll`  
                   `host1(config)#privilege-group alias 5 basicUser`  
                   `host1(config)#privilege-group alias 0 minUser`  
                   `host1(config)#privilege-group alias 15 superUser`

In Example 6, a number or name can specify the seven privilege groups 0, 5, 6, 7, 10, 13, and 15.

**Example 7**     `host1(config)#privilege-group membership clear dailyAdmin`  
                   `host1(config)#privilege-group membership dailyAdmin add dailyTroll`

In Example 7, privilege group 10 alias dailyAdmin has one member: privilege group 6 alias dailyTroll.

**Example 8** host1(config)#no privilege-group membership 9

Example 8 reverts one privilege group membership to its default setting. Prior to the execution of this command, the following group memberships were in place:

group	member	reachable
8	12	12,0
9	--	0
10	9	9,0
11	10	10,9,0
12	11	11,10,9,0

Reverting privilege group 9 to its default gives it one member: privilege group 8. This creates the circular dependency: 8 contains 12, 12 contains 11, 11 contains 10, 10 contains 9, and 9 contains 8.

**Example 9** host1(config)#no privilege-group membership

In Example 9, privilege group membership reverts to the default setting. All privilege groups revert to hierarchical settings: 15 contains 14, 14 contains 13, 13 contains 12, and so forth. Privilege group 0 is reachable from every privilege group.

**Example 10** host1(config)#no privilege-group membership 7

In this example, one privilege group membership reverts to its default setting. Privilege group 7 contains group 6.

**Example 11** host1(config)#no privilege-group alias

In Example 11, all alias settings are removed.

**Example 12** host1#show privilege group

privilege group	privilege group alias	directly reachable groups	all reachable groups *
0	minUser	--	--
1	--	--	0
2	--	1	0 1
3	--	2	0 1 2
4	--	3	0 1 2 3
5	basicUser	4	0 1 2 3 4
6	dailyTroll	5	0 1 2 3 4 5
7	weekendAdmin	1	0 1
8	--	14	0 14

```

9          --          --          0
10         dailyAdmin    6          0 1 2 3 4 5 6
11         --          5          0 1 2 3 4 5
12         --          5          0 1 2 3 4 5
13         LI           10         0 1 2 3 4 5 6 10
14         --          --          0
15         superUser     10 14     0 1 2 3 4 5 6 10 14 15
*Privilege Group can reach itself

```

Example 12 shows privilege group overrides in effect.

**Example 13** `host1#show privilege group 15 superUser`  
The following groups are directly reachable:  
14  
dailyAdmin  
The following groups are reachable:  
1  
14  
2  
3  
4  
basicUser  
dailyAdmin  
dailyTroll  
minUser

In Example 13, groups 14 and dailyAdmin are directly reachable and groups 1, 14, 2, 3, 4, basicUser, dailyAdmin, dailyTroll, and minUser are reachable.

### **privilege**

- Use to change the privilege level of any command within a specified mode.
- Example 1

```
host1(config)#privilege exec level 12 terminal width
```

- Example 2

```
host1(config)#privilege exec all level 5 terminal
```

- Use the **all** keyword to change the privilege level of groups of commands. For more information, see “Setting Privilege Levels for Multiple Commands” on page 59.
- Use the **reset** version to restore the default privilege level for the command; issuing this command results in the **show configuration** command not showing the default privilege setting for the command.
- Use the **no** version to restore the default privilege level for the command; issuing this command results in the **show configuration** command showing the default privilege level of the command in its output.



**NOTE:** You must access the CLI at privilege level 15 to view or use this command.

- `privilege`

#### ***privilege-group alias***

- Use to give the privilege group name alias to the privilege group.
- Example

`host1(config-if)#privilege-group alias`

- Use the **no** version to remove the privilege group alias.
- See `privilege-group alias`.

#### ***privilege-group membership***

- Use to add the member group to or remove the member group from the privilege group.
- Example

`host1(config-if)#privilege-group membership`

- Use the **no** version to restore one or all privilege groups to the default settings. When all privilege groups are reset to the default settings, the privilege group membership is hierarchical.
- See `privilege-group membership`.

#### ***privilege-group membership clear***

- Use to clear a privilege group or all members from a privilege group.
- Example

`host1(config-if)#privilege-group membership clear`

- There is no **no** version.
- See `privilege-group membership clear`.

### ***CLI Command Exceptions***

Changing command privilege levels can be a powerful security tool. However, changing the command privilege for some commands could render the CLI unusable and require you to reboot the router. To eliminate this possibility, the CLI does not allow you to remap the following commands:

- `disable`
- `enable`
- `exit`

- **help**
- **privilege**
- **support**

## CLI Keyword Mapping

You cannot change the privilege level of keywords that are separated from the command string by a parameter in the command sequence. In other words, once the privilege algorithm reaches a parameter, the privilege algorithm that maps the commands to the desired privilege level stops and allows any keyword options that may follow in the command sequence. The algorithm then waits for a carriage return before looking at the next command sequence.

For example, you can change the command privilege level for the **telnet** command. However, because the **telnet** command is immediately followed by a variable (that is, a hostname or IP address) and not a keyword, you cannot change the privilege level for any keywords that follow the command.

```
host1#telnet ?
HOSTNAME or A.B.C.D The ip address of the remote system
```

```
host1#telnet router2 ?
<0 - 65535> The port on which to send the request
bgp Border Gateway Protocol (179)
chargen Character generator (19)
cmd Remote commands (rcmd, 514)
```

## Setting Privileges for Ambiguous Commands

The **privilege** command allows you to set command privilege levels for parts of commands that the CLI would normally consider ambiguous. In other words, you can set privilege levels by specifying letters that represent only the beginning part of a command or group of commands (even the first letter of a command or group of commands).

The following example sets the privilege level to 12 for any Exec mode (user or privileged) command that start with the letter “t” :

```
host1(config)#privilege exec level 12 t
```

The list of affected commands includes **telnet**, **terminal**, **test**, and **traceroute**.

The following example changes all the above commands, with the exception of the **traceroute** command, to level 15:

```
host1(config)#privilege exec level 15 te
```

The following example changes all commands that start with the letters “te” (for example, **telnet**, **terminal**, and **test**) and any second keyword that starts with the letter “i” and follows a command that starts with the letters “te” (for example, the keyword “ip” in the command **test ip**) to level 1:



```
host1(config)#privilege exec level 1 te i
```

When you enter an ambiguous command and an exact match of the command is found, partial matches are ignored and are not modified.

For example, the **traffic-class** and **traffic-class-group** commands are available in Global Configuration mode. If you issue the **privilege configure level 5 traffic-class** command, an exact match is made to **traffic-class**, and **traffic-class-group** is not modified.

If you want to set the privilege level for both **traffic-class** and **traffic-class-group** and you do not want the exact match to be made to **traffic-class**, issue a partial command such as **traffic-c**. The privilege level of all commands that begin with **traffic-c** is modified.

### Setting Privilege Levels for no or default Versions

The **privilege** command allows you to set command privilege levels for **no** and **default** versions of commands. However, setting the privilege level for either the **no** or **default** versions of a command does *not* set the privilege level of the affirmative version of the command. This means that you can have the **no** or **default** version of a command at a different privilege level than its affirmative version



**NOTE:** You can set the **no** or **default** command to a separate privilege level without specifying any other command to follow. This would force all commands that have a **no** or **default** version to function only for that privilege level and higher.

For example, if you issue the **privilege exec level 10 no** command, all **no** versions in the Privileged Exec mode are available to users at level 10 and higher.

---

### Setting Privilege Levels for Multiple Commands

The **all** keyword is a wildcard parameter that enables you to set privilege levels for multiple commands rather than setting them individually.

#### Setting Privilege Levels for All Commands in a Mode

You can set the privilege level for all commands within a specified mode. This setting includes all commands in modes that you can access from a specified mode.

If the command specified in the **privilege** command changes the configuration mode, all commands in the configuration will also be set to the specified privilege level. For more information about accessing modes, see “Accessing Command Modes” on page 70.

For example, issuing the **configure** command in Privileged Exec mode changes the configuration mode to Global Configuration. If you issue the **privilege exec all level**

**5 configure** command, all commands in Global Configuration mode become accessible to users who have CLI privileges at level 5 and higher. For more information about user privilege levels, see “Privileged-Level Access” on page 49.

### Setting Privilege Levels for a Group of Commands

You can set the privilege level for a group of commands by using the **beginning** keyword in a command.

For example, if you issue the **privilege configure all level 5 snmp** command, all commands in Global Configuration mode that begin with **snmp** become accessible to users who have CLI privileges at level 5 and higher.

### Using the Order of Precedence

The effectiveness of a privilege level that is set with the **all** keyword depends on its precedence level in the CLI. A privilege level is considered to be in effect only if a privilege level that is configured at a higher precedence level does not override it.

The CLI uses the following order of precedence:

1. Privilege level set for all commands within a mode, including modes that are accessed from another mode; for example, Global Configuration mode
2. Privilege level set for all commands that begin with the same keyword; for example, **snmp** commands
3. Privilege level set for individual commands; for example, **snmp-server community**



**NOTE:** This order of precedence does not apply to privilege levels that are set without the **all** keyword.

---

In the following example, the privilege level of the **snmp-server community** command is set to level 11, the privilege level for all commands that begin with **snmp** is set to level 10, and the privilege level for all commands in Global Configuration mode is set to level 5.

```
host1(config)#privilege configure level 11 snmp-server community
host1(config)#privilege configure all level 10 snmp
host1(config)#privilege exec all level 5 configure
```

The following **show configuration** output displays the privilege levels set above. The privilege levels for the **snmp-server community** command and the **snmp-server** group of commands are still present in the output. However, the privilege level of Global Configuration mode takes precedence, and the privilege levels of the other commands are rendered ineffective. Users can access all **snmp** commands at level 5 or higher.

```
host1#show config category management cli command-privileges
privilege configure level 11 snmp-server community
```

```
privilege configure all level 10 snmp-server
privilege exec all level 5 configure
```

### Superseding Privilege Levels with the all Keyword

Issuing the **all** keyword supersedes privilege levels that were previously set without the **all** keyword.

In the following example, the **snmp-server-community** command is set to level 7, and the **snmp** keyword is set to level 6. The privilege level of the **snmp** keyword does not override the **snmp-server community** setting, because both of these commands are set without the **all** keyword.

```
host1(config)#privilege configure level 7 snmp-server community
host1(config)#privilege configure level 6 snmp
```

All **snmp** commands are then changed to level 5 with the **all** keyword.

```
host1(config)#privilege configure all level 5 snmp
```

The **show configuration** output displays all **snmp** commands at level 5, superseding the existing level 6 setting. The **snmp-server community** command is still present in the show configuration output, but it is ineffective.

```
host1#show config category management cli command-privileges
privilege configure level 7 snmp-server community
privilege configure all level 5 snmp-server
```

### Removing the all Keyword

Using the **no** version or **reset** version removes the **all** keyword and restores default privilege levels.

If the privilege setting of the mode or command for which you are restoring default privilege levels takes precedence over any ineffective privilege settings, those settings will automatically take effect according to the order of precedence (see “Using the Order of Precedence” on page 60 ).

The difference between the **no** version and the **reset** version is that the **reset** version removes the configuration from the **show configuration** output. This is useful when you want to remove a configuration that has been overridden and rendered ineffective by a privilege level that takes precedence.

### Setting Default Line Privilege

The factory default privilege level for the console line and all vty lines is 1. However, you can use the **privilege level** command in Line Configuration mode to set the default login privilege for the console line or any number of vty lines.

To change the default privilege level:

1. Access line configuration mode on the router for the console.

```
host1(config)#line console 0
host1(config-line)#
```

or on one or more vty lines

```
host1(config)#line vty 0 12
host1(config-line)#
```



**NOTE:** The latter command configures vty lines 0 to 12.

---

2. Specify a starting privilege level for the line or lines.

```
host1(config-line)#privilege level 5
```

The default privilege level for the specified line (or lines) changes. The new values take effect immediately for any new users. If using the console line, you must exit out of the CLI and reestablish a connection before the default takes effect.

If you are validating through RADIUS or TACACS+ and the server specifies an enable level, that enable level takes precedence over the line privilege level.

### ***privilege level***

- Use to change the default privilege level of the console line or one or more vty lines.
- Example

```
host1(config-line)#privilege level 5
```

- Use the **no** or **default** version to restore the default privilege level for the command.



**NOTE:** You must access the CLI at privilege level 15 to view or use this command.

---

- See privilege level.

## ***Viewing CLI Privilege Information***

You can view CLI privilege information for yourself (the current user), all connected users on the router, or for any modified CLI commands.

### ***Viewing the Current User Privilege Level***

Use the **show privilege** command to view your current privilege level.

### ***show privilege***

- Use to view your current privilege level.
- Example

```
host1#show privilege
Privilege level is 10
```

- There is no **no** version.
- See show privilege.

### Viewing Privilege Levels for All Connected Users

Use the **show users detail** command to view the privilege levels for all users currently connected to the router. See “Monitoring the FTP Server” on page 306 for information about the **show users detail** command.

### Viewing Privilege Levels for Changed CLI Commands

Use the **show configuration** command to view the changed privilege levels for any modified CLI commands. See “Saving the Current Configuration” on page 271 for information about the **show configuration** command.



**NOTE:** The **show configuration** command output displays output specific to the session access level. For example, if the session is enabled at level 5, issuing the **show configuration** command displays only output for commands at level 5 and below.

---

#### **show privilege group**

- Use to view the privilege groups.
- Example

```
host1(config-if)#show privilege group superUser
The following groups are directly reachable:
14
dailyAdmin

The following groups are reachable:
1
14
2
3
4
basicUser
dailyAdmin
dailyTroll
minUser
```

- There is no **no** version.
- See show privilege group.

## Using Help

The system CLI provides a variety of useful context-sensitive help features. An important thing to remember about using the help features is that the use of a space or the lack of a space before the ? gives different results. Table 6 on page 64 describes the help system.

**Table 6: Help Commands**

Command	Description
?	Lists all keywords applicable to the current command mode
help	Displays a brief description of the help system (available in all command modes)
partial-keyword?	Lists the keywords that begin with a certain character string
partial-keyword < Tab >	Completes the partial keyword you entered, if you have provided an unambiguous abbreviation
command < Space > ?	Lists the set of all valid next available choices

Commands listed in the left column of Table 6 on page 64 are further described with examples in the following sections.

### ? (Question Mark Key)

You can use the question mark (?) key whenever you need additional information. When you enter ?, all available choices are displayed. The CLI then redisplayes the command you typed. The following examples show different ways you can use the ? key.

When you use ? on a line by itself or when it is preceded by one or more spaces, a list of all next available choices is displayed.

**Example 1** host1(config)#?

aaa	Configure authentication, authorization, and accounting characteristics
access-list	Configure an access list entry
arp	Configure a static ARP entry
bandwidth	Configure slot-group bandwidth control
banner	Define a banner line
baseline	Configure baseline operations
boot	Configure boot time behavior
bulkstats	Configure bulkstats parameters
classifier-list	Configure a classifier list entry
clns	Configure CLNS characteristics
clock	Set the system's clock
confirmations	Configure confirmation mode
controller	Configure controller parameters
crypto	Configure cryptographic parameters
default	Set a command to its default(s)

disable-autosync	Disable automatic synchronization of redundant system controller file system
disable-switch-on-error	Disable automatic switch to redundant system controller upon software/hardware error
do	Run an exec mode command (alias command run)
enable	Configure security related options
end	Exit Global Configuration mode
exception	Configure core dump
exclude-subsystem	Exclude copying a subsystem from the release
exit	Exit from the current command mode
ftp-server	Configure FTP Server characteristics
help	Describe the interactive help system
host	Add/modify an entry to the host table
hostname	Set the host (system) name
interface	Enter Interface Configuration mode
ip	Configure IP characteristics
l2tp	Configure L2TP parameters
license	Configure licenses
line	Enter Line Configuration mode
log	Configure logging settings
macro	Run a CLI macro
map-list	Create an NBMA static map
memory	Configure and administer memory operations
mpls	Configure MPLS global parameters
no	Negate a command or set its default(s)
ntp	Configure the Network Time Protocol
policy-list	Enter Policy Configuration mode
ppoe	Configure PPPoE
profile	Specify a profile
radius	Configure RADIUS server
rate-limit-profile	Enter rate limit profile configuration mode
redundancy	Perform a redundancy configuration
route-map	Configure a route map
router	Configure a routing protocol
rtr	Configure rtr parameters
run	Run an exec mode command (alias command do)
service	Configure system-level services
set	Configure
sleep	Make the Command Interface pause for a specified duration
slot	Configure and administer slot operation
snmp-server	Configure SNMP parameters
sscc	The SSC Client telnet
telnet	telnet daemon configuration
timing	Configure network timing
traffic-shape-profile	Enter traffic shape profile configuration mode
virtual-router	Specify a virtual router

**Example 2** host1(config)#ip ?  
address-pool

address-pool	Configure address pool for PPP Broadband RAS clients
as-path	Configure a path filter for AS-Paths in BGP
bgp-community	Format for BGP community
community-list	Configure an entry in a community list
debounce-time	Specify the minimum amount of time that an event needs to be in same state before being reported
dhcp-local	The DHCP Local Server protocol
dhcp-server	DHCP Server for Proxy Client
domain-lookup	Enable DNS lookup
domain-name	Specify local Domain name

dvmp	configure dvmp parameters
dynamic-interface-prefix	Specify name prefix for dynamic Ip shared interfaces
explicit-path	Configure an explicit path
extcommunity-list	The extended community list
ftp	Configure FTP characteristics
http	Configure http server
local	Local IP address assignment
multicast-routing	Enable IP multicast forwarding
name-server	Configure DNS server
pim	Configure PIM Protocol
prefix-list	Configure a prefix list entry
prefix-tree	Configure a prefix tree entry
route	Define a static IP route
router-id	Configure the router-id to be used
rpf-route	Define a static IP route for mcast RPF check
source-route	Configure source-routing capabilities
ssh	Configure SSH characteristics
ttl	Configure the default value to be used by IP for Time-To-Live
tunnel	Configure tunnel parameter
vpn-id	Configure the VPN ID associated with this router
vrf	Specify a VRF
host1(config)#ip	

**Example 3** host1(config)#ip community-list ?  
<1 - 99> The community list

host1(config)#ip community-list

When you want to see a list of commands that begin with a particular set of characters, type a question mark ( ? ) immediately after the last letter. Do not use a space between the partial keyword and the ? key. For example:

```
host1#sh?
show shutdown
host1#sh
```



**NOTE:** If you want to use the ? character as part of a string, such as a hostname or a regular expression, you must enter the following key sequence: Ctrl + v + ?. Otherwise, the CLI considers the ? to be a request for assistance in completing the command.

## help Command

Use the **help** command when you want to see a brief description of the context-sensitive help system.

```
host1>help
Use the help options as follows:
```

?, or command<Space>? - Lists the set of all valid next keywords or arguments  
partial-keyword? - Lists the keywords that begin with a certain character



```
string
partial-keyword<Tab> - Completes the partial keyword
host1>
```

### ***Partial-keyword <Tab>***

When you cannot recall a complete command name or keyword, type in the first few letters, press Tab, and the system completes your partial entry. You must type enough characters to provide a unique abbreviation. If you type a few letters, press Tab, and your terminal beeps, then you have not typed enough characters to be unambiguous.

```
host1(config)#int<Tab>
host1(config)#interface
```

## **Using Command-Line Editing**

This section provides information about the command-line editor.

### ***Basic Editing***

Here are a few basic command-line editing notes:

- **Case**—Keywords are not case sensitive; that is, they can be entered in uppercase, lowercase, or a mix of both. Filenames may be case sensitive. Local filenames are case sensitive; remote filenames are case sensitive if the host system treats filenames as case sensitive. Passwords are case sensitive.
- **Abbreviating keywords**—You may abbreviate keywords using as few characters as you want, as long as the characters provide a unique abbreviation.
- **Executing a command**—Always use the Enter key.

### ***Command-Line Editing Keys***

You can use several keys to edit the command line. Table 7 on page 67 defines the keys for editing the command line. Arrow keys function only on ANSI-compatible terminals, such as VT100s.

**Table 7: Command-Line Editing Keys**

Key(s)	Function
Delete or Backspace	Removes characters to left of cursor
Left Arrow	Moves cursor one character to left
Right Arrow	Moves cursor one character to right
Ctrl + a	Moves cursor to beginning of command line
Ctrl + b	Moves cursor back one character

**Table 7: Command-Line Editing Keys** *(continued)*

Key(s)	Function
Ctrl + d	Deletes character at cursor
Ctrl + e	Moves cursor to end of command line
Ctrl + f	Moves cursor forward one character
Ctrl + h	Deletes character to left of cursor
Ctrl + k	Deletes all characters from cursor to end of command line
Ctrl + l	Redisplays system prompt and command line
Ctrl + o	Toggles overwrite/insert mode
Ctrl + q	Resumes a Telnet or console session; use if the Telnet or console session appears frozen or unresponsive
Ctrl + s	Suspends a Telnet or console session
Ctrl + t	Transposes character to left of cursor with character located at cursor
Ctrl + u	Deletes entire command line
Ctrl + v	Allows the “?” character to be used as a character instead of as a request for help
Ctrl + w	Deletes the previous word
Ctrl + x	<p>In all modes, reboots the system. This feature is useful if a command is taking a prolonged time to complete and hangs the console. The command has no effect if you access the system through Telnet.</p> <p>Set the boot option flag by using the <code>service ctrl-x-reboot</code> command from Global Configuration mode.</p>
Ctrl + y	Recalls most recent entry from delete buffer; recalled characters overwrite or are inserted in current line depending on overwrite/insert toggle
Ctrl + z	In all modes except User Exec mode, executes any command typed immediately before the command sequence and then changes the mode to Privileged Exec mode. In User Exec mode, only executes any command typed immediately before the command sequence.
Esc + b	Moves cursor back one word
Esc + Backspace	Deletes previous word
Esc + d	Deletes current or next word
Esc + f	Moves cursor forward one word

## Command History Keys

The CLI maintains two separate command histories. The first command history maintains only Exec mode commands. The second history maintains all commands entered in any of the configuration modes. The appropriate history will automatically be restored as you transition between Global Configuration mode and Exec mode.

Table 8 on page 69 defines the keys related to command history. Arrow keys functions only on ANSI-compatible terminals, such as VT100s.

**Table 8: Command History Keys**

Key	Function
Up Arrow <i>or</i> Ctrl + p	Recalls commands in history buffer, starting with most recent command. Repeat key sequence to recall successively older commands.
Down Arrow <i>or</i> Ctrl + n	Returns to more recent commands in history buffer after recalling commands with Up Arrow or Ctrl + p. Repeat key sequence to recall successively more recent commands.
Ctrl + r	Begin a <i>reverse search</i> for a previously entered string in the history buffer by providing a character string when prompted. Enter Ctrl + r to continue searching. Ctrl + h or Del deletes the last character in the string and starts a search on the new string.

## Pagination Keys

If the system needs to display more text than you can fit on the screen, the output pauses and the --More-- prompt appears. Table 9 on page 69 defines the pagination keys that you can use when the --More-- prompt appears. For more information, see “The - -More- - Prompt” on page 43.

**Table 9: Pagination Keys**

Key	Function
Enter	Scrolls down one more line
Spacebar	Displays one more screen
+	Displays all output lines that contain the text string
-	Displays all output lines that do not contain the text string
/	Displays all output lines starting at the first line that contains the text string
Any other key	Aborts output and returns you to command prompt

## Accessing Command Modes

Table 10 on page 70 describes the command modes available in the CLI.

**Table 10: Command Mode Overview**

Mode Name	Use of Mode	Access to Mode	Exit from Mode
AAA Profile Configuration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Configure new AAA profiles.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>From Global Configuration mode, use <b>aaa-profile</b> command.</li> <li>Prompt:  host1(config-aaa-profile)#</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Use the <b>exit</b> command to return to Global Configuration mode.</li> <li>Press Ctrl + z to return to Exec mode.</li> </ul>
Address Family Configuration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Configure BGP or RIP address family parameters.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>From Global Configuration mode, use <b>router bgp</b> or <b>router rip</b> to enter Router Configuration mode. From Router Configuration, use the <b>address-family</b> command.</li> <li>Prompt:  host1(config-router-af)#</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Use the <b>exit</b> command twice to return to Global Configuration mode.</li> <li>Press Ctrl + z to return to Exec mode.</li> </ul>
ATM VC Class Configuration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Configure a class of attributes for an ATM data PVC.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>From Global Configuration mode, use the <b>vc-class atm</b> command, and specify the name of the VC class.</li> <li>Prompt:  host1(config-vc-class)#</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Use the <b>exit</b> command to return to Global Configuration mode.</li> <li>Press Ctrl + z to return to Exec mode.</li> </ul>
ATM VC Configuration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Configure individual attributes for an ATM data PVC.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>From Global Configuration mode, use the <b>interface</b> command to enter Subinterface Configuration mode. From Subinterface Configuration mode, use the <b>pvc</b> command.</li> <li>Prompt:  host1(config-subif-atm-vc)#</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Use the <b>exit</b> command twice to return to Global Configuration mode.</li> <li>Press Ctrl + z to return to Exec mode.</li> </ul>

**Table 10: Command Mode Overview** *(continued)*

Mode Name	Use of Mode	Access to Mode	Exit from Mode
Classifier Group Configuration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Configure classifier groups with policy rules used for policy lists.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ To create a classifier group, from Policy List Configuration mode use the <b>classifier-group</b> command and identify the CLACL and precedence.</li> <li>■ Prompt:</li> </ul> <pre>host1(config-policy-list-classifier-group)#</pre>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Use the <b>exit</b> command twice to return to Global Configuration mode.</li> <li>■ Press Ctrl + z to return to Exec mode.</li> </ul>
Color Mark Profile Configuration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Configure packet color after exit from rate-limit hierarchy.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ From Rate Limit Profile Configuration Mode, use the <b>color-mark-profile</b> command and identify the interface type (IP, IPv6, MPLS).</li> <li>■ Prompt:</li> </ul> <pre>host1(config-color-mark-profile)#</pre>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Use the <b>exit</b> command once to return to Global Configuration mode.</li> <li>■ Press Ctrl + z to return to Exec mode.</li> </ul>
Control Plane Configuration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Configure SRP module policing.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ From Global Configuration Mode, use the <b>control-plane</b> command.</li> <li>■ Prompt:</li> </ul> <pre>host1(config-control-plane)#</pre>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Use the <b>exit</b> command once to return to Global Configuration mode.</li> <li>■ Press Ctrl + z to return to Exec mode.</li> </ul>
Controller Configuration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Configure physical interfaces (for example, T3).</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ From Global Configuration mode, use the <b>controller</b> command.</li> <li>■ Prompt:</li> </ul> <pre>host1(config-controller)#</pre>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Use the <b>exit</b> command once to return to Global Configuration mode.</li> <li>■ Press Ctrl + z to return to Exec mode.</li> </ul>
DHCP Local Pool Configuration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Configure DHCP local pools.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ From Global Configuration mode, use the <b>ip dhcp-local pool</b> command.</li> <li>■ Prompt:</li> </ul> <pre>host1(config-dhcp-local)#</pre>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Use the <b>exit</b> command once to return to Global Configuration mode.</li> <li>■ Press Ctrl + z to return to Exec mode.</li> </ul>

**Table 10: Command Mode Overview** *(continued)*

Mode Name	Use of Mode	Access to Mode	Exit from Mode
Domain Map Configuration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Configure domain maps.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ From Global Configuration mode, use the <b>aaa domain-map</b> command.</li> <li>■ Prompt:  host1(config-domain-map)#</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Use the <b>exit</b> command once to return to Global Configuration mode.</li> <li>■ Press Ctrl + z to return to Exec mode.</li> </ul>
Domain Map Tunnel Configuration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Configure tunnel parameters.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ From Domain-Map Configuration mode, use the <b>tunnel</b> command.</li> <li>■ Prompt:  host1(config-domain-map-tunnel)#</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Use the <b>exit</b> command twice to return to Global Configuration mode.</li> <li>■ Press Ctrl + z to return to Exec mode.</li> </ul>
DoS Protection Group Configuration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Configure parameters for DoS protection groups.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ From Global Configuration Mode, use the <b>dos-protection-group</b> command.</li> <li>■ Prompt:  host1(config-dos-group)#</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Use the <b>exit</b> command once to return to Global Configuration mode.</li> <li>■ Press Ctrl + z to return to Exec mode.</li> </ul>
Drop Profile Configuration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Configure drop profiles.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ From Global Configuration mode, use the <b>drop-profile</b> command.</li> <li>■ Prompt:  host1(config-drop-profile)#</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Use the <b>exit</b> command once to return to Global Configuration mode.</li> <li>■ Press Ctrl + z to return to Exec mode.</li> </ul>
Explicit Path Configuration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Configure MPLS explicit path parameters.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ From Global Configuration mode, specify the <b>mpls explicit-path</b> name command.</li> <li>■ Prompt:  host1(config-exp1-path)#</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Use the <b>exit</b> command to return to Global Configuration mode.</li> <li>■ Press Ctrl + z to return to Exec mode.</li> </ul>

**Table 10: Command Mode Overview** *(continued)*

Mode Name	Use of Mode	Access to Mode	Exit from Mode
Flow Cache Configuration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Configure parameters for the aggregation cache.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ From Global Configuration Mode, use the <b>ip flow-aggregation cache</b> command.</li> <li>■ Prompt:  host1(config-flow-cache)#</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Use the <b>exit</b> command once to return to Global Configuration mode.</li> <li>■ Press Ctrl + z to return to Exec mode.</li> </ul>
Global Configuration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Enable a feature or function.</li> <li>■ Disable a feature or function.</li> <li>■ Configure a feature or function.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ From Privileged Exec mode, use the <b>configure</b> command.</li> <li>■ Prompt:  host1(config)#</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Use the <b>exit</b> command, or press Ctrl + z to return to Exec mode.</li> <li>■ Use the <b>interface</b> command to enter Interface Configuration mode.</li> </ul>
Interface Configuration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Create an interface.</li> <li>■ Modify the operation of an interface, such as bandwidth or clock rate.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ From Global Configuration mode, use the <b>interface</b> command and identify the interface by slot/port.</li> <li>■ Prompt:  host1(config-if)#</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Use the <b>exit</b> command once to return to Global Configuration mode.</li> <li>■ Press Ctrl + z to return to Exec mode.</li> </ul>
IP NAT Pool Configuration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Create a NAT pool with a multiple, discontinuous range.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ From Global Configuration mode, use the <b>ip nat pool</b> command and specify only a prefix length value.</li> <li>■ Prompt:  host1(config-ipnat-pool)#</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Use the <b>exit</b> command once to return to Global Configuration mode.</li> <li>■ Press Ctrl + z to return to Exec mode.</li> </ul>
IP PIM Data MDT Configuration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Create and activate data multicast distribution trees (MDTs)</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ From Global Configuration mode, use the <b>ip pim data-mdt</b> command and specify a name.</li> <li>■ Prompt:  host1(config-ip-pim-data-mdt)#</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Use the <b>exit</b> command once to return to Global Configuration mode.</li> <li>■ Press Ctrl + z to return to Exec mode.</li> </ul>

**Table 10: Command Mode Overview** *(continued)*

Mode Name	Use of Mode	Access to Mode	Exit from Mode
IP Service Profile Configuration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Create a service profile to use in route maps for subscriber management and to authenticate subscribers with RADIUS.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>From Global Configuration mode, use the <b>ip service-profile</b> command and specify a service profile name with up to 32 ASCII characters.</li> <li>Prompt:  host1(config-service-profile)#</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Use the <b>exit</b> command once to return to Global Configuration mode.</li> <li>Press Ctrl + z to return to Exec mode.</li> </ul>
IPSec CA Identity Configuration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Create an IPSec identity used in online certificate requests and during negotiations with IKE peers.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>From the Global Configuration mode, use the <b>ipsec ca identity</b> command.</li> <li>Prompt:  host1(config-ca-identity)#</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Use the <b>exit</b> command once to return to Global Configuration mode.</li> <li>Press Ctrl + z to return to Exec mode.</li> </ul>
IPSec Identity Configuration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Create an IPSec identity used in offline certificate requests and during negotiations with IKE peers.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>From the Global Configuration mode, use the <b>ipsec identity</b> command.</li> <li>Prompt:  host1(config-ipsec-identity)#</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Use the <b>exit</b> command once to return to Global Configuration mode.</li> <li>Press Ctrl + z to return to Exec mode.</li> </ul>
IPSec IKE Policy Configuration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Define an IKE policy.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>From the Global Configuration mode, use the <b>ipsec ike-policy-rule</b> command.</li> <li>Prompt:  host1(config-ike-policy)#</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Use the <b>exit</b> command once to return to Global Configuration mode.</li> <li>Press Ctrl + z to return to Exec mode.</li> </ul>
IPSec Manual Key Configuration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Enter manual keys.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>From Global Configuration mode, use the <b>ipsec key manual</b> pre-share command.</li> <li>Prompt:  host1(config-manual-key)#</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Use the <b>exit</b> command once to return to Global Configuration mode.</li> <li>Press Ctrl + z to return to Exec mode.</li> </ul>



**Table 10: Command Mode Overview** *(continued)*

Mode Name	Use of Mode	Access to Mode	Exit from Mode
IPSec Peer Public Key Configuration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Enter an ISAKMP/IKE public key that a remote peer uses for RSA authentication without the need for a digital certificate.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>From Global Configuration mode, use the <b>ipsec key pubkey-chain rsa</b> command.</li> <li>Prompt:  host1(config-peer-public-key)#</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Use the <b>exit</b> command once to return to Global Configuration mode.</li> <li>Press Ctrl + z to return to Exec mode.</li> </ul>
IPSec Transport Profile Configuration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Configure a profile for L2TP over IPSec.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>From Global Configuration mode, use the <b>ipsec transport profile</b> command.</li> <li>Prompt:  host1(config-ipsec-transport-profile)#</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Use the <b>exit</b> command once to return to Global Configuration mode.</li> <li>Press Ctrl + z to return to Exec mode.</li> </ul>
IPSec Tunnel Profile Configuration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Configure a profile for IPSec tunnels.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>From Global Configuration mode, use the <b>ipsec tunnel profile</b> command.</li> <li>Prompt:  host1(config-ipsec-tunnel-profile)#</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Use the <b>exit</b> command once to return to Global Configuration mode.</li> <li>Press Ctrl + z to return to Exec mode.</li> </ul>
IP Tunnel Destination Profile Configuration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Create a profile for dynamic GRE or DVMRP tunnels</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>From Global Configuration mode, use the <b>gre destination profile</b> command or the <b>dvmrp destination profile</b> command and specify a destination profile name.</li> <li>Prompt:  host1(config-dest-profile)#</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Use the <b>exit</b> command once to return to Global Configuration mode.</li> <li>Press Ctrl + z to return to Exec mode.</li> </ul>

**Table 10: Command Mode Overview** *(continued)*

Mode Name	Use of Mode	Access to Mode	Exit from Mode
IPv6 Local Pool Configuration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Configure IPv6 local address pools.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ From Global Configuration mode, use the <b>ipv6 local-pool</b> command and specify the name of the IPv6 local address pool.</li> <li>■ Prompt:  host1(config-ipv6-local)#</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Use the <b>exit</b> command once to return to Global Configuration mode.</li> <li>■ Press Ctrl + z to return to Exec mode.</li> </ul>
L2 Transport Load-Balancing-Circuit Configuration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Configure Martini layer 2 transport circuit associated with load-balancing group.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ From Global Configuration mode, specify the <b>mpls l2transport load-balancing-group</b> command.</li> <li>■ Prompt:  host1(config-l2transport-load-balancing-circuit)#</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Use the <b>exit</b> command once to return to Global Configuration mode.</li> <li>■ Press Ctrl + z to return to Exec mode.</li> </ul>
L2TP Destination Profile Configuration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Define the location of an LAC.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ From Global Configuration mode, use the <b>l2tp destination profile</b> command.</li> <li>■ Prompt:  host1(config-l2tp-destination-profile)#</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Use the <b>exit</b> command once to return to Global Configuration mode.</li> <li>■ Press Ctrl + z to return to Exec mode.</li> </ul>
L2TP Destination Profile Host Configuration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Configure host profile attributes.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ From L2TP Destination Profile Configuration mode, use the <b>remote host</b> command.</li> <li>■ Prompt:  host1(config-l2tp-destination-profile-host)#</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Use the <b>exit</b> command twice to return to Global Configuration mode.</li> <li>■ Press Ctrl + z to return to Exec mode.</li> </ul>

**Table 10: Command Mode Overview** *(continued)*

Mode Name	Use of Mode	Access to Mode	Exit from Mode
L2TP Tunnel Switch Profile Configuration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Configure the L2TP tunnel switching behavior for interfaces to which this profile is assigned.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>From Global Configuration mode, use the <b>l2tp switch-profile</b> command, and specify the name of the L2TP tunnel switch profile.</li> <li>Prompt:</li> </ul> <pre>host1(config-l2tp-tunnel-switch-profile)#</pre>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Use the <b>exit</b> command once to return to Global Configuration mode.</li> <li>Press Ctrl + z to return to Exec mode.</li> </ul>
Layer 2 Control Configuration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Configure ANCP (L2C) parameters.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>From Global Configuration mode, use the <b>l2c</b> command.</li> <li>Prompt:</li> </ul> <pre>host1(config-l2c)#</pre>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Use the <b>exit</b> command once to return to Global Configuration mode.</li> <li>Press Ctrl + z to return to Exec mode.</li> </ul>
Layer 2 Control Neighbor Configuration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Configure ANCP (L2C) neighbor parameters.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>From Layer 2 Configuration mode, use the <b>neighbor</b> command.</li> <li>Prompt:</li> </ul> <pre>host1(config-l2c-neighbor)#</pre>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Use the <b>exit</b> command twice to return to Global Configuration mode.</li> <li>Press Ctrl + z to return to Exec mode.</li> </ul>
LDP Configuration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Configure MPLS LDP profile parameters.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>From Global Configuration mode, specify the <b>mpls ldp profile</b> command.</li> <li>Prompt:</li> </ul> <pre>host1(config-ldp)#</pre>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Use the <b>exit</b> command once to return to Global Configuration mode.</li> <li>Press Ctrl + z to return to Exec mode.</li> </ul>
Line Configuration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Modify a virtual terminal line.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>From Global Configuration mode, use the <b>line</b> command.</li> <li>Prompt:</li> </ul> <pre>host1(config-line)#</pre>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Use the <b>exit</b> command once to return to Global Configuration mode.</li> <li>Press Ctrl + z to return to Exec mode.</li> </ul>

**Table 10: Command Mode Overview** *(continued)*

Mode Name	Use of Mode	Access to Mode	Exit from Mode
Local IPSec Transport Profile Configuration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Configure preshared IKE keys for L2TP over IPSec profiles.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>From the IPSec Transport Profile Configuration mode, use the <b>local ip address</b> command.</li> <li>Prompt:  host1(config-ipsec-transport-profile-local)#</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Use the <b>exit</b> command twice to return to Global Configuration mode.</li> <li>Press Ctrl + z to return to Exec mode.</li> </ul>
Local User Configuration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Configure user parameters in local user databases.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>From Global Configuration mode, specify the <b>aaa local username</b> or the <b>aaa local database</b> command.</li> <li>Prompt:  host1(config-local-user)#</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Use the <b>exit</b> command to return to Global Configuration mode.</li> <li>Press Ctrl + z to return to Exec mode.</li> </ul>
Map Class Configuration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Specify fragmentation for a map class.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>From Global Configuration mode, specify the <b>map-class frame-relay</b> command.</li> <li>Prompt:  host1(config-map-class)#</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Use the <b>exit</b> command once to return to Global Configuration mode.</li> <li>Press Ctrl + z to return to Exec mode.</li> </ul>
Map List Configuration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Configure map list parameters.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>From Global Configuration mode, use the <b>map-list</b> command.</li> <li>Prompt:  host1(config-map-list)#</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Use the <b>exit</b> command once to return to Global Configuration mode.</li> <li>Press Ctrl + z to return to Exec mode.</li> </ul>
Parent Group Configuration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Configure an external parent group.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>From Global Configuration mode, use the <b>parent-group</b> command.</li> <li>Prompt:  host1(config-parent-group)#</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Use the <b>exit</b> command once to return to Global Configuration mode.</li> <li>Press Ctrl + z to return to Exec mode.</li> </ul>

**Table 10: Command Mode Overview** *(continued)*

Mode Name	Use of Mode	Access to Mode	Exit from Mode
Policy List Configuration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Configure policy lists.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ To create a policy list, from Global Configuration mode use the <b>policy-list</b> command and identify the type of policy list.</li> <li>■ Prompt:  host1(config-policy-list)#</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Use the <b>exit</b> command once to return to Global Configuration mode.</li> <li>■ Press Ctrl + z to return to Exec mode.</li> </ul>
Policy List Parent Group Configuration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Configure an internal parent group in a hierarchy.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ From Global Configuration Mode, use the <b>policy-list</b> command to create or access a policy list. From Policy List Configuration Mode, use the <b>parent-group</b> command.</li> <li>■ Prompt:  host1(config-policy-list-parent-group)#</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Use the <b>exit</b> command twice to return to Global Configuration mode.</li> <li>■ Press Ctrl + z to return to Exec mode.</li> </ul>
Policy Parameter Configuration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Configure a policy parameter.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ From Global Configuration mode, use the <b>policy-parameter</b> command.</li> <li>■ Prompt:  host1(config-policy-parameter)#</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Use the <b>exit</b> command once to return to Global Configuration mode.</li> <li>■ Press Ctrl + z to return to Exec mode.</li> </ul>
PPPoE Service Name Table Configuration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Configure services for a PPPoE service name table.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ From Global Configuration mode, use the <b>pppoe-service-name-table</b> command, and specify the alphanumeric name of the PPPoE service name table.</li> <li>■ Prompt:  host1(config-pppoe-service-name-table)#</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Use the <b>exit</b> command once to return to Global Configuration mode.</li> <li>■ Press Ctrl + z to return to Exec mode.</li> </ul>

**Table 10: Command Mode Overview** *(continued)*

Mode Name	Use of Mode	Access to Mode	Exit from Mode
Privileged Exec	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Show system information.</li> <li>■ Set operating parameters.</li> <li>■ Access Global Configuration mode.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ From User Exec mode, use the <b>enable</b> command.</li> <li>■ Prompt: <code>host1#</code></li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Use the <b>disable</b> command to return to User Exec mode.</li> <li>■ Use the <b>exit</b> command to log out of the CLI.</li> <li>■ Use the <b>configure</b> command to enter Global Configuration mode.</li> </ul>
Profile Configuration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Configure profiles.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ From Global Configuration mode, use the <b>profile</b> command.</li> <li>■ Prompt: <code>host1(config-profile)#</code></li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Use the <b>exit</b> command once to return to Global Configuration mode.</li> <li>■ Press Ctrl + z to return to Exec mode.</li> </ul>
QoS Interface Set Configuration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Configure QoS interface sets.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ From Global Configuration mode, use the <b>qos-interface-set</b> command.</li> <li>■ Prompt: <code>host1(config-qos-interface-set)#</code></li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Use the <b>exit</b> command once to return to Global Configuration mode.</li> <li>■ Press Ctrl + z to return to Exec mode.</li> </ul>
QoS Interface Superet Configuration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Configure QoS interface supersets.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ From Global Configuration mode, use the <b>qos-interface-superset</b> command.</li> <li>■ Prompt: <code>host1(config-qos-interface-superet)#</code></li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Use the <b>exit</b> command once to return to Global Configuration mode.</li> <li>■ Press Ctrl + z to return to Exec mode.</li> </ul>
QoS Parameter Definition Configuration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Configure QoS parameter definitions.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ From Global Configuration mode, use the <b>qos-parameter-define</b> command.</li> <li>■ Prompt: <code>host1(config-qos-parameter-define)#</code></li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Use the <b>exit</b> command once to return to Global Configuration mode.</li> <li>■ Press Ctrl + z to return to Exec mode.</li> </ul>

**Table 10: Command Mode Overview** *(continued)*

Mode Name	Use of Mode	Access to Mode	Exit from Mode
QoS Profile Configuration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Configure QoS profiles.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ From Global Configuration mode, use the <b>qos-profile</b> command.</li> <li>■ Prompt:  host1(config-qos-profile)#</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Use the <b>exit</b> command once to return to Global Configuration mode.</li> <li>■ Press Ctrl + z to return to Exec mode.</li> </ul>
QoS Shared Shaper Control Configuration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Configure variables within the simple shared shaper algorithm.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ From Global Configuration mode, use the <b>qos-shared-shaper-control</b> command.</li> <li>■ Prompt:  host1(config-qos-shared-shaper-control)#</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Use the <b>exit</b> command once to return to Global Configuration mode.</li> <li>■ Press Ctrl + z to return to Exec mode.</li> </ul>
Queue Profile Configuration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Configure queue profiles.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ From Global Configuration mode, use the <b>queue-profile</b> command.</li> <li>■ Prompt:  host1(config-queue)#</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Use the <b>exit</b> command once to return to Global Configuration mode.</li> <li>■ Press Ctrl + z to return to Exec mode.</li> </ul>
RADIUS Configuration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Configure Broadband Remote Access Server (B-RAS) parameters.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ From Global Configuration mode, use the <b>radius</b> server command.</li> <li>■ Prompt:  host1(config-radius)#</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Use the <b>exit</b> command once to return to Global Configuration mode.</li> <li>■ Press Ctrl + z to return to Exec mode.</li> </ul>
RADIUS Relay Configuration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Configure RADIUS relay server parameters.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ From Global Configuration mode, use the <b>radius</b> relay server command.</li> <li>■ Prompt:  host1(config-radius-relay)#</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Use the <b>exit</b> command once to return to Global Configuration mode.</li> <li>■ Press Ctrl + z to return to Exec mode.</li> </ul>

**Table 10: Command Mode Overview** *(continued)*

Mode Name	Use of Mode	Access to Mode	Exit from Mode
Rate Limit Profile Configuration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Configure an IP or L2TP rate limit parameters.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ To create an IP rate limit profile, from Global Configuration mode use the <b>ip rate-limit-profile</b> command.</li> <li>■ To create an L2TP rate limit profile, from Global Configuration mode use the <b>l2tp rate-limit-profile</b> command.</li> <li>■ Prompt:  host1(config-rate-limit-profile)#</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Use the <b>exit</b> command once to return to Global Configuration mode.</li> <li>■ Press Ctrl + z to return to Exec mode.</li> </ul>
Redundancy Configuration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Configure high availability (stateful SRP switchover).</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ From Global Configuration mode, use the <b>redundancy</b> command.</li> <li>■ Prompt:  host1(config-redundancy)#</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Use the <b>exit</b> command once to return to Global Configuration mode.</li> <li>■ Press Ctrl + z to return to Exec mode.</li> </ul>
Remote Neighbor Configuration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Configure remote neighbor parameters for OSPF, PIM, or RIP.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ From Router Configuration mode, use the <b>remote-neighbor</b> command.</li> <li>■ Prompt:  host1(config-router-rn)#</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Use the <b>exit</b> command twice to return to Global Configuration mode.</li> <li>■ Press Ctrl + z to return to Exec mode.</li> </ul>
Route Map Configuration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Configure routing tables and source and destination information.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ From Global Configuration mode, use the <b>route-map</b> command.</li> <li>■ Prompt:  host1(config-route-map)#</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Use the <b>exit</b> command once to return to Global Configuration mode.</li> <li>■ Press Ctrl + z to return to Exec mode.</li> </ul>



**Table 10: Command Mode Overview** *(continued)*

Mode Name	Use of Mode	Access to Mode	Exit from Mode
Router Configuration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Configure a routing protocol.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ From Global Configuration mode, specify a routing protocol with the <b>router</b> command.</li> <li>■ Prompt:  <code>host1(config-router)#</code></li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Use the <b>exit</b> command once to return to Global Configuration mode.</li> <li>■ Press Ctrl + z to return to Exec mode.</li> </ul>
RSVP Configuration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Configure an RSVP profile.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ From Global Configuration mode, use the <b>mpls rsvp profile</b> command.</li> <li>■ Prompt:  <code>host1(config-rsvp)#</code></li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Use the <b>exit</b> command once to return to Global Configuration mode.</li> <li>■ Press Ctrl + z to return to Exec mode.</li> </ul>
RTR Configuration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Configure RTR parameters.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ From Global Configuration mode, use the <b>rtr</b> command.</li> <li>■ Prompt:  <code>host1(config-rtr)#</code></li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Use the <b>exit</b> command once to return to Global Configuration mode.</li> <li>■ Press Ctrl + z to return to Exec mode.</li> </ul>
Scheduler Profile Configuration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Configure shaping parameters.</li> <li>■ Configure scheduler profiles.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ From Global Configuration mode, use the <b>scheduler-profile</b> command.</li> <li>■ Prompt:  <code>host1(config-scheduler-profile)#</code></li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Use the <b>exit</b> command once to return to Global Configuration mode.</li> <li>■ Press Ctrl + z to return to Exec menu.</li> </ul>
Service Session Profile Configuration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Configure attributes for Service Manager service session profiles.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ From Global Configuration mode, use the <b>service-management service-session-profile</b> command.</li> <li>■ Prompt:  <code>host1(config-service-session-profile)#</code></li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Use the <b>exit</b> command twice to return to Global Configuration mode.</li> <li>■ Press Ctrl + z to return to Exec mode.</li> </ul>

**Table 10: Command Mode Overview** *(continued)*

Mode Name	Use of Mode	Access to Mode	Exit from Mode
SNMP Event Manager Configuration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Configure SNMP events.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ From Global Configuration mode, use the <b>snmp-server management-event</b> command.</li> <li>■ Prompt:  host1(config-mgmtevent)#</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Use the <b>exit</b> command once to return to Global Configuration mode.</li> <li>■ Press Ctrl + z to return to Exec menu.</li> </ul>
Statistics Profile Configuration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Configure statistics profiles.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ From Global Configuration mode, use the <b>statistics-profile</b> command.</li> <li>■ Prompt:  host1(config-statistics-profile)#</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Use the <b>exit</b> command once to return to Global Configuration mode.</li> <li>■ Press Ctrl + z to return to Exec menu.</li> </ul>
Subinterface Configuration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Configure multiple virtual interfaces on a single physical interface.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ From Global Configuration mode, use the <b>interface</b> command and identify the interface (slot/port.subinterface).</li> <li>■ Prompt:  host1(config-subif)#</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Use the <b>exit</b> command once to return to Global Configuration mode.</li> <li>■ Press Ctrl + z to return to Exec mode.</li> </ul>
Subscriber Policy Configuration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Configure a nondefault subscriber policy for a subscriber (client) bridge group interface.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ From Global Configuration mode, use the <b>subscriber-policy</b> command and specify the alphanumeric name of the subscriber policy.</li> <li>■ Prompt:  host1(config-policy)#</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Use the <b>exit</b> command once to return to Global Configuration mode.</li> <li>■ Press Ctrl + z to return to Exec mode.</li> </ul>
Traffic Class Configuration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Configure a traffic class.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ From Global Configuration mode, use the <b>traffic-class</b> command.</li> <li>■ Prompt:  host1(config-traffic-class)#</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Use the <b>exit</b> command once to return to Global Configuration mode.</li> <li>■ Press Ctrl + z to return to Exec mode.</li> </ul>

**Table 10: Command Mode Overview** *(continued)*

Mode Name	Use of Mode	Access to Mode	Exit from Mode
Traffic Class Group Configuration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Configure a traffic class group.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ From Global Configuration mode, use the <b>traffic-class-group</b> command.</li> <li>■ Prompt:  host1(config-traffic-class-group)</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Use the <b>exit</b> command once to return to Global Configuration mode.</li> <li>■ Press Ctrl + z to return to Exec mode.</li> </ul>
Tunnel Group Configuration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Add up to 31 tunnel definitions to a tunnel group.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ From Global Configuration mode, use the <b>aaa tunnel-group</b> command and specify the name of the tunnel.</li> <li>■ Prompt:  host1(config-tunnel-group)#</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Use the <b>exit</b> command once to return to Global Configuration mode.</li> <li>■ Press Ctrl + z to return to Exec mode.</li> </ul>
Tunnel Group Tunnel Configuration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Configure attributes for a tunnel group tunnel.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ From Tunnel Group Configuration mode, use the <b>tunnel</b> command and specify the tag value (1-31) of the tunnel.</li> <li>■ Prompt:  host1(config-tunnel-group-tunnel)#</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Use the <b>exit</b> command twice to return to Global Configuration Mode.</li> <li>■ Press Ctrl + z to return to Exec mode.</li> </ul>
Tunnel Profile Configuration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Configure tunnel profile parameters.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ From Global Configuration mode, specify the <b>mpls tunnels profile</b> command.</li> <li>■ Prompt:  host1(config-tunnelprofile)#</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Use the <b>exit</b> command once to return to Global Configuration mode.</li> <li>■ Press Ctrl + z to return to Exec mode.</li> </ul>

**Table 10: Command Mode Overview** (continued)

Mode Name	Use of Mode	Access to Mode	Exit from Mode
Tunnel Server Configuration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Configure the maximum number of tunnel-service interfaces for a dynamic tunnel-server port.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>From Global Configuration mode, use the <b>tunnel-server</b> command and identify the slot/port location of the dynamic tunnel-server port.</li> <li>Prompt:  host1(config-tunnel-server)#</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Use the <b>exit</b> command once to return to Global Configuration mode.</li> <li>Press Ctrl + z to return to Exec mode.</li> </ul>
User Exec	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Change terminal settings on a temporary basis.</li> <li>Show system information.</li> <li>Access Privileged Exec mode.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Log into system.</li> <li>Prompt:  host1&gt;</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Use the <b>enable</b> command to enter Privileged Exec mode.</li> <li>Use the <b>exit</b> command to log out of the CLI.</li> </ul>
VRF Configuration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Configure VRF parameters for BGP/MPLS VPNs.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>From Global Configuration mode, use the <b>ip vrf</b> command.</li> <li>Prompt:  host1(config-vrf)#</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Use the <b>exit</b> command once to return to Global Configuration mode.</li> <li>Press Ctrl + z to return to Exec mode.</li> </ul>
VR Group Configuration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Configure a virtual router group for AAA broadcast accounting.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>From Global Configuration mode, use <b>aaa accounting vr-group</b> to enter VR Group Configuration mode.</li> <li>Prompt:  host1(config-vr-group)#</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Use the <b>exit</b> command twice to return to Global Configuration mode.</li> <li>Press Ctrl + z to return to Exec mode.</li> </ul>



**NOTE:** Within any configuration mode, the commands that are available to the user include the commands defined for that configuration mode and all commands defined for Global Configuration mode. See Figure 21 on page 30. For example, from Router Configuration mode, you could use the **interface** Global Configuration mode command without first explicitly going back to Global Configuration mode.

```
host1(router-config)# interface atm 4/0.3
host1(config-if)#
```

## Exec Modes

There are two Exec modes: User Exec and Privileged Exec.

After you log in to the system, the CLI is in User Exec mode. By default, the commands you can execute from User Exec mode provide only user-level access; however, you should password protect it to prevent unauthorized use. The User Exec commands allow you to perform such functions as:

- Change terminal settings on a temporary basis.
- Perform **ping** and **trace** commands.
- Display system information.

```

host1>?
clear      Clear system information
default    Set a command to its default(s)
dir        Display a list of local files
disable    Reduce the command privilege level
enable     Enable access to privileged commands
erase      Erase configuration settings
exit       Exit from the current command mode
flash-disk Perform flash disk operations
help       Describe the interactive help system
ip         Configure IP attributes on an interface
ipv6       Configure IPv6 attributes
l2tp       L2TP operations
macro      Run a CLI macro
mpls       Execute MPLS commands
mtrace     Trace the path that packets will traverse from source to
           destination for a given group
no         Negate a command or set its default(s)
ping       Send echo request to remote host
show       Display system information
sleep      Make the Command Interface pause for a specified duration
terminal   Configure the terminal line settings
test       Test the outcome of a command
traceroute Trace the path that packets traverse to their destination

```

Privileged Exec mode provides privileged-level access and therefore should also be password protected to prevent unauthorized use. Privileged Exec commands allow you to perform such functions as:

- Display system information.
- Set operating parameters.
- Gain access to Global Configuration mode.

## Password Protection

If the system administrator has configured the system to have a password, the CLI prompts you to enter that password before you receive access to Privileged Exec mode. The password is case sensitive and appears as asterisks on the screen.

To access Privileged Exec mode:

1. At the prompt, type **enable** and press Enter.

```
host1>enable
```

```
Password:
```

2. At the password prompt, type your password and press Enter.

```
Password:*****
```

```
host1#
```



**NOTE:** The > character in the command-line prompt changes to the # character.

```
host1# ?
baseline      Set a baseline for statistics
clear         Clear a state
clock         Set the system's clock
configure     Enter Global Configuration mode
copy          Copy files
debug         Configure debugging functions
default       Set a command to its default(s)
delete        Delete a local file
dir           Display a list of local files
disable       Reduce the command privilege level
disconnect    Disconnect remote CLI session
enable        Enable access to privileged commands
exit          Exit from the current command mode
flash-disk    Perform flash disk operations
halt          Halt the system in preparation for power down
help          Describe the interactive help system
ip            Configure IP attributes on an interface
ipv6          Configure IPv6 attributes
l2tp          L2TP operations
log           Configure logging settings
logout        Logout PPP Subscribers
macro         Run a CLI macro
more          Display contents of a file
mpls          Execute MPLS commands
mtrace        Trace the path that packets will traverse from source
to            destination for a given group
no            Negate a command or set its default(s)
ping          Send echo request to remote host
pppoe         Set PPPoE information
profile-reassign Perform profile reassignment
redundancy    Perform a redundancy action
reload        Halt and perform a cold restart
rename        Rename a local file
send          Send a message to specified lines
show          Display system information
sleep         Make the Command Interface pause for a specified
duration
srp           Perform SRP operations
synchronize   Manually synchronize redundant system controller file
system
telnet        Access a remote system via telnet
```

<code>terminal</code>	Configure the terminal line settings
<code>test</code>	Test the outcome of a command
<code>tracert</code>	Trace the path that packets traverse to their
<code>destination</code>	
<code>undeb</code>	Disable debug logging functions
<code>virtual-router</code>	Specify a virtual router
<code>write</code>	Write the system's running configuration to a
<code>destination</code>	

In addition, you can execute a script file (.scr), which is simply a file containing a sequence of CLI commands, through the **configure** command.

## Global Configuration Mode

Within Global Configuration mode, you can:

- Apply features globally to a router.
- Enable a feature or function.
- Disable a feature or function.
- Configure a feature or function.
- Access all Configuration modes.

To access Global Configuration mode, you begin in Privileged Exec mode. Type **configure terminal** and press Enter.

```
host1#configure terminal
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with ^Z.
host1(config)#
```

The system is now in Global Configuration mode.

## Executing a Script File

To execute a script file:

1. From Privileged Exec mode, type **configure** and the filename you want to execute, and press Enter.

```
host1#configure file
File name:/myFile.scr
Proceed with configure? [confirm]
```



**NOTE:** The filename must end with an .scr extension, and the file must contain a series of valid CLI commands. The file can be a local file on the router or a remote file on a host system.

---

2. Press y or Enter to confirm; pressing any other key aborts the procedure.

```
host1#
```

For more information, see the section “Managing Files” on page 284 in “Managing the System” on page 245.

## AAA Profile Configuration Mode

From this mode, you can restrict or allow the use of domain names, translate an original domain name to a new domain name, or create domain name aliases.

From Global Configuration mode, type the **aaa profile** command and a *profileName*, and then press Enter.

```
host1(config)#aaa profile charlie
host1(config-aaa-profile)#?
allow      Configure the authorization domain name
default    Set a command to its default(s)
deny       Configure the authorization domain name
do         Run an exec mode command (alias command run)
exit       Exit from the current command mode
help       Describe the interactive help system
log        Configure logging settings
macro      Run a CLI macro
no         Negate a command or set its default(s)
run        Run an exec mode command (alias command do)
sleep      Make the Command Interface pause for a specified duration
translate  Configure the translation map for domain name
```

## Address Family Configuration Mode

From this mode, you can configure address family parameters for BGP VPN services or RIP VPN services.

From Global Configuration mode, type the **router bgp** command to enter Router Configuration mode for BGP. Type either the **address-family ipv4** or **address-family vpnv4** command, and then press Enter.

```
host1(config)#router bgp 100
host1(config-router)#address-family ?
ipv4      Configure IPv4 address family
vpnv4     Configure VPN-IPv4 address family
```

From Global Configuration mode, type the **router rip** command to enter Router Configuration mode for RIP. Type the **address-family ipv4** command, and then press Enter.

```
host1(config)#router rip 100
host1(config-router)#address-family ?
ipv4      Configure IPv4 address family
```

## ATM VC Configuration Mode

In this mode, you can configure individual attributes for an ATM data PVC. These attributes include the service category, encapsulation method, Inverse Address



Resolution Protocol (Inverse ARP), and F5 Operation, Administration, and Management (OAM) parameters.

From Global Configuration mode, type the **interface** command and specify the ATM subinterface identifier to enter Subinterface Configuration mode. From Subinterface Configuration mode, type the **pvc** command and specify the virtual circuit descriptor (VCD), virtual path identifier (VPI) and virtual circuit identifier (VCI) values (in the format *vpi/vci*), and then press Enter.

```
host1(config)#interface atm 3/2.1
host1(config-subif)#pvc 100 0/100
host1(config-subif-atm-vc)#?
  cbr          Configure the Constant Bit Rate (CBR) service class
  class-vc     Assign a Virtual Circuit class to the Permanent Virtual
               Circuit
  default      Set a command to its default(s)
  do           Run an exec mode command (alias command run)
  encapsulation Configure the ATM encapsulation
  exit         Exit from the current command mode
  help         Describe the interactive help system
  inarp        Configure the Inverse Address Resolution Protocol (InARP)
               protocol
  log          Configure logging settings
  macro        Run a CLI macro
  no           Negate a command or set its default(s)
  oam          Configure Operations, Administration, and Management (OAM)
  oam-pvc      Configure Operations, Administration, and Management (OAM) for
               Permanent Virtual Circuit (PVC)
  run          Run an exec mode command (alias command do)
  sleep        Make the Command Interface pause for a specified duration
  ubr          Configure the Unspecified Bit Rate (UBR) service class
  vbr-nrt      Configure the Variable Bit Rate Non-Real Time (VBR-nrt)
               service class
  vbr-rt       Configure the Variable Bit Rate Real Time (VBR-rt) service
               class
```

## ATM VC Class Configuration Mode

In this mode, you can configure a class of attributes for an ATM data PVC. The VC class can include attributes for the service category, encapsulation method, F5 OAM options, and Inverse ARP. You then apply the set of attributes as a group by assigning the VC class to an individual PVC, to all PVCs created on a specified ATM major interface, to all PVCs created on a specified ATM 1483 subinterface, or to a base profile from which bulk-configured VC ranges are dynamically created.

From Global Configuration mode, type the **vc-class atm** command followed by an alphanumeric VC class name of up to 32 characters, and press Enter.

```
host1(config)#vc-class atm premium-subscriber-class
host1(config-vc-class)#?
  cbr          Configure the Constant Bit Rate (CBR) service class
  default      Set a command to its default(s)
  do           Run an exec mode command (alias command run)
  encapsulation Configure the ATM encapsulation
  exit         Exit from the current command mode
  help         Describe the interactive help system
  inarp        Configure the Inverse Address Resolution Protocol (InARP)
```

	<b>protocol</b>
log	Configure logging settings
macro	Run a CLI macro
no	Negate a command or set its default(s)
oam	Configure Operations, Administration, and Management (OAM)
oam-pvc	Configure Operations, Administration, and Management (OAM) for Permanent Virtual Circuit (PVC)
run	Run an exec mode command (alias command do)
sleep	Make the Command Interface pause for a specified duration
ubr	Configure the Unspecified Bit Rate (UBR) service class
vbr-nrt	Configure the Variable Bit Rate Non-Real Time (VBR-nrt) service class
vbr-rt	Configure the Variable Bit Rate Real Time (VBR-rt) service class

## Classifier Group Configuration Mode

In this mode, you can configure the set of rules for a classification group in a policy list that you can attach to an interface.

From Policy List Configuration mode, type the **classifier-group** command and its attributes, and then press Enter.

```

host1(config-policy-list)#classifier-group ipCLACL10 precedence 75
host1(config-policy-list-classifier-group)#?
  color          Create a color policy
  default        Set a command to its default(s)
  do             Run an exec mode command (alias command run)
  exit          Exit from the current command mode
  filter        Create a filter policy
  forward       Create a forward policy
  help         Describe the interactive help system
  log          Configure logging settings
  macro        Run a CLI macro
  mark         Create a set TOS byte policy
  next-hop     Create a next-hop policy
  next-interface Create a next-interface policy
  no          Negate a command or set its default(s)
  rate-limit-profile Create a rate-limit policy
  run         Run an exec mode command (alias command do)
  sleep       Make the Command Interface pause for a specified duration
  suspend     Suspend a policy rule
  traffic-class Create a traffic class policy
  user-packet-class Create a user packet class policy

```

## Color Mark Profile Configuration Mode

In this mode, you can configure translation for a color to a type-dependent mark for TOS or EXP for an IP, IPv6 or MPLS interface.

From Rate Limit Profile Configuration mode, type the **color-mark-profile** command and specify a profileName, and then press Enter.

```

host1(config-rate-limit-profile)# mpls color-mark-profile myprofile
host1(config-color-mark-profile)#?
  default      Set a command to its default(s)

```

```

do          Run an exec mode command (alias command run)
exit        Exit from the current command mode
green-mark  Apply TOS mark to IP packets classified Green by the rate limit
            hierarchy
help        Describe the interactive help system
log         Configure logging settings
macro       Run a CLI macro
mask-value  Mask for all TOS values applied by the color-mark profile
no          Negate a command or set its default(s)
red-mark    Apply TOS mark to IP packets classified Red by the rate limit
            hierarchy
run         Run an exec mode command (alias command do)
sleep       Make the Command Interface pause for a specified duration
yellow-mark Apply TOS mark to IP packets classified Yellow by the rate limit
            hierarchy

```

### Control Plane Configuration Mode

In this mode, you can configure policing for a specific protocol.

From Global Configuration mode, type the **control-plane** command and press Enter.

```

host1(config)#control-plane
host1(config-control-plane)#?
default  Set a command to its default(s)
do       Run an exec mode command (alias command run)
exit     Exit from the current command mode
help     Describe the interactive help system
log      Configure logging settings
macro    Run a CLI macro
no       Negate a command or set its default(s)
policer  Configure policing
run      Run an exec mode command (alias command do)
sleep    Make the Command Interface pause for a specified duration

```

### Controller Configuration Mode

You can configure physical interfaces such as a T3 in Controller Configuration mode.

From Global Configuration mode, type the appropriate **controller** command and its attributes, and then press Enter.

```

host1(config)#controller t3 9/1
host1(config-controller)#
host1(config)#controller ?
e1      Configure a channelized E1 controller
e3      Configure a E3 controller
sonet   Configure a Sonet controller
t1      Configure a channelized T1 controller
t3      Configure a T3 controller

```

### DHCP Local Pool Configuration Mode

In this mode, you can configure DHCP local pools. For example, you can specify a DNS or NetBIOS server.

From Global Configuration mode, type the command **ip dhcp-local pool** and a *poolName*, and then press Enter.

```
host1(config)#ip dhcp-local pool charlie
host1(config-dhcp-local)#?
  default          Set a command to its default(s)
  default-router   The default-router to use for this pool
  dns-server       The dns-server to use for this pool
  do               Run an exec mode command (alias command run)
  domain-name      The domain name for the pool
  exit             Exit from the current command mode
  grace-period     The grace period to be applied to leases
  help            Describe the interactive help system
  lease            The lease time for addresses from this pool
  link             Link to another DHCP Pool
  log              Configure logging settings
  macro            Run a CLI macro
  netbios-name-server The netbios-name-server to use for this pool
  netbios-node-type The netbios-node-type to use for this pool
  network          The network specified for this pool
  no               Negate a command or set its default(s)
  reserve          Reserve an ip address for a specific Mac Address
  run              Run an exec mode command (alias command do)
  server-address   The DHCP Server address to send to clients
  sleep            Make the Command Interface pause for a specified
                  duration
  snmpTrap         Enable snmp pool utilization traps
  use-release-grace-period Apply the grace period to released leases
  warning          Configure utilization warnings
```

## Domain Map Configuration Mode

In this mode, you can map a user domain name to a virtual router and loopback interface.

From Global Configuration mode, type the **aaa domain-map** command and the domain name value as found in the client's login name. Then press Enter.

```
host1(config)#aaa domain-map charlie76
host1(config-domain-map)#?
  address-pool-name Configure the address-pool-name for the domain name
  atm               Configure ATM parameters
  default           Set a command to its default(s)
  do                Run an exec mode command (alias command run)
  exit              Exit from the current command mode
  help              Describe the interactive help system
  ip-hint            Configure the IP hint feature for the domain
  local-interface   Configure the local interface value for remote clients
  log               Configure logging settings
  loopback           Configure the loopback interface to use when RX has an
                  unnumbered interface to the PPP client
  macro             Run a CLI macro
  no                Negate a command or set its default(s)
  override-user      Configure the username and password values to use instead
                  of the values from the remote client
  padn              Configure pppoe active discovery network parameters for
                  the domain name
  router-name        Configure the virtual-router for the domain name
```

<code>run</code>	Run an exec mode command (alias command <code>do</code> )
<code>sleep</code>	Make the Command Interface pause for a specified duration
<code>strip-domain</code>	Configure the domain name stripping feature for the domain
<code>tunnel</code>	Configure tunnel tag
<code>virtual-router</code>	Configure the virtual-router for the domain name

## Domain Map Tunnel Configuration Mode

In this mode, you can configure tunnel parameters such as the tunnel's endpoint.

From Domain-Map Configuration mode, type **tunnel** and a *tunnelNumber*, and press Enter.

```

host1(config-domain-map)#tunnel 17
host1(config-domain-map-tunnel)#?
  address      Configure tunnel endpoint address
  client-name  Configure the client hostname of the tunnel
  default      Set a command to its default(s)
  exit         Exit from the current command mode
  do           Run an exec mode command (alias command run)
  help         Describe the interactive help system
  hostname     Configure the client hostname of the tunnel
  identification Configure tunnel identification
  log          Configure logging settings
  macro        Run a CLI macro
  max-sessions Configure maximum sessions for this tunnel
  medium       Configure tunnel medium
  no           Negate a command or set its default(s)
  password     Configure tunnel password
  preference   Configure tunnel preference
  run          Run an exec mode command (alias command do)
  server-name  Configure the remote hostname for the tunnel
  sleep        Make the Command Interface pause for a specified duration
  source-address Configure tunnel source address
  type         Configure tunnel type

```

## DoS Protection Group Configuration Mode

In this mode, you can configure parameters for Denial of Service (DoS) protection groups.

From Global Configuration mode, type the **dos-protection-group** command and press Enter.

```

host1(config)#dos-protection-group
host1(config-dos-protection)#?
  default      Set a command to its default(s)
  do           Run an exec mode command (alias command run)
  exit         Exit from the current command mode
  help         Describe the interactive help system
  log          Configure logging settings
  macro        Run a CLI macro
  no           Negate a command or set its default(s)
  priority     Specify the priority
  protocol     Specify the protocol
  run          Run an exec mode command (alias command do)

```

sleep	Make the Command Interface pause for a specified duration
use	Configure usagehost1(config-dos-protection-group)#?

## Drop Profile Configuration Mode

In this mode, you can configure drop profiles for QoS. Drop profiles control RED dropping behavior.

From Global Configuration mode, type the **drop-profile** command, and press Enter.

```
host1(config)#drop profile
host1(config-drop-profile)#?
  average-length-exponent  Select TAQL coefficient
  committed-threshold      Specify committed queue thresholds and maximum drop
                           probability
  conformed-threshold      Specify conformed queue thresholds and maximum drop
                           probability
  default                  Set a command to its default(s)
  do                        Run an exec mode command (alias command run)
  exceeded-threshold       Specify exceeded queue thresholds and maximum drop
                           probability
  exit                     Exit from the current command mode
  help                     Describe the interactive help system
  log                      Configure logging settings
  macro                    Run a CLI macro
  no                       Negate a command or set its default(s)
  run                      Run an exec mode command (alias command do)
  sleep                    Make the Command Interface pause for a specified duration
```

## Explicit Path Configuration Mode

From this mode, you can name and configure an explicit path within MPLS.

From Global Configuration mode, type **mpls explicit-path name** and the *explicitPathName*, and press Enter.

```
host1(config)#mpls explicit-path name xyz
host1(config-exp1-path)#?
  append-after  Add an entry after a specified index
  default       Set a command to its default(s)
  do            Run an exec mode command (alias command run)
  exit         Exit from the current command mode
  help         Describe the interactive help system
  index        Specify the index of the entry to be added or edited
  list         List part or all of the entries in current explicit path
  log          Configure logging settings
  macro        Run a CLI macro
  next-address Configure an IP address at the last hop of the explicit path
  no           Negate a command or set its default(s)
  run          Run an exec mode command (alias command do)
  sleep        Make the Command Interface pause for a specified duration
```

## Flow Cache Configuration Mode

In this mode, you can configure parameters for the aggregation cache.

From Global Configuration mode, type the **ip flow-aggregation cache** command and press Enter.

```
host1(config)#ip flow-aggregation cache
host1(config-flow-cache)#?
  cache      Configure Flow Stats cache parameters
  default    Set a command to its default(s)
  do         Run an exec mode command (alias command run)
  enabled    Start flow cache operation
  exit       Exit from the current command mode
  export     Configure Flow-Cache export parameters
  help      Describe the interactive help system
  log       Configure logging settings
  macro     Run a CLI macro
  no        Negate a command or set its default(s)
  run       Run an exec mode command (alias command do)
  sleep     Make the Command Interface pause for a specified duration
```

## Interface Configuration Mode

From Interface Configuration mode, you can enable many system features for each interface you create. Interface Configuration commands allow you to:

- Create an interface.
- Modify the operation of an interface.
- Access Subinterface Configuration mode.

From Global Configuration mode, type **interface** and identify the interface you want to configure and press Enter.

```
host1(config)#interface atm 0/1
host1(config-if)#
```

The CLI is now in Interface Configuration mode.

```
host1(config)#interface ?
  atm          ATM interface
  fastEthernet IEEE 802.3 fastEthernet interface
  gigabitEthernet IEEE 802.3 gigabitEthernet interface
  hssi         High Speed Serial interface
  ip           Ip shared interface
  ipv6         Ipv6 shared interface
  lag          Link Aggregation interface
  loopback     Loopback interface
  mlframe-relay Multilink frame-relay interface
  mlppp        Multilink PPP interface
  null         Null interface
  pos          Packet over SONET interface
  serial       Serial interface
  tunnel       Tunnel interface
```

Some Interface Configuration commands can affect general interface parameters, such as bandwidth and clock rate. For interface-specific commands, such as commands for ATM interfaces, see the appropriate chapter in this documentation set.



**NOTE:** Although it appears in the list of configurable interfaces, you cannot configure any values on a null interface. For information about using the null interface, see *JUNOS IP Services Configuration Guide*.

## IP NAT Pool Configuration Mode

In this mode, you can specify the information that the system uses in creating IP Network Address Translation (NAT) pools. From Global Configuration mode, type **ip nat pool multiplerange prefix-length** and press Enter.

```
host1(config)#ip nat pool multiplerange prefix-length 30
host1(config-ipnat-pool)#?
address  Configure address ranges
default  Set a command to its default(s)
do       Run an exec mode command (alias command run)
exit     Exit from the current command mode
help     Describe the interactive help system
log      Configure logging settings
macro    Run a CLI macro
no       Negate a command or set its default(s)
run      Run an exec mode command (alias command do)
sleep    Make the Command Interface pause for a specified duration
```

## IP PIM Data MDT Configuration Mode

In this mode, you can specify parameters for data MDTs.

From Global Configuration mode, type **ip pim data-mdt**, and press Enter:

```
host1:pe1:pe13(config)#ip pim data-mdt
host1:western:eastern(config-ip-pim-data-mdt)#?
default      Set a command to its default(s)
do           Run an exec mode command (alias command run)
exit         Exit from the current command mode
help         Describe the interactive help system
log          Configure logging settings
macro        Run a CLI macro
mdt-data-delay  Configure MDT_DATA_DELAY timeout
mdt-data-holdown  Configure MDT_DATA_HOLDOWN timeout
mdt-data-timeout  Configure MDT_DATA_TIMEOUT
mdt-interval   Configure MDT_INTERVAL timer
no           Negate a command or set its default(s)
route-map     Configure route-map
run          Run an exec mode command (alias command do)
sleep        Make the Command Interface pause for a specified duration
tunnel       Configure tunnel parameters
```



## IP Service Profile Configuration Mode

In this mode, you can specify the information that the system uses in creating IP service profiles.

From Global Configuration mode, type **ip service-profile** and the service profile name, and press Enter.

```
host1(config)#ip service-profile radius
host1(config-service-profile)#?
  default      Set a command to its default(s)
  do           Run an exec mode command (alias command run)
  domain       Configure a username domain
  exit         Exit from the current command mode
  help         Describe the interactive help system
  include      Configure an attribute to be included in a username
  log          Configure logging settings
  macro        Run a CLI macro
  no           Negate a command or set its default(s)
  password     Configure a user password
  run          Run an exec mode command (alias command do)
  sleep        Make the Command Interface pause for a specified duration
  user-name    Configure a user name
  user-prefix  Configure a username prefix
```

## IPSec CA Identity Configuration Mode

In this mode, you can specify the information that the system uses in online certificate requests and during negotiations with its peers.

From Global Configuration mode, type **ipsec ca identity**, and press Enter.

```
host1(config)#ipsec ca identity
host1(config-ca-identity)#?
  crl          Certificate Revocation List checking
  default      Set a command to its default(s)
  do           Run an exec mode command (alias command run)
  enrollment   Configure enrollment parameters
  exit         Exit from the current command mode
  help         Describe the interactive help system
  issuer-identifier issuer identifier
  log          Configure logging settings
  macro        Run a CLI macro
  no           Negate a command or set its default(s)
  root         Specify root proxy
  run          Run an exec mode command (alias command do)
  sleep        Make the Command Interface pause for a specified
```

## IPSec Identity Configuration Mode

In this mode, you can specify the information that the system uses in offline certificate requests and during negotiations with its peers.

From Global Configuration mode, type **ipsec identity**, and press Enter.

```

host1(config)#ipsec identity
host1(config-ipsec-identity)#?
  common-name  Common Name
  country      Country name
  default      Set a command to its default(s)
  do           Run an exec mode command (alias command run)
  domain-name  Domain name
  exit         Exit from the current command mode
  help         Describe the interactive help system
  log          Configure logging settings
  macro        Run a CLI macro
  no           Negate a command or set its default(s)
  organization Organization name
  sleep        Make the Command Interface pause for a specified duration

```

## IPSec IKE Policy Configuration Mode

In this mode, you can create an IKE policy, which is used during IKE phase 1 negotiation.

From the Global Configuration mode, type **ipsec ike-policy-rule** and the *policyNumber*, and press Enter.

```

host1(config)#ipsec ike-policy-rule 10
host1(config-ike-policy)#?
  aggressive-mode  Allows aggressive mode negotiation for the tunnel
  authentication   Configure the authentication method
  default          Set a command to its default(s)
  do               Run an exec mode command (alias command run)
  encryption       Configure the encryption algorithm within an IKE policy
  exit             Exit from the current command mode
  group            Configure the Diffie-Hellman group identifier
  hash             Configure the hash algorithm within an IKE policy
  help             Describe the interactive help system
  lifetime         Configure the time an SA will live before expiration
  log              Configure logging settings
  macro            Run a CLI macro
  no               Negate a command or set its default(s)
  run              Run an exec mode command (alias command do)
  sleep            Make the Command Interface pause for a specified duration

```

## IPSec Manual Key Configuration Mode

In this mode, you can enter the manual key that a peer uses for authentication during the tunnel establishment phase.

From the Global Configuration mode, type **ipsec key manual pre-share** and the *peerIPaddress*, and press Enter.

```

host1(config)#ipsec key manual pre-share 10.10.1.1
host1(config-manual-key)#?
  default  Set a command to its default(s)
  do       Run an exec mode command (alias command run)
  exit     Exit from the current command mode
  help     Describe the interactive help system
  key      Manually specify a key

```

log	Configure logging settings
macro	Run a CLI macro
masked-key	Enter a masked key (not for manual entry, show config generates)
no	Negate a command or set its default(s)
run	Run an exec mode command (alias command do)
sleep	Make the Command Interface pause for a specified duration

### IPSec Peer Public Key Configuration Mode

In this mode, you can configure the ISAKMP/IKE public key that a remote peer uses for RSA authentication during the tunnel establishment phase without the need for a digital certificate.

From Global Configuration mode, type **ipsec key pubkey-chain rsa** and either the IP address or fully qualified domain name of the remote peer, and press Enter.

```
host1(config)#ipsec key pubkey-chain rsa address 192.168.50.5
host1(config-peer-public-key)#?
  default      Set a command to its default(s)
  do           Run an exec mode command (alias command run)
  exit         Exit from the current command mode
  help        Describe the interactive help system
  key-string   Enter key string
  log          Configure logging settings
  macro        Run a CLI macro
  no           Negate a command or set its default(s)
  run          Run an exec mode command (alias command do)
  sleep        Make the Command Interface pause for a specified duration
```

### IPSec Transport Profile Configuration Mode

In this mode, you can configure an IP Security (IPSec) transport profile, which is used for Layer 2 Tunneling Protocol (L2TP) over IPSec connections.

From the Global Configuration mode, type **ipsec transport profile**, the *profileName*, **virtual-router vrName**, **ip address ipAddress**, and press Enter.

```
host1(config)#ipsec transport profile secureL2tp virtual-router default ip address 0.0.0.0
host1(config-ipsec-transport-profile)#?
  application  Configure the application type that is protected by the l2tp
  default      Set a command to its default(s)
  do           Run an exec mode command (alias command run)
  exit         Exit from the current command mode
  help        Describe the interactive help system
  lifetime     Configure the renegotiation time
  local        Configure local endpoint of the transport connection
  log          Configure logging settings
  macro        Run a CLI macro
  no           Negate a command or set its default(s)
  pfs          Configure perfect forward secrecy
  run          Run an exec mode command (alias command do)
  sleep        Make the Command Interface pause for a specified duration
  transform-set Configure the transform set used by ipsec transport profile
```

## IPSec Tunnel Profile Configuration Mode

In this mode, you can configure a profile of an IPSec tunnel.

From Global Configuration mode, type **ipsec tunnel profile** and the *profileName*, and press Enter.

```

host1(config)#ipsec tunnel profile profile1
host1(config-ipsec-tunnel-profile)#?
  default      Set a command to its default(s)
  do           Run an exec mode command (alias command run)
  domain-suffix  Configure a domain suffix to be appended to users on
                this profile
  exit         Exit from the current command mode
  extended-authentication  Configure extended authentication parameters
  help        Describe the interactive help system
  ike         Configure IKE characteristics
  ip          Configure local IP characteristics
  lifetime    Configure the phase 2 life parameters
  local       Configure local characteristics
  log         Configure logging settings
  macro       Run a CLI macro
  max-interfaces  Configure the maximum allowed dynamic interface
                instantiations
  no          Negate a command or set its default(s)
  peer        Configure peer characteristics
  pfs         Configure the phase 2 perfect forward secrecy
  run         Run an exec mode command (alias command do)
  sleep       Make the Command Interface pause for a specified
                duration
  transform   Configure the phase 2 transforms allowed on this
                IPSEC tunnel profile
  tunnel      Configure tunnel parameters

```

## IP Tunnel Destination Profile Mode

In this mode, you can specify parameters for GRE or DVMRP dynamic tunnels.

From Global Configuration mode, type **gre destination profile** or **dvmrp destination profile** and the destination profile name, and press Enter.

```

host1(config)#gre destination profile global
host1(config-dest-profile)#?
  default      Set a command to its default(s)
  do           Run an exec mode command (alias command run)
  enable       Enable a tunnel parameter
  exit        Exit from the current command mode
  help        Describe the interactive help system
  log         Configure logging settings
  macro       Run a CLI macro
  no          Negate a command or set its default(s)
  profile      Assign a profile
  run         Run an exec mode command (alias command do)
  sleep       Make the Command Interface pause for a specified duration
  tunnel      Configure a tunnel parameter

```

```

host1(config)#dvmrp destination profile global
host1(config-dest-profile)#?
  default  Set a command to its default(s)
  do       Run an exec mode command (alias command run)
  enable   Enable a tunnel parameter
  exit     Exit from the current command mode
  help     Describe the interactive help system
  log      Configure logging settings
  macro    Run a CLI macro
  no       Negate a command or set its default(s)
  profile  Assign a profile
  run      Run an exec mode command (alias command do)
  sleep    Make the Command Interface pause for a specified duration
  tunnel   Configure a tunnel parameter

```

## IPv6 Local Pool Configuration Mode

In this mode, you can specify the IPv6 local address pool from which prefixes are allocated to the requesting router in networks that use DHCPv6. From Global Configuration mode, type **ipv6 local pool** *poolName* and press **Enter**.

```

host1(config)#ipv6 local pool dhcpv6pd_pool
host1(config-v6-local)#?
  default          Set a command to its default(s)
  dns-domain-search Specify a search domain
  dns-server       Specify the IPv6 DNS server address
  do               Run an exec mode command (alias command run)
  exclude-prefix   Specify prefix(es) to be excluded from allocation
  exit             Exit from the current command mode
  help             Describe the interactive help system
  log              Configure logging settings
  macro            Run a CLI macro
  no               Negate a command or set its default(s)
  prefix           Specify the IPv6 prefix range
  run              Run an exec mode command (alias command do)
  sleep            Make the Command Interface pause for a specified duration

```



**NOTE:** You must enable the IPv6 local address pool feature to be able to configure IPv6 local address pools.

---

## L2 Transport Load-Balancing-Circuit Configuration Mode

In this mode, you can specify a member subinterface for a Martini layer 2 circuit that is associated with a load-balancing group.

From Global Configuration mode, type **mpls l2transport load-balancing-group**, specify a group number and a Martini circuit, and press **Enter**.

```

host1(config)#mpls l2transport load-balancing-group 100 mpls-relay 10.1.1.1 30
host1(config-l2transport-load-balancing-circuit)#?
  default  Set a command to its default(s)
  do       Run an exec mode command (alias command run)

```

exit	Exit from the current command mode
help	Describe the interactive help system
log	Configure logging settings
macro	Run a CLI macro
member	Configure members of a l2transport load-balancing circuit
no	Negate a command or set its default(s)
run	Run an exec mode command (alias command do)
sleep	Make the Command Interface pause for a specified duration

## L2TP Destination Profile Configuration Mode

In this mode, you can create the destination profile that defines the location of an L2TP Access Concentrator (LAC) and define the attributes used when an L2TP Network Server (LNS) communicates with an LAC. The destination is necessary to enable an LAC to connect to the LNS.

From Global Configuration mode, type **l2tp destination profile**, the *profileName*, an *ipAddress*, and press Enter.

```
host1(config)#l2tp destination profile augusta ip address 123.45.76.16
host1(config-l2tp-dest-profile)#?
  default Set a command to its default(s)
  do      Run an exec mode command (alias command run)
  exit    Exit from the current command mode
  help    Describe the interactive help system
  log     Configure logging settings
  macro   Run a CLI macro
  no      Negate a command or set its default(s)
  remote  Configure L2TP remote parameters
  run     Run an exec mode command (alias command do)
  sleep   Make the Command Interface pause for a specified duration
```

## L2TP Destination Profile Host Configuration Mode

In this mode, you can set and modify L2TP host profile attributes, such as the proxy Link Control Protocol (LCP), the local hostname, the local IP address, or the interface profile.

From Global Configuration mode, enter L2TP Destination Profile mode (see above), and type **remote host** and a *hostName*, and press Enter.

```
host1(config-l2tp-dest-profile)#remote host george
host1(config-l2tp-dest-profile-host)#?
  default Set a command to its default(s)
  disable Disable L2TP parameter for remote host
  do      Run an exec mode command (alias command run)
  enable  Enable L2TP parameter for remote host
  exit    Exit from the current command mode
  help    Describe the interactive help system
  local   Configure L2TP local parameters for remote host
  log     Configure logging settings
  macro   Run a CLI macro
  no      Negate a command or set its default(s)
  profile Assign a profile for remote host
  run     Run an exec mode command (alias command do)
```

```
sleep    Make the Command Interface pause for a specified duration
tunnel   Configure L2TP tunnel parameters for remote host
```

### ***L2TP Tunnel Switch Profile Configuration Mode***

In this mode, you can create an L2TP tunnel switch profile, which configures the L2TP tunnel switching behavior for the interfaces to which this profile is assigned. Issue the **avp** command from this mode to define the L2TP tunnel switching behavior for a specified L2TP attribute-value pair (AVP) type.

From Global Configuration mode, type the **l2tp switch-profile** command followed by an alphanumeric profile name of up to 64 characters, and press Enter.

```
host1(config)#l2tp switch-profile concord
host1(config-l2tp-tunnel-switch-profile)#?
avp          Configure AVP behavior
default      Set a command to its default(s)
do           Run an exec mode command (alias command run)
exit         Exit from the current command mode
help         Describe the interactive help system
log          Configure logging settings
macro        Run a CLI macro
no           Negate a command or set its default(s)
run          Run an exec mode command (alias command do)
sleep        Make the Command Interface pause for a specified duration
```

### ***Layer 2 Control Configuration Mode***

In this mode, you can define session timeout values and access the L2C Neighbor Configuration mode to specify the L2C neighbor.

From Global Configuration mode, type **l2c** and press Enter.

```
host1(config)#l2c
host1(config-l2c)#?
default      Set a command to its default(s)
do           Run an exec mode command (alias command run)
exit         Exit from the current command mode
help         Describe the interactive help system
log          Configure logging settings
macro        Run a CLI macro
neighbor     Configure l2c neighbor parameters
no           Negate a command or set its default(s)
run          Run an exec mode command (alias command do)
session-timeout Configure the l2c time-out attribute
sleep        Make the Command Interface pause for a specified duration
```

### ***Layer 2 Control Neighbor Configuration Mode***

In this mode, you can specify a neighbor ID and the maximum number of branches that the neighbor can have.

From Global Configuration mode, type **neighbor** and press Enter.

```

host1(config-l2c)#neighbor
host1(config-l2c-neighbor)#?
  default      Set a command to its default(s)
  do           Run an exec mode command (alias command run)
  exit         Exit from the current command mode
  help        Describe the interactive help system
  id           Configure neighbor-id associated with neighbor
  log          Configure logging settings
  macro        Run a CLI macro
  max-branches Configure max number of branches for neighbor
  no           Negate a command or set its default(s)
  run          Run an exec mode command (alias command do)
  sleep        Make the Command Interface pause for a specified duration

```

## LDP Configuration Mode

In this mode, you can create and configure MPLS Label Distribution Protocol (LDP) profile parameters.

From Global Configuration mode, type **mpls ldp interface profile** and the *profileName*, and press Enter.

```

host1(config)#mpls ldp interface profile shell
host1(config-ldp)#?
  default      Set a command to its default(s)
  do           Run an exec mode command (alias command run)
  exit         Exit from the current command mode
  hello        Configure hello parameters
  help        Describe the interactive help system
  log          Configure logging settings
  macro        Run a CLI macro
  no           Negate a command or set its default(s)
  run          Run an exec mode command (alias command do)
  sleep        Make the Command Interface pause for a specified duration

```

## Line Configuration Mode

In this mode, you can modify the operation of a virtual terminal (vty) line.

From Global Configuration mode, type the **line vty** command and either the *lineNumber* or the *rangeOfLineNumbers* you want to configure, and press Enter.



**NOTE:** The factory default is 5 vty lines. However, you can increase the number of vty lines available by typing the start number and end number of the vty line range. Once you execute the **line vty** command, you will have access to line numbers up to the ending line number.

---

```

host1(config)#line vty 0 29
host1(config-line)#?
  access-class      Restrict or permit telnet access based on an access list
  data-character-bits Set the number of bits per character used by the display
  default           Set a command to its default(s)

```



<code>do</code>	Run an exec mode command (alias command <code>run</code> )
<code>exec-banner</code>	Enable the exec banner
<code>exec-timeout</code>	Set the inactivity timeout
<code>exit</code>	Exit from the current command mode
<code>help</code>	Describe the interactive help system
<code>log</code>	Configure logging settings
<code>login</code>	Require the use of passwords for vty logins
<code>macro</code>	Run a CLI macro
<code>motd-banner</code>	Enable the message of the day banner
<code>no</code>	Negate a command or set its default(s)
<code>password</code>	Configure the password for line access
<code>run</code>	Run an exec mode command (alias command <code>do</code> )
<code>sleep</code>	Make the Command Interface pause for a specified duration
<code>timeout</code>	Specify the login timeout value for the selected line(s)



**NOTE:** The **privilege** command is available in Line Configuration mode when the user is logged in at privilege level 15. For more information, see “Privileged-Level Access” on page 49 and “CLI Command Privileges” on page 52 .

## Local IPsec Transport Profile Configuration

In this mode, you can configure preshared IKE keys for IPsec transport profiles.

From the IPsec Transport Profile Configuration mode, type **local ip address** and the *ipAddress*, and press Enter.

```

host1(config-ipsec-transport-profile)#local ip address 10.10.1.1
host1(config-ipsec-transport-profile-local)#?
  default      Set a command to its default(s)
  do           Run an exec mode command (alias command run)
  exit         Exit from the current command mode
  help         Describe the interactive help system
  log          Configure logging settings
  macro        Run a CLI macro
  no           Negate a command or set its default(s)
  pre-share    Specify pre-shared group key based on local ip address
  pre-share-masked A pre-encrypted key, generated by show config rather than
                interactive
  run          Run an exec mode command (alias command do)
  sleep        Make the Command Interface pause for a specified duration

```

## Local User Configuration Mode

In this mode, you can configure parameters for user entries in local user databases.

From the Global Configuration mode, type either **aaa local username** and the *userName* and *databaseName* or **aaa local database** and the *databaseName*. Then press Enter.

```

host1(config)#aaa local username curt38 database westLocal12
host1(config-local-user)#?
  default      Set a command to its default(s)

```

<code>do</code>	Run an exec mode command (alias command <code>run</code> )
<code>exit</code>	Exit from the current command mode
<code>help</code>	Describe the interactive help system
<code>ip-address</code>	Specify an IP address for the user
<code>ip-address-pool</code>	Specify an IP address pool for the user
<code>log</code>	Configure logging settings
<code>macro</code>	Run a CLI macro
<code>no</code>	Negate a command or set its default(s)
<code>operational-virtual-router</code>	Specify an operational virtual router for the user
<code>password</code>	Configure the password
<code>run</code>	Run an exec mode command (alias command <code>do</code> )
<code>secret</code>	Configure the secret
<code>sleep</code>	Make the Command Interface pause for a specified duration
<code>support</code>	Enter Support mode

## Map Class Configuration Mode

In this mode, you can specify Frame Relay End-to-End fragmentation and reassembly for a map class. Optionally, you can specify the maximum payload size of a fragment or specify fragmentation only or reassembly only.

From Global Configuration mode, type the **map-class frame-relay** command and the *mapClassName* you want to configure, and press Enter.

```
host1(config)#map-class frame-relay testmapclass
host1(config-map-class)#?
  default  Set a command to its default(s)
  do       Run an exec mode command (alias command run)
  exit     Exit from the current command mode
  frame-relay  Configure frame relay parameters
  help     Describe the interactive help system
  log      Configure logging settings
  macro    Run a CLI macro
  no       Negate a command or set its default(s)
  run      Run an exec mode command (alias command do)
  sleep    Make the Command Interface pause for a specified duration
```

## Map List Configuration Mode

In this mode, you can configure map list parameters. In Map List Configuration mode, commands such as **map-list** and **ip atm-vc** are used to configure ATM NBMA interfaces.

From Global Configuration mode, type **map-list** and a *mapListName*, and press Enter.

```
host1(config)#map-list mjt3330
host1(config-map-list)#?
  default  Set a command to its default(s)
  do       Run an exec mode command (alias command run)
  exit     Exit from the current command mode
  help     Describe the interactive help system
  ip       Add IP address to the map
  log      Configure logging settings
  macro    Run a CLI macro
```

no	Negate a command or set its default(s)
run	Run an exec mode command (alias command do)
sleep	Make the Command Interface pause for a specified duration

## Parent Group Configuration Mode

In this mode, you can configure a parent group in a hierarchy.

From Global Configuration mode, type the **parent-group** command and specify a *parentGroupName*, and press Enter.

```
host1(config)#parent-group group1
host1(config-parent-group)#?
  default      Set a command to its default(s)
  do           Run an exec mode command (alias command run)
  exit         Exit from the current command mode
  help         Describe the interactive help system
  log          Configure logging settings
  macro        Run a CLI macro
  next-parent  Specify the next parent group to call in hierarchy
  no           Negate a command or set its default(s)
  rate-limit-profile Specify a hierarchical rate limit profile
  run          Run an exec mode command (alias command do)
  sleep        Make the Command Interface pause for a specified
```

## Policy List Configuration Mode

In this mode, you can configure a policy list—that is, a set of rules—that you can attach to an interface. You can modify a policy list and update it wherever the policy list is used in the configuration.

To create a policy list, from Global Configuration mode type **policy-list** command preceded by the type of policy and press Enter. For example,

```
host1(config)#l2tp policy-list routeL2tp100
```



**NOTE:** If you do not include the type of policy, the system creates an IP policy list.

---

```
host1(config)#ip policy-list routeForABBCCorp
host1(config-policy-list)#?
  classifier-group Specify the classifier list
  color            Create a color policy
  default          Set a command to its default(s)
  do              Run an exec mode command
  exit            Exit from the current command mode
  filter           Create a filter policy
  forward          Create a forward policy
  help            Describe the interactive help system
  log             Configure logging settings
  macro           Run a CLI macro
  mark            Create a set TOS byte policy
  next-hop        Create a next-hop policy
  next-interface  Create a next-interface policy
```

<b>no</b>	Negate a command or set its default(s)
<b>rate-limit-profile</b>	Create a rate-limit policy
<b>run</b>	Run an exec mode command (alias command do)
<b>sleep</b>	Make the Command Interface pause for a specified duration
<b>suspend</b>	Suspend a policy rule
<b>traffic-class</b>	Create a traffic class policy
<b>traffic-shape-profile</b>	Create a traffic-shape policy
<b>user-packet-class</b>	Create a user packet class policy

## Policy List Parent Group Configuration Mode

In this mode, you can configure a parent group in a hierarchy.

From Policy List Configuration Mode, type the **parent-group** command and specify a *parentGroupName*, and press Enter.

```

host1(config)#policy-list grouppol1
host1(config-policy-list)#parent-group group1
host1(config-policy-list-parent-group)#?
  default      Set a command to its default(s)
  do           Run an exec mode command (alias command run)
  exit         Exit from the current command mode
  help        Describe the interactive help system
  log         Configure logging settings
  macro       Run a CLI macro
  no          Negate a command or set its default(s)
  rate-limit-profile Specify the hierarchical rate limit profile
  run         Run an exec mode command (alias command do)
  sleep       Make the Command Interface pause for a specified

```

## Policy Parameter Configuration Mode

In this mode, you can configure a policy parameter.

From Global Configuration mode, type the **policy-parameter** command and specify a *policyParameterType*, the **hierarchical** keyword, and press Enter.

```

host1(config)#policy-parameter param1 hierarchical
host1(config-policy-parameter)#?
  aggregation-node Configure the aggregation node value
  default          Set a command to its default(s)
  do              Run an exec mode command (alias command run)
  exit            Exit from the current command mode
  help           Describe the interactive help system
  log            Configure logging settings
  macro          Run a CLI macro
  no             Negate a command or set its default(s)
  run            Run an exec mode command (alias command do)
  sleep          Make the Command Interface pause for a specified time

```

## PPPoE Service Name Table Configuration Mode

In this mode, you can configure entries for a PPPoE service name table. PPPoE clients use these entries to request that an access concentrator (AC), such as an E Series

router, support certain services. Issue the **service** command from this mode to configure a specific service name entry, or to specify that the AC should ignore (drop), rather than respond to (terminate, the default action), a PPPoE Active Discovery Initiation (PADI) request from a client containing the empty service name tag.

From Global Configuration mode, type the **pppoe-service-name-table** command followed by an alphanumeric table name of up to 32 characters, and press Enter.

```
host1(config)#pppoe-service-name-table serviceTable1
host1(config-pppoe-service-name-table)#?
  default  Set a command to its default(s)
  do       Run an exec mode command (alias command run)
  exit     Exit from the current command mode
  help     Describe the interactive help system
  log      Configure logging settings
  macro    Run a CLI macro
  no       Negate a command or set its default(s)
  run      Run an exec mode command (alias command do)
  service  Configure service-name table entries
  sleep    Make the Command Interface pause for a specified duration
```

## Profile Configuration Mode

In this mode, you can configure a profile to subsequently configure dynamic IP interfaces.

From Global Configuration mode, type the **profile** command followed by a profile name of up to 80 characters, and press Enter.

```
host1(config)#profile germany78
host1(config-profile)#?
  default  Set a command to its default(s)
  do       Run an exec mode command (alias command run)
  exit     Exit from the current command mode
  help     Describe the interactive help system
  ip       Configure IP characteristics
  l2tp     Configure L2TP characteristics
  log      Configure logging settings
  macro    Run a CLI macro
  no       Negate a command or set its default(s)
  ppp      Configure PPP parameters
  pppoe    Pppoe information
  run      Run an exec mode command (alias command do)
  sleep    Make the Command Interface pause for a specified duration
```

## QoS Interface Set Configuration Mode

In this mode, you can configure QoS interface sets.

From Global Configuration mode, type the **qos-interface-set** command followed by an *interfaceSetName*, and press Enter.

```
host1(config)#qos-interface-set video
host1(config-interface-set)#?
  default  Set a command to its default(s)
```

<code>do</code>	Run an exec mode command (alias command <code>run</code> )
<code>exit</code>	Exit from the current command mode
<code>help</code>	Describe the interactive help system
<code>log</code>	Configure logging settings
<code>macro</code>	Run a CLI macro
<code>member-interface-type</code>	Define the member interface type of the interface set
<code>no</code>	Negate a command or set its default(s)
<code>qos-interface-parent</code>	Select a QoS interface super set as the parent of this interface.
<code>qos-parameter</code>	Instantiate a QoS parameter for this interface
<code>qos-profile</code>	Attach/Detach a qos-profile
<code>restricted</code>	Define restricted interface
<code>run</code>	Run an exec mode command (alias command <code>do</code> )
<code>sleep</code>	Make the Command Interface pause for a specified duration

## QoS Interface Superset Configuration Mode

In this mode, you can configure QoS interface supersets.

From Global Configuration mode, type the **qos-interface-superset** command followed by an *interfaceSupersetName*, and press Enter.

```

host1(config)#qos-interface-superset voice
host1(config-interface-set)#?
  default      Set a command to its default(s)
  do           Run an exec mode command (alias command run)
  exit         Exit from the current command mode
  help         Describe the interactive help system
  log          Configure logging settings
  macro        Run a CLI macro
  no           Negate a command or set its default(s)
  qos-interface-parent Define parent of the interface set
  qos-parameter Instantiate a QoS parameter for this interface
  qos-profile  Attach/Detach a qos-profile
  restricted   Define restricted interface
  run          Run an exec mode command (alias command do)
  sleep        Make the Command Interface pause for a specified
               duration

```

## QoS Parameter Definition Configuration Mode

In this mode, you can configure QoS parameter definitions.

From Global Configuration mode, type the **qos-parameter-define** command followed by a *QosParameterDefinitionName*, and press Enter.

```

host1(config)#qos-parameter-define vpSharedShaper1
host1(config-qos-parameter-define)#?
  controlled-interface-type Configure the valid interface types controlled by
                           this parameter
  default                  Set a command to its default(s)
  do                       Run an exec mode command (alias command run)
  exit                    Exit from the current command mode
  help                    Describe the interactive help system
  instance-interface-type Configure the interface types upon which

```

	parameters can be instantiated
log	Configure logging settings
macro	Run a CLI macro
no	Negate a command or set its default(s)
range	Set the valid range of a QoS parameter
run	Run an exec mode command (alias command do)
sleep	Make the Command Interface pause for a specified duration
subscriber-interface-type	Configure interface types representing subscriber interfaces

## QoS Profile Configuration Mode

In this mode, you can specify queue profiles and scheduler profiles in combination with interface types.

From Global Configuration mode, type the **qos-profile** command followed by a *QosProfileName*, and press Enter.

```

host1(config)#qos-profile testabc
host1(config-qos-profile)#?
atm          ATM interface
  atm-vc     ATM-VC interface
  bridge     Bridge interface
  default    Set a command to its default(s)
  do         Run an exec mode command (alias command run)
  ethernet   Ethernet interface
  exit       Exit from the current command mode
  fr-vc      Frame Relay subinterface
  help       Describe the interactive help system
  ip         IP interface
  ip-tunnel  IP FROM-tunnel interface
  l2tp-tunnel L2tp FROM-tunnel interface
  log        Configure logging settings
  lsp        Lsp (MPLS) interface
  macro      Run a CLI macro
  no         Negate a command or set its default(s)
  run        Run an exec mode command (alias command do)
  serial     Serial interface
  server-port Server Port interface
  sleep      Make the Command Interface pause for a specified duration
  svlan      Stacked VLAN subinterface
  vlan       VLAN subinterface

```

## QoS Shared Shaper Control Configuration

In this mode, you can configure variables within the simple shared shaper algorithm to control the minimum dynamic rate for all simple shared shapers on the router.

From Global Configuration mode, type the **qos-shared-shaper-control** command and press Enter.

```

host1(config)#qos-shared-shaper-control
host1(config-qos-shared-shaper-control)#?
convergence-factor    Configure how quickly the simple shared shaper
                      converges to a calculated rate

```

<code>default</code>	Set a command to its default(s)
<code>do</code>	Run an exec mode command (alias command <code>run</code> )
<code>exit</code>	Exit from the current command mode
<code>help</code>	Describe the interactive help system
<code>log</code>	Configure logging settings
<code>macro</code>	Run a CLI macro
<code>maximum-voql</code>	Configure the simple shared shaper's maximum virtual output queue length
<code>minimum-dynamic-rate-percent</code>	Configure the minimum dynamic rate for a simple shared shaper as a percentage of the shared-shaping-rate
<code>no</code>	Negate a command or set its default(s)
<code>reaction-factor</code>	Configure how the simple shared shaper reacts to changes in measured rate
<code>run</code>	Run an exec mode command (alias command <code>do</code> )
<code>sleep</code>	Make the Command Interface pause for a specified duration

## Queue Profile Configuration Mode

In this mode, you can configure queue profiles and various queue profile parameters, such as constraints on queue lengths or queue buffer weights.

From Global Configuration mode, type the **queue-profile** command followed by a *queueProfileName*, and press Enter.

```

host1(config)#queue-profile testabcd1234
host1(config-queue)#?
  buffer-weight      Set drop threshold in proportion to this weight
  committed-length   Set min and max constraints for committed threshold
  conformed-fraction Set conformed threshold as a percentage of committed
  conformed-length   Set min and max constraints for conformed threshold
  default            Set a command to its default(s)
  do                 Run an exec mode command (alias command run)
  exceeded-fraction  Set exceeded threshold as a percentage of committed
  exceeded-length    Set min and max constraints for exceeded threshold
  exit               Exit from the current command mode
  help               Describe the interactive help system
  log                Configure logging settings
  macro              Run a CLI macro
  no                 Negate a command or set its default(s)
  run                Run an exec mode command (alias command do)
  sleep              Make the Command Interface pause for a specified duration

```

## RADIUS Configuration Mode

In this mode, you can configure various parameters of your RADIUS authentication, accounting, and dynamic-request servers.

From Global Configuration mode, type either the **radius authentication server**, **radius accounting server**, or **radius dynamic-request server** command with the server *ipAddress*, and press Enter.

```

host1(config)#radius authentication server 1.2.1.3
host1(config-radius)#?
  deadtime           Configure the amount of time a timed-out server is dropped for usage

```



default	Set a command to its default(s)
do	Run an exec mode command (alias command run)
exit	Exit from the current command mode
help	Describe the interactive help system
key	Configure the secret used in RADIUS client to server exchange
log	Configure logging settings
macro	Run a CLI macro
max-sessions	Configure the number of outstanding requests allowed to the server
no	Negate a command or set its default(s)
retransmit	Configure the number of times to retransmit RADIUS request before failing
run	Run an exec mode command (alias command do)
sleep	Make the Command Interface pause for a specified duration
timeout	Configure the number of seconds to wait for a RADIUS response before retransmitting
udp-port	Configure the RADIUS server's UDP port

## RADIUS Relay Configuration Mode

In this mode, you can configure various parameters of your RADIUS relay authentication and accounting servers.

From Global Configuration mode, type either the **radius relay authentication server** or **radius relay accounting server** command, and press Enter.

```
host1(config)#radius authentication server
radius authentication serverhost1(config-radius-relay)#?
  default  Set a command to its default(s)
  do       Run an exec mode command (alias command run)
  exit     Exit from the current command mode
  help     Describe the interactive help system
  key      Configure the secret used in RADIUS client to relay server exchange
  log      Configure logging settings
  macro    Run a CLI macro
  no       Negate a command or set its default(s)
  run      Run an exec mode command (alias command do)
  sleep    Make the Command Interface pause for a specified duration
  udp-port Configure the RADIUS relay server's udp port
```

## Rate Limit Profile Configuration Mode

In this mode, you can set parameters for an IP or L2TP rate-limit profile, which is a set of bandwidth attributes and associated actions that become part of a policy list. The policy list is then applied to the ingress or egress of an interface.

To create a hierarchical rate-limit-profile for an IP interface, from Global Configuration mode type **rate-limit-profile** and a *profileName*, and add the keyword **hierarchical**, and press Enter.

To create an IP rate-limit profile, from Global Configuration mode type **ip rate-limit-profile** and a *profileName*, and press Enter.

To create an L2TP rate limit profile, from Global Configuration mode type **l2tp rate-limit-profile** and a *profileName*, and press Enter.



**NOTE:** If you do not include either the **ip** or **l2tp** keywords, the system creates an IP rate limit profile.

```

host1(config)#ip rate-limit-profile fm78930
host1(config-rate-limit-profile)#?
committed-action  Set the committed access rate action
committed-burst   Set the committed access rate burst size in Bytes
committed-rate    Set the committed access rate value in bits per second
conformed-action  Set the conformed access rate action
default           Set a command to its default(s)
do                Run an exec mode command (alias command run)
exceeded-action   Set the exceeded action
exit              Exit from the current command mode
help              Describe the interactive help system
log               Configure logging settings
macro             Run a CLI macro
mask-val          Set mask to be applied with mark values
no                Negate a command or set its default(s)
peak-burst        Set the peak burst size in Bytes
peak-rate         Set the peak access rate in bits per second
run               Run an exec mode command (alias command do)
sleep             Make the Command Interface pause for a specified duration

```

## Redundancy Configuration Mode

In this mode, you can activate high availability (SRP switchover) by issuing the mode high-availability command.

From Global Configuration mode, type the **redundancy** command and press Enter.

```

host1(config-router)#redundancy
host1(config-redundancy)#?
default  Set a command to its default(s)
do       Run an exec mode command (alias command run)
exit     Exit from the current command mode
help     Describe the interactive help system
log      Configure logging settings
macro    Run a CLI macro
mode     Configure redundancy mode
no       Negate a command or set its default(s)
run      Run an exec mode command (alias command do)
sleep    Make the Command Interface pause for a specified duration

```

## Remote Neighbor Configuration Mode

In this mode, you can configure remote neighbor parameters for Routing Information Protocol (RIP), Protocol Independent Multicast (PIM), and Open Shortest Path First (OSPF).

From Global Configuration mode, type either **router rip**, **router pim**, or **router ospf** and the *processID*. Press Enter. You are now in Router Configuration mode.

From Router Configuration mode, type the **remote-neighbor** command and the appropriate attributes, and press Enter.

```
host1(config-router)#remote-neighbor 10.13.5.61
host1(config-router-rn)#?
  authentication      Configure authentication
  default             Set a command to its default(s)
  distribute-list     Specify an access list to be a distribute list
  do                 Run an exec mode command (alias command run)
  exit               Exit from the current command mode
  exit-remote-neighbor Exit the remote-neighbor configuration mode
  help              Describe the interactive help system
  log               Configure logging settings
  macro            Run a CLI macro
  no               Negate a command or set its default(s)
  receive          Set reception characteristics
  route-map        Specify a route map to apply to outgoing routes
  run             Run an exec mode command (alias command do)
  send            Set transmit characteristics
  sleep          Make the Command Interface pause for a specified
                  duration
  split-horizon    Enable Split-horizon
  time-to-live     Configure ttl used to send to this neighbor
  update-source    Source address to be used for transmit
```

## Route Map Configuration Mode

In this mode, you can create and modify route maps.

From Global Configuration mode, type the **route-map** command and the appropriate *routeMapNumber*, and press Enter.

```
host1(config)#route-map unis889
host1(config-route-map)#?
  default      Set a command to its default(s)
  do          Run an exec mode command (alias command run)
  exit        Exit from the current command mode
  help       Describe the interactive help system
  log        Configure logging settings
  macro      Run a CLI macro
  match      Identify this entry as requiring an attribute match
  match-set  Identify this entry to match and set attributes
  no         Negate a command or set its default(s)
  run        Run an exec mode command (alias command do)
  set        Configure this entry to set attributes
  sleep      Make the Command Interface pause for a specified duration
```

## Router Configuration Mode

In this mode, you can configure a routing protocol using router commands.

From Global Configuration mode, type the **router** command and the appropriate router attributes, and press Enter.

```
host1(config)#router bgp 2378
host1(config-router)#?
```

address-family	Enter address family configuration mode
aggregate-address	Create an aggregate entry in BGP routing table
auto-summary	Automatic summarization of redistributed routes to their natural network masks
bgp	Configure BGP
default	Set a command to its default(s)
default-fields	Set default fields for show commands
default-information	Configure the distribution of default routing information
disable-dynamic-redistribute	disable dynamic importing of routing information with the latest policy
distance	Configure administrative distances for routes
do	Run an exec mode command (alias command run)
exit	Exit from the current command mode
help	Describe the interactive help system
ip	Configure the type of route to be contributed by this BGP address family
limits	Configure limits on internal BGP tables
log	Configure logging settings
macro	Run a CLI macro
maximum-paths	Configure the maximum number of equal-cost paths
neighbor	Specify neighbor properties
network	Identify a network for BGP to announce
no	Negate a command or set its defaults
overload	Configure BGP behaviour when reaching overload state (no more resources available)
redistribute	Configure the redistribution of routing information from another protocol
rib-out	Configure rib-out storage for all BGP peers
run	Run an exec mode command (alias command do)
sleep	Make the Command Interface pause for a specified duration
synchronization	Enable synchronization with the IGP
table-map	Specify a table map to map external entry attributes into routing table
timers	Configure the keep-alive interval and the hold-time

## RSVP Configuration Mode

In this mode, you can create and configure MPLS Resource Reservation Protocol (RSVP) parameters.

From Global Configuration mode, type **mpls rsvp interface profile** and the *profileName*, and press Enter.

```

host1(config)#mpls rsvp interface profile sprint
host1(config-rsvp)#?
  cleanup-timeout-factor  Configure the timeout factor
  default                 Set a command to its default(s)
  do                     Run an exec mode command (alias command run)
  exit                   Exit from the current command mode
  help                   Describe the interactive help system
  log                    Configure logging settings
  macro                  Run a CLI macro
  no                     Negate a command or set its default(s)
  refresh-period          Configure refresh period
  run                    Run an exec mode command (alias command do)

```

sleep	Make the Command Interface pause for a specified duration
-------	---

## RTR Configuration Mode

In this mode, you can configure Response Time Reporter (RTR) parameters. The RTR feature allows you to monitor your network's performance and its resources by measuring response times and the availability of your network devices.

From Global Configuration mode, type **rtr** and the *mapNumber*, and press Enter.

```
host1(config)#rtr 784078348
host1(config-rtr)#?
  default      Set a command to its default(s)
  do           Run an exec mode command (alias command run)
  exit         Exit from the current command mode
  frequency    Specify the frequency interval
  help         Describe the interactive help system
  hops-of-statistics-kept Specify the hops capture
  log          Configure logging settings
  macro        Run a CLI macro
  max-response-failure Specify the maximum number of consecutive failures
  no           Negate a command or set its default(s)
  operations-per-hop Specify a number of operations per hop
  owner        Specify the owner of entry
  request-data-size Specify the request payload size
  run          Run an exec mode command (alias command do)
  samples-of-history-kept Specify the maximum history samples
  sleep        Make the Command Interface pause for a specified duration
  tag          Specify the user defined tag
  timeout      Specify the operation timeout
  tos          Specify a value for the ToS byte
  type         Specify the type of the entry
```

## Scheduler Profile Configuration Mode

In this mode, you can configure a scheduler profile. You can then set the shaping rate value, enable the strict-priority scheduling for the scheduler node, or set the weighted-round-robin (WRR) value of the scheduler node or queue.

From Global Configuration mode, type **scheduler-profile** and the *scheduleProfileName* that you want to create or configure, and press Enter.

```
host1(config)#scheduler-profile A990
host1(config-scheduler-profile)#?
  default      Set a command to its default(s)
  do           Run an exec mode command (alias command run)
  exit         Exit from the current command mode
  help         Describe the interactive help system
  log          Configure logging settings
  macro        Run a CLI macro
  no           Negate a command or set its default(s)
  run          Run an exec mode command (alias command do)
  shaping-rate Shape the node or queue to the specified rate
  sleep        Make the Command Interface pause for a specified duration
```

<code>strict-priority</code>	Dequeue strict priority packets ahead of other packets
<code>weight</code>	Set the relative weight of the node or queue

## Service Session Profile Configuration Mode

In this mode, you can set and modify Service Manager service session profile attributes, such as time, volume, and statistics.

From Global Configuration mode, type the **service-management service-session-profile** command and the *profileName*, and then press Enter.

```
host1(config)#service-management service-session-profile vodISPI
host1(config-service-session-profile)#?
default      Set a command to its default(s)
do           Run an exec mode command (alias command run)
exit         Exit from the current command mode
help         Describe the interactive help system
log          Configure logging settings
macro        Run a CLI macro
no           Negate a command or set its default(s)
run          Run an exec mode command (alias command do)
sleep        Make the Command Interface pause for a specified duration
statistics    Configure statistics
time         Configure time
volume       Configure volume
```

## SNMP Event Manager Configuration Mode

In this mode, you can configure certain SNMP triggers for events, what occurs when an event is triggered, resource limits for triggers, and some trap notification options.

From Global Configuration mode, type the **snmp-server management-event** command and then press Enter.

```
host1(config)#snmp-server management-event
host1(config-mgmtevent)#?
default      Set a command to its default(s)
do           Run an exec mode command (alias command run)
event        Specify what happens when an event is triggered
exit         Exit from the current command mode
help         Describe the interactive help system
log          Configure logging settings
macro        Run a CLI macro
no           Negate a command or set its default(s)
resource     Specify the resource limits
run          Run an exec mode command (alias command do)
sleep        Make the Command Interface pause for a specified duration
trigger      Specify the conditions that lead to events
```

## Statistics Profile Configuration Mode

In this mode, you can configure a statistics profile. You can then set the rate period during which statistics are gathered, enable statistics gathering, and enable the counting of drop and forwarding events.

From Global Configuration mode, type **statistics-profile** and the *statisticsProfileName* that you want to create or configure, and press Enter.

```
host1(config)#statistics-profile statpro-1
host1(config-statistics-profile)#?
committed-drop-threshold  Set threshold for logging a committed-drop event
conformed-drop-threshold  Set threshold for logging a conformed-drop event
default                  Set a command to its default(s)
do                       Run an exec mode command (alias command run)
exceeded-drop-threshold  Set threshold for logging an exceeded-drop event
exit                     Exit from the current command mode
forwarding-rate-threshold Set threshold for logging a forwarding-rate event
help                     Describe the interactive help system
log                      Configure logging settings
macro                    Run a CLI macro
no                       Negate a command or set its default(s)
rate-period              Set the time period for calculating queue rates
run                      Run an exec mode command (alias command do)
sleep                    Make the Command Interface pause for a specified
                        duration
```

## Subinterface Configuration Mode

In this mode, you can configure one or more virtual interfaces, called *subinterfaces*, on a single physical interface. The system supports this feature with ATM and Frame Relay.

Both ATM and Frame Relay provide permanent virtual circuits (PVCs) that can be grouped under separate subinterfaces configured on a single physical interface. Subinterfaces allow multiple encapsulations for a protocol on a single interface.

From Interface Configuration mode, indicate a subinterface by typing the **interface** command and an *interfaceSpecifier* in *slot/port.subinterface* format, and then press Enter. For example:

```
host1(config-if)#interface atm 3/2.6
host1(config-subif)#
```

## Subscriber Policy Configuration Mode

In this mode, you can configure a policy (a set of forwarding and filtering rules) that defines how a subscriber (client) bridge group interface should handle various packet types. After you define the policy, use the **bridge subscriber-policy** command (from Global Configuration mode) to associate the policy with a bridge group interface.

From Global Configuration mode, type the **subscriber-policy** command followed by an alphanumeric policy name of any character length, and press Enter.

```
host1(config)#subscriber-policy client1
host1(config-policy)#?
arp                Modify arp policy
broadcast          Modify broadcast policy
default            Set a command to its default(s)
do                 Run an exec mode command (alias command run)
exit               Exit from the current command mode
```

help	Describe the interactive help system
ip	Modify ip policy
log	Configure logging settings
macro	Run a CLI macro
mpls	Modify mpls policy
multicast	Modify multicast policy
no	Negate a command or set its default(s)
pppoe	Modify PPPoE policy
relearn	Modify relearn policy
run	Run an exec mode command (alias command do)
sleep	Make the Command Interface pause for a specified duration
unicast	Modify user-to-user (Unicast) policy
unknown-destination	Modify unknown destination policy
unknown-protocol	Modify unknown protocol policy

## Traffic Class Configuration Mode

In this mode, you can create a traffic class and configure the level of service to packets assigned to the traffic class.

From Global Configuration mode, type the **traffic-class** command followed by a *trafficClassName*, and then press Enter.

```
host1(config)#traffic-class test123
host1(config-traffic-class)#?
  default      Set a command to its default(s)
  do           Run an exec mode command (alias command run)
  exit         Exit from the current command mode
  fabric-strict-priority Allow packets in this class to be dequeued out of the
               fabric ahead of other traffic classes
  help        Describe the interactive help system
  log         Configure logging settings
  macro       Run a CLI macro
  no          Negate a command or set its default(s)
  run         Run an exec mode command (alias command do)
  sleep       Make the Command Interface pause for a specified duration
```

## Traffic Class Group Configuration Mode

In this mode, you can create and configure traffic-class groups, which can contain multiple traffic classes.

From Global Configuration mode, type the **traffic-class-group** command and a *trafficClassGroupName*, and press Enter.

```
host1(config)#traffic-class-group trafclanameabcd
host1(config-traffic-class-group)#?
  default      Set a command to its default(s)
  do           Run an exec mode command (alias command run)
  exit         Exit from the current command mode
  help        Describe the interactive help system
  log         Configure logging settings
  macro       Run a CLI macro
  no          Negate a command or set its default(s)
```



```

run          Run an exec mode command (alias command do)
sleep        Make the Command Interface pause for a specified duration
traffic-class Set the traffic class belong to this group

```

## Tunnel Group Configuration Mode

In this mode, you can define up to 31 tunnels for a tunnel group.

From Global Configuration mode, type **aaa tunnel-group** and the *groupName*, and press Enter.

```

host1(config)#aaa tunnel-group storm
host1(config-tunnel-group)#?
default      Set a command to its default(s)
do           Run an exec mode command (alias command run)
exit         Exit from the current command mode
help         Describe the interactive help system
log          Configure logging settings
macro        Run a CLI macro
no           Negate a command or set its default(s)
run          Run an exec mode command (alias command do)
sleep        Make the Command Interface pause for a specified duration
tunnel       Configure tunnel tag

```

## Tunnel Group Tunnel Configuration Mode

In this mode, you can configure attributes for a tunnel group tunnel.

From Tunnel Group Configuration mode, type **tunnel** and the tag number (in the range 1–31) for the tunnel, and press Enter.

```

host1(config-tunnel-group)#tunnel 1
host1(config-tunnel-group-tunnel)#?
address      Configure tunnel endpoint address
client-name  Configure the client hostname of the tunnel
default      Set a command to its default(s)
do           Run an exec mode command (alias command run)
exit         Exit from the current command mode
help         Describe the interactive help system
identification Configure tunnel identification
log          Configure logging settings
macro        Run a CLI macro
max-sessions Configure maximum sessions for this tunnel
medium       Configure tunnel medium
no           Negate a command or set its default(s)
password     Configure tunnel password
preference   Configure tunnel preference
receive-window Configure the receive window size for this tunnel
router-name  Configure the virtual-router for the domain name
run          Run an exec mode command (alias command do)
server-name  Configure the remote hostname for the tunnel
sleep        Make the Command Interface pause for a specified duration
source-address Configure tunnel source address
type         Configure tunnel type

```

## Tunnel Profile Configuration Mode

In this mode, you can create and configure MPLS tunnel profiles.

From Global Configuration mode, type **mpls tunnels profile** and the *profileName*, and press Enter.

```
host1(config)#mpls tunnels profile storm
host1(config-tunnelprofile)#?
  default  Set a command to its default(s)
  do       Run an exec mode command (alias command run)
  exit     Exit from the current command mode
  help     Describe the interactive help system
  log      Configure logging settings
  macro    Run a CLI macro
  no       Negate a command or set its default(s)
  run      Run an exec mode command (alias command do)
  sleep    Make the Command Interface pause for a specified duration
  tunnel   Configure tunnel interface parameters
```

## Tunnel Server Configuration Mode

In this mode, you can configure (provision) the maximum number of tunnel-service interfaces to be used on a dynamic tunnel-server port.

From Global Configuration mode, type **tunnel-server** and the slot number and port number of the dynamic tunnel-server port, and press Enter.

```
host1(config)#tunnel-server 2/2
host1(config-tunnel-server)#?
  default      Set a command to its default(s)
  do           Run an exec mode command (alias command run)
  exit         Exit from the current command mode
  help         Describe the interactive help system
  log          Configure logging settings
  macro        Run a CLI macro
  max-interfaces Configure maximum number of tunnel-server interfaces for
               dynamic server port
  no           Negate a command or set its default(s)
  run          Run an exec mode command (alias command do)
  sleep        Make the Command Interface pause for a specified duration
```

## VRF Configuration Mode

In this mode, you can create and configure VRF parameters for BGP/MPLS VPNs.

From Global Configuration mode, type **ip vrf** and the *vrfName*, and press Enter. Confirm the new VRF by pressing Enter.

```
host1(config)#ip vrf yankee
Proceed with new vrf creation? [confirm]
host1(config-vrf)#?
  default      Set a command to its default(s)
  description   Configure VRF specific description
```

do	Run an exec mode command (alias command run)
exit	Exit from the current command mode
export	Specify VRF export characteristics
help	Describe the interactive help system
import	Specify VRF import characteristics
ip	Configure IP characteristics
log	Configure logging settings
macro	Run a CLI macro
maximum	Specify a maximum limit
no	Negate a command or set its default(s)
rd	Specify route distinguisher
route-target	Specify VPN extended community Target
run	Run an exec mode command (alias command do)
sleep	Make the Command Interface pause for a specified duration

## VR Group Configuration Mode

In this mode, you can add up to four virtual routers to the virtual router group. The accounting servers of the virtual routers in the group can receive AAA broadcast accounting records.

From Global Configuration mode, type **aaa accounting vr-group** and the *vrGroupName*, and press Enter.

```

host1(config)#aaa accounting vr-group westVrGroup38
host1(config-vr-group)#?
aaa      Configure authentication, authorization, and accounting
         characteristics
default  Set a command to its default(s)
do       Run an exec mode command (alias command run)
exit     Exit from the current command mode
help     Describe the interactive help system
log      Configure logging settings
macro    Run a CLI macro
no       Negate a command or set its default(s)
run      Run an exec mode command (alias command do)
sleep    Make the Command Interface pause for a specified duration
support  Enter Support mode

```



## Chapter 3

# Installing JUNOS Software

The JUNOS software resides on a nonvolatile storage (NVS) card located in the switch route processor (SRP) module. Each SRP module is shipped with an NVS card that contains a software release. Each SRP module is shipped with an NVS card that contains a software release. New software releases are shipped on a set of CDs. You can also download software releases from the Juniper Networks Web site.



**CAUTION:** See the *Release Notes* for extra information about installing and upgrading the software.

---

This chapter provides information on how to install a new software release on a router and contains the following sections:

- Overview on page 127
- Platform Considerations on page 129
- Installing Software When a Firewall Exists on page 129
- Installing Software When a Firewall Does Not Exist on page 134
- Copying Release Files from One Router to Another on page 142
- Upgrading Systems That Are Operating with Two SRP Modules on page 143
- Upgrading from Release 5.1.1 or Lower-Numbered Releases on page 144
- Downgrading JUNOS Software on page 147

## Overview

---

If the router contains only one SRP module, we recommend you divert traffic to another router before installing a new software release because the router is unavailable during the installation process. Depending on whether a firewall separates the router from the network host, you can then complete the appropriate software installation. (See “Installing Software When a Firewall Exists” on page 129 or “Installing Software When a Firewall Does Not Exist” on page 134.) However, if the router contains two SRP modules, you can upgrade the software while the system is operating. (See “Upgrading Systems That Are Operating with Two SRP Modules” on page 143.)

When installing new JUNOS software, you must copy the contents of the release files to a network host and transfer the release files to at least one router in the network. Depending on the network configuration, you can copy the release files

from either the network host or the first router to the other routers in the network. (See “Copying Release Files from One Router to Another” on page 142.)



**NOTE:** Some line modules and SRP modules on ERX14xx models, ERX7xx models, and the ERX310 Broadband Services Router require a minimum amount of memory to be used with JUNOS Release 5.3.0 or a higher-numbered release. See the *ERX Module Guide* for module specifications.

## Identifying the Software Release File

You can find the software release file on one of the following JUNOS software CDs:

- JUNOS <release> #1—Contains the release files for the ERX7xx routers, the ERX14xx routers, and the ERX310 router
- JUNOS <release> #2—Contains the release file for the E120 and E320 Broadband Services Routers, the MIB directory, and the *Release Notes*

You can also download a compressed version of the software release by logging on to <https://www.juniper.net/support/>. The .zip file that you download contains the software release file.

The release is in the software directory, which is identified by the release number. For example, if the release number is x.y.z, the name of the directory is x-y-z. See Table 11 on page 128.

**Table 11: Software Release Files**

Router	File Format (x-y-z is the release number)
E120 and E320	e320_x-y-z.rel
ERX1440	erx40_x-y-z.rel
ERX310	erx310_x-y-z.rel
All other E Series routers	erx_x-y-z.rel

To identify the software release file:

1. Access the software directory.
2. Find the files with the extension .rel.

The procedures outlined in the following sections provide detailed instructions for typical installations. For additional information about commands and troubleshooting, see “Command-Line Interface” on page 29 and Interface Types and Specifiers in the *JUNOS Command Reference Guide*

## Platform Considerations

---

You can install JUNOS software on all E Series routers.

For information about the modules supported on E Series routers:

- See the *ERX Module Guide* for modules supported on ERX7xx models, ERX14xx models, and the ERX310 router.
- See the *E120 and E320 Module Guide* for modules supported on the E120 and E320 routers.

## Installing Software When a Firewall Exists

---

When a firewall separates the router from the network host, you must use FTP to transfer the software release files from the network host to the router. In this case, you must configure the FTP server on the router and ensure that FTP client software is installed on the network host.

For this network configuration, you must install the software from the normal operational mode of the command-line interface (CLI). You can access the CLI through either the local console or a Telnet session. If you have not yet configured the router to support Telnet, then you must use the local console.

To install the software, perform the following tasks. (See Table 12 on page 129.)

**Table 12: Software Installation Procedure When a Firewall Exists**

- 
1. Obtain the required information for the installation.
  2. For routers that are currently operating, divert network traffic to another router.
  3. Access the Privileged Exec CLI command mode.
  4. Configure IP on an interface.
  5. Copy the release files on the network host.
  6. Configure access to the network host.
  7. Enable the FTP server on the router.
  8. Identify the files to transfer.
  9. Transfer the files to the user space on the router.
  10. Install the software release file to the system space on the router.
  11. Save the current configuration.
  12. Reboot the system.
- 

### Task 1: Obtain the Required Information

Before you install the software, obtain the following information:

- The password (if one is configured) that enables you to access Privileged Exec mode on the router
- The IP address of the network host
- The IP address of the router
- The IP address of the next hop to reach the destination network (for example, a gateway)
- The login name and password for the vty line
- The procedure for copying the release files to the network host

### **Task 2: Divert Network Traffic to Another Router**

The system will be unavailable during the installation process.

### **Task 3: Access Privileged Exec Mode**

To access this mode via the CLI:

1. Issue the enable command.

```
host1>enable
```

2. Type the password if the system prompts you.

### **Task 4: Configure IP on an Interface**

Typically, you configure IP on the Fast Ethernet interface of the SRP module. To configure IP on an interface:

1. Determine the slot number of the module.

```
host1#show version
```

2. Determine the port number of the module.
3. Determine whether the interface already has an IP address.

- On ERX7xx models, ERX14xx models, and the ERX310 router:

```
host1#show ip interface fastEthernet 6/0
```

- On the E120 and E320 routers:

```
host1#show ip interface fastEthernet 6/0/0
```



**NOTE:** If an IP interface is not configured, an Invalid interface message appears.

---



If the interface already has an IP address, go to Step 5. Otherwise, proceed with Step 4.

4. Configure an IP address on the interface.

- On ERX7xx models, ERX14xx models, and the ERX310 router:

```
host1#configure
Configuring from terminal or file [terminal]?
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
host1(config)#interface fastEthernet 6/0
host1(config-if)#ip address ipAddress [ mask ]
```

- On the E120 and E320 routers:

```
host1#configure
Configuring from terminal or file [terminal]?
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
host1(config)#interface fastEthernet 6/0/0
host1(config-if)#ip address ipAddress [ mask ]
```

5. Press Ctrl + z to return to Privileged Exec mode.

### **Task 5: Copy the Release Files to the Network Host**

If you downloaded the software from the Juniper Networks Web site as a .zip file, uncompress the files to a directory, and copy the release files to the network host.

If you are accessing the release files from one of the software CDs, you must mount the CD. The way you mount the release files on the network host depends on the type of computer you use, the operating system, and the network configuration. To find out how to mount the release files on the network host, review the manual for the operating system, or contact your network administrator.

### **Task 6: Configure Access to the Network Host**

To configure access to the network host:

1. Use the **ping** command to determine whether the router can reach the network host.

```
host1#ping hostname
```

If the router can reach the network host, go to the next section. Otherwise, go to Step 2.

2. Determine whether a route exists between the router and the network host.

```
host1#show ip route
```

If the appropriate route is displayed, go to Step 5. Otherwise, proceed with Step 3.

3. Configure a route to reach the network host.

```
host1#configure
Configuring from terminal or file [terminal]?
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
host1(config)#ip route ipNetwork networkMask ipNextHop
```

4. Press Ctrl + z to return to Privileged Exec mode.
5. Determine whether the router has been configured to recognize the network host.

```
host1#show host
```

If the network host is listed, go to Step 8. Otherwise, proceed with Step 6.

6. Add an entry to the Static Host Table so that the router can access the network host. Use the **host** command to specify the network hostname and IP address.

```
host1#configure
Configuring from terminal or file [terminal]?
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
host1(config)#host hostName ipAddress ftp loginname password
```

7. Press Ctrl + z to return to Privileged Exec mode.
8. Use the ping command to determine whether the router can now reach the network host.

```
host1#ping hostname
```

If the router cannot reach the network host, verify that you correctly performed the previous steps in this procedure and that the network host is operational.

### **Task 7: Enable the FTP Server on the Router**

The router divides its vty resources among Telnet, SSH, and FTP services. Each FTP session requires one vty line, and the FTP service uses the authentication method configured for the vty line. If you configured more than one vty line for Telnet access, the FTP service uses one of those lines. If you configured only one line for Telnet access, configure another vty line.

To enable the FTP server, use the **ftp-server enable** command.

```
host1(config)#ftp-server enable
```

### **Task 8: Identify the Files to Transfer**

To identify all the files for the release, use a text editor to open the software release (.rel) file on the JUNOS software CD or from the directory in which you downloaded from the Juniper Networks Web site. The software release file contains a list of all the files associated with the release. You must transfer the software release file and all the files it contains to the user space.

### Task 9: Transfer Files to the User Space

To transfer the files for the release to the user space, use the FTP client software on the network host to connect to the FTP server on the router. Transfer the files to a subdirectory within the incoming directory. If you specify a subdirectory that does not exist, the router creates the directory.



**NOTE:** Be sure to transfer the software release file and all the files it lists.

---

### Task 10: Install Files on the System Space

Installing the software release file to the system space installs all files listed in the software release file. To install the software release file from the incoming directory in the user space to the router space, use the **copy** command.

Be sure to specify the correct software release (.rel) filename for the router you are using, as described in “Identifying the Software Release File” on page 128.



**NOTE:** The destination file must have a .rel extension.

---

For example:

```
host1#copy /incoming/releases/erx_x-y-z.rel erx_x-y-z.rel
```

The software release is copied from the user space to the system space. This process can take several minutes.

### Task 11: Save the Current Configuration

To save the current configuration, use the **copy running-configuration** command:

```
host1#copy running-configuration filename.cnf
```

### Task 12: Reboot the System

To reboot the system using the newly installed software:

1. Access Global Configuration mode.

```
host1#configure
Configuring from terminal or file [terminal]?
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
host1(config)#
```

2. Run the boot system command, specifying the .rel filename of the software release.

For example:

```
host1(config)#boot system erx_x-y-z.rel
```

The following message appears when you issue this command:

**WARNING:** We recommend that you copy the current running-configuration to a file prior to reloading a different release of software.

3. Press Ctrl + z to return to Privileged Exec mode.
4. Verify that the router is ready to boot with the new software release.

```
host1#show boot
```

If the old software version is still listed, verify that you completed the previous steps correctly.

5. Run the reload command.

```
host1#reload
```

The following message appears when you issue this command:

**WARNING:** Execution of this command will cause the system to reboot. Proceed with reload? [confirm]

The system reboots. The reboot might take longer than normal because line modules initialize with the old version of the software, acquire the new version from the SRP module, and reinitialize. When you observe the LEDs on the line modules, the line modules appear to boot twice.

## Installing Software When a Firewall Does Not Exist

---

If there is no firewall between the router and the network host to which you copied the release files, you can transfer the software release files from the network host to the router via the FTP server or by issuing the **copy** command. To transfer files via the FTP server, refer to the previous section, “Installing Software When a Firewall Exists” on page 129. This section describes how to transfer files by issuing the **copy** command.

If you use the **copy** command to transfer the files, the network host must be an FTP server. This command activates an FTP client on the router.

For this network configuration, you can install the software in the normal command line interface (CLI) operational mode or in boot mode.

### Installing Software in Normal Operational Mode

For this procedure, you must access the CLI through either the local console or a Telnet session. If you have not yet configured the router to support Telnet, then you must use the local console.

To install the software, perform the following tasks. (See Table 13 on page 135.)

**Table 13: Software Installation Procedure When a Firewall Does Not Exist**

- 
1. Obtain the required information for the installation.
  2. For routers that are currently operating, divert network traffic to another router.
  3. Access the Privileged Exec CLI command mode.
  4. Configure IP on an interface.
  5. Configure access to the network host.
  6. Copy the release files to the network host.
  7. Copy the software release file to the router.
  8. Save the current configuration.
  9. Reboot the system.
- 

### Task 1: Obtain the Required Information

Before you install the software, obtain the following information:

- The password (if one is configured) that enables you to access Privileged Exec mode on the router
- The IP address of the network host
- The IP address of the router
- The IP address of the next hop to reach the destination network (for example, a gateway)
- The login name and password for the FTP server
- The procedure for copying the release files to the network host

### Task 2: Divert Network Traffic to Another Router

The system will be unavailable during the installation process.

### Task 3: Access Privileged Exec Mode

To access this mode via the CLI:

1. Issue the enable command.  
  
    `host1>enable`
2. Type the password if the system prompts you.

### Task 4: Configure IP on an Interface

Typically, you configure IP on the Fast Ethernet interface of the SRP module. To configure IP on an interface:

1. Determine the slot number of the module.

```
host1#show version
```

2. Determine the port number of the module.
3. Determine whether the interface already has an IP address.

- On ERX7xx models, ERX14xx models, and the ERX310 router:

```
host1#show ip interface fastEthernet 6/0
```

- On the E120 and E320 routers:

```
host1#show ip interface fastEthernet 6/0/0
```



**NOTE:** If an IP interface is not configured, an Invalid interface message appears.

---

If the interface already has an IP address, go to Step 5. Otherwise, proceed with Step 4.

4. Configure an IP address on the interface.

- On ERX7xx models, ERX14xx models, and the ERX310 router:

```
host1#configure
Configuring from terminal or file [terminal]?
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
host1(config)#interface fastEthernet 6/0
host1(config-if)#ip address ipAddress [ mask ]
```

- On the E120 and E320 routers:

```
host1#configure
Configuring from terminal or file [terminal]?
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
host1(config)#interface fastEthernet 6/0/0
host1(config-if)#ip address ipAddress [ mask ]
```

5. Press Ctrl + z to return to Privileged Exec mode.

## Task 5: Configure Access to the Network Host

To configure access to the network host:

1. Use the ping command to determine whether the router can reach the network host.

```
host1#ping ipAddress
```

If the router can reach the network host, go to the next section. Otherwise, go to Step 2.

2. Determine whether a route exists between the router and the network host.

```
host1#show ip route
```

If the appropriate route is displayed, go to Step 4. Otherwise, proceed with Step 3.

3. Configure a route to reach the network host.

```
host1#configure
Configuring from terminal or file [terminal]?
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
host1(config)#ip route ipNetwork networkMask ipNextHop
```

4. Press Ctrl + z to return to Privileged Exec mode.
5. Determine whether the router has been configured to recognize the network host.

```
host1#show host
```

If the network host is listed, go to Step 8. Otherwise, proceed with Step 6.

6. Add an entry to the Static Host Table so that the router can access the network host. Use the host command to specify the network hostname and IP address.

```
host1#configure
Configuring from terminal or file [terminal]?
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
host1(config)#host hostName ipAddress ftp loginname password
```

7. Press Ctrl + z to return to Privileged Exec mode.
8. Use the ping command to determine whether the router can now reach the network host.

```
host1#ping hostname
```

If the router cannot reach the network host, verify that you correctly performed the previous steps in this procedure and that the network host is operational.

### Task 6: Copy the Release Files to the Network Host

If you downloaded the software from the Juniper Networks Web site as a .zip file, uncompress the files to a directory, and copy the release files to the network host.

If you are accessing the release files from one of the software CDs, you must mount the CD. The way you mount the CD on the network host depends on the type of network host you use, the operating system, and the way your network is configured. To find out how to mount a CD on the network host, review the manual for the operating system, or contact your network administrator.

### Task 7: Copy the Software Release File to the Router

To copy the software release file to the router, use the **copy** command.

Be sure to specify the correct software release (.rel) filename for the router you are using, as described in “Identifying the Software Release File” on page 128.



**NOTE:** The destination file must have a .rel extension.

---

For example:

```
host1#copy hostname:/cdrom/x-y-z/erx_x-y-z.rel erx_x-y-z.rel
```

The software release is copied from the network host to the router. This process can take several minutes.

### Task 8: Save the Current Configuration

To save the current configuration, use the **copy running-configuration** command:

```
host1#copy running-configuration filename.cnf
```

### Task 9: Reboot the System

To reboot the system using the newly installed software:

1. Access Global Configuration mode.

```
host1#configure
Configuring from terminal or file [terminal]?
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
host1(config)#
```

2. Run the boot system command, specifying the .rel filename of the software release. For example:

```
host1(config)#boot system erx_x-y-z.rel
```

The following message appears when you issue this command:

```
WARNING: We recommend that you copy the current running-configuration to a
file prior to reloading a different release of software.
```

3. Press Ctrl + z to return to Privileged Exec mode.
4. Make sure that the router is ready to boot with the new software release.

```
host1#show boot
```

If the old software version is still listed, verify that you completed the previous steps correctly.

5. Run the reload command.

```
host1#reload
```



The following message appears when you issue this command:

**WARNING:** Execution of this command will cause the system to reboot. Proceed with reload? [confirm]

The system reboots. The reboot might take longer than normal because line modules initialize with the old version of the software, acquire the new version from the SRP module, and reinitialize. When you observe the LEDs on the line modules, the line modules appear to boot twice.

## ***Installing Software in Boot Mode***

To install the software in Boot mode, you must access the CLI via the local console.

To install the software, perform the following tasks. (See Table 14 on page 139.)

**Table 14: Software Installation Procedure in Boot Mode**

- 
1. Obtain the required information for the installation.
  2. For routers that are currently operating, divert network traffic to another router.
  3. Access the Boot mode.
  4. Assign an IP address to the router.
  5. Configure access to the network host.
  6. Reset the SRP module.
  7. Copy the release files to the network host.
  8. Copy the software release file to the router.
  9. Reboot the system.
- 

### **Task 1: Obtain the Required Information**

Before you install the software, obtain the following information:

- The IP address of the network host
- The IP address of the router
- The IP address of the next hop to reach the destination network (for example, a gateway)
- The login name and password for the FTP server
- The procedure for copying the release files to the network host

### **Task 2: Divert Network Traffic to Another System**

The system will be unavailable during the installation process.

### Task 3: Access the Boot Mode

To access Boot mode from the local console:

1. At the Privileged Exec prompt, type the reload command.

Information on the reloading process appears.

2. When the countdown begins, press the key sequence **mb**.

This action puts the CLI in Boot mode and the `:boot##` prompt appears.



**NOTE:** If you do not press the key sequence **mb** before the countdown ends, the reloading process continues and returns the CLI to the normal User Exec mode.

---

### Task 4: Assign an IP Address

When you assign an IP address to the router in Boot mode, the address is configured on the Fast Ethernet port of the primary SRP module. To assign an Internet address to the router, use the **ip address** command.

```
:boot##ip address ipAddress [ mask ]
```

### Task 5: Configure Access to the Network Host

To configure access to the network host:

1. Configure a gateway through which the router can reach the network host.

```
:boot##ip gateway ipAddress
```

2. Determine whether the router has been configured to recognize the network host.

```
:boot##show host
```

If the network host is listed, go to the next section. Otherwise, proceed with Step 3.

3. Add an entry to the Static Host Table so that the router can access the network host.

```
:boot##host hostName ipAddress ftp login-name password
```

Use the host command to specify the network host name and IP address.

### Task 6: Resetting the SRP Module

To ensure that the IP addresses are properly activated, you must reset the SRP module. To reset the SRP module, issue the **reload** command from the `:boot##` prompt or depress the recessed module reset button located on the front of the module.

Depressing the module reset button on the SRP module is equivalent to rebooting the router and causes all of the line modules to reboot.

### Task 7: Copy the Release Files to the Network Host

If you downloaded the software from the Juniper Networks Web site as a .zip file, uncompress the files to a directory, and copy the release files to the network host.

If you are accessing the release files from one of the software CDs, you must mount the CD. The way you mount the CD on the network host depends on the type of network host you use, the operating system, and the way your network is configured. To find out how to mount a CD on the network host, review the manual for the operating system, or contact your network administrator.

### Task 8: Copy the Software Release File to the Router

To copy the software release file to the router, use the **copy** command.

Be sure to specify the correct software release (.rel) filename for the router you are using, as described in “Identifying the Software Release File” on page 128.



**NOTE:** The destination file must have a .rel extension.

---

For example:

```
:boot##copy hostname:/cdrom/x-y-z/erx_x-y-z.rel erx_x-y-z.rel
```

The software release is copied from the network host to the router. This process can take several minutes.

### Task 9: Reboot the System

To reboot the system using the newly installed software:

1. Run the **boot system** command, specifying the .rel filename of the software release. For example:

```
:boot##boot system erx_x-y-z.rel
```

The following message appears when you issue this command:

**WARNING:** We recommend that you copy the current running-configuration to a file prior to reloading a different release of software.

2. Run the reload command.

```
:boot##reload
```

The following message appears when you issue this command:

**WARNING:** Execution of this command will cause the system to reboot. Proceed with reload? [confirm]

The system reboots. The reboot might take longer than normal because line modules initialize with the old version of the software, acquire the new version from the SRP module, and reinitialize. When you observe the LEDs on the line modules, the line modules appear to boot twice.

## Copying Release Files from One Router to Another

---

When you have copied the release files from a network host to one router, you can transfer files from that router to other routers on the network. This feature is useful when:

- The other routers are unreachable from the network host but have network connectivity to the router on which you installed the new software.
- The connection between routers is faster than the connection between a router and the network host to which it is connected.

The procedures for transferring release files from a source router to a destination router are almost identical to transferring release files from a network host to a router on the same side of the firewall.



**NOTE:** You must enable the FTP server on the source router.

---

To transfer release files from a source router to a destination router, follow the instructions in “Installing Software When a Firewall Does Not Exist” on page 134, with the following changes:

- Substitute the source router for the network host.
- Omit the step about copying the release files to the network host.
- Copy the file to the system space of the second router from the user space of the first router.

Be sure to specify the correct software release (.rel) filename for the router you are using, as described in “Identifying the Software Release File” on page 128.

For example:

```
host1#copy boston:/outgoing/releases/erx_x-y-z.rel erx_x-y-z.rel
```

## Upgrading Systems That Are Operating with Two SRP Modules

Use this procedure when the system contains two SRP modules and is already operating with an earlier software release. Each SRP module keeps the system operational while you upgrade the software on the other, so that you can minimize service interruption.



**CAUTION:** You must upgrade the software on the redundant SRP module when you upgrade the software on the primary SRP module. This action prevents the redundant SRP module from overwriting the new software on the primary SRP module if the primary SRP module fails and the redundant SRP module takes control.

To upgrade the software on a system that is operational and contains two SRP modules:

1. Turn off autosynchronization.

```
host1(config)#disable-autosync
```

2. Copy the new release of the software to NVS of the primary SRP module. Be sure to specify the correct software release (.rel) filename for the router you are using, as described in “Identifying the Software Release File” on page 128.

- If a firewall separates the router from the network host, transfer files to the user space with the FTP client on the network host, and install files on the system space (See “Installing Software When a Firewall Exists” on page 129.) For example:

```
host1#copy /incoming/releases/erx_x-y-z.rel erx_x-y-z.rel
```

- If no firewall separates the router from the network host, copy the files to the router (See “Installing Software When a Firewall Does Not Exist” on page 134.) For example:

```
host1#copy hostname:/cdrom/x-y-z/erx_x-y-z.rel erx_x-y-z.rel
```

- If you are transferring the files from one router to another, copy the file to the system space of the second router from the user space of the first router (See “Copying Release Files from One Router to Another” on page 142.) For example:

```
host1#copy boston:/outgoing/releases/erx_x-y-z.rel erx_x-y-z.rel
```

3. Save the current configuration. For example:

```
host1#copy running-configuration system2.cnf
```

4. Specify that the router should use the new software release when it reboots. For example:

```
host1(config)#boot system erx_x-y-z.rel
```

5. Synchronize the NVS file system of the redundant module with that of the primary module.

```
host1#synchronize
```

The redundant SRP module automatically reboots because the software release that it is configured to run differs from the software release it is running.



**CAUTION:** The secondary SRP module does not run the new software until it reboots. If you issue the **srp switch** command or the primary SRP module fails before the redundant SRP module reboots, then the secondary SRP module runs with the old release when it takes control.

---

6. Wait for the redundant SRP module to boot, initialize, and reach the standby state. When the module is in standby state, the REDUNDANT LED is on and the ONLINE LED is off. The State field in the **show version** display indicates the module is in standby.

After any type of reboot, the primary and redundant SRP module NVS file systems are unsynchronized again.

7. Synchronize the NVS file system of the redundant module with that of the primary module.

```
host1#synchronize
```

8. Switch from the primary SRP module to the redundant SRP module.

```
host1#srp switch
```

The redundant SRP module becomes the primary. The former primary SRP module reboots and becomes the redundant.

9. Reenable autosynchronization.

```
host1(config)#no disable-autosync
```

---

## Upgrading from Release 5.1.1 or Lower-Numbered Releases

---

Release 5.1.1 or lower-numbered releases only support application images up to 172 MB. To install larger application images for Release 6.0.0 and higher-numbered releases, you must first install Release 5.1.2 (or the highest-numbered 5.x.x release). This enables the system to support application images greater than 172 MB. For example, you cannot go from Release 5.1.1 to Release 7.2.0 without first upgrading to Release 5.1.2. See Table 15 on page 145.

**Table 15: Release Compatibility**

JUNOS Release	Highest Release Able to Load	Cannot Load	Maximum Application Image
5.1.1 or lower-numbered release	5.3.5p0-2 or the highest-numbered 5.x.x release	6.x.x or higher-numbered release	~ 172 MB
5.1.2 or higher-numbered release	No limitation	Not applicable	~ 234 MB
7.2.0 or higher-numbered release	No limitation	Not applicable	~ 256 MB

Your software upgrades may be available remotely through Telnet or FTP, or may be delivered on a new NVS card. Depending on how you access the software updates, there are two different procedures to follow. See the appropriate section for instructions:

- “Upgrading Software Remotely Through Telnet or FTP” on page 145
- “Upgrading Software from an NVS Card” on page 145

### Upgrading Software Remotely Through Telnet or FTP

Follow these steps to upgrade your system software remotely:

1. Copy the new release to your system (using Telnet or FTP).



**NOTE:** The release you are installing must be Release 5.1.2 or higher-numbered 5.x.x release.

2. Install and arm the release from the **config#** prompt using the normal upgrade procedures as described in this chapter.
3. Reload and configure the software.

After the system is configured with a 5.x.x release, newer releases are supported and can be installed.

### Upgrading Software from an NVS Card

Follow these steps to upgrade your system software when the software is on an NVS card. The procedure you use depends on the number of SRP modules in the system.

#### Upgrading a System That Contains One SRP Module

If the system contains only one SRP module, you must power off the system before you upgrade the NVS card.

To upgrade the NVS card on a system that contains one SRP module:

1. Enter the **halt** command.
2. Connect your antistatic wrist strap to the ESD grounding jack on the router.
3. Power off the system.
4. Replace the NVS card on the SRP module.



**NOTE:** The release you are installing must be Release 5.1.2 or higher-numbered 5.x.x release.

---

5. Power on the system.

After the system is configured with a 5.x.x release, newer releases are supported and can be installed.

### Upgrading a System That Contains Two SRP Modules

In a system that contains two SRP modules, you can upgrade the software without powering off the system.

To upgrade the software in a system that contains two SRP modules:

1. Connect your antistatic wrist strap to the ESD grounding jack on your router.
2. Turn off autosynchronization.

```
host1#enable
host1#configure
Configuring from terminal or file [terminal]?
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
host1 (config)#disable-autosync
host1 (config)#exit
```

3. Halt the redundant SRP module.

```
host1#halt standby-srp
Remove the redundant SRP module from the chassis.
```

4. Replace the NVS card on this SRP module.



**NOTE:** The release you are installing must be Release 5.1.2 or higher-numbered 5.x.x release.

---

5. Reinsert the SRP module into the chassis.
6. Force the redundant SRP module to take over from the primary SRP module.

```
host1#srp switch
```

7. Turn on autosynchronization.



```
host1#enable
host1#configure
Configuring from terminal or file [terminal]?
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
host1 (config)#no disable-autosync
host1 (config)#exit
```

The software is updated on the other SRP module.

After the system is configured with a 5.x.x release, newer releases are supported and can be installed.

## Downgrading JUNOS Software

---

Downgrading JUNOS software requires factory defaults installed on the router, and can cause NVS and configuration script incompatibilities.



**CAUTION:** We do not recommend that you attempt to downgrade JUNOS software without the assistance of a Juniper Technical Assistance Center representative. Contact the Juniper Technical Assistance Center to obtain help.

---



## Chapter 4

# Configuring SNMP

This chapter provides information for configuring Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) on your E Series router.

This chapter contains the following sections:

- Overview on page 149
- Platform Considerations on page 158
- References on page 159
- Before You Configure SNMP on page 159
- SNMP Configuration Tasks on page 160
- Configuring Traps on page 169
- Configuring the SNMP Server Event Manager on page 180
- Collecting Bulk Statistics on page 197
- Using the Bulk Statistics Formatter on page 231
- Managing Virtual Routers on page 233
- Monitoring SNMP on page 233

## Overview

---

SNMP is a protocol that manages network devices, such as your E Series router. The goal of SNMP is to simplify network management in two ways:

- By defining a single management protocol that can be used to manage any network device from any vendor.

This feature reduces the complexity of the network management application because the application does not need to support a large number of proprietary management protocols for the mix of vendors' devices in the network.

- By defining a single, consistent representation of managed information that is commonly deployed in network devices.

For example, SNMP uses a common form and semantics for interface statistics, a process that supports consistent interpretation and meaningful comparison.

SNMP is an application-level protocol that comprises the following three elements:

- An SNMP client (manager)
- An SNMP server (agent)
- A Management Information Base (MIB)

SNMP defines a client-server model in which a client (*manager*) obtains information from the server (*agent*) through two mechanisms:

- A request/response protocol by which the client configures and monitors the server. In this instance, the information is solicited.
- Asynchronous notifications (called *traps*) by which the server, on its own initiative, reports notable changes in the router's status to the client. In this instance, the information is unsolicited.

## Terminology

Table 16 on page 150 provides definitions for the basic SNMP terms.

**Table 16: SNMP Terminology**

Term	Meaning
agent	Also referred to as server; a managed device, such as a router, that collects and stores management information
client	Sometimes called a network management station (NMS) or simply a manager; a device that executes management applications that monitor and control network elements
community	A logical group of SNMP-managed devices and clients in the same administrative domain
entity	Refers to both a server and a client
event	A condition or state change that may cause the generation of a trap message
managed object	A characteristic of something that can be managed, such as a list of currently active TCP circuits in a device
group	SNMPv3 term; a set of users with the same access privileges to the router
MIB	Management Information Base; a collection of managed objects residing in a virtual information store
network element	Also known as a managed device; a hardware device, such as a PC or a router
notification	A message that indicates a status change (equivalent to a trap)
server	Also referred to as agent; a managed device, such as a router, that collects and stores management information

**Table 16: SNMP Terminology** (continued)

Term	Meaning
trap	Message sent by an SNMP server to a client to indicate the occurrence of a significant event, such as a specifically defined condition or a threshold that was reached. Managed devices use traps to asynchronously report certain events to clients.
user	SNMPv3 term; an individual who accesses the router
view	SNMPv3 term; defines the management information available to the user: read, write, or notification

## SNMP Features Supported

This SNMP implementation provides the following:

- Standard SNMP MIB support for services and interfaces as defined by the Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF)
- A set of AS number version 1 notated enterprise MIBs for all management functions not addressed by standard MIBs
- A multilingual SNMP server that supports SNMPv1, SNMPv2c, and SNMPv3 protocols
- Enhanced security and management features supported in SNMPv3
- Traps for alarm and state change events
- Bulk data collection and retrieval
- Management of virtual routers
- Secure audit logging for packet mirroring traps and Juniper-PACKET-MIRROR MIB access



**NOTE:** You can disable the management interface through SNMP. But, if you disable the management interface, you can no longer access the router through SNMP.



**NOTE:** JUNOS software supports SNMP packet mirroring traps; however, the packet mirroring-related SNMP commands, categories, and traps are visible in the CLI only to authorized users. See *JUNOS Policy Management Configuration Guide* for information about using SNMP with secure packet mirroring.

## SNMP Client

The SNMP client runs on a network host and communicates with one or more SNMP servers on other network devices, such as routers, to configure and monitor the operation of those network devices.

## SNMP Server

The SNMP server operates on a network device, such as a router, a switch, or a workstation. It responds to SNMP requests received from SNMP clients and generates *trap messages* to alert the client(s) about notable state changes in the network device.

The SNMP server implementation operates over UDP/IP only. It can receive requests directed to any IP address configured on the router. SNMP requests and responses are received or sent on UDP port 161. SNMP traps are sent from UDP port 162 by default or from a configurable port. For traps sent from UDP port 162, you can configure the destination UDP port for each recipient with the **snmp-server host** command.

## SNMP MIBs

A MIB specifies the format of managed data for a device function. The goal of a MIB is to provide a common and consistent management representation for that function across networking devices.

Your router supports both standard and enterprise SNMP MIBs.

### Standard SNMP MIBs

A standard MIB is defined by a body such as the IETF and fosters consistency of management data representation across many vendors' networking products.

### Juniper Networks E Series Enterprise MIBs

An enterprise MIB is defined by a single vendor. In addition to providing consistency of management data representation across that vendor's product line, the enterprise MIB also accounts for proprietary functions and value-added features not addressed by standard MIBs.

For example, boot record extensions to the enterprise MIB enable configuration of the release (.rel) files for each router, slot, and subsystem. The extensions also enable booting through the factory defaults, the running configuration, or a configuration (.cnf) file.

### Accessing Supported SNMP MIBs

For complete information about the SNMP MIBs supported by your router, see the *E Series System Software* CD, shipped with your router. In the MIBs folder you will find information about all supported standard and Juniper Networks E Series Enterprise (proprietary) MIBs.

## SNMP Versions

This SNMP server implementation supports:

- SNMPv1 (defined in RFC 1157)

- SNMPv2c (Community-based SNMPv2, defined in RFC 1901 and RFC 3416)
- SNMPv3 (compliant with RFCs 3410–3418, STD 62)

The server encodes SNMP responses using the same SNMP version received in the corresponding request and encodes traps using the SNMP version configured for the trap recipient.

SNMPv2c supports the capabilities defined for SNMPv1 and provides greater power and flexibility through the addition of several features, including:

- More detailed error codes
- GetBulk operation for efficient retrieval of large amounts of data
- 64-bit counters

SNMPv3 is an extensible SNMP framework that supplements the SNMPv2c framework by supporting:

- Security for messages
- Explicit access control

## Security Features

As users transfer more sensitive information, such as billing details, through the Internet, security becomes more critical for SNMP and other protocols. SNMPv3 provides the user-based security model (USM) to address authentication and data encryption.

Authentication provides the following benefits:

- Only authorized parties can communicate with each other. Consequently, a management station can interact with a device only if the administrator configured the device to allow the interaction.
- Messages are received promptly; users cannot save messages and replay them to alter content. This feature prevents users from sabotaging SNMP configurations and operations. For example, users can change configurations of network devices only if authorized to do so.

SNMPv3 authenticates users through the HMAC-MD5-96 or HMAC-SHA-96 protocols; CBC-DES is the encryption or privacy protocol. The SNMP agent recognizes up to 32 usernames that can have one of the following security levels:

- No authentication and no privacy (none)
- Authentication only (auth only)
- Authentication and privacy (priv)

In contrast, SNMPv1 and SNMPv2c provide only password protection, through the community name and IP address. When an SNMP server receives a request, the server extracts the client's IP address and the community name. The SNMP community table is searched for a matching community. If a match is found, its

access list, if nonzero, is used to validate the IP address. If the access list number is zero, the IP address is accepted. A nonmatching community or an invalid IP address causes an SNMP authentication error. Each entry in the community table identifies:

- An SNMP community name
- An SNMP view name
- A user's privilege level
  - Read-only (ro)
  - Read-write (rw)
  - Administrator (admin)
- An IP access list name

## Management Features

Management features of SNMPv3 allow you to specify who will receive notifications and to define MIB views that users in different groups can access:

- Notification—Message that informs you of a status change; the equivalent of a trap in SNMPv1.
- View—Definition of the management information that is available: read, write, or notification. Predefined views are available for each group:
  - everything—Includes all MIBs associated with the router, except the packetMirror MIB
  - user—Includes all MIBs associated with the router, except the packetMirror MIB and standard and enterprise MIBs used to configure SNMP operation
  - nothing—Excludes all MIBs
  - mirrorAdmin—Includes the packetMirror MIB
- User—An individual who requires access to the router. The router may provide authentication and privacy for the user through SNMPv3. Each user is associated with a group.
- Group—A set of users with the same access privileges to the router. Three predefined groups are available: admin, public, and private. Table 17 on page 154 shows the security levels and views associated with these groups.

**Table 17: Relationship Among Groups, Security Levels, and Views**

Group Name	Security Level	Read View	Write View	Notification/ Trap View
admin	authentication and privacy	everything	everything	everything
mirror	authentication and privacy	mirrorAdmin	mirrorAdmin	mirrorAdmin
public	none	user	nothing	nothing



**Table 17: Relationship Among Groups, Security Levels, and Views** *(continued)*

Group Name	Security Level	Read View	Write View	Notification/ Trap View
private	authentication only	user	user	user

## Virtual Routers

All SNMP-related CLI commands operate in the context of a virtual router, which means that you must configure users, traps, communities, and so on for *each* server. You must set the context using the **virtual-router** command and then configure SNMP.

The **show snmp** commands show only statistics and configuration information for the server/SNMP agent that corresponds to the current virtual router context.

The exceptions to this convention are the **snmp-server contact** and the **snmp-server location** commands. With these commands, single instances of the contact and the location are created regardless of the number of virtual routers.

### Creating SNMP Proxy

Your JUNOS software allows you to configure multiple virtual routers. Each virtual router has its own SNMP server. At router initialization, SNMP creates a server for each existing virtual router.

When router-specific data is required, the requestor can direct a request to a particular server for a virtual router through the base community string extension: for example, SNMP get public@megaRouter.



**NOTE:** In addition to the @ selector character, the system also supports the % selector character. For example, SNMP get public% megaRouter.

When any system server parses a request and detects an extended community string, it acts as proxy by forwarding the request to the server corresponding to the virtual router name in the extension (for example, *megaRouter*). The target server then processes the request and generates a response, which is then returned to the proxy server and subsequently transmitted to the requester.

The JUNOS implementation of SNMPv3 communicates with virtual routers by assigning each proxy agent an SNMP engine ID. This difference is unimportant to users of the CLI. However, if you use other SNMPv3 applications to manage the router, refer to the following section.

## Disabling and Reenabling SNMP Proxy

The ability to proxy SNMP from a virtual router (VR) is enabled by default whenever you create a virtual router agent. However, you can disable or reenabling the proxy feature on each virtual router agent to address any network security issues. To disable proxy on an agent (router), you must use SNMP or the CLI `snmp-server proxy disable` command.



**NOTE:** Disabling the proxy function on a particular virtual router disables the use of proxy through that virtual router. You can, however, use the proxy function to access a proxy-disabled virtual router through another virtual router that does have the proxy function enabled.

## Communicating with the SNMP Engine

The SNMP engine performs the following tasks for SNMPv3:

- Sends and receives messages.
- Prepares messages and extracts data from messages.
- Authenticates, encrypts, and decrypts messages.
- Determines whether access to a managed task is allowed.

Each SNMP engine has an `SnmpEngineID`, a hexadecimal number 15 octets long. Table 18 on page 156 shows the structure of the `SnmpEngineID`.

**Table 18: SnmpEngineID Structure Object**

Octet Assignment	Description
1 – 4	E Series router SNMP management private enterprise number
5	Indicates that octets 6–15 contain information determined by the E Series router
6 – 11	The MAC address for the device
12 – 15	The 32-bit (4 octet) router index (or routerUID)

Request protocol data units (PDUs) for the SNMP engine must contain the corresponding `contextEngineID` and `contextName` for the SNMP engine. When the system receives a PDU, it examines the `contextEngineID` and `contextName`, and forwards the request to the corresponding virtual router.

- The `contextEngineID` is the same as the `SnmpEngineID`.
- The `contextName` is an internally derived ASCII string associated with the router. It has the format *routerN*, where N is a number (with no leading zeros) in the range 1–16777215, corresponding to the least significant 24 bits of the 32-bit

router index (or router UID). You can obtain the contextName for a specific router through the Juniper-ROUTER-MIB from the junRouterContextName object in the junRouterTable, which is indexed by the 32-bit router index (junRouterIndex).

The following table shows examples of the E Series router SNMP engine objects that are associated with the default virtual router.

Object	Value
SnmpEngineID	0x80:00:13:0a:05:00:90:1a:00:04:6c:80:00:00:01
contextEngineID	0x80:00:13:0a:05:00:90:1a:00:04:6c:80:00:00:01
contextName	router1

## SNMP Attributes

The software automatically maps predefined SNMPv1/v2c attributes to predefined SNMPv3 attributes, as shown in Table 19 on page 157.

**Table 19: Relationship Between SNMPv1/v2c and SNMPv3 Attributes**

Attribute	SNMPv1/v2C Value	SNMPv3 Value
Community	admin	admin
View		everything
Privilege	rw	rw
Community	public	public
View		user
Privilege	ro	ro
Community	private	private
View		user
Privilege	rw	rw

## SNMP Operations

SNMP has the five operations defined in Table 20 on page 158.

**Table 20: SNMP Operations**

SNMP Operation	Definition
Get	Allows the client to retrieve an object instance from the server.
GetNext	Allows the client to retrieve the next object instance from a table or list within a server.
GetBulk	Makes it easier to acquire large amounts of related information without initiating repeated GetNext operations. GetBulk is not available in SNMPv1.
Set	Allows the client to set values for the objects managed by the server.
Notification	Used by the server to asynchronously inform the client of some event. (Called a trap in SNMPv1.)

## SNMP PDU Types

SNMP offers the six types of PDUs defined in Table 21 on page 158.

**Table 21: SNMP PDU Types**

SNMP PDU Type	Definition
Get Bulk	Transmitted by the client to the server to obtain the identifiers and the values of a group or collection of variables rather than one variable at a time. GetBulk is not available in SNMPv1.
Get Next Request	Transmitted by the client to the server to obtain the identifiers and the values of variables located after the designated variables.
Get Request	Transmitted by the client to the server to obtain the values of designated variables.
Get Response	Transmitted by the server to the client in response to a Get Request, a Get Next Request, or a Set Request PDU.
Set Request	Transmitted by the client to the server to modify the values of designated variables.
Notification	Transmitted by the server, on its own initiative, to inform the client of a special event noted on a network device. (Called a trap in SNMPv1.)

## Platform Considerations

SNMP is supported on all E Series routers.

For information about the modules supported on E Series routers:

- See the *ERX Module Guide* for modules supported on ERX7xx models, ERX14xx models, and the ERX310 router.
- See the *E120 and E320 Module Guide* for modules supported on the E120 router and the E320 router.

## References

---

For more information about SNMP, consult the following resources:

- RFC 1157—A Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) (May 1990)
- RFC 1901—Introduction to Community-based SNMPv2 (January 1996)
- RFC 2790—Host Resources MIB (March 2000)
- RFC 2864—The Inverted Stack Table Extension to the Interfaces Group MIB (June 2000)
- RFC 2493—Textual Conventions for MIB Modules Using Performance History Based on 15 Minute Intervals (January 1999)
- RFC 3014—Notification Log MIB (November 2000)
- RFC 3410—Introduction and Applicability Statements for Internet Standard Management Framework (December 2002)
- RFC 3411—An Architecture for Describing Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) Management Frameworks (December 2002)
- RFC 3412—Message Processing and Dispatching for the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) (December 2002)
- RFC 3413—Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) Applications (December 2002)
- RFC 3414—User-based Security Model (USM) for version 3 of the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMPv3) (December 2002)
- RFC 3415—View-based Access Control Model (VACM) for the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) (December 2002)
- RFC 3416—Version 2 of the Protocol Operations for the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) (December 2002)

## Before You Configure SNMP

---

Before you configure SNMP, make sure that at least one IP address is configured on your router. See *Accessing ERX Routers* in the *ERX Hardware Guide* or *Accessing E Series Routers* in the *E120 and E320 Hardware Guide*.

Also make sure that you have the necessary configuration information for:

- Communities and their assigned privileges
- IP addresses of SNMP clients and trap recipients
- SNMPv3 users

## SNMP Configuration Tasks

---

To configure the SNMP server:

1. Enable the SNMP server.

```
host1(config)#snmp-server
```

2. Configure at least one authorized SNMP community (SNMPv1/v2c) or user (SNMPv3), which provides SNMP client access.

```
host1(config)#snmp-server community boston view everything rw
host1(config)#snmp-server user fred group private auth sha fred-password priv
des password
```

3. (Optional) Set the server parameters—contact name and server location.

```
host1(config)#snmp-server contact Bob Smith
host1(config)#snmp-server location 3rdfloor
```

4. (Optional) Reconfigure the maximum SNMP packet size.

```
host1(config)#snmp-server packetsize 1000
```

5. (Optional) Configure memory warning parameters.

```
host1(config)#memory warning 80 70
```

6. (Optional) Configure the method the router uses to encode the ifDescr and ifName objects.

```
host1(config)#snmp interfaces description-format common
```

7. (Optional) Manage the interface sublayers (compress interfaces and control interface numbering).

```
host1(config)#snmp-server interfaces compress atmAal5
host1(config)#snmp-server interface compress-restriction ifadminstatusdown
host1(config)#snmp interfaces rfc1213 55000 100000
```

8. (Optional) Configure the dynamic group parameters.

```
host1(config)#snmp-server group grp1authpriv usm priv read grp1read write
grp1write notify grp1notify
```

9. (Optional) Configure the dynamic view parameters.

```
host1(config)#snmp-server view view1 1.3.6.1 included non-volatile
```

You can also set up SNMP traps and set up the router to collect bulk statistics. See “Configuring Traps” on page 169 and “Collecting Bulk Statistics” on page 197.

## Enabling SNMP

To enable the SNMP server, use the following command.

### **snmp-server**

- Use to enable SNMP server operation.
- Example

```
host1(config)#snmp-server
```

- Use the **no** version to disable the SNMP server operation.
- See snmp-server.

## Configuring SNMP v1/v2c Community

For SNMPv1/v2c, access to an SNMP server by an SNMP client is governed by a proprietary SNMP community table that identifies those communities that have read-only, read-write, or administrative permission to the SNMP MIB stored on a particular server.

When an SNMP server receives a request, the server extracts the client’s IP address and the community name. The SNMP community table is searched for a matching community. If a match is found, its access list name is used to validate the IP address. If the access list name is null, the IP address is accepted. A nonmatching community or an invalid IP address results in an SNMP authentication error.

Each entry in the community table identifies:

- An SNMP community name
- A user’s privilege level
- An IP access list

### Community Name

The community name acts as a password and is used to authenticate messages sent between an SNMP client and a router containing an SNMP server. The community name is sent in every packet between the client and the server.

### Privilege Levels

SNMP has three privilege levels:

- Read-only—Read-only access to the entire MIB except for SNMP configuration objects

- Read-write—Read-write access to the entire MIB except for SNMP configuration objects
- Admin—Read-write access to the entire MIB

### IP Access List

The IP access list identifies those IP addresses of SNMP clients permitted to use a given SNMP community.

#### ***snmp-server community***

- Use to configure an authorized SNMP community for access to the SNMP MIBs and to associate SNMPv1/v2c communities with SNMP MIB views.
- The community name serves as a password and permits access to an SNMP server. The name can be up to 31 characters, and it must be enclosed in quotation marks.
- The maximum number of communities in each virtual router is 32.
- By default, an SNMP community permits only read-only access.
- The view name allows configuration with available dynamic views.
- Example

```
host1(config)#snmp-server community " boston" view view1 rw
```

- Use the **no** version to delete a community from the SNMP community table.
- See snmp-server community.

### Configuring SNMPv3 Users

To configure SNMPv3 users, use the following command.

#### ***snmp-server user***

- Use to create and modify SNMPv3 users.
- Example

```
host1(config)#snmp-server user fred auth sha fred-password priv des password
group user
```

- Use the **no** version to delete users.
- See snmp-server user.

### Configuring SNMP Dynamic Groups and Views

With dynamic configurable views and groups you can fine-tune application features to a specific group. You can have 32 view entries (with distinct names) per virtual router. Because there is no limit to the number of entries within a distinct view name, you can configure complex views. You can also have 32 access entries (with distinct



names) per virtual router. All views are on a per-virtual-router basis; although static views are on a per-virtual-router basis, they cannot be altered. If you modify a view, the system deletes the original entry and creates the new view. Therefore, if the new view fails, the original view is no longer available.

SNMP v3 configurations are allowed only at the maximum CLI privilege level (15).

### ***snmp-server group***

- Use to dynamically configure server groups. You must access the CLI at privilege level 15 to view or use this command.

- Example

```
host1(config-profile)#snmp-server group grp1authpriv usm priv read grp1read
write grp1write notify grp1notify
```

- Use the **no** version to remove the dynamically created group.
- See snmp-server group.

### ***snmp-server view***

- Use to dynamically configure an SNMP server view. You must access the CLI at privilege level 15 to view or use this command.

- Example

```
host1(config)#snmp-server view view1 1.3.6.1 included non-volatile
```

- Use the **no** version to remove the dynamically created view.
- See snmp-server view.

## **Setting Server Parameters**

Setting the server's contact person and location provides helpful identifiers for the SNMP server. These identifiers are arbitrary and do not affect the server's function, but they are useful to have.

### ***snmp-server contact***

- Use these commands to configure the SNMP server's contact person and the server's location.
- The contact is the person who manages the server.
- The location is the server's physical location.
- Each of these parameters can be up to 64 characters.
- Example

```
host1(config)#snmp-server contact Bob Smith
host1(config)#snmp-server location 3rdfloor
```

- Use the **no** version of these commands to clear the contact or location identifier from the SNMP configuration.
- See `snmp-server contact`.

## Configuring SNMP Packet Size

The SNMP server must support a PDU with an upper limit of 484 bytes or greater. There is no need to coordinate the maximum packet size across the entire network. Many requests and responses tend to be smaller than the maximum value.

### **`snmp-server packetsize`**

- Use to set the SNMP server's maximum packet size.
- Increase this value to improve the efficiency of the GetBulk operation.
- Example
 

```
host1(config)#snmp-server packetsize 1000
```
- Use the **no** version to set the SNMP packet size to the default maximum size, 1500 bytes.
- See `snmp-server packetsize`.

## Configuring Memory Warning

You can set up the router to send memory warning messages when memory utilization reaches a specified value.

### **`memory`**

- Use to configure memory warning parameters. You set a high memory utilization value and an abated memory utilization value. When the system reaches the high utilization value, it sends warning messages. When memory usage falls to the abated utilization value, the system stops sending warning messages.
- Example
 

```
host1(config)#memory warning 80 70
```
- Use the **no** version to return to the default values, 85 for high utilization and 75 for abated memory utilization.
- See `memory`.

## Configuring Encoding Method

You can control how the router encodes the `ifDescr` and `ifName` objects in the SNMP agent's interface table and in the bulkstats application.

There are two choices of encoding schemes: an E Series router proprietary method and a conventional industry method.

- The proprietary method identifies each interface sublayer with its type.
- The industry method bases the type information for each interface sublayer on the lowest layer 1 or layer 2 interface type.

For example a PPP interface configured on top of an ATM interfaces is:

- PPP3/0.1—Proprietary method
- ATM3/0.1—Industry method

### ***snmp-server interfaces description-format***

- Use to set the encoding scheme of the ifDescr and ifName objects. Include one of the following keywords:
  - **common**—Sets the encoding scheme to the conventional industry method and provides compatibility with software that uses the industry encoding scheme.
  - **legacy**—Sets the encoding scheme for legacy E Series routers.
  - **proprietary**—Sets the encoding scheme to the E Series router proprietary method.

- Example

```
host1(config)#snmp-server interfaces description-format common
```

- Use the **no** version to return to the default, the legacy encoding scheme.
- See snmp-server interfaces description-format.

## ***Managing Interface Sublayers***

You can set up the SNMP agent to compress the number of interface instances in the standard interface and stack tables. You can also control the interface numbering method used in the interface tables.

### **Compressing Interfaces**

You can compress interfaces by interface type, table type, and the administrative status of the interface.

Compressing interfaces without specifying a table type removes them from the interface tables (ifTable, ifXTable, and junIfTable), the interface stack tables (ifStackTable, ifInvStackTable, and junIfInvStackTable), the ipAddrTable, and the ipNetToMedia table, which increases table retrieval performance. For example, if you want statistics kept only on IP interfaces, then you can compress all interfaces except IP; subsequently, only IP interfaces will appear in the interface tables, interface stack tables, ipAddrTable, and ipNetToMedia table.

Compressing a table type in an interface removes the interface from the specified table type. For example, if you want to compress an interface only in interface tables, you can specify the **table-type** keyword and **interface-tables** as the *TableType* value.

To compress interfaces that have an administrative status of down, use the **snmp-server interfaces compress-restriction** command.

To compress interfaces according to type, use the **snmp-server interfaces compress** command. To see the list of interfaces that you can remove, use the CLI help:

```
host1(config)#snmp-server interfaces compress ?
Atm Atm interface layer
Atm1483 Atm1483 interface layer
AtmAal5 AtmAal5 interface layer
...
SonetVT SonetVT interface layer
VlanMajor VlanMajor interface layer
VlanSub VlanSub interface layer <cr>
```

If you enter the **snmp-server interfaces compress** command without keywords, the following interface types are removed from the interface tables:

- ip
- ppp
- ethernetSubinterface
- hdlc
- ipLoopback
- ipVirtual
- pppLinkInterface
- pppoeInterface
- slepInterface/ciscoHdlc

### **snmp-server interfaces compress**

- Use to remove interface sublayers either from all interface tables or from specific table types, such as interface tables and interface stack tables, in the SNMP interface configuration. If you use the **snmp-server interfaces compress** command on an interface without specifying a table type, it compresses the interface in all the tables. If you compress an interface using the **table-type** keyword for the first time, subsequent uses of the **snmp-server interfaces compress** command without the **table-type** keyword compress the interface only in the ipNetToMediaTable (not in interface tables or interface stack tables).
- Example 1—To compress all interfaces on an interface layer, **PPP**, use the following command:

```
host1(config)#snmp-server interfaces compress ppp
```

- Example 2—If you use the **snmp-server interfaces compress** command with the **table-type** keyword to compress an interface, issuing the same command the next time without specifying a table type compresses the interface only in the ipNetToMediaTable. In the following example, the command is used with the **table-type** keyword for the first time on a router to compress the **Ds1** interface in interface stack tables:

```
host1(config)#snmp-server interfaces compress Ds1 table-type
interface-stack-tables
```

Subsequent use of the same command on any interface (in the following example, **Atm**) on the same router without the **table-type** keyword compresses the interface only in the ipNetToMedia table (not in interface or interface stack tables):

```
host1(config)#snmp-server interfaces compress Atm
```

- Example 3—To compress interfaces based on the table types, **interface-tables** and **interface-stack-tables**, use the following CLI example. In this example, the **Atm** interface is compressed in interface tables (ifTables) and the **Ds1** interface is compressed in interface stack tables (ifStackTables), but none of the interfaces are compressed in the ipNetToMediaTable.

```
host1(config)#snmp-server interfaces compress ?
[interfaceList]
  table-type      Category of SNMP tables from which to remove
  < cr >
host1(config)#snmp-server interfaces compress atm table-type ?
  interface-stack-tables Compression will be applicable to
                        ifStackTable/ifInvStackTable/junifStackTable
  interface-tables    Compression will be applicable to
                        ifTable/ifXtable/junifTable
host1(config)#snmp-server interfaces compress atm table-type interface-tables
host1(config)#snmp-server interfaces compress Ds1 table-type
interface-stack-tables
Router#show snmp interfaces
Compressed(Removed) Interface Types :
From ipNetToMediaTable:
From ifTables          : Atm
From ifStackTables     : Ds1
Armed Interface Numbering Mode: Sparse ifIndex
Interface Description Setting: Proprietary
```

- Use the **no** version to add interface sublayers to the interface tables.
- See snmp-server interfaces compress.

### **snmp-server interfaces compress-restriction**

- Use to exclude interfaces from the ifTable, the ifStackTable, and the ipAddrTable if the administrative status of the interface is down.
- Example

```
host1(config)#snmp-server interfaces compress-restriction ifadminstatusdown
```

- Use the **no** version to remove the restriction and allow interfaces with an administrative status of down in the ifTable, the ifStackTable, and the ipAddrTable.
- See snmp-server interfaces compress-restriction.

## Controlling Interface Numbering

Each interface in the `ifTable` is assigned an `ifIndex` number. RFC 1213 required that `ifIndexes` use contiguous integers and that the `ifIndex` be less than the value of the total number of interfaces (`ifNumber`). More recent RFCs—1573, 2232, and 2863—removed these restrictions to accommodate interface sublayers. The E Series router implementation of SNMP derives index numbers in 32-bit values that are unique on a given router. This numbering scheme can result in large gaps in the `ifIndex`.

Legacy network management software that was designed to work with RFC 1213 implementations expects contiguous integers and can fail when the software encounters large gaps in the `ifIndex`.

By default, the router uses a numbering scheme based on RFC 2863. For compatibility with RFC 1213, you can set up the router to use contiguous numbers and to limit the values of the `ifIndex` and the `ifNumber`.

### ***snmp-server interfaces rfc1213***

- Use to set up the interface numbering method in the `IfTable` to use contiguous integers, which provides compatibility with versions of SNMP that are based on RFC 1213.
- The `maxIfIndex` option sets the maximum value of the `ifIndex` field that the system will allocate.
- The `maxIfNumber` option sets the maximum number of interfaces allowed in the interface tables.



**CAUTION:** Reducing the value of the `maxIfIndex` or `maxIfNumber` causes the router to automatically reboot to factory default settings.

---

- When the `IfIndex` and `IfNumber` maximums are reached, the system logs the event and ignores the creation of additional interfaces, which means that new interfaces are not visible in the interface table.

- Example

```
host1(config)#snmp-server interfaces rfc1213 55000 100000
```

```
WARNING: Execution of this command will cause all configuration settings to
revert to factory defaults upon the next system reboot.
Proceed with 'snmp interfaces rfc1213'? [confirm]
```

- Use the **no** version to return to the default method of interface numbering.
- See `snmp-server interfaces rfc1213`.

## Monitoring Interface Tables

Use the following command to view the configuration of your interface tables.

**show snmp group**

- Use to display a list of interface types that are compressed in the interface tables and the interface numbering method configured on the router.
- Field descriptions
  - Compressed(Removed) Interface Types—List of interface types that are removed from the ifTable and ifStackTable
  - Armed Interface Numbering Mode—Interface numbering method configured on the router: RFC1213, RFC2863
  - maxIfIndex—Maximum value that the system will allocate to the ifIndex field
  - maxIfNumber—Maximum number of interfaces allowed in the ifTable
  - Interface Description Setting—Method used to encode the ifDescr and ifName objects: common, legacy, proprietary
- Example
 

```

host1#show snmp interfaces
Compressed(Removed) Interface Types:
HDLC, FT1, ATM, ATM1483
Armed Interface Numbering Mode:
RFC1213, maxIfIndex=65535, maxIfNumber=65535
Interface Description Setting: proprietary
      
```
- See show snmp group.

## Configuring Traps

---

This section provides information for:

- IP Hosts on page 169
- Trap Categories on page 170
- Trap Severity Levels on page 171
- Specifying an Egress Point for SNMP Traps on page 176
- Configuring Trap Queues on page 176
- Configuring Trap Notification Logs on page 177
- Recovering Lost Traps on page 179

The system generates SNMP traps according to operating specifications defined in supported MIBs.

### IP Hosts

Traps are sent to IP hosts. The IP hosts are configured in a proprietary trap host table maintained by the router (the server). Each entry in the table contains:

- IP address of the trap destination
- Community name (v1 or v2c) or username (v3) to send in the trap message
- SNMP format (v1 or v2) of the notification (trap) PDU to use for that destination
- Types of traps enabled to be sent to that destination
- Trap filters configured for the destination

The maximum number of entries in the SNMP trap host table in each virtual router is eight.

## **Trap Categories**

The router supports the following trap categories:

- addrPool—Local address pool traps
- atmPing—E Series router proprietary ATM ping traps
- bfdmib—BFD MIB traps
- bgp—BGP state change traps
- bulkstats—Bulk statistics file full and nearly full traps
- cliSecurityAlert—Security alert traps
- dhcp—Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol traps
- dismanEvent—Distributed management (disman) event traps
- dosProtectionPlatform—DoS protection platform traps
- dvmrp—Distance Vector Multicast Routing Protocol traps
- dvmrpProp—E Series router proprietary DVMRP traps
- environment—Power, temperature, fan, and memory utilization traps
- fileXfer—File transfer status change traps
- haRedundancy—High availability and redundancy traps
- inventory—System inventory and status traps
- ip—Internet Protocol traps
- ldp—LDP traps
- link—SNMP linkUp and linkDown traps
- log—System log capacity traps
- mobileIpv4—Mobile IPv4 traps
- mplste—Mplste traps
- mrouter—Mrouter traps
- ntp—E Series router proprietary traps
- ospf—Open Shortest Path First traps



- packetMirror—Packet mirroring traps; packet mirroring–related SNMP categories and traps are visible only to authorized users. See *JUNOS Policy Management Configuration Guide* for information about using secure packet mirroring traps.
- pim—Protocol Independent Multicast traps
- ping—Ping operation traps in disman remops (remote operations) MIB
- radius—RADIUS servers fail to respond to accounting and authentication requests traps, or servers return to active service traps
- routeTable—Maximum route limit and warning threshold traps; when this trap is generated, the actual value of the exceeded warning threshold is displayed.
- snmp—SNMP coldStart, warmStart, authenticationFailure; the trap option. The **snmp-server enable traps snmp authentication** command allows customized treatment for SNMP authentication failure traps.
- sonet—SONET traps
- traceroute—Traceroute operation traps (in disman remops MIB)
- trapFilters—Global filters for SNMP trap recipients
- vrrp—Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol traps

To enable global trap categories, use the **snmp-server enable traps** command. To enable trap categories for a specific host, use the **snmp-server host** command.

## Trap Severity Levels

The router provides a method of filtering traps according to severity. Table 22 on page 171 describes the supported severity levels.

**Table 22: Trap Severity Descriptions**

Severity Number	Severity Name	System Response
0	Emergency	System unusable
1	Alert	Immediate action needed
2	Critical	Critical conditions exist
3	Error	Error conditions exist
4	Warning	Warning conditions exist
5	Notice	Normal but significant conditions exist
6	Informational	Informational messages
7	Debug	Debug messages

You can set up one or more of the following types of trap filters:

- Global—Filters traps by type and severity level across all trap categories
- Per-category—Filters traps for a specific category by type and severity level
- Host-specific—Filters traps on a specific host by type and severity level

Trap filters work as follows:

1. An event is posted to the SNMP agent.
2. The system determines whether the corresponding trap category is globally enabled and whether the trap meets the minimum severity level for the trap category. If the per-category filter is not defined for this trap, the global trap severity applies.
  - If the trap does not meet these criteria, the system discards the trap.
  - If the trap does meet these criteria, the trap goes to the trap host processor.
3. The trap host processor determines whether the trap category is enabled on the host and whether the trap meets the minimum severity level set for the host.
  - If the trap does not meet these criteria, the system discards the trap.
  - If the trap does meet these criteria, the trap is sent to the trap recipient.

To set up global severity filters, use the **snmp-server enable traps** command. To specify the trap severity level for a particular category, use the **snmp-server enable traps per-category-trapFilters** command. To set up a severity filter for a specific host, use the **snmp-server host** command.

#### **snmp-server enable traps**

- Use to enable and configure SNMP trap generation on a global basis.
- Traps are unsolicited messages sent from an SNMP server (agent) to an SNMP client (manager).
- You can enable the traps listed in “Trap Categories” on page 170.
- You can filter traps according to the trap severity levels described in Table 22 on page 171.
- If you do not specify a trap option, all options are enabled or disabled for the trap type.
- Example

```
host1(config)#snmp-server enable traps atmPing trapfilters critical
```

- Use the **no** version to disable SNMP trap generation.
- See snmp-server enable traps.

#### **snmp-server enable traps per-category-trapFilters**

- Use to specify the trap severity level for a particular category without overwriting the existing global severity level, which applies to all enabled categories configured on the router.
- If you change the global trap severity level (which applies to all enabled categories) after you set the per-category trap severity level, the global severity level takes precedence over the per-category severity level.
- If you do not configure the per-category severity level, the global trap severity level (which applies to all enabled categories) takes effect for that category.



**NOTE:** This command does not modify the severity level set for specific hosts using the **snmp-server host** command.

---

- If you configure global severity levels for different categories in succession, the last global severity level you configure is applied to all categories.
- Example 1—Configuring the per-category severity level without changing the global severity level
  1. Configure the global severity level as **critical** for all enabled trap categories by specifying the SONET trap category.

host1(config)#**snmp-server enable traps sonet trapFilters critical**

2. Configure the global severity level as **notice** for all enabled trap categories by specifying the BGP trap category.

host1(config)#**snmp-server enable traps bgp trapFilters notice**

3. Configure the per-category severity level as **debug** for the SONET trap category.

host1(config)#**snmp-server enable traps sonet per-category-trapFilters debug**

In this example, although you configure the category-specific severity level as **debug** for the SONET category in Step 3, the global severity level remains unchanged as **notice**. This behavior occurs because only the category-specific severity level was configured in the last operation.

- Example 2—Overwriting the global severity level to the last-configured setting
  1. Configure the global severity level as **critical** for all enabled trap categories by specifying the SONET trap category.

host1(config)#**snmp-server enable traps sonet trapFilters critical**

2. Configure the global severity level as **notice** for all enabled trap categories by specifying the BGP trap category.

host1(config)#**snmp-server enable traps bgp trapFilters notice**

Although you specify the type of SNMP trap category when you configure the global severity level, it takes effect for all enabled trap categories on the router. In this example, after you issue the second command, the global severity level is set as **notice** for all enabled trap categories.

- Example 3—Overriding the global severity level for a category with the per-category severity level
  1. Configure the global severity level as **critical** for the SONET trap category in the command.

```
host1(config)#snmp-server enable traps sonet trapFilters critical
```

2. Change the global severity level to **notice** for all enabled trap categories.

```
host1(config)#snmp-server enable traps bgp trapFilters notice
```

3. Configure the per-category severity level as **debug** for the SONET trap category. This setting overrides the **notice** trap severity level that was applicable for the SONET trap category.

```
host1(config)#snmp-server enable traps sonet per-category-trapFilters debug
```

The global severity level is configured as **notice** for all enabled trap categories except SONET, whose severity level is set as **debug**. This configuration occurs because the global severity level is overwritten to the last configured value and the per-category severity level takes precedence over the global severity level.

- There is no **no** version.
- See `snmp-server enable traps`.

### ***snmp-server host***

- Use to configure an SNMP trap host to refine the type and severity to traps that the host receives.
- A trap destination is the IP address of a client (network management station) that receives the SNMP traps.
- You can configure up to eight trap hosts on each virtual router.
- You can enable the traps listed in “Trap Categories” on page 170.
- You can filter traps according to the trap severity levels described in Table 22 on page 171.
- Example

```
host1(config)# snmp-server host 126.197.10.5 version 2c westford udp-port
162 snmp link trapfilters alert
```

- Use the **no** version to remove the specified host from the list of recipients.
- See `snmp-server host`.

### ***snmp-server trap-source***

- Use to specify the interface whose IP address is used as the source address for all SNMP traps.



**NOTE:** When there are multiple IP addresses configured on the IP interface that is chosen as the SNMP trap source, the SNMP agent automatically uses the primary IP address of the interface as the SNMP source address on SNMP traps.

---

- Example

```
host1(config)#snmp-server trap-source fastethernet 0/0
```

- Use the **no** version to remove the interface from the trap configuration.
- See snmp-server trap-source.

#### **snmp trap ip link-status**

- Use to enable link-status traps on an IP interface.
- Example

```
host1(config-if)#snmp trap ip link-status
```

- Use the **no** version to disable link-status traps on an IP interface.
- See snmp trap ip link-status.

#### **snmp trap ip link-status**

- Use to configure the SNMP link-status traps on a particular interface.
- A link-up trap recognizes that a previously inactive link in the network has come up.
- A link-down trap recognizes a failure in one of the communication links represented in the server's configuration.
- Example

```
host1(config-controll)#snmp trap link-status
```

- Use the **no** version to disable these traps for the interface.



**NOTE:** This command operates in Controller Configuration mode. It is supported only by the DS3, DS1, and FT1 interface layers.

---

- See snmp trap ip link-status.

#### **traps**

- Use to specify traps for OSPF.
- Example

```
host1(config-router-rn)#traps all
```

- Use the **no** version to delete the specified trap, group of traps, or all traps.



**NOTE:** For additional information about configuring OSPF-specific traps, see *JUNOS IP, IPv6, and IGP Configuration Guide*.

---

- See traps.

## Specifying an Egress Point for SNMP Traps

You can enable SNMP trap proxy, which allows you to specify a single SNMP agent as the egress point for SNMP traps from all other virtual routers. This feature removes the need to configure a network path from each virtual router to a single trap collector.

You can enable SNMP trap proxy from either SNMP or the CLI. Only one SNMP trap proxy can exist for a physical router.

The SNMP trap proxy does not forward global traps that it receives from other virtual routers. The corresponding SNMP agent handles global traps locally and does not forward them to the SNMP trap proxy.

To configure the SNMP trap proxy:

1. Access the virtual router context.
2. Enable or disable the SNMP trap proxy.

### **snmp-server trap-proxy**

- Use to enable or disable the SNMP trap proxy.
- Example

```
host1(config)#snmp-server trap-proxy enable
```

- Use the **no** version to disable the SNMP trap proxy.
- See snmp-server trap-proxy.

## Configuring Trap Queues

You can control the SNMP trap egress rate, specify the method of handling a full queue, and specify the maximum number of traps kept in the queue.

### **snmp-server host**

- Use to control the SNMP trap egress rate for the host that is receiving SNMP traps. Use one or more of the following keywords:
  - **drainRate**—Specifies the maximum number of traps per second sent to the host

- **full**—Specifies the method for handling the queue full condition
- **size**—Specifies the maximum number of traps kept in the queue
- Example

```
host1(config)#snmp-server host 10.10.10.10 trapqueue drainrate 600 full
droplastin size 50
```

- Use the **no** version to remove the SNMP host.
- See snmp-server host.

## Configuring Trap Notification Logs

SNMP uses the User Datagram Protocol (UDP) to send traps. Because UDP does not guarantee delivery or provide flow control, some traps can be lost in transit to a destination address. The Notification Log MIB provides flow control support for UDP datagrams.

You should set up your management applications to periodically request the recorded traps to ensure that the host is up and the management applications have received all the generated traps.

To identify the location of traps logged in the notification log, the system assigns a consecutive index number to each SNMP trap message transmitted from the E Series router. Clients can use the index to detect missing traps.

To configure trap notification logs:

1. Configure the notification log.

```
host1(config)#snmp-server notificationlog log 10.10.4.4 adminStatus
includeVarbinds
```

2. (Optional) Specify when the notification log ages out.

```
host1(config)#snmp-server notificationlog ageout 5
```

3. (Optional) Specify the maximum number of entries kept in the notification log.

```
host1(config)#snmp-server notificationlog entrylimit 210
```

4. (Optional) Enable the snmpTrap log to severity level info.

```
host1(config)#log severity info snmpTrap
```



**NOTE:** Enabling the snmpTrap log provides the same information in the router log as appears in the snmp-server notification log. However, long trap strings may appear truncated.

---

**log severity**

- Use to set the severity level for a selected category or for systemwide logs.



**NOTE:** For more information about this command, see the *JUNOS System Event Logging Reference Guide*.

---

- Example

```
host1(config)#log severity info snmptrap
```

- Use the **no** version to return to the default severity value (error) for the selected category. To return all logs to their default severity setting, include an \* (asterisk) with the **no** version.
- See log severity.

**snmp-server notificationLog ageOut**

- Use to set the ageout for traps in the notification log tables. The range is 0–214748364 minutes.
- Example

```
host1(config)#snmp-server notificationLog ageout 5
```

- Use the **no** version to return the ageout limit to the default value, 1440 minutes.
- See snmp-server notificationLog ageOut.

**snmp-server notificationLog entryLimit**

- Use to set the maximum number of notifications kept in all notification log tables.
- The range is 1–500, which means that you can allocate up to 500 notifications across all virtual routers on the router. As you allocate the entry limits for virtual routers, the available range changes to reflect the number of notifications that you have allocated.
- Example

```
host1(config)#snmp-server notificationLog entrylimit 210
```

- Use the **no** version to return the limit to the default value, 500.
- See snmp-server notificationLog entryLimit.

**snmp-server notificationLog log**

- Use to configure SNMP notification log tables.
- Use the **adminStatus** keyword to enable administrative status.
- Use the **includeVarbinds** keyword to include log names and log indexes in the trap's variable bindings.
- Example



```
host1(config)#snmp-server notificationLog log 10.10.4.4 adminStatus
includeVarbinds
```

- Use the **no** version to remove the notification log configuration.
- See snmp-server notificationLog log.

## Recovering Lost Traps

SNMP traps can be lost during startup of the E Series router for one of the following reasons:

1. The SNMP agent begins sending SNMP traps to the host before the line module is initialized.
2. If the SNMP proxy virtual router is initialized after other virtual routers, traps generated by the other virtual routers and sent to the proxy router are lost.

To recover SNMP traps that are lost during system startup, the SNMP agent pings the configured trap host to identify that there is a communication path between E Series router and host. On successful ping acknowledgment, the lost traps are reconstructed for each virtual router. In the case of scenario 1, the reconstructed traps are sent to the proxy virtual router to be routed to the appropriate hosts. In the case of scenario 2, the traps are sent directly to the appropriate hosts.

You can configure the ping timeout window with the **snmp-server** host command. The following are guidelines for setting the maximum ping window:

- If you are losing traps because of scenario 1, base the maximum ping window time on the estimated time that it takes to establish connectivity in a particular network. (For some configurations it can take more than 30 minutes to establish connectivity.)
- If you are losing traps because of scenario 2, we recommend that you use the default value for the maximum ping window time, which is one minute.

### **snmp-server host**

- Use to set the ping timeout for the host that is receiving SNMP traps.
- Use the **pingtimeout** keyword to set the ping timeout window; the range is 1–90 minutes.
- Example

```
host1(config)#snmp-server host 10.10.4.4 pingtimeout 2
```

- Use the **no** version to remove the SNMP host.
- See snmp-server host.

## Configuring the SNMP Server Event Manager

---

The SNMP server event manager works in conjunction with the Event MIB (RFC 2981). The purpose of this application is to allow many management functions (for example, fault detection, configuration management, accounting management, and performance management). These functions are traditionally performed by the network management station. However, by using the SNMP server event manager, you can distribute some of these functions to E Series routers and automate them.

### Event MIB Purpose

The rapid growth of networks has made it impractical to directly manage networks from a single network management station (NMS). This brought about a need for a model that both automated and distributed event management. The goal was to allow devices to monitor themselves and other devices, and to take action under certain conditions.

The Event MIB (RFC 2981) defines a method for creating trigger conditions, testing those conditions, and determining which action to take when a trigger meets those conditions.

The Event MIB allows you to define test conditions for object integers that are accessible in the agent, making it possible to monitor any aspect of a device without defining specific notifications and complicating the agent definition. In this model, because devices have the ability to monitor themselves or other devices, the processing is distributed throughout the network. Also, sending the information only to the NMS that uses an event model reduces both network overhead and processing drain on the NMS.

### Event MIB Structure

The Event MIB has three major parts: the trigger table, the objects table, and the event table. These tables also contain subordinate MIB tables that contain more detailed information about the trigger tests.

#### Trigger Table

The trigger table (mteTriggerTable) lists any currently-defined trigger conditions. Triggers fall into three categories—existence, Boolean, and threshold.

An *existence* trigger tests for the existence of a MIB object instance; you can specify that the trigger occur by either the appearance, disappearance, or change in value of a MIB instance.

A *Boolean* trigger tests whether the value of a MIB object (base syntax integer) is equal, unequal, greater than, less than, less than or equal to, or greater than or equal to some defined value.

A *threshold* trigger verifies a MIB object (base syntax integer) in relation to either a rising threshold value, falling threshold value, or both.

You can configure both Boolean and threshold tests to trigger on an *absolute value* or a *delta value* over a determined polling interval.

Subordinate MIB tables exist within the trigger section of each type of trigger test. In other words, each type of trigger (existence, threshold, and Boolean) contains a table that stores added information about that type of trigger test.

For example, a trigger entry of a specific type of test in the `mteTriggerTable` creates a linked entry in the appropriate subtable. In turn, this subtable contains more specific information about the specific test.

A *delta* table also exists within the trigger tables. This table stores information about any delta values based on any Boolean and threshold triggers. The delta table stores a MIB object that indicates whether any discontinuities occurred for any delta trigger (for example, a router reset).



**NOTE:** When determining discontinuity, the MIB object must be a time-based counter or number. When a polling interval expires and the event agent (router) needs to perform a delta calculation, it first checks the discontinuity MIB object for that trigger. If a discontinuity occurs, the agent does not perform the test for that trigger until the next polling interval.

---

## Objects Table

The objects table (`mteObjectsTable`) defines objects that you want to add to event messages. In other words, you can create a list of user-specified objects and bind them to a trigger event. This can provide a snapshot of other values on a router when the trigger occurs. You can bind objects to a specific trigger, a type of test (for example, existence or Boolean tests), or a type of event (for example, rising or falling events).



**NOTE:** This release does not support the objects table.

---

## Event Table

The event table (`mteEventTable`) defines what action you want the device to take when a trigger occurs. This action can be in the form of a notification, setting a specified MIB object, or both. The results of these actions are controlled within two subordinate MIB tables—notification and set.

Notifications (`mteNotifications`), or traps, define what the router sends when an event occurs. These traps include the following:

- When a Boolean or existence trigger occurs, the router sends an `mteTriggerFired` trap.
- When a rising threshold trigger occurs, the router sends an `mteTriggerRising` trap.

- When a falling threshold trigger occurs, the router sends an `mteTriggerFalling` trap.
- If a trigger fails to complete a test for any reason, the router sends a global `mteTriggerFailure` trap.
- If an event fails to set, the router sends an `mteEventSetFailure` trap.

Sets define certain modifications to other MIB objects based on a particular event.

## Configuration Tasks

To configure the SNMP server event manager:

1. Access the SNMP server management event application.

```
host1(config)#snmp-server management-event
host1(config-mgmtevent)#
```



**NOTE:** You must create a management event instance for each virtual router.

---

2. (Optional) Specify the maximum number of trigger entries that you want the virtual router to support.

```
host1(config-mgmtevent)#resource 275
```

3. Create an event for each trap notification (`mteTriggerFailure`, `mteTriggerFalling`, or `mteTriggerRising`) that you want to use by specifying an event owner and event name.

```
host1(config-mgmtevent)#event sysadmin failuretrigger
host1(config-mgmtevent-event)#exit
host1(config-mgmtevent)#event sysadmin fallingtrigger
host1(config-mgmtevent-event)#exit
host1(config-mgmtevent)#event sysadmin risingtrigger
host1(config-mgmtevent-event)#exit
```



**NOTE:** You must create a separate event for each trap notification that you want to use. However, you can specify the trap notification and enable the trap before exiting the event context.

---

4. Define each event to send a trap notification (`mteTriggerFailure`, `mteTriggerFalling`, and `mteTriggerRising`).

```
host1(config-mgmtevent)#event sysadmin failuretrigger
host1(config-mgmtevent-event)#notification id mteTriggerFailure
host1(config-mgmtevent-event)#exit
host1(config-mgmtevent)#event sysadmin fallingtrigger
host1(config-mgmtevent-event)#notification id mteTriggerFalling
host1(config-mgmtevent-event)#exit
host1(config-mgmtevent)#event sysadmin risingtrigger
```

```
host1(config-mgmtevent-event)#notification id mteTriggerRising
host1(config-mgmtevent-event)#exit
```



**NOTE:** The mteTriggerFailure notification is a global value. After you create a failure event notification, it is automatically bound to every trigger with the same owner. If a failure occurs, and the trigger owner and the event owner are the same, the router sends the trap.

5. Enable the event, and exit the event configuration level.

```
host1(config-mgmtevent)#event sysadmin failuretrigger
host1(config-mgmtevent-event)#enable
host1(config-mgmtevent-event)#exit
host1(config-mgmtevent)#event sysadmin fallingtrigger
host1(config-mgmtevent-event)#enable
host1(config-mgmtevent-event)#exit
host1(config-mgmtevent)#event sysadmin risingtrigger
host1(config-mgmtevent-event)#enable
host1(config-mgmtevent-event)#exit
host1(config-mgmtevent)#
```



**NOTE:** Once enabled, you cannot edit an event or trigger configuration. To change an enabled event or trigger, you must delete it and re-create it.

6. Define the trigger that you want to use for an event by specifying a trigger owner and trigger name.

```
host1(config-mgmtevent)#trigger george trigger1
host1(config-mgmtevent-trigger)#
```

7. Specify a MIB object to sample.

```
host1(config-mgmtevent-trigger)#sample value-id 1.3.6.1.2.1.60.1.2.1.1.7
```

8. Specify the frequency (in seconds) at which you want the sampling to occur.

```
host1(config-mgmtevent-trigger)#frequency 100
```



**NOTE:** Unless you specify that you want to perform delta sampling, the values are absolute.

9. (Optional) Specify that you want to perform delta sampling on the sample value ID.

```
host1(config-mgmtevent-trigger)#delta-sampling
```

- (Optional) Enter the discontinuity MIB value ID that you want to test.

```
host1(config-mgmt-event-trigger)#delta-sampling discontinuity-id  
1.3.6.1.2.1.31.1.1.1.19.9
```

- (Optional) Enter the discontinuity type (timeStamp or timeTicks) that you want the test to use.

```
host1(config-mgmt-event-trigger)#delta-sampling discontinuity-id-type  
timeStamp
```

10. (Optional) Configure the desired SNMP security level for the agent that you want to poll.

```
host1(config)#snmp security read
```

11. Define the test values that you want this trigger to use.

You can define a Boolean test, existence test, or threshold test. See the following sections for procedures.

### Defining a Boolean Test

You can configure a Boolean trigger to test whether the value of an integer object is equal, unequal, greater than, less than, less than or equal to, or greater than or equal to some defined value.

To define a Boolean test:

1. Define the Boolean-test comparison that you want this trigger to use.

```
host1(config-mgmt-event-trigger)#boolean-test comparison greater
```

2. (Optional) Specify that you do not want the Boolean test to perform a comparison when this trigger first becomes active.

```
host1(config-mgmt-event-trigger)#boolean-test startup
```

3. Specify the events that you want the Boolean-test trigger to use by entering an event owner name and event name.



**NOTE:** You do not need to bind a failure event to a trigger. If you create a failure event and a failure occurs, the router sends the trap if the event owner is the same as the trigger owner.

---

```
host1(config-mgmt-event-trigger)#boolean-test event george trigger1
```

When specifying an event, use the exact owner name and event name. Specify the Boolean value to which the test compares.

```
host1(config-mgmt-event-trigger)#boolean-test value 5175438
```

- Specify the agent on which the object resides.

```
host1(config-mgmtevent-trigger)#agent context-name router1
```

You can obtain the agent context name for a virtual router from the **show snmp agent** command. The agent context name is independent of the virtual router name. Enable the trigger.

```
host1(config-mgmtevent-trigger)#enable
```

Once enabled, you cannot edit an event or trigger configuration. To change an enabled event or trigger, you must delete it and re-create it.

### Defining an Existence Test

An existence test looks for the existence of a MIB object. The appearance, disappearance, or a change in value of the object can trigger the existence test.

To define an existence test:

- Define the existence test test-type value that you want this trigger to use.

```
host1(config-mgmtevent-trigger)#existence-test test-type changed
```

- Define the startup threshold condition—absent or present—that you want this trigger to use.

```
host1(config-mgmtevent-trigger)#existence-test startup absent
```

- Specify the events that you want the existence-test trigger to use by entering an event owner name and event name.



**NOTE:** You do not need to bind a failure event to a trigger. If you create a failure event, if a failure occurs, and if the trigger owner and the event owner are the same, the router sends the trap.

---

```
host1(config-mgmtevent-trigger)#boolean-test event george trigger1
```

When specifying an event, make sure to use the exact owner name and event name.

- Specify the agent on which the object resides.

```
host1(config-mgmtevent-trigger)#agent context-name router1
```

You can obtain the agent context name for a virtual router from the **show snmp agent** command. The agent context name is independent of the virtual router name.

- Enable the trigger.

```
host1(config-mgmt-event-trigger)#enable
```

Once enabled, you cannot edit an event or trigger configuration. To change an enabled event or trigger, you must delete it and re-create it.

## Defining a Threshold Test

To define a threshold test:

1. Define the threshold-test values that you want this trigger to use.



**NOTE:** The rising value must always be larger than the falling value. Entering a lower rising value than a falling value will provide invalid results or errors.

- absolute-value—Use when defining absolute threshold values

```
host1(config-mgmt-event-trigger)#threshold-test absolute-value rising 2000
falling 1900
```

- delta-value—Use when defining delta threshold values

```
host1(config-mgmt-event-trigger)#threshold-test delta-value rising 2000 falling
1900
```

2. Define the startup threshold condition that you predict the sample to initially follow—falling, rising, risingorfalling. For example, if you are sampling a MIB value that you know will start from zero and rise, you would specify a rising startup condition.

```
host1(config-mgmt-event-trigger)#threshold-test startup rising
```

3. Specify the events (rising or falling) that you want the threshold-test trigger to use by entering an event owner name and event name.



**NOTE:** You do not need to bind a failure event to a trigger. If you create a failure event, if a failure occurs, and if the trigger owner and the event owner are the same, the router sends the trap.

```
host1(config-mgmt-event-trigger)#threshold-test event falling sysadmin
fallingtrigger
host1(config-mgmt-event-trigger)#threshold-test event rising sysadmin risingtrigger
```

When specifying an event, make sure to use the exact owner name and event name.

4. Specify the agent on which the object resides.

```
host1(config-mgmt-event-trigger)#agent context-name router1
```



You can obtain the agent context name for a virtual router from the **show snmp agent** command. The agent context name is independent of the virtual router name.

5. Enable the trigger.

```
host1(config-mgmt-event-trigger)#enable
```

Once enabled, you cannot edit an event or trigger configuration. To change an enabled event or trigger, you must delete it and re-create it.

### **agent context-name**

- Use to specify the virtual router SNMP agent on which you want to poll MIB objects.
- The default is the current context (virtual router).
- The *contextName* value is the virtual router number in the order the virtual router was created (for example, router1, router2, and so on). Use the **show snmp agent** command to obtain the context name for the virtual router.
- Use the **wildcard** keyword to specify that the context name is a wildcard value.



**NOTE:** Use caution when assigning wildcards. Wildcards can rapidly use up trigger resources.

---

- Use the **limit** keyword to specify the maximum number of agents to be polled.
- Example 1

```
host1(config-mgmt-event-trigger)#agent context-name router1 wildcard
```

- Example 2

```
host1(config-mgmt-event-trigger)#agent context-name router1 wildcard limit 15
```



**NOTE:** SNMP server security defaults to no access. When using a separate virtual router, you must use the **snmp-server security** command and provide read or read-write access to other virtual routers.

---

- Use the **no** version to return to the default context (virtual router).
- See agent context-name.

### **boolean-test**

- Use to define Boolean test values for the trigger that you are configuring, including comparison settings, a Boolean value, a startup condition, and binding an event to the Boolean-test trigger.
- Example 1—Specifying a comparison setting

```
host1(config-mgmt-event-trigger)#boolean-test comparison less
```

- Example 2—Specifying a Boolean value to which the test compares

```
host1(config-mgmt-event-trigger)#boolean-test value 5175438
```

- Example 3—Binding an event to the Boolean-test trigger

```
host1(config-mgmt-event-trigger)#boolean-test event sysadmin booleanTrigger
```

- Example 4—Setting the trigger to not perform a Boolean test on startup

```
host1(config-mgmt-event-trigger)#boolean-test startup
```

- Use the **no** version to delete the Boolean-test values for this trigger or to remove either the startup condition or event binding.
- See `boolean-test`.

### **delta-sampling**

- Use to specify delta sampling for the trigger you are configuring.
- Example

```
host1(config-mgmt-event-trigger)#delta-sampling
```

- (Optional) Use the **discontinuity-id** option to specify a discontinuity MIB ID for the sample. The discontinuity MIB ID monitors the sample for any discontinuity errors during the sample frequency. If a discontinuity error occurs, the router removes the sampling for that interval.
- (Optional) Use the **discontinuity-id-type** option to specify a discontinuity ID type (either `timeStamp` or `timeTicks`). The discontinuity ID type indicates the time value that you expect for a specific sample.
- Use the **no** version to turn off delta sampling and use absolute sampling (the default).
- See `delta-sampling`.

### **enable**

- Use to enable an event configuration or trigger configuration.
- Example 1—Event Configuration Mode

```
host1(config-mgmt-event-event)#enable
```

- Example 2—Trigger Configuration Mode

```
host1(config-mgmt-event-trigger)#enable
```

- Once enabled, you cannot edit an event or trigger configuration (even when it is disabled). To change an enabled event or trigger, you must delete it and re-create it.
- There is no **no** version.
- See `enable`.

**event**

- Use to create an event and access the event configuration mode of the SNMP server event manager.

- Example

```
host1(config-mgmtevent)#event sysadmin failuretrigger
host1(config-mgmtevent-event)#
```

- To leave the event configuration mode, use the **exit** command.
- Use the **no** version to remove the event.
- See event.

**existence-test**

- Use to define existence test values for the trigger that you are configuring, including binding an event to the existence-test trigger, specifying a startup condition, and defining an existence-test type.
- You can specify one or both startup conditions in the same command. You can specify one, two, or all three test types in the same command.
- Example 1—Binding an event to the Boolean-test trigger

```
host1(config-mgmtevent-trigger)#existence-test event sysadmin existenceTrigger
```

- Example 2—Specifying a startup condition

```
host1(config-mgmtevent-trigger)#existence-test startup present
```

- Example 3—Specifying an existence test type

```
host1(config-mgmtevent-trigger)#existence-test test-type absent
```

- Use the **no** version to delete the existence-test values for this trigger or to remove either the startup condition or event binding.
- See existence-test.

**frequency**

- Use to set the frequency (in seconds) at which you want MIB sampling to occur.
- Example

```
host1(config-mgmtevent)#frequency 100
```

- Use the **no** version to restore the default frequency value (600 seconds).
- See frequency.

**notification id**

- Use to specify a trap notification for an event.
- Example

host1(config-mgmt-event)#**notification id mteTriggerFailure**

- Use the **no** version to remove the notification from the event. Removal returns the notification value to its default (0.0)
- See notification id.

### **resource**

- Use to specify the total number of triggers that the virtual router allows.



**CAUTION:** When assigning wildcards, make sure to allow for enough trigger resources.

---

- Example

host1(config-mgmt-event)#**resource 250**

- Use the **no** version to restore the default resource value (50).
- See resource.

### **sample**

- Use to specify the MIB object that you want to sample for the trigger that you are configuring.
- Example

host1(config-mgmt-event)#**sample value-id 1.3.6.1.2.1.60.1.2.1.1.7**

- Use the **no** version to remove the MIB object from the trigger. Removal returns the sample value-id to its default (0.0).
- See sample.

### **set**

- Use to perform an SNMP set operation under certain event conditions.
- Example—Sets the administrative status of interface 123 to down (2)

```
host1(config-mgmt-event)#set context-name router1
host1(config-mgmt-event)#set id 1.3.6.1.2.1.2.2.1.7.123
host1(config-mgmt-event)#set value 2
```

- Use the **no** version to remove the set operation.
- See set.

### **snmp-server management-event**

- Use to launch the SNMP server event manager mode on each virtual router on which you plan to manage events.
- Example

```
host1(config)#snmp-server management-event
host1(config-mgmtevent)#
```

- To leave the SNMP server event manager, use the **exit** command.
- Use the **no** version to delete all the management events.
- See snmp-server management-event.

### **snmp-server security**

- Use to specify a security access level for the SNMP agent.
- Example

```
host1(config)#snmp-server security read
```

- Use the **no** version to return to the SNMP security level to its default (no-access).
- See snmp-server security.

### **threshold-test**

- Use to define the threshold values for the trigger that you are configuring, including specifying rising and falling values, a startup threshold condition, and binding an event to the threshold-test trigger.
- Example 1—Specifying absolute values

```
host1(config-mgmtevent-trigger)#threshold-test absolute-value rising 2000 falling
1900
```

- Example 2—Specifying a startup threshold condition

```
host1(config-mgmtevent-trigger)#threshold-test startup rising
```

- Example 3—Binding an event to the threshold-test trigger

```
host1(config-mgmtevent-trigger)#threshold-test event sysadmin failureTrigger
```

- Use the **no** version to delete the threshold-test values for this trigger or remove either the threshold startup condition or event binding.
- See threshold-test.

### **trigger**

- Use to create a trigger and access the trigger configuration mode of the SNMP server event manager.
- Example

```
host1(config-mgmtevent)#trigger fred trigger1
host1(config-mgmtevent-trigger)#
```

- To leave the trigger configuration mode, use the **exit** command.

- Use the **no** version to remove the trigger.
- See trigger.

## Monitoring Events

To view the status of the SNMP agent, use the following **show snmp agent** command. To view statistics associated with events, resources, and triggers, use the **show snmp management-event** command.

### **show snmp agent**

- Use to view SNMP MIB agent information.
- Field descriptions
  - context name—Router that contains the MIB agent
  - access permission level—Access permission level for other virtual routers that may want to access the agent
  - snmp proxy—Proxy gateway through which other virtual routers may access the agent
- Example

```
host1#show snmp agent
context name: router1
access permission level: no access
snmp proxy: enabled
```

- See show snmp agent.

### **show snmp management-event**

- Use to view statistical SNMP event information for event table entries, router resources, and trigger table entries.
- Omit the **events**, **resource**, **statistics**, or **triggers** options to obtain a full output.
- Field descriptions
  - Resource
    - SampleMinimum—Minimum number of samples to be taken
    - SampleInstanceMaximum—Maximum number of samples to be taken
    - SampleInstances—Number of sample instances being monitored
    - SampleInstancesHigh—Highest number of samples taken for any of the sample instances
    - SampleInstancesLacks—Number of times this system could not take a new sample because that allocation would have exceeded the limit set by mteResourceSampleInstanceMaximum
  - Triggers

- Owner—Owner value assigned to the trigger
- Name—Name value assigned to the trigger
- Test—Type of trigger test to perform
- SampleType—Type of sampling (absolute or delta) to perform
- ValueID—Object ID of the MIB sample for this trigger
- ValueIDLimit—Not supported in this release; reads as zero
- ValueIDWildcard—Not supported in this release; reads as False
- ContextName—Management context (for example, router1) from which to obtain mteTriggerValueID
- ContextNameRgultExprssn—Not supported in this release
- ContextNameLimit—Not supported in this release; reads as zero
- ContextNameWildcard—Not supported in this release; reads as False
- Frequency—Frequency at which this trigger is sampled
- ObjectsOwner—Not supported in this release
- Objects—Not supported in this release
- Enabled—State (False [disabled] or True [enabled]) of the trigger
- EntryStatus—Active/inactive status of the instance
- Boolean
  - Comparison—Comparison value for this trigger
  - Value—Object ID value to which this trigger compares
  - Startup—Whether or not this trigger performs a Boolean test on startup
  - ObjectsOwner—Owner of this object
  - Objects—Name of this object
  - EventOwner—Owner of this event
  - Event—Name of this event
- Existence
  - Test—Test type for this trigger
  - Startup—Startup condition for this trigger
  - ObjectsOwner—Owner of this object
  - Objects—Name of this object

- EventOwner—Owner of this event
- Event—Name of this event
- Statistics
  - trigger owner—Owner value assigned to the trigger
  - trigger name—Name value assigned to the trigger
  - current time—Current UTC time
  - started sampling—UTC time sampling started
  - last sampled—UTC time event last sampled
  - sample instances—Number of sample instances being monitored
  - times sampled—Number of times events sampled
  - event traps—Number of traps sent
  - event sets—Number of events set
  - failures—Number of event failures
  - sample overrun—Number of times the event manager missed sampling for the current value within the given time period
  - failure traps—Number of failure traps sent as a result of event failures
- Threshold
  - Startup—Startup threshold condition for this trigger
  - Rising—Rising threshold condition for this trigger
  - Falling—Falling threshold condition for this trigger
  - DeltaRising—Delta rising threshold condition for this trigger
  - DeltaFalling—Delta falling threshold condition for this trigger
  - ObjectsOwner—Not supported in this release
  - Objects—Not supported in this release
  - RisingEventOwner—Rising event owner value for this trigger
  - RisingEvent—Rising event name value for this trigger
  - FallingEventOwner—Falling event owner value for this trigger
  - FallingEvent—Falling event name value for this trigger
  - DeltaRisingEventOwner—Delta rising event owner value for this trigger
  - DeltaRisingEvent—Delta rising event name value for this trigger
  - DeltaFallingEventOwner—Delta falling event owner value for this trigger



- DeltaFallingEvent—Delta falling event name value for this trigger
  - Delta
  - DiscontinuityID—Discontinuity MIB ID for this trigger
  - DiscontinuityIDWildcard—Not supported in this release
  - DiscontinuityIDType—Discontinuity ID type for this trigger
- Events
  - Owner—Owner value for this event
  - Name—Name of this event
  - Actions—Action (for example, notification) that takes place when this event is triggered
  - Enabled—Enabled state (True [enabled] or False [disabled]) of this event
  - EntryStatus—Entry status for this event
- Notification
  - Notification—Notification trap setting for this event
  - ObjectsOwner—Not supported in this release
  - Objects—Not supported in this release
- Set
  - Object—Object ID that the trigger is setting
  - ObjectWildcard—Whether or not the object is a wildcard
  - Value—Value to which you are setting the object ID when the trigger fires
  - ContextName—Management context (for example, router1) from which to obtain mteTriggerValueID
  - ContextNameWildcard—Whether or not the context name is a wildcard
- Example

```
host1#show snmp management-event
```

```
Resource
```

```
-----
SampleMinimum: 1
SampleInstanceMaximum: 50
SampleInstances: 14
SampleInstancesHigh: 14
SampleInstancesLacks: 0
```

```
Triggers
```

```
-----
Owner: unitTest
Name: booleanTest1
```

```

Test: boolean
SampleType: absoluteValue
ValueID: 1.3.6.1.2.1.92.1.1.2.0
ValueIDLimit: 0
ValueIDWildcard: False
ContextName: router1
ContextNameLimit: 0
ContextNameWildcard: False
Frequency: 40
ObjectsOwner: unitTest
Objects: test3
Enabled: False
EntryStatus: createAndWait
----- Boolean
Comparison: equal
Value: 300
Startup: False
ObjectsOwner:
Objects:
EventOwner: unitTest
Event: eventTest1
----- Trigger
Owner: unitTest
Name: booleantest2
Test: boolean
SampleType: absoluteValue
ValueID: 1.3.6.1.2.1.92.1.1.2.0
ValueIDLimit: 0
ValueIDWildcard: False
ContextName: router1
ContextNameLimit: 0
ContextNameWildcard: False
Frequency: 40
ObjectsOwner: unitTest
Objects: test3
Enabled: False
EntryStatus: createAndWait
----- Existence
Test: absent
Startup: absent
ObjectsOwner: unitTest
Objects: test3
EventOwner: unitTest
Event: eventTest3
----- Threshold
Startup: falling
Rising: 200
Falling: 100
DeltaRising: 0
DeltaFalling: 0
ObjectsOwner:
Objects:
RisingEventOwner: unitTest
RisingEvent: eventTest2
FallingEventOwner: unitTest
FallingEvent: eventTest3
DeltaRisingEventOwner:
DeltaRisingEvent:
DeltaFallingEventOwner:
DeltaFallingEvent:
----- Delta

```

```
DiscontinuityID: 1.3.6.1.2.1.92.1.1.2
DiscontinuityIDWildcard: True
DiscontinuityIDType: timeTicks
```

#### Objects

```
-----
Owner: unitTest Name: test1
Index: 1
ID: 1.3.6.1.2.1.11.1.0
IDWildcard: False
EntryStatus: active
Index: 2
ID: 1.3.6.1.2.1.11.2.0
IDWildcard: False
EntryStatus: active
Index: 5
ID: 1.3.6.1.2.1.11.30.0
IDWildcard: False
EntryStatus: active
```

#### Events

```
-----
Owner: unitTest
Name: eventTest1
Actions: notification set
Enabled: True
EntryStatus: active
----- Notification
Notification: mteTriggerFired
ObjectsOwner: unitTest
Objects: test3
----- Set
Object: 1.3.6.1.2.1.11.1.0
ObjectWildcard: False
Value: -20
ContextName: router
ContextNameWildcard: True
```

- See show snmp management-event.

## Collecting Bulk Statistics

The router offers an efficient data collection and transfer facility for accounting applications. The E Series router SNMP MIBs extend the accounting data collection mechanism defined in the Accounting-Control-MIB (RFC 2513) to include support for connectionless networks.

Service providers need reasonably accurate data about customers' use of networks. This data is used for billing customers and must be available at a customer's request. Accounting applications based on SNMP polling models consume significant network bandwidth because they poll large volumes of data frequently.

Unfortunately, SNMP is not well suited for gathering large volumes of data, especially over short time intervals. It is inadequate for use by accounting applications because:

- The SNMP PDU layout has a low payload-to-overhead ratio.

- Processing SNMP PDUs is expensive because objects and tables need to be sorted in lexicographic order.

The router avoids the need for continuous polling of SNMP statistics by using applications known as *collectors* to retrieve data. You can configure up to six collectors. The router sends collected statistics through FTP to assigned hosts, known as *receivers*. You must assign a primary receiver to each collector, and you can assign a secondary receiver for redundancy.



**NOTE:** The basic-encoding-rules (BER)–encoding choice is not supported.

---

You can collect interface bulk statistics based on sets of virtual router groups. If sets of virtual router groups generally correspond to ISPs, you can then forward the relevant data to a particular ISP.

To configure a collector to include data from a specific list of virtual routers, you must first configure a collector and then associate a router set with it. A collector can have up to 64 virtual routers associated with it.

To collect bulk statistics for a subset of all configured subinterfaces, you can define the subinterfaces using the following syntax:

*Slot/Port[.subInterfaceId]*

Per virtual router collection is supported on the if-stats and igmp schemas. It is supported on all interface types supported by BulkStats. Collectors modified to use per virtual router collection or configured after a collector has started have a time delay (up to the configured time in seconds) until an active collector starts again.

The maximum number of interfaces for each type of interface and line module can differ. Bulk statistics can collect these statistics when you configure the slots with their respective interfaces to the corresponding maximum values. For information about maximum values see *JUNOS Release Notes, Appendix A, System Maximums*.



**NOTE:** Define all interface types before you map a collector to the if-stats schema to ensure that you display statistics for all configured interfaces in the first interval.

---

The name of the bulk statistics file that is transferred to the host when there is a collectorSequence attribute in the remote name is as follows:

*fileName - z - mmddHHMM - s. sts*

where:

- *fileName*—Name of the file, which includes sysName, sysUpTime, depending on the attributes specified
- *-z*—Receiver index value

- *mmddHHMM*—Timestamp when the receiver is created in month/day/hour/minute format
- *-s*—Actual sequence number

## Interface Strings

Bulk statistics provides interface strings as described in Table 23 on page 199.

**Table 23: Interface Strings**

Type of Interface	Common Description Format-Mode Disabled	Common Description Format-Mode Enabled
IP interfaces	IP	Ip
PPP interfaces	PPP	Ppp
DS0 interfaces	Ds0	Ds0
DS1 interfaces	SERIAL	Ds1
DS3 interfaces	SERIAL	Ds3
Frame Relay Major interfaces	FR	FrameRelayMajor
Ethernet interfaces	ENET	Ethernet
Sonet interfaces	SONET	Sonet
Sonet Path interfaces	SONET	SonetPath
ATM interfaces	ATM	Atm
ATM AAL5 interfaces	ATM	AtmAal5
ATM 1483 interfaces	ATM	Atm1483
Ft1 interfaces	SERIAL	Ft1
HDLC interfaces	HDLCIntf	HDLC
IpLoopback interfaces	Loopback	IpLoopback
IpVirtual interfaces	IpVirtual	IpVirtual
Frame Relay Sub interfaces	FR	FrameRelaySub
PppOE Major interfaces	PPPoE	PppoeMajor
PppOE Sub interfaces	PPPoE	PppoeSub
Bridged Ethernet	BRG-ET	BridgedEthernet
L2TP Tunnel	L2TP	L2tpTunnel

**Table 23: Interface Strings** *(continued)*

Type of Interface	Common Description Format-Mode Disabled	Common Description Format-Mode Enabled
L2TP Session	L2TP	L2tpSession
PppLink interfaces	MLPPP	PppLink
HDLC interfaces	HDLCEncaps	Hdlc
L2TP Destinaion	L2TP	L2tpDestination
MPLS Major interfaces	MplsIfMajor	MplsMajor
MPLS Minor interfaces	MplsIfMinor	MplsMinor
Ppp Network interfaces	MLPPP	PppNetwork
Ethernet Sub interfaces	ENET	EthernetSub
MultiLink Frame Relay interfaces	MLFR	MultilinkFrameRelay
Ip Tunnel Interfaces	IP-TUNNEL	IpTunnel
Server Port Interfaces	ServerPort	ServerPort
Sonet VT interfaces	SONET	SonetVT
Vlan major interfaces	VLAN-MAJ	VlanMajor
Vlan sub interfaces	VLAN-SUB	VlanSub
Gtp interfaces	Gtp	Gtp
L2fTunnel interfaces	L2fTunnel	L2fTunnel
L2fSession interfaces	L2fSession	L2fSession
L2fDestination interfaces	L2fDestination	L2fDestination
IpSec Tunnel interfaces	IpSecTunnel	IpssecTunnel
Sg interfaces	SgInterface	SgInterface
MPLS L2 Shim interfaces	MplsL2Shim	MplsL2Shim
MPLS VC Sub interfaces	MplsL3Shim	MplsVcSub
LacGen interfaces	LacGen	LacGen
Bridge interfaces	BridgeIf	Bridge
IpSec Transport interfaces	IPSecTransportIf	IpssecTransport
IPv6 interfaces	IPv6If	Ipv6
IPv6 Tunnel interfaces	IPv6Tunnellf	Ipv6Tunnel

**Table 23: Interface Strings** *(continued)*

Type of Interface	Common Description Format-Mode Disabled	Common Description Format-Mode Enabled
IPv6 loopback interfaces	IPv6LoopbackIf	Ipv6Loopback
OSI interfaces	Osi	Osi
LAG interfaces	Lag	Lag
Ip Tunnel MDT interfaces	IpTunnelMdt	IpTunnelMdt

### Understanding Counter Discontinuity

Interface counter discontinuity can occur when a counter wraps or after a line module is reloaded or reset. If one of these actions occurs, applications that utilize the counters in expressions or calculations generate erroneous values and misleading graphs.

Because counters are 64 bits long, the possibility of a counter's wrapping naturally would occur so infrequently (for example, in many hundreds of years) that this scenario is not recognized as an issue.

Counter discontinuity does occur, however, when you reload or reset a line module. To indicate reloading or resetting, bulk statistics files contain a record similar to the following:

```
{Controller down slot 3, TUE OCT 29 2004 14:25:10.370 UTC}
```

This record provides a mechanism by which applications can detect discontinuity events. To take advantage of this detection capability, the bulk statistics parsing entity should use the record to terminate expression or formula calculations for the indicated slot and to establish a new baseline.

### Configuring Collectors and Receivers

To configure the router to collect statistics:

1. Add names to the FTP host table for the primary and secondary (optional) receivers.

See “Copying and Redirecting Files” on page 296 in “Managing the System” on page 245, for information about adding names to the host table.

2. Specify the type of interface on which you want to collect statistics.

```
host1(config)#bulkstats interface-type ppp collector 2
```

3. Specify the parameters for the receivers.

```
host1(config)#bulkstats receiver 1 remote-name js:/ftptest/bulk%s%s.sts  
sysName sysUpTime
```

4. Assign the data collector.

```
host1(config)#bulkstats collector 2
```

5. Specify the method for data collection.

```
host1(config)#bulkstats collector 2 collect-mode auto
```

6. Assign the primary receiver.

```
host1(config)#bulkstats collector 2 primary-receiver 1
```

7. (Optional) Assign the secondary receiver.

```
host1(config)#bulkstats collector 2 secondary-receiver 5
```

8. (Optional) Specify the time for which the system transfers data.

```
host1(config)#bulkstats collector 2 interval 1000
```

9. (Optional) Set the maximum size of the bulk statistics file.

```
host1(config)#bulkstats collector 2 max-size 20480
```

10. (Optional) Add descriptive information to the bulk statistics file.

```
host1(config)#bulkstats collector 2 description customer xyz
```

11. (Optional) Set the encoding scheme of the ifDescr and ifName objects.

```
host1(config)#bulkstats interfaces description-format common
```

12. (Optional) Set the system to retrieve bulk statistics once only.

```
host1(config)#bulkstats collector 2 single-interval
```

13. (Optional) Configure bulk statistics traps.

```
host1(config)#bulkstats traps nearly-full
```

14. (Optional) Collect bulk statistics per virtual router.

```
host1(config)#bulkstats virtual-router-group collector 2 routerISP3
```



**NOTE:** The bulk statistics feature supports generating files on a per interface basis.

---

### ***bulkstats collector***

- Use to assign the data collector.
- Example



host1(config)#**bulkstats collector 2**

- Use the **no** version to delete the collector.
- See bulkstats collector.

#### **bulkstats collector**

- Use to specify the way the collector retrieves bulk statistics.
- Example

host1(config)#**bulkstats collector 2 collect-mode auto**

- Use the **no** version to specify that either the user or the system will initiate transfers manually.
- See bulkstats collector.

#### **bulkstats collector**

- Use to add descriptive information to the bulk statistics file.
- Example

host1(config)#**bulkstats collector 2 description customer xyz**

- Use the **no** version to remove descriptive text from the bulk statistics file.
- See bulkstats collector.

#### **bulkstats collector**

- Use to specify the time interval in seconds for which the collector transfers data to the receivers.
- Example

host1(config)#**bulkstats collector 2 interval 1000**

- Use the **no** version to set this time to the default, 360 seconds (6 minutes).
- See bulkstats collector.

#### **bulkstats collector**

- Use to set the maximum size of the bulk statistics file for all collectors combined. Even when you configure more than one collector, the first maximum file size configured is the combined size of all collectors.
- The maximum file size that you can configure is 20971520 bytes. However, if you do not configure a maximum size, then the maximum file size defaults to 5767168 bytes.
- Although the CLI accepts the commands, you cannot unconfigure or modify the configuration of the maximum file size until the router is rebooted.
- Example

host1(config)#**bulkstats collector 2 max-size 20480**

- Use the **no** version to set the size of the bulk statistics file to the default, 5767168 bytes.
- See bulkstats collector.

#### **bulkstats collector**

- Use to assign the primary receiver to which the system transfers data.
- The index for the receiver must match the index that you specified with the **bulkstats receiver remote-name** command.
- Example

```
host1(config)#bulkstats collector 2 primary-receiver 7
```

- Use the **no** version to clear the primary receiver and disable the collector.
- See bulkstats collector.

#### **bulkstats collector**

- Use to assign the secondary (that is, the backup) receiver to which the system transfers data.
- The index for the receiver must match the index you specified with the **bulkstats receiver remote-name** command.
- Example

```
host1(config)#bulkstats collector 2 secondary-receiver 5
```

- Use the **no** version to clear the secondary receiver.
- See bulkstats collector.

#### **bulkstats collector**

- Use to set the system to retrieve bulk statistics once only, rather than periodically.
- Example

```
host1(config)#bulkstats collector 2 single-interval
```

- Use the **no** version to set the system to retrieve bulk statistics periodically, the default situation.
- See bulkstats collector.

#### **bulkstats interfaces description-format common**

- Use to set the encoding scheme of the ifDescr object that the bulk statistics application reports to the conventional industry method.
- This command provides compatibility with software that uses the industry encoding scheme.
- For more information, see “Configuring Encoding Method” on page 164.
- Example

host1(config)#**bulkstats interfaces description-format common**

- Use the **no** version to return to the proprietary method of encoding.
- See bulkstats interfaces description-format common.

#### **bulkstats interface-type**

- Use to configure the interface or subinterface type on which you want to collect statistics.
- You can provide an interface specifier (location) to identify a specific interface on which you want to collect statistics.
- If you define more than one collector, you must specify a unique collector index, in the range 1–65535.
- The supported interface types are:
  - **atm**—Collects statistics on ATM interfaces
  - **atm1483**—Collects statistics on ATM 1483 interfaces
  - **ethernet**—Collects statistics on Ethernet interfaces
  - **frame-relay**—Collects statistics on Frame Relay interfaces
  - **frame-relay-sub**—Collects statistics on Frame Relay subinterfaces
  - **hdlc**—Collects statistics on Cisco HDLC interfaces
  - **ip**—Collects statistics on IP interfaces
  - **mplsMajor**—Collects statistics on MPLS major interfaces
  - **mplsMinor**—Collects statistics on MPLS minor interfaces
  - **mplsL2shim**—Collects statistics on MPLS shim interfaces
  - **ppp**—Collects statistics on PPP
  - **vlan**—Collects statistics on VLAN subinterfaces



**NOTE:** You cannot collect statistics on the SRP Ethernet interface.

---

- Example 1

host1(config)#**bulkstats interface-type ppp 3/1 collector 2**

- Example 2

host1(config)#**bulkstats interface-type vlan 2/3:1 collector 1**

- Example 3

host1(config)#**bulkstats interface-type mplsMajor 2/3:1 collector 1**

- Use the **no** version to delete the interface type from bulk statistics collection. Deletion of a particular interface type takes effect at the next collection interval.
- See bulkstats interface-type.

### **bulkstats receiver remote-name**

- Use to configure the parameters for receivers.
- Bulk statistics transfers require the configuration of a remote FTP server.
- The receivers must appear in the FTP host table. The name of the host must match the name you specify with this command. The hostname is relative to the virtual router's context when you issue this command.
- When specifying the remote filename for bulk statistics, you must precede the filename with the hostname followed by the `:/` characters.
- Example

```
host1(config)#bulkstats receiver 1 remote-name js:/ftptest/bulk%s%s.sts
sysName sysUpTime
```



**NOTE:** The % variables in the remote name are replaced at runtime with the sysName and sysUpTime parameters to produce variable filenames on the remote host.

---

- Use the **no** version to delete the receiver.
- See bulkstats receiver remote-name.

### **bulkstats traps**

- Use to configure bulk statistics traps.
- You must configure SNMP correctly and specify a valid trap source. Otherwise, the system will not send SNMP traps.
- Example

```
host1(config)#bulkstats traps nearly-full
```

- Use the **no** version to disable the trap.
- See bulkstats traps.

### **bulkstats virtual-router-group**

- Use to collect interface statistics for each virtual router.
- A collector can have a maximum of 64 virtual routers associated with it.
- Routers are identified by their assigned name or router index.
- Supported only on if-stats and igmp schemas.
- Supported on all interface types supported by the bulk statistics application.
- Collectors modified to use per virtual router collection or configured after a collector has started have a time delay until an active collector starts again.

- Example

```
host1(config)#bulkstats virtual-router-group collector 2 routerISP3
```

- Use the **no** version to prevent bulkstats from being reported for virtual router groups.
- See bulkstats virtual-router-group.

## ***Deleting All Bulkstats Configurations***

Although individual bulkstats commands allow you to disable or delete a specific bulkstats parameter, the CLI also allows you to remove all bulkstats configurations from the router at one time.

### ***no bulkstats***

- Use to remove all bulkstats configurations from the router at one time.
- Example

```
host1(config)#no bulkstats
```

- See no bulkstats.

## ***Monitoring Collection Statistics***

To view the parameters the router uses to collect statistics, use the following **show bulkstats** commands.

To include or exclude lines of output based on a text string that you specify, use the output filtering feature for **show** commands. For details, see “Command-Line Interface” on page 29.

### ***show bulkstats***

- Use to display the bulk statistics data collection configuration.
- Field descriptions
  - AdminStatus—Administrative status of the bulk statistics application
  - OperStatus—Operational status of the bulk statistics application, enabled or disabled
  - Interface Description Setting—Method used to encode the ifDescr object: common, proprietary, industry-common
  - File Format—End of the line format in bulkstats files, carriage return and line feed (CR + LF) or LF
  - Current Time—Current system time used to compare with the collection stop/start time
  - Intervals—Number of times the bulk statistics collector has cycled through a collection

- PrimaryXfers—Number of times the bulk statistics collector has attempted a data file transfer to a primary server
- PrimaryFails—Number of primary server transfer failures
- SecondaryXfers—Number of times the bulk statistics collector has attempted a data file transfer to a secondary server
- SecondaryFails—Number of secondary server transfer failures
- BulkStats Collector Information:
  - Index—Bulk statistics collector index number
  - CurrSize—Current size of the bulk statistics file in bytes
  - MaxSize—Maximum size configured for the bulk statistics file in bytes
  - Intrvl—Time interval between bulk collections in seconds
  - Mode—How often the collector is set up to collect statistics:
    - periodic—Collects statistics periodically
    - single-interval—Collects statistics once only
  - XferMode—Collect mode configured for the collector:
    - auto—Agent transfers file when interval expires
    - manual—Network management system or the user initiates transfers
    - onFull—Agent transfers file when it reaches the maximum size
  - State
    - inProg—Collector is properly configured and currently active
    - notInSvc—Collector has been decommissioned by a management client
    - notReady—Collector does not have enough configuration information to go active
    - error—Configuration or operational error
  - Index—Bulk statistics collector index number
  - Primary-Receiver—Index number of the primary receiver to which the system transfers data, if defined
  - Second-Receiver—Index of the secondary receiver to which the system transfers data
  - Last Transfer Failure—Last time that the collector attempted to retrieve statistics and was unsuccessful

- Interval Start Time—Start of current interval of bulk collections. The collector began collecting bulk statistics at this time.
- Interval Stop Time—End of current interval of bulk collections.
- Schema Information:
  - Index—Index number of the schema
  - Subtree—Type of bulk statistics schema configured on the collector: if-stack, if-stats, or system
  - CollectorIndex—Bulk statistics collector index number
  - Create-Delete Time Stats—State of final statistics collection (enabled or disabled)
  - Create-Delete Interface Type—Interface type associated with final statistics collection (ATM 1483, IP, PPP)
  - State
    - active—Schema is properly configured and currently active
    - notInSvc—Schema has been decommissioned by a management client
    - notReady—Schema does not have enough configuration information to go active
    - error—Configuration or operational error
  - Subtree List—Types of statistics the schema is configured to receive
- Interface Types:
  - Index—Index number of the interface type entry
  - Type—Interface type for which bulk statistics collection is configured
  - CollectorIndex—Index number of the collector to which the interface type applies
  - State
    - active—Interface type is properly configured and currently active
    - notInSvc—Interface type has been decommissioned by a management client
    - notReady—Interface type does not have enough configuration information to go active
    - error—Configuration or operational error
- Receiver Information:

- Index—Index number of the receiver
- RemoteFileName—Hostname, path, and filename of the remote FTP server
- State
  - active—Receiver is properly configured and currently active
  - notInSvc—Receiver has been decommissioned by a management client
  - notReady—Receiver does not have enough configuration information to go active
  - error—Configuration or operational error
- Status
  - Success
  - Copy source does not exist or is unreachable
  - Copy failed
  - File in use
- Virtual Router Groups:
  - Collector—Number that identifies the particular data collector, in the range 1–65535
  - Virtual-Routers—Set of virtual router names (up to 64 names)
- Example

```
host1#show bulkstats
```

```
AdminStatus: enabled
OperStatus: enabled
Interface Description Setting: industry-common
File Format: CR+LF
Current Time: TUE AUG 15 2002 15:54:20 UTC
```

Intervals	PrimaryXfers	PrimaryFails	SecondaryXfers	SecondaryFails
0	0	0	0	0

BulkStats Collector Information:						
Index	CurrSize	MaxSize	Intrvl	Mode	XferMode	State
1	490	3670016	600	periodic	manual	inProg
2	0	3670016	360	periodic	manual	notReady

Index	Primary-Receiver	Second-Receiver	Last Transfer Failure
1	1	not defined	
2	not defined	not defined	



```

Index Interval Start Time          Interval Stop Time
-----
1      TUE AUG 15 2000 15:52:33 UTC TUE AUG 15 2000 16:02:33 UTC
2      Not started                  N/A

Schema Information:
Index Subtree
-----
1      ifStats

Index CollectorIndex State
-----
1      1              active

Index Create-Delete Time Stats Create-Delete Interface Types
-----
1      enabled              IP

Index Subtree List
-----
1      all

Interface Types:
Index      Type          CollectorIndex State
-----
1          Ppp            1              active
6          Ethernet       1              active
11         Atm1483        1              active

Receiver Information:
Index RemoteFileName
-----
1      host:/upload/bulkStas.sts

Index State      Status
-----
1      notReady   Copy source does not exist or is unreachable

Collector Virtual-Routers
-----
33         serviceProviderABC
655        default

```

- See `show bulkstats`.

### ***show bulkstats collector description***

- Use to display information about the collector's file description.
- Field descriptions
  - Index—Index number of the bulk statistics collector
  - FileDescription—Descriptive information added to the bulk statistics file with the **bulkstats collector description** command
- Example

```

host1#show bulkstats collector description
Index FileDescription

```

```

-----
1      Bulk SNMP Statistics Collection

```

- See show bulkstats collector description.

#### **show bulkstats collector interval**

- Use to display information about the collector transfer interval configuration.
- Field descriptions
  - Index—Index number of the bulk statistics collector
  - Interval—Amount of time, in seconds, that the collector transfers data to the receiver
- Example

```

host1#show bulkstats collector interval
Index  Interval
-----
1      360

```

- See show bulkstats collector interval.

#### **show bulkstats collector max-size**

- Use to display information about the bulk statistics maximum file size configuration.
- Field descriptions
  - Index—Index number of the bulk statistics collector
  - MaxSize—Maximum size of the bulk statistics file in bytes
- Example

```

host1#show bulkstats collector max-size
Index  MaxSize
-----
1      2097152

```

- See show bulkstats collector max-size.

#### **show bulkstats collector transfer-mode**

- Use to display information about the bulk statistics transfer mode configuration.
- Field descriptions
  - Index—Index number of the bulk statistics collector
  - Transfer-Mode:
    - auto-xfer—Server automatically transfers the bulk statistics files to a remote FTP server

- manual-xfer—Server expects the user to transfer bulk statistics files
- on-file-full—Server transfers the bulk statistics file when the file reaches its maximum size
- Primary-Receiver—Receives the bulk statistics sent by the collector
- Secondary-Receiver—Serves as a backup to the primary receiver
- Example

```
host1#show bulkstats collector transfer-mode
Index  Transfer-Mode  Primary-Receiver  Secondary-Receiver
-----
1      auto-xfer    1                 2
```

- See show bulkstats collector transfer-mode.

### **show bulkstats interface-type**

- Use to display information about the bulk statistics interface types configuration.
- Field descriptions
  - Interface Types:
    - Index—Index number of the interface type entry
    - Type—Interface type for which bulk statistics collection is configured
    - CollectorIndex—Index of the collector to which the interface type applies
  - State
    - active—Interface type is properly configured and currently active
    - notInSvc—Interface type has been decommissioned by a management client
    - notReady—Interface type does not have enough configuration information to go active
    - error—Configuration/operational error
- Example

```
host1#show bulkstats interface-type

Interface Types:
Index      Type              Collector  State
-----
1          ppp              1          active
```

- See show bulkstats interface-type.

### **show bulkstats receiver**

- Use to display information about the remote file configuration of the bulk statistics receiver.
- Field descriptions
  - Index—Index number of the receiver
  - RemoteFileName—Hostname, path, and filename of the remote FTP server
  - Index—Index number of the receiver
  - State
    - active—Receiver is properly configured and currently active
    - notInSvc—Receiver has been decommissioned by a management client
    - notReady—Receiver does not have enough configuration information to go active
    - error—Configuration/operational error
  - Status
    - Success
    - Copy source does not exist or is unreachable
    - Copy failed
    - File in use
- Example

```
host1#show bulkstats receiver
```

Index	RemoteFileName
1	f:/upload/bulkStas.sts

Index	State	Status
1	notReady	Copy source does not exist or is unreachable

- See show bulkstats receiver.

### **show bulkstats statistics**

- Use to display bulk statistics counters.
- Field descriptions
  - AdminStatus—Administrative status of the bulk statistics application
  - OperStatus—Operational status of the bulk statistics application
  - HdwDetects—Number of times the bulk statistics application detected a line module bulkstat collector's presence
  - HdwCollectorCreates—Number of line module collectors created

- **CollectorCreateReqs**—Number of times the bulk statistics application requested the creation of a line module collector
- **CollectorStopReqs**—Number of times the bulk statistics application requested the line module collectors to stop
- **CollectorDeleteReqs**—Number of times the bulk statistics application requested the deletion of a line module collector
- **CollectorStarts**—Number of times the bulk statistics collector has started
- **CollectorIncompleteCfgs**—Number of times the bulk statistics collector attempted to start a collector, but failed because the collector's configuration was incomplete
- **CollectorStopFailures**—Number of times the bulk statistics collector failed during a collector stop request
- **DriverErrors**—Number of bulk statistics driver errors
- **FileSizeFulls**—Number of times the bulk statistics application ran out of storage space
- **CollectorFileNearlyFullTraps**—Number of nearly full events posted to the SNMP agent on this router
- **CollectorFileFullTraps**—Number of file full events posted to the SNMP agent on this router
- **Intervals**—Number of times the bulk statistics collector has cycled through a collection
- **PrimaryXfers**—Number of times the bulk statistics collector has attempted a data file transfer to a primary server
- **PrimaryFails**—Number of primary server transfer failures
- **SecondaryXfers**—Number of times the bulk statistics collector has attempted a data file transfer to a secondary server
- **SecondaryFails**—Number of secondary server transfer failures
- **BulkStats Collector Statistics:**
  - **Index**—Bulk statistics collector index
  - **CurrSize**—Current size of the bulk statistics storage file in bytes
  - **CreateErrs**—Number of bulk statistics collector create errors
  - **Last Transfer Failure**—Last time that the collector attempted to retrieve statistics and was unsuccessful

- Interval Start Time—Start of current interval or bulk collections. The collector began collecting bulk statistics at this time.
- Interval Stop Time—End of current interval of bulk collections
- Dynamic Interface Collector statistics:
  - Collector Index—Bulk statistics collector index
  - Slot#—Slot number from which the statistics were obtained
  - Received—Number of records for dynamic interfaces that were reported by the specified interface
  - Transferred—Number of record for dynamic interface that were written to the bulk statistics (.sts) file.
  - Dropped—Number of records for dynamic interfaces that were dropped (that is, not written to the bulk statistics [.sts] file)
- Example

```
host1#show bulkstats statistics
```

```
AdminStatus:          enabled
OperStatus:           enabled
HdwDetects:           4
HdwCollectorCreates:  8
CollectorCreateReqs:  2
CollectorStopReqs:     0
CollectorDeleteReqs:   0
CollectorStarts:       25
CollectorIncompleteCfgs: 3
CollectorStopFailures: 0
DriverErrors:          0
FileSizeFulls:         0
CollectorFileNearlyFullTraps: 0
CollectorFileFullTraps: 0
```

Intervals	PrimaryXfers	PrimaryFails	SecondaryXfers	SecondaryFails
24	18	5	0	0

```
BulkStats Collector Statistics:
```

Index	CurrSize	CreateErrs	Last Transfer Failure
1	331	0	MON JAN 24 2001 17:21:33 UTC
2	0	0	

Index	Interval Start Time	Interval Stop Time
1	MON JAN 24 2001 19:09:33 UTC	MON JAN 24 2001 19:15:33 UTC
2	Not started	N/A

```
Dynamic Interface Collector statistics:
```

CollectorIndex	Slot#	Received	Transferred	Dropped
----------------	-------	----------	-------------	---------

-----  
1                  1      0                  0                  0  
-----

- See show bulkstats statistics.

**show bulkstats traps**

- Use to display information about the bulk statistics traps configured to collect statistics.
- Field descriptions
  - Trap Type
    - nearly-full—Trap will be posted to the SNMP entity on this system when the threshold is reached
    - file-full—Trap will be posted to the SNMP entity on this system when the trap reaches 100 %
  - State—Configuration setting: enabled, disabled
  - Threshold—Nearly full trap will be posted to the SNMP entity on this system when this percentage is reached
  - Traps Sent—Number of times this event was posted to the SNMP entity on this system
- Example

```
host1#show bulkstats traps
Trap Type   State   Threshold   Traps Sent
-----
file-full   enabled N/A         0
nearly-full enabled 5           0
```

- See show bulkstats traps.

**show bulkstats virtual-routers**

- Use to display information about the bulk virtual router group configuration.
- Field descriptions
  - Collector—Number that identifies the particular data collector, in the range 1-65535
  - Virtual-Routers—Set of virtual router names (up to 64 names)
- Example

```
host1#show bulkstats virtual-routers

Collector   Virtual-Routers
-----
```

```

33          serviceProviderABC
655         default

```

- See `show bulkstats virtual-routers`.

## Configuring Schemas

You can also set a management schema for bulk statistics. A schema is a group of attributes or counters that provide an efficient way to retrieve specific types of information about the router. The bulk statistics application supports five schema configurations: *igmp*, *if-stack*, *if-stats*, *policy*, and *system*.



**NOTE:** There are no explicit schema objects for the *if-stack* and *system* schemas.

Table 24 on page 218 shows the type of data each schema retrieves.

**Table 24: Data Retrieved According to Schema**

Schema	Retrieves
igmp	Statistics associated with various IGMP components.
if-stack	The interface and interface column configuration. It is a complete retrieval of the <code>ifStackTable</code> , and using it can dramatically reduce the time to discover the configured interfaces and their stacking relationship on a router.
if-stats	Usage data on sets of interface types. The interface usage data is the <code>ifTable/ifXTable</code> counters. Note that the <code>ifXTable</code> supports 64-bit counters and the data written into the bulk statistics file supports the 64-bit counters.
policy	Statistics associated with a specified policy, a policy type, or traffic tagged by a policy with a color tag.
system	Global system and per-module statistics and information. The global system statistics retrieved are the <code>sysUpTime</code> and <code>nvsUtilPct</code> . The per-module statistics and information retrieved include the <code>intPhysicalDesc</code> , the <code>cpuUtilPct</code> , and the <code>memUtilPct</code> .

## igmp Objects

Table 25 on page 218 presents *igmp* objects you can configure using the **bulkstats schema subtree** command.

**Table 25: Schema igmp Objects**

Object	Definition
all	Configure IGMP schema for all attributes
dest-address	Configure IGMP schema for destination address



**Table 25: Schema igmp Objects** *(continued)*

Object	Definition
igmp-cmd	Configure IGMP schema for IGMP command
lower-interface	Configure IGMP schema for lower interface
multicast-group	Configure IGMP schema for multicast group
router-index	Configure IGMP schema for router index
source-address	Configure IGMP schema for source address
time-stamp	Configure IGMP schema for time stamp

### if-stats Objects

Table 26 on page 219 presents if-stats objects you can configure using the **bulkstats schema subtree** command.

**Table 26: Schema ifStats Objects**

Object	Definition
all	Configure IfStats schema for all stats
correlator	Configure IfStats schema for correlator
in-bcast-pkts	Configure IfStats schema for in-bcast-pkts
in-discards	Configure IfStats schema for in-discards
in-errors	Configure IfStats schema for in-errors
in-mcast-octets	Configure IfStats schema for in-mcast-octets
in-mcast-pkts	Configure IfStats schema for in-mcast-pkts
in-octets	Configure IfStats schema for in-octets
in-policed-octets	Configure IfStats schema for in-policed-octets
in-policed-pkts	Configure IfStats schema for in-policed-pkts
in-spoofed-pkts	Configure IfStats schema for in-spoofed-pkts
in-ucast-pkts	Configure IfStats schema for in-ucast-pkts
in-unknown-protos	Configure IfStats schema for in-unknown-protos
lower-interface	Configure IfStats schema for lower-interface
out-bcast-pkts	Configure IfStats schema for out-bcast-pkts

**Table 26: Schema ifStats Objects** *(continued)*

Object	Definition
out-discards	Configure IfStats schema for out-discards
out-errors	Configure IfStats schema for out-errors
out-mcast-octets	Configure IfStats schema for out-mcast-octets
out-mcast-pkts	Configure IfStats schema for out-mcast-pkts
out-octets	Configure IfStats schema for out-octets
out-policed-octets	Configure IfStats schema for out-policed-octets
out-policed-pkts	Configure IfStats schema for out-policed-pkts
out-sched-octets	Configure IfStats schema for out-sched-octets
out-sched-pkts	Configure IfStats schema for out-sched-pkts
out-ucast-pkts	Configure IfStats schema for out-ucast-pkts
time-offset	Configure IfStats schema for time-offset

All the schema if-stats objects in Table 26 on page 219 apply to both layer 2 and layer 3 interfaces, except `usdAcctngSpoofedPkts`, which is specific to layer 3.

Defining all interface types before you map a collector to the if-stats schema ensures that you display statistics for all configured interfaces in the first interval.

You can get more accurate rate statistics by using the **time-offset** parameter. To use this parameter you must navigate to the **if-stats subtree**. The **time-offset** parameter is included in each bulk statistics interface record and is the offset from the master interval at which the record was collected.

## policy Objects

Table 27 on page 220 presents policy objects you can configure using the **bulkstats schema subtree** command.

**Table 27: Schema Policy Objects**

Object	Definition
all	Configure policy schema for all statistics
green-bytes	Configure policy schema for green bytes
green-packets	Configure policy schema for green packets
red-bytes	Configure policy schema for red bytes

**Table 27: Schema Policy Objects** *(continued)*

Object	Definition
red-packets	Configure policy schema for red packets
upper-green-bytes	Configure policy schema for upper green bytes
upper-green-packets	Configure policy schema for upper green packets
upper-red-bytes	Configure policy schema for upper red bytes
upper-red-packets	Configure policy schema for upper red packets
upper-yellow-bytes	Configure policy schema for upper yellow bytes
upper-yellow-packets	Configure policy schema for upper yellow packets
yellow-bytes	Configure policy schema for yellow bytes
yellow-packets	Configure policy schema for yellow packets

**bulkstats schema**

- Use to create the schema for collecting bulk statistics.
- Example
 

```
host1(config)#bulkstats schema 4
```
- Use the **no** version to delete the specified schema.



**NOTE:** If you create a collector but there is no schema for that collector, the collector will not be active, and a schema will be created automatically for that collector to collect if-stats for all subtree attributes.

- See bulkstats schema.

**bulkstats schema subtree**

- Use to set the schema for collecting data. Specify one of the following keywords:
  - **if-stack**—Retrieves the interface and interface column configuration.
  - **if-stats**—Retrieves interface usage data on sets of interface types; using the **subtreelist** keyword along with the **if-stats** keyword lets you specify specific counters and lets you set the **time-offset** parameter; using the **if-create-delete-time-stats** keyword along with the **if-stats** keyword retrieves interface final statistics (interface statistics that may be lost during higher create or delete frequency) on a per-interface basis.
  - **igmp**—Retrieves IGMP usage data; using the **subtreelist** keyword along with the **igmplist** keyword lets you obtain statistics for one or more specific IGMP lists.

- **policy**—Retrieves policy usage data.
- **system**—Retrieves global system and per-module statistics and information.

- Example 1

```
host1(config)#bulkstats schema 1 subtree if-stats subtree-list lower-interface
```

- Example 2

```
host1(config)#bulkstats schema 5 subtree if-stats if-create-delete-time-stats
interfaceType ?
```

```
atm1483    Configure bulkstats for ATM 1483 sub-interfaces
ip         Configure bulkstats for IP interfaces
mplsL2Shim Configure bulkstats for MPLS shim Interfaces
mplsMajor  Configure bulkstats for MPLS major Interfaces
mplsMinor  Configure bulkstats for MPLS minor Interfaces
ppp        Configure bulkstats for PPP interfaces
vlan       Configure bulkstats for VLAN Sub-Interfaces
```

- Use to collect statistics on a specified policy, a policy type, or based on color-coded tags applied by a policy. Specify one of the following keywords:
  - **policy-name**—Collects statistics for a specified policy
  - **policy-type**—Collects data on input policies, local input policies, output policies, or secondary output policies
  - **policy-subtreelist**—Collects statistics based on color-coded tags applied by a policy
- You create policies using the **policy-list** command. See *JUNOS Policy Management Configuration Guide*.
- Example
 

```
host1(config)#bulkstats schema 4 subtree policy policy-name XMYpolicy
```
- Use the **no** version to delete the specified schema.
- See bulkstats schema subtree.

## Mapping Bulkstats Output to MIB Files and CLI Configurations

Table 28 on page 222 shows the mapping between the bulkstats output and the CLI and MIBs.

**Table 28: Mapping Bulkstats Output to MIB Files and CLI Configurations**

Bulkstats Output Column Name	MIB File	MIB Object Name	CLI Configuration	Description
			all	Configure IfStats schema for all stats

**Table 28: Mapping Bulkstats Output to MIB Files and CLI Configurations** *(continued)*

Bulkstats Output Column Name	MIB File	MIB Object Name	CLI Configuration	Description
ifDescr	RFC1213	ifDescr	-	A textual string containing information about the interface. This string should include the name of the manufacturer, the product name and the version of the interface hardware/software
ifType	RFC1213	ifType	-	The type of interface. Additional values for ifType are assigned by the Internet Assigned Numbers Authority (IANA), through updating the syntax of the IANAifType textual convention
usdIfType	juniIf	juniIfType	-	Identifies the type of this interface
ifIndex	RFC1213	ifIndex	-	A unique value, greater than zero, for each interface. It is recommended that values are assigned contiguously starting from 1. The value for each interface sub-layer must remain constant at least from one re-initialization of the entity's network management system to the next re-initialization
IfStatsReportState	-	-	-	Report State: IfStatsReportInterim = Interim Accounting data
ifHCInOctets	RFC2863	ifHCInOctets	in-octets	<p>The total number of octets received on the interface, including framing characters. This object is a 64-bit version of ifInOctets</p> <p>Discontinuities in the value of this counter can occur at re-initialization of the management system, and at other times as indicated by the value of ifCounterDiscontinuityTime</p>

**Table 28: Mapping Bulkstats Output to MIB Files and CLI Configurations** *(continued)*

Bulkstats Output Column Name	MIB File	MIB Object Name	CLI Configuration	Description
ifHCInUcastPkts	RFC2863	ifHCInUcastPkts	in-ucast-pkts	<p>The number of packets, delivered by this sub-layer to a higher (sub-)layer, which were not addressed to a multicast or broadcast address at this sub-layer. This object is a 64-bit version of ifInUcastPkts</p> <p>Discontinuities in the value of this counter can occur at re-initialization of the management system, and at other times as indicated by the value of ifCounterDiscontinuityTime</p>
ifInDiscards	RFC1213	ifInDiscards	in-discards	<p>The number of inbound packets which were chosen to be discarded even though no errors had been detected to prevent their being deliverable to a higher-layer protocol. One possible reason for discarding such a packet could be to free up buffer space</p> <p>Discontinuities in the value of this counter can occur at re-initialization of the management system, and at other times as indicated by the value of ifCounterDiscontinuityTime</p>

**Table 28: Mapping Bulkstats Output to MIB Files and CLI Configurations** *(continued)*

Bulkstats Output Column Name	MIB File	MIB Object Name	CLI Configuration	Description
ifInErrors	RFC1213	ifInErrors	in-errors	<p>For packet-oriented interfaces, the number of inbound packets that contained errors preventing them from being deliverable to a higher-layer protocol. For character- oriented or fixed-length interfaces, the number of inbound transmission units that contained errors preventing them from being deliverable to a higher-layer protocol</p> <p>Discontinuities in the value of this counter can occur at re-initialization of the management system, and at other times as indicated by the value of ifCounterDiscontinuityTime</p>
ifInUnknownProtos	RFC1213	ifInUnknownProtos	in-unknown-protos	<p>For packet-oriented interfaces, the number of packets received via the interface which were discarded because of an unknown or unsupported protocol. For character-oriented or fixed-length interfaces that support protocol multiplexing the number of transmission units received via the interface which were discarded because of an unknown or unsupported protocol. For any interface that does not support protocol multiplexing, this counter will always be 0</p> <p>Discontinuities in the value of this counter can occur at re-initialization of the management system, and at other times as indicated by the value of ifCounterDiscontinuityTime</p>

**Table 28: Mapping Bulkstats Output to MIB Files and CLI Configurations** (*continued*)

Bulkstats Output Column Name	MIB File	MIB Object Name	CLI Configuration	Description
ifHCOctets	RFC2863	ifHCOctets	out-octets	<p>The total number of octets transmitted out of the interface, including framing characters. This object is a 64-bit version of ifOutOctets</p> <p>Discontinuities in the value of this counter can occur at re-initialization of the management system, and at other times as indicated by the value of ifCounterDiscontinuityTime</p>
ifHCOcastPkts	RFC2863	ifHCOcastPkts	out-ucast-pkts	<p>The total number of packets that higher-level protocols requested be transmitted, and which were not addressed to a multicast or broadcast address at this sub-layer, including those that were discarded or not sent. This object is a 64-bit version of ifOutUcastPkts</p> <p>Discontinuities in the value of this counter can occur at re-initialization of the management system, and at other times as indicated by the value of ifCounterDiscontinuityTime</p>
ifOutDiscards	RFC1213	ifOutDiscards	out-discards	<p>The number of outbound packets which were chosen to be discarded even though no errors had been detected to prevent their being transmitted. One possible reason for discarding such a packet could be to free up buffer space</p> <p>Discontinuities in the value of this counter can occur at re-initialization of the management system, and at other times as indicated by the value of jifCounterDiscontinuityTime</p>



**Table 28: Mapping Bulkstats Output to MIB Files and CLI Configurations** (continued)

Bulkstats Output Column Name	MIB File	MIB Object Name	CLI Configuration	Description
ifOutErrors	RFC1213	ifOutErrors	out-errors	<p>For packet-oriented interfaces, the number of outbound packets that could not be transmitted because of errors. For character-oriented or fixed-length interfaces, the number of outbound transmission units that could not be transmitted because of errors</p> <p>Discontinuities in the value of this counter can occur at re-initialization of the management system, and at other times as indicated by the value of ifCounterDiscontinuityTime</p>
ifCorrelato	juniAcctng	juniAcctngIfCorrelator	correlator	<p>Customer correlation:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ • FR = DLCI</li> <li>■ • ATM = VPI, VCI</li> <li>■ • IP = RouterName</li> <li>■ • Everything else = not used</li> </ul>
ifInPolicedOctets	juniAcctng	juniAcctngIfInPolicedOctets	in-policed-octets	Octets dropped due to ingress policy; support 64-bit counters
ifInPolicedPkt	juniAcctng	juniAcctngIfInPolicedPkts	in-policed-octets	Packets dropped due to ingress policy
ifInSpoofedPkts	juniAcctng	juniAcctngIfInSpoofedPkts	in-spoofed-pkts	Packets dropped due to invalid source address
ifOutPolicedOctets	juniAcctng	juniAcctngIfOutPolicedOctets	out-policed-octets	Octets dropped due to egress policy; support 64-bit counters
ifOutPolicedPkts	juniAcctng	juniAcctngIfOutPolicedPkts	out-policed-pkts	Packets dropped due to ingress policy
ifOutSchedOctets	juniAcctng	juniIpIfStatsOutSchedDropOctets	out-sched-octets	Scheduler octets dropped
ifOutSchedPkts	juniAcctng	juniIpIfStatsOutSchedDropPackets	out-sched-pkts	Scheduler packets dropped
ifLowerInterface	juniAcctng	juniAcctngIfLowerInterface	lower-interface	The ifIndex of the lower interface
ifTimeOffse	juniAcctng	juniAcctngIfTimeOffset	time-offset	-

**Table 28: Mapping Bulkstats Output to MIB Files and CLI Configurations** *(continued)*

Bulkstats Output Column Name	MIB File	MIB Object Name	CLI Configuration	Description
ifHCInMulticastPkts	RFC2863	ifHCInMulticastPkts	in-mcast-pkts	<p>The number of packets, delivered by this sub-layer to a higher (sub-)layer, which were addressed to a multicast address at this sub-layer. For a MAC layer protocol, this includes both Group and Functional addresses. This object is a 64-bit version of ifInMulticastPkts</p> <p>Discontinuities in the value of this counter can occur at re-initialization of the management system, and at other times as indicated by the value of ifCounterDiscontinuityTime</p>
ifHCInBroadcastPkts	RFC2863	ifHCInBroadcastPkts	in-bcast-pkts	<p>The number of packets, delivered by this sub-layer to a higher (sub-)layer, which were addressed to a broadcast address at this sub-layer. This object is a 64-bit version of ifInBroadcastPkts</p> <p>Discontinuities in the value of this counter can occur at re-initialization of the management system, and at other times as indicated by the value of ifCounterDiscontinuityTime</p>
ifHCOutMulticastPkts	RFC2863	ifHCOutMulticastPkts	out-mcast-pkts	<p>The total number of packets that higher-level protocols requested be transmitted, and which were addressed to a multicast address at this sub-layer, including those that were discarded or not sent. For a MAC layer protocol, this includes both Group and Functional addresses. This object is a 64-bit version of ifOutMulticastPkts</p> <p>Discontinuities in the value of this counter can occur at re-initialization of the management system, and at other times as indicated by the value of ifCounterDiscontinuityTime</p>

**Table 28: Mapping Bulkstats Output to MIB Files and CLI Configurations** *(continued)*

Bulkstats Output Column Name	MIB File	MIB Object Name	CLI Configuration	Description
ifHCOutBroadcastPkts	RFC2863	ifHCOutBroadcastPkts	out-bcast-pkts	<p>The total number of packets that higher-level protocols requested be transmitted, and which were addressed to a broadcast address at this sub-layer, including those that were discarded or not sent. This object is a 64-bit version of ifOutBroadcastPkts</p> <p>Discontinuities in the value of this counter can occur at re-initialization of the management system, and at other times as indicated by the value of ifCounterDiscontinuityTime</p>
ifHCInMulticastOctets	-	-	in-mcast-octets	Multicast octets received
ifHCOutMulticastOctets	-	-	out-mcast-octets	Multicast octets sent

## Monitoring Schema Statistics

You are able to display your configuration and monitor the data generated by schemas.

### **show bulkstats schema**

- Use to display data on the bulk statistics schema.
- Field descriptions
  - Schema Information:
    - Index—Index number of the schema
    - Subtree—Type of bulk statistics schema configured on the collector: igmp, if-stack, if-stats, policy, or system
    - CollectorIndex—Bulk statistics collector index (same as the SNMP table index)
  - State
    - active—Schema is properly configured and currently active
    - notInService—Schema has been decommissioned by a management client

- notReady—Schema does not have enough configuration information to go active
- error—Configuration/operational error
- Subtree List—Types of statistics the schema is configured to receive
- Example 1

```
host1#show bulkstats schema
```

Schema Information:			
Index	Subtree	CollectorIndex	State
1	ifStack	1	active
2	system	2	active

Index	Subtree List
1	N/A
2	N/A

- Example 2

```
host1#show bulkstats schema
```

Schema Information:			
Index	Subtree	CollectorIndex	State
1	ifStats	1	active
2	system	2	active

Index	Subtree List
1	ifOutErrors; ifLowerInterface; ifTimeOffset
2	N/A

- See show bulkstats schema.

## Configuring Interface Numbering Mode

E Series routers support the RFC 1213 interface numbering mode on bulkstats. This mode is contrasted with the default interface numbering mode.

The RFC 1213 numbering mode is based on a 32-bit contiguous integer value starting from 1 and ranging to ifNumber. This mode differs from the default interface numbering mode, which encodes a type field in the upper 8 bits of a 32-bit integer. The use of the upper 8 bits creates large gaps in the ifIndex numbering scheme.

There is no re-use of ifIndex values in RFC 1213 mode, whereas in the default interface numbering mode, ifIndex values can be re-used. In the default interface numbering mode, re-use of ifIndex values across reboots is permitted and is basically known as ifIndex re-numbering.

In RFC 1213 mode, however, the interface numbers are not re-used during a single initialization of the device and renumbering of ifIndexes occurs after a system reboot. In the default interface numbering mode, ifIndexes are persistent across system reboots and can be reused without resetting the value of sysUpTime.

In RFC 1213 mode, two parameters control the size of the ifIndex range and the total number of interfaces in the standard interface tables—maxIfIndex and maxIfNumber. There is no such control in the default interface numbering mode.

In RFC 1213 mode, interface creations should not result in gaps in the ifIndex range. A gap that results from the deletion of an interface is acceptable because it is handled by older network management applications. The gaps are eliminated after the router is rebooted. However, in the default interface numbering mode, large gaps occur from the creation of interfaces due to the use of the upper 8 bits of the ifIndex for interface type encoding. Gaps are not eliminated after a system reboot.

In RFC 1213 mode, small gaps can occur in the creation of IP interfaces when virtual routers are used. These gaps are minimized but not eliminated when the router is rebooted.

Rather than seeing an ifIndex value of 1 and 10066329, for example, a management client would see ifIndex values of 1 and 2.

### **bulkstats interfaces rfc1213**

- Use to enable the RFC 1213 interface numbering mode on bulkstats.
- Example

```
host1(config)#bulkstats interfaces rfc 1213
```

- Use the **no** version to disable the RFC 1213 interface numbering mode on bulkstats.
- See bulkstats interfaces rfc1213.

## **Using the Bulk Statistics Formatter**

---

The bulk statistics formatter allows you to set a remote filename dynamically and specify the format for the end of each line in the bulkstats file.

### **Setting Remote Filenames**

The router supports the following special characters for remote filenames:

- %x—An integer in hexadecimal format (base 16)
- %s—A character string
- %u—An unsigned integer in decimal (base 10)
- %d—An integer in decimal (base 10)

The % variables in the remote name are replaced at runtime with the sysName and sysUpTime parameters to produce variable filenames on the remote host.

See the `bulkstats receiver remote-name` command.

```
host1(config)#bulkstats receiver 1 remote-name " bulk%s%d.sts" sysName
collectorSequence
```

### Guidelines

The current capabilities and limitations of the bulk statistics formatter are:

- If you add `%d` or any numeric formatter for a string value (such as `sysName`), the attribute name will be used (for instance, `sysName`). The opposite is also true, except for `sysUptime`, which will use `%s` as a `%u`.
- You can use `%%` if you want a `%` character to be part of the parsed name.
- You can use the same attribute multiple times. For example, you may want a name that has `%x` and `%u` of `collectorSequence`.
- Currently, there is no control over sequence numbers, except for the guarantee that the formatter will:
  1. Use sequential values, beginning from 1
  2. Persist through system reboot
- If you need the sequential number to restart, remove and then add the bulk statistics receiver again.
- You can use up to 128 characters for the remote file name. Anything beyond that is truncated when the filename is stored in nonvolatile memory, but this truncation is not visible until the next time the system reboots.

### Specifying End of Line Format

By default, the bulk statistics application generates a DOS-compatible file that contains both a carriage return (CR) and line feed (LF) at the end of each line. The existence of a carriage return at the end of a line may cause formatting issues with some applications that do not ignore or remove carriage returns.

You can set up the system to remove the carriage return and leave only a line feed at the end of each line.

#### ***bulkstats file-format endOfLine-LF***

- Use to strip the carriage return from the end of each line in the bulkstats file.
- Example

```
host1(config)#bulkstats file-format endOfLine-LF
```

- Use the **no** version to return to the default, CR and LF.
- See `bulkstats file-format endOfLine-LF`.

## Managing Virtual Routers

---

Your router supports SNMP management of virtual routers. This support is based on an SNMP community string proxy to select particular instances of virtual routers. The entity MIB is used to model the physical container to the logical relationship of the virtual router implementation. See “Configuring Virtual Routers” on page 537.

## Monitoring SNMP

---

To monitor the status of SNMP operations on your network, enter Privileged Exec mode. You can then establish a baseline and use the **show** commands to view statistics.

### Establishing a Baseline

SNMP statistics are stored in system counters. The only way to reset the system counters is to reboot the router. You can, however, establish a baseline for SNMP statistics by setting a group of reference counters to zero.

#### *baseline snmp*

- Use to establish a baseline for SNMP statistics.
- The system implements the baseline by reading and storing the statistics at the time the baseline is set and then subtracting this baseline whenever baseline-relative statistics are retrieved.
- To display statistics relative to the current baseline, use the **delta** keyword with SNMP **show** commands.
- SNMP operations (such as Get and Set) continue to use and report statistics from the system counters.
- See “Viewing SNMP Status” on page 234 for a sample display when you enter the **show snmp** command. If you establish a baseline and then enter **show snmp**, the statistics now have zero or low values.
- Example

```

host1#baseline snmp
host1#show snmp
Contact: Joe Administrator
Location: Network Lab, Bldg 3 Floor 1
2 SNMP packets input
  0 Bad SNMP version errors
  0 Unknown community name
  0 Illegal operation for community name supplied
  0 Encoding errors
  0 Number of requested variables
  0 Number of altered variables
  1 Get-request PDUs
  1 Get-next PDUs
  0 Set-request PDUs
  0 Unknown security models
  0 Unavailable contexts

```

```

2 SNMP packets out
  0 Too big errors (Maximum packet size 1500)
  1 No such name errors
  0 Bad values errors
  0 General errors
  2 Get-response PDUs
  0 SNMP trap PDUs
  0 Invalid Message Report PDUs
  0 Unknown PDU Handler Report PDUs
  0 Unknown Context Report PDUs
  0 Unsupported Security Level Report PDUs
  0 Not in time Window Report PDUs
  0 Unknown Username Report PDUs
  0 Unknown Engine ID Report PDUs
  0 Wrong Digest Report PDUs
  0 Decryption Error Report PDUs

```

- There is no **no** version.
- See baseline snmp.

## Viewing SNMP Status

To view SNMP status on your network, use the following **show** commands.

### **show snmp**

- Use to display all the information about SNMP status.
- To display statistics relative to the current baseline, use the **delta** keyword.
- Field descriptions
  - Contact—Router's contact person
  - Location—Router's location
  - SNMP packets input—Total number of SNMP packets received by the router
    - Bad SNMP version errors—Number of SNMP PDUs with a bad version number
    - Unknown community name—Number of SNMP PDUs that had an unrecognized community name
    - Illegal operation for community name supplied—Number of access violations based on the configured privilege level for community strings
    - Encoding errors—Number of AS number version 1 encoding and decoding errors
    - Number of requested variables—Number of variable bindings processed by the SNMP agent
    - Number of altered variables—Number of variable bindings processed successfully in SNMP **set** commands
    - Get-request PDUs—Number of get-exact SNMP PDUs processed



- Get-next PDUs—Number of get-next SNMP PDUs processed
- Set-request PDUs—Number of set SNMP PDUs processed
- Unknown security models—Number of SNMP PDUs with unrecognized security
- Unavailable contexts—Number of SNMP proxy requests to unknown entities
- SNMP packets out—Total number of SNMP packets sent by the router
  - Too big errors—Number of processed PDUs that resulted in SNMP PDUs too large to encode
  - No such name errors—Number of requests that resulted in noSuchName errors. If interfaces configured on modules that do not support 64-bit counters are accessed, the system returns a noSuchName message.
  - Bad values errors—Number of requests that resulted in badValues errors
  - General errors—Number of general errors
  - Get-response PDUs—Number of requests that resulted in getResponse PDUs
  - SNMP trap PDUs—Number of SNMP trap PDUs generated by this agent
  - SNMP trap proxied—Number of traps generated by this agent that are sent via trap-proxy
  - Invalid Message Report PDUs—Number of packets received by the SNMP engine that were dropped because there were invalid or inconsistent components in the SNMP message
  - Unknown PDU Handler Report PDUs—Number of packets received by the SNMP engine that were dropped because the PDU in the packet could not be passed to an application responsible for handling the PDU type; for example, no SNMP application had registered for the proper combination of the context engine ID and PDU type
  - Unknown Context Report PDUs—Number of packets received by the SNMP engine that were dropped because the context contained in the message was unknown
  - Unsupported Security Level Report PDUs—Number of packets received by the SNMP engine that were dropped because they requested a security level that was unknown to the SNMP engine or otherwise unavailable
  - Not in time Window Report PDUs—Number of packets received by the SNMP engine that were dropped because they appeared outside the authoritative SNMP engine window
  - Unknown Username Report PDUs—Number of packets received by the SNMP engine that were dropped because they referenced a user that was not known to the SNMP engine

- Unknown Engine ID Report PDUs—Number of packets received by the SNMP engine that were dropped because they referenced an snmpEngineID that was not known to the SNMP engine
  - Wrong Digest Report PDUs—Number of packets received by the SNMP engine that were dropped because they did not contain the expected digest value
  - Decryption Error Report PDUs—Number of packets received by the SNMP engine that were dropped because they could not be decrypted
- Example

```

host1#show snmp
Contact: Joe Administrator
Location: Network Lab, Bldg 3 Floor 1
538 SNMP packets input
  0 Bad SNMP version errors
  0 Unknown community name
  0 Illegal operation for community name supplied
  0 Encoding errors
  695 Number of requested variables
  0 Number of altered variables
  26 Get-request PDUs
  512 Get-next PDUs
  0 Set-request PDUs
  0 Unknown security models
  0 Unavailable contexts
538 SNMP packets out
  0 Too big errors (Maximum packet size 1500)
  10 No such name errors
  0 Bad values errors
  0 General errors
  538 Get-response PDUs
  0 SNMP trap PDUs
  0 Invalid Message Report PDUs
  0 Unknown PDU Handler Report PDUs
  0 Unknown Context Report PDUs
  0 Unsupported Security Level Report PDUs
  0 Not in time Window Report PDUs
  0 Unknown Username Report PDUs
  0 Unknown Engine ID Report PDUs
  0 Wrong Digest Report PDUs
  0 Decryption Error Report PDUs

```

- See show snmp.

### **show snmp access**

- Use to display information about the groups you configured.
- Field descriptions
  - Group Name—Name of the group
  - Model—Security model; for example, user-based security model (USM)
  - Level—Method for authentication and privacy
    - none—No authentication and no privacy

- auth—Authentication only
- priv—Authentication and privacy
- Read—Name of the view for read access
- Write—Name of the view for write access
- Notify—Name of the view for notification
- Storage—SNMP storage type, volatile or nonvolatile
- Example

```

host1#show snmp access
Group Name      Model Level Read      Write      Notify
-----
admin           usm   priv  everything everything everything
mirror          usm   priv  mirrorAdmin mirrorAdmin mirrorAdmin
public          usm   none  user       none       none
private         usm   auth  user       user       user

```

- See show snmp access.

### **show snmp community**

- Use to display information about the SNMP communities.
- Field descriptions
  - Community—Name of the community and the associated virtual router
  - View—Name of the view
  - Priv—Access privilege for the view
    - ro—Read-only access
    - rw—Read-write access
    - admin—All privileges
  - AccList—Number of access lists associated with this community
- Example

```

host1#show snmp community
Community      View      Priv AccList
-----
admin@default  everything rw      0
private@default user      rw      0
public@default user      ro      0

```

- See show snmp community.

### **show snmp group**

- Use to display the list of available groups. Detailed information is available through the **show snmp access** command.
- Field descriptions
  - groupName—Name of the group
  - securityModel—SNMP security model
    - v1—SNMPv1
    - v2c—SNMPv2c
    - usm—SNMPv
  - authenticationLevel—Method for authentication and privacy
    - none—No authentication and no privacy
    - auth—Authentication only
    - priv—Authentication and privacy
  - readView—Name of the view for read access
  - writeView—Name of the view for write access
  - notifyView—Name of the view for notification
  - storageType—SNMP storage type
    - volatile—Loses contents when power is lost
    - nonVolatile—Does not lose contents when power is lost
- Example

```

host1#show snmp group
Group Name                               Storage Type
-----
group1                                   Volatile
group2                                   NonVolatile
admin                                    Permanent
mirror                                   Permanent
public                                   Permanent
private                                  Permanent

```

- See show snmp group.

### **show snmp notificationLog**

- Use to display the configuration of the SNMP notification log.
- Field descriptions
  - Global Age Out Value—Ageout for traps in the notification log tables
  - Global Entry Limit Value—Maximum number of notifications kept in all notification log tables
- Example

```

host1#show snmp notificationLog
Global Age Out Value:      1440 minutes
Global Entry Limit Value : 500
No notification log name information is available

```

- See show snmp notificationLog.

### **show snmp trap**

- Use to display configuration information about SNMP traps and trap destinations.
- Field descriptions
  - Enabled Categories—Trap categories that are enabled on the router.
  - SNMP authentication failure trap—Enabled or disabled.
  - Trap Source—Interface whose IP address is used as the source address for all SNMP traps.
  - Trap Source Address—IP address used as the source address for all SNMP traps.
  - Trap Proxy—Enabled or disabled.
  - Global Trap Severity Level—Global severity level filter; if a trap does not meet this severity level, it is discarded. If the per-category trap severity level is not set for a particular category, the severity displayed here is used for that category.
  - Trap Severity Level—Severity level filter for a trap category; this severity level overrides the globally configured trap severity level.
  - TrapCategories—Types of traps enabled on the router for which trap severity is configured at the category level.
  - Address—IP address of the trap recipient.
  - Security String—Name of the SNMP community.
  - Ver—SNMP version (v1 or v2) of the SNMP trap packet.
  - Port—UDP port on which the trap recipient accepts traps.
  - Trap Categories—Types of traps that the trap recipient can receive.
  - TrapSeverityFilter—Severity level filter for this SNMP host.
  - Ping TimeOut—Configured ping timeout in minutes.
  - Maximum QueueSize—Maximum number of traps to be kept in the trap queue.

- Queue DrainRate—Maximum number of traps per second to be sent to the host.
- Queue Full discard method—Method used to discard traps when the queue is full:
  - dropFirstIn—Oldest trap in the queue is dropped.
  - dropLastIn—Most recent trap is dropped .
- Example

```

host1# show snmp trap
Enabled Categories: Bgp, Ospf, Sonet
SNMP authentication failure trap is disabled
Trap Source: FastEthernet 6/0, Trap Source Address:172.27.120.78
Trap Proxy: enabled
Global Trap Severity Level: 7 - debug

Trap Severity Level      TrapCategories
-----
7 - debug                ospf

Address      Security String      Ver  Port  Trap Categories
-----
192.168.1.10  public                v1   162    BgpOspf

Address      TrapSeverityFilter  Ping      Maximum      Queue      Queue Full
-----
192.168.1.10  2 - critical       TimeOut   QueueSize   DrainRate   discrd methd
-----
192.168.1.10  2 - critical       1         32          0          dropLastIn

```

- See show snmp trap.

### **show snmp trap statistics**

- Use to display statistics for all SNMP traps on the virtual router, as well as statistics for each SNMP host configured on the virtual router.
- Field descriptions
  - Trap request(s)—Number of local traps requested
  - Proxy trap request(s)—Number of proxy traps requested
  - Trap(s) discarded—Total number of traps discarded
    - No system memory—Traps discarded because there was not enough system memory
    - No queue resources—Traps discarded because there were no queue resources available
    - SNMP agent disabled—Traps discarded because the SNMP agent was disabled

- Global trap category disabled—Traps discarded because they were filtered by the **snmp enable trap** command
- Global minimum severity level—Traps discarded because they did not match the severity level set with the **snmp enable traps trapfilters** command.
- Trap(s) out—Total number of traps sent by the virtual router
- Trap(s) proxied—Total number of traps proxied by the virtual router
- Address—IP address of the host
- TrapsDiscarded Severity/Category—Severity level and category of the discarded traps
- TrapsDiscarded bad encoding—Traps discarded because of bad encoding
- TrapsDiscarded Queue Full—Traps discarded because the queue was full
- TrapsDiscarded NoHostResponses—Traps discarded because the host did not respond to pings sent to the host
- Trap PDUs sentOut—Number of trap PDUs sent by this host

```
host1#show snmp trap statistics
Trap request(s):3112
Proxy trap request(s):0
Trap(s) discarded:4
No system memory:0
No queue resources:0
SNMP agent disabled:0
Global trap category disabled:4
Global minimum severity level:0
Trap(s) out:3108
Trap(s) proxied:0
Address          TrapsDiscarded  TrapsDiscarded TrapsDiscarded TrapsDiscarded
                  Severity/Category bad encoding  Queue Full    NoHostResponses
-----
1.1.1.1           1081             0              511            32
10.10.132.137     0                0              0              0

Address          Trap PDUs
                  sentOut
-----
1.1.1.1           536
10.10.132.137     3108
```

- See show snmp trap statistics.

**show snmp user**

- Use to display information about users.
- Field descriptions

- User—Name of the user
- Auth—Authorization protocol for this user
  - no—No authorization protocol
  - md5—HMAC-MD5-96 authorization protocol
  - sha—HMAC-SHA-96 authorization protocol
- Priv—Privacy protocol for this user
  - no—No privacy protocol
  - des—DES encryption algorithm for privacy
- Group—Name of the group to which the user belongs
- Example SNMPv3 display.

```
host1#show snmp user
```

User	Auth	Priv	Group
-----	----	----	-----
josie	md5	des	admin
nightfly	md5	no	private
steelydan	no	no	public

- See show snmp user.

### **show snmp view**

- Use to display information about the views you created.
- Field descriptions
  - View Name—Name of the view
  - View Type—Access privilege for the view
    - included—Specified object identifier (OID) trees are available in this view
    - excluded—Specified OID trees are not available in this view
  - Oid Tree—OID of the AS number version 1 subtree
  - Storage—SNMP storage type, volatile or nonvolatile
- Example

```
host1#show snmp view
```

View Name	View Type	Oid Tree
-----	-----	-----
user	included	1.3.6.1.
user	excluded	1.3.6.1.4.1.4874.2.2.16.
user	excluded	1.3.6.1.6.3.11.



user	excluded	1.3.6.1.6.3.12.
user	excluded	1.3.6.1.6.3.13.
user	excluded	1.3.6.1.6.3.14.
user	excluded	1.3.6.1.6.3.15.
user	excluded	1.3.6.1.6.3.16.
user	excluded	1.3.6.1.6.3.18.
nothing	excluded	1.3.6.1.
everything	included	1.3.6.1.
everything	excluded	1.3.6.1.4.1.4874.2.2.77.
mirrorAdmin	included	1.3.6.1.4.1.4874.2.2.77.

- See show snmp view.

## Output Filtering

You can use the output filtering feature of the **show** commands to include or exclude lines of output based on a text string you specify. See “Command-Line Interface” on page 29, for details.



## Chapter 5

# Managing the System

This chapter describes general tasks associated with managing the E Series router.

This chapter contains the following sections:

- Overview on page 246
- Platform Considerations on page 246
- Naming the System on page 246
- Configuring the Switch Fabric Bandwidth on page 247
- Configuring Timing on page 247
- Using the CLI on page 249
- Managing vty Lines on page 252
- Clearing Lines on page 255
- Monitoring the Current Configuration on page 255
- Configuring the System Automatically on page 270
- Saving the Current Configuration on page 271
- Using the Desktop Tool for Viewing Uncompressed Text Configuration on page 274
- Customizing the User Interface on page 276
- Sending Messages on page 283
- Managing Memory on page 284
- Managing Files on page 284
- Transferring Files on page 295
- Configuring the NFS Client on page 310
- Using a Loopback Interface on page 312
- Using the Telnet Client on page 313
- Configuring DNS on page 314
- Troubleshooting the System on page 317
- Managing and Monitoring Resources on page 329
- Monitoring the System on page 331

## Overview

Managing the E Series router involves a variety of tasks. This chapter covers those tasks associated with the router in general rather than specific networking protocols. Each section in the chapter covers a different topic; where appropriate, a section contains an overview of the topic, configuration tasks, and information about monitoring the associated settings.

For additional management information, CLI commands, and procedures, refer to the following table.

Task	Reference
Find detailed information about commands described in this chapter.	<i>JUNOS Command Reference Guide</i>
Configure the system as an SNMP agent.	“Configuring SNMP” on page 149
Set system passwords.	“Managing the System” on page 245
Write CLI macros.	“Managing Modules” on page 349
Boot the system.	“Booting the System” on page 507
Manage line modules and SRP modules.	“Managing Modules” on page 349

## Platform Considerations

System management is supported on all E Series routers.

For information about the modules supported on E Series routers:

- See the *ERX Module Guide* for modules supported on ERX7xx models, ERX14xx models, and the ERX310 Broadband Services Router.
- See the *E120 and E320 Module Guide* for modules supported on the E120 and E320 Broadband Services Routers.

## Naming the System

When you receive the router, it has a factory default host name. To rename the router, use the **hostname** command.

### **hostname**

- Use to rename the router.
- The assigned name is displayed in the command-line interface (CLI) prompts.
- Example

```
router1(config)#hostname host1
```

```
host1(config)#
```

- There is no **no** version.
- See hostname.

## Configuring the Switch Fabric Bandwidth

---

By default, the switch fabric for the Juniper Networks ERX1440, ERX310, E120, and E320 routers uses a bandwidth weighting ratio of 15:2 for multicast-to-unicast weighted round robin (WRR). In the absence of strict-priority traffic, and when both unicast and multicast traffic compete for switch fabric bandwidth, the switch fabric allocates 15/17ths of the available bandwidth to multicast traffic and 2/17ths of the available bandwidth to unicast traffic.

The **fabric weights** command enables you to specify a ratio for multicast-to-unicast traffic on the router switch fabric. The **no** version of the command reverts the weighting ratio back to its default.

### ***fabric weights***

- Use to define the multicast-to-unicast traffic ratio for the switch fabric for the ERX1440, ERX310, E120, and E320 routers
- Example

```
host1(config-traffic-class)# fabric weights multicast 2 unicast 1
```

- Use the **no** version to return the switch fabric to its default multicast-to-unicast ratio (15:2).
- See fabric weights.

## Configuring Timing

---

You can use the timing source command to configure three timing sources for the system. These sources are known as the primary, secondary, and tertiary sources. The system periodically polls the status of the current timing source. If the system discovers that the current source has become unavailable, it polls the timing source you specified as next in line. If this source is available, it switches to this source; if not, it then polls the next source in line. If the lowest source is unavailable, the system maintains the SRP clock as the source.

If you enable auto-upgrade, in the event of a source failure, the system—after switching to a lower source—polls all higher configured sources and automatically switches back to the highest timing source when that source becomes available.

The timing select command enables you to specify which source (primary, secondary, or tertiary) the system is to use by default. The system will never attempt to upgrade to a source higher than the selected source.

### ***timing disable-auto-upgrade***

- Use to disable the auto-upgrade feature of the system's timing selector.
- The system starts out by setting the operational timing selector to the administratively configured selector. See the **timing select** command.
- Example

```
host1(config)#timing disable-auto-upgrade
```

- Use the **no** version to restore the factory default, which is auto-upgrade enabled.
- See timing disable-auto-upgrade.

### **timing select**

- Use to specify which of the configured timing sources is used by default.
- Primary timing source is preferred over secondary, and secondary is preferred over tertiary. See the **timing source** command.
- If you enable the auto-upgrade feature, the system does not try to upgrade beyond the administratively configured selector.
- Example

```
host1(config)#timing select secondary
```

- There is no **no** version.
- See timing select.

### **timing source**

- Use to specify how the SRP module exchanges timing signals with an interface.
- You can specify primary, secondary, and tertiary timing sources.
- You can specify one external source received on an I/O module or IOA other than the SRP I/O module or SRP IOA.
- You can specify two or more internal sources or external sources received through the SRP I/O module or SRP IOA external timing ports.
- On the E120 and E320 routers, you can specify sonet for only two of the available three timing sources (primary, secondary, or tertiary).
- The available sources to choose are:
  - ds1—DS1 interface
  - ds3—DS3 interface
  - e1—E1 interface
  - e3—E3 interface
  - sonet—SONET interface
  - internal—Internal system controller (SC) oscillator
  - line—External timing input on SRP module

- Example

```
host1#timing source secondary sonet 3/0
```

- There is no **no** version.
- See timing source.

## Monitoring Timing

Use the **show timing** command to view the timing settings for the system.

### **show timing**

- Use to display the timing settings and the operational status of the system timing.
- If a timing source fails, the system uses the next time source in the hierarchy, and a message appears in the system log at the warning level. If auto-upgrade is enabled, the system upgrades to a higher-priority timing source when one becomes available, and a message appears in the system log at the notice level.
- Example

```
host1#show timing
timing: tertiary (failover from primary)
primary: external SC E1 (A) (ERROR)
secondary: ds3 3/0 (ERROR)
tertiary: internal SC oscillator (ok)
auto-upgrade enabled
```

- See show timing.

## Using the CLI

---

Use the commands described in this section to navigate the CLI. For a complete description of the CLI, see “Command-Line Interface” on page 29.

### **configure**

- Use to enter Global Configuration mode.
- Global Configuration mode provides access to other configuration modes, such as Interface Configuration mode. See “Command-Line Interface” on page 29.
- This command allows other commands to be executed from a terminal or a file.
- This command is not allowed for a short time after a warm restart (warm switchover) occurs. This delay allows some applications time to complete their warm-restart initialization. However, if the warm restart is not complete in 5 minutes, the warm start is cancelled and configuration access is restored.
- Example 1

```
host1#configure
Configuring from terminal or file [terminal]?
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
```

```
host1(config)#
```

- Example 2

```
host1#configure
Configuring from terminal or file [terminal]? file
File name: system1.scr
Proceed with configure? [confirm]
host1(config)#
```

- There is no **no** version.
- See configure.

## **disable**

- Use to exit Privileged Exec mode and return to User Exec mode.
- Use to move to a lower Privileged Exec mode level without returning to User Exec mode. Specifying a privilege level after the **disable** command changes the Privileged Exec mode to the lower level that you specify; you do not return to User Exec mode.

- Example 1

```
host1#disable
host1>
```

- Example 2

```
host1#show privilege
Privilege level is 10
host1#disable 5
host1#show privilege
Privilege level is 5
```

- There is no **no** version.
- See disable.

## **do**

- Use to issue an Exec mode command from any CLI configuration command mode.
- Example

```
host1(config)#do show configuration | begin interface
```

- The **do** command functions the same as the **run** command.
- There is no **no** version.
- See do.

## **enable**



- Use to move from User Exec to Privileged Exec mode.
- Privileged Exec mode allows you to access all other user interface modes. From here you can configure, monitor, and manage all aspects of the router.
- You can access the Privileged Exec commands using one of 16 levels of command privilege. If you do not enter a privilege level and you are not accessing the router through a RADIUS authentication account, the default CLI access level is 10. For information about CLI levels of access, see “Privileged-Level Access” on page 49 in “Command-Line Interface” on page 29.
- Set a password for this mode by using either the **enable password** or the **enable secret** command in Global Configuration mode. This protects the system from any unauthorized use.
- Once a password is set, anyone trying to use Privileged Exec mode will be asked to provide the password.
- Example 1 (accessing Privileged Exec mode at the default level 10)

```
host1>enable
password:*****
host1#
```

- Example 2 (accessing Privileged Exec mode at the highest level 15; a password is not set for this example)

```
host1>enable 15
host1#
```

- There is no **no** version.
- See **enable**.

## **end**

- Use to exit Global Configuration mode or any of the other Configuration modes. You may also use Ctrl + z to exit these modes.
- Executing this command returns you to the User Exec mode.
- Example

```
host1(config)#end
host1#
```

- There is no **no** version.
- See **end**.

## **exit**

- Use to exit the current command mode or the system when issued from the User Exec mode.
- Example

```
host1#exit
host1>
```

- There is no **no** version.
- See exit.

### **help**

- Use to display basic information about the interactive help system.
- Example

```
host1#help
Use the help options as follows:
```

```
?, or command<Space>? - Lists the set of all valid next keywords or
                        arguments
partial-keyword?       - Lists the keywords that begin with a certain
                        character string
partial-keyword<Tab> - Completes the partial keyword
```

- There is no **no** version.
- See help.

### **run**

- Use to issue an Exec mode command from any CLI configuration command mode.
- Example

```
host1(config)#run show configuration | begin interface
```

- The **run** command functions the same as the **do** command.
- There is no **no** version.
- See run.

### **sleep**

- Use to make the CLI pause for a specified period of time (in seconds).
- Pausing is very useful in configuration script files.
- Example

```
host1#sleep 60
```

- There is no **no** version.
- See sleep.

## **Managing vty Lines**

---

The system supports 30 virtual tty (vty) lines for Telnet, SSH, and FTP services. Each Telnet, SSH, or FTP session requires one vty line. When you connect to the router

through a vty line, the number of the vty line is not assigned sequentially; instead, the system assigns the first vty line that passes the host access list check rules.

## Configuring vty Lines

By default five vty lines (0–4) are open. You can open additional lines using the **line vty** command. Once lines are open, login is enabled by default. Before users can access the lines, you must configure a password, disable login using the **no login** command, or configure AAA authentication on the lines.

### **line vty**

- Use to open or configure vty lines.
- You can specify a single line or a range of lines. The range is 0–29.
- Example

```
host1(config)#line vty 6 10
host1(config-line)#
```

- Use the **no** version to remove a vty line or a range of lines from the configuration. Lines that you remove will no longer be available for use by Telnet, FTP, or SSH. When you remove a vty line, the system removes all lines above that line. For example, **no line vty 6** causes the system to remove lines 6 through 29. You cannot remove lines 0 through 4.
- See line.

### **password**

- Use to specify a password on a single line or a range of lines.
- If you enable login but do not configure a password, the system will not allow you to access virtual terminals.
- Specify a password in plain text (unencrypted) or cipher text (encrypted). In either case, the system stores the password as encrypted.
- You can use the following keywords:
  - 0 (zero)—Specifies an unencrypted password
  - 5—Specifies a secret
  - 7—Specifies an encrypted password
- Example 1 (unencrypted password)
 

```
host1(config-line)#password 0 mypassword
```
- Example 2 (secret)
 

```
host1(config-line)#password 5 y13_x
```
- Example 3 (encrypted password)
 

```
host1(config-line)#password 7 x13_2
```

- Use the **no**version to remove the password. By default, **no password** is specified.
- See password.

For more information about configuring security for vty lines, see “Managing the System” on page 245.

## Monitoring vty Lines

Use the **show line vty** command to monitor vty lines.

### **show line vty**

- Use to display the configuration of a vty line.
- Field descriptions
  - access-class—Access class associated with the vty line
  - data-character-bits—Number of bits per character
    - 7—Setting for the standard ASCII set
    - 8—Setting for the international character set
  - exec-timeout—Time interval that the terminal waits for expected user input
    - Never—Indicates that there is no time limit
  - exec-banner—Status for the exec banner: enabled or disabled. This banner is displayed by the CLI after user authentication (if any) and before the first prompt of a CLI session.
  - motd-banner—Status for the MOTD banner: enabled or disabled. This banner is displayed by the CLI when a connection is initiated.
  - login-timeout—Time interval during which the user must log in.
    - Never—Indicates that there is no time limit
- Example

```
host1#show line vty 0
no access-class in
data-character-bits 8
exec-timeout 3w 3d 7h 20m 0s
exec-banner enabled
motd-banner enabled
login-timeout 30 seconds
```

- See show line vty.

## Clearing Lines

---

Use the **clear line** command to clear any line on the system (vty or console). Using this command terminates any service, such as an FTP session, on this line and closes any open files.

### **clear line**

- Use to remove any services on a line and close any files opened as a result of services on that line.
- You can specify the absolute number to clear any line. For each line on the system, the absolute number is listed in the line number field of the **show users** command output.
- You can specify the line type and the relative number to clear a specific type of line. For each line on the system, the relative number is listed in the line name field of the **show users** command output.

- Example 1

```
host1#clear line 2
```

- Example 2

```
host1#clear line console 0
```

- There is no **no** version.
- See clear line.

## Monitoring the Current Configuration

---

Use the commands described in this section to monitor the current (running) configuration of the system.

You can use the **show configuration** command to display information when the router is in Automatic Commit mode. In Automatic Commit mode, the system automatically saves any change to the system configuration to nonvolatile storage (NVS).

You can use the **show running-configuration** command to display information when the router is in Manual Commit mode. In Manual Commit mode, any configuration change affects only the current (running) system configuration.

For more information about saving the current configuration in Automatic Commit mode or Manual Commit mode, see “Saving the Current Configuration” on page 271.

## Defining the Configuration Output Format

The JUNOS **show configuration** command displays the entire system configuration. For very large configurations, the show configuration report can take a long time to generate and display.

The **service show-config format** command enables you to run the **show configuration** command using one of two formats—original format (format 1; the default) and a format that provides a much faster output (format 2). Using format 2 can significantly reduce the amount of time it takes to generate and display configurations that contain three or more virtual routers and a large number of interfaces.

The primary difference between format 1 and format 2 output is the way in which each displays layer 2 and layer 3 interface configurations. Table 29 on page 256 indicates where layer 2 and layer 3 interface configurations appear within the **show configuration** command output when the system is using format 1 or format 2.

**Table 29: Output Locations for Layer 2 and Layer 3 Interface Configurations**

Format	Layer 2 Only Interfaces	Layer 3 Only Interfaces	Layer 2 and Layer 3 Combination Interfaces
Format 1	Entire configuration appears in the default router output	Entire configuration appears in the layer 3 virtual router output	Layer 2 configuration appears in the default router the layer 3 virtual router output
Format 2	Entire configuration appears in the default router output	Entire configuration appears in the layer 3 virtual router output	Layer 2 configuration appears in the default router output; layer 3 configuration appears in the layer 3 virtual router output

The following examples show the differences between format 1 and format 2 output:

**Example 1** Format 1 output

```
virtual-router default
...
interface null 0
interface loopback 0
  ip address 127.0.0.1 255.0.0.0
!
interface ip shAtm50126
  ip share-interface atm 5/0.126
!
interface ip MikeShare2
  ip share-interface atm 5/1.1
!
interface atm 5/0
interface atm 5/0.100 point-to-point
  atm pvc 100 0 100 aal5snap 0 0 0
  encapsulation pppoe
  pppoe sessions 1
!
```

```

interface atm 5/0.100.1
 encapsulation ppp
 ppp authentication chap
 ip address 102.0.1.1 255.255.255.0
!
interface atm 5/0.102 multipoint
 atm pvc 1021 0 1021 aal5snap 0 0 0
 atm pvc 1022 0 1022 aal5snap 0 0 0
 atm pvc 1023 0 1023 aal5snap 0 0 0
 ip address 102.0.2.1 255.255.255.0
!
interface atm 5/0.103 point-to-point
 atm pvc 103 0 103 aal5snap 0 0 0
 encapsulation bridge1483
 ip address 100.0.0.1 255.255.255.0
 pppoe
!
pppoe subinterface atm 5/0.103.1
 encapsulation ppp
 ppp authentication pap
 ip address 100.0.1.1 255.255.255.0
!
interface atm 5/0.104 point-to-point
 atm pvc 104 0 104 aal5snap 0 0 0
 ip address 150.0.1.1 255.255.255.0
 ipv6 address 2000:0:17::1/60
!
interface atm 5/0.126 point-to-point
!
interface atm 5/1
interface atm 5/1.1 point-to-point
interface atm 5/1.100 point-to-point
 atm pvc 100 0 100 aal5snap 0 0 0
 encapsulation pppoe
 pppoe sessions 1
!
interface atm 5/1.100.1
 encapsulation ppp
 ppp authentication chap
!
interface atm 5/1.102 multipoint
 atm pvc 1021 0 1021 aal5snap 0 0 0
 atm pvc 1022 0 1022 aal5snap 0 0 0
 atm pvc 1023 0 1023 aal5snap 0 0 0
!
interface atm 5/1.103 point-to-point
 atm pvc 103 0 103 aal5snap 0 0 0
 encapsulation bridge1483
 pppoe
!
pppoe subinterface atm 5/1.103.1
 encapsulation ppp
 ppp authentication pap
!
interface atm 5/1.104 point-to-point
 atm pvc 104 0 104 aal5snap 0 0 0
!
interface atm 5/1.125 point-to-point
!
interface fastEthernet 0/0
 ip address 10.13.5.196 255.255.128.0

```

```

!
interface m1ppp joe
!
ip route 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0 10.13.5.1
ip route 40.0.0.0 255.0.0.0 atm5/0.104
ip route 172.28.32.70 255.255.255.255 10.13.5.1
no ip source-route
!
!
ipv6
!
! =====
virtual-router foo
...
interface null 0
interface loopback 0
  ip address 127.0.0.2 255.0.0.0
!
interface atm 5/1.100.1
  ip address 102.0.1.2 255.255.255.0
!
interface atm 5/1.102
  ip address 102.0.2.2 255.255.255.0
!
interface atm 5/1.103
  ip address 100.0.0.2 255.255.255.0
!
interface atm 5/1.103.1
  ip address 100.0.1.2 255.255.255.0
!
interface atm 5/1.104
  ip address 150.0.1.2 255.255.255.0
  ipv6 address 2000:0:17::2/60
!
ip route 30.0.0.0 255.0.0.0 atm5/1.104
no ip source-route
!
!
ipv6

```

**Example 2** Format 2 output

```

service show-config format 2
...
virtual-router default
...
interface atm 5/0
interface atm 5/0.100 point-to-point
  atm pvc 100 0 100 aal5snap 0 0 0
  encapsulation pppoe
  pppoe sessions 1
!
interface atm 5/0.100.1
  encapsulation ppp
  ppp authentication chap
!
interface atm 5/0.102 multipoint
  atm pvc 1021 0 1021 aal5snap 0 0 0
  atm pvc 1022 0 1022 aal5snap 0 0 0
  atm pvc 1023 0 1023 aal5snap 0 0 0
!

```



```

interface atm 5/0.103 point-to-point
  atm pvc 103 0 103 aal5snap 0 0 0
  encapsulation bridge1483
  pppoe
!
pppoe subinterface atm 5/0.103.1
  encapsulation ppp
  ppp authentication pap
!
interface atm 5/0.104 point-to-point
  atm pvc 104 0 104 aal5snap 0 0 0
!
interface atm 5/0.126 point-to-point
!
interface atm 5/1
interface atm 5/1.1 point-to-point
interface atm 5/1.100 point-to-point
  atm pvc 100 0 100 aal5snap 0 0 0
  encapsulation pppoe
  pppoe sessions 1
!
interface atm 5/1.100.1
  encapsulation ppp
  ppp authentication chap
!
interface atm 5/1.102 multipoint
  atm pvc 1021 0 1021 aal5snap 0 0 0
  atm pvc 1022 0 1022 aal5snap 0 0 0
  atm pvc 1023 0 1023 aal5snap 0 0 0
!
interface atm 5/1.103 point-to-point
  atm pvc 103 0 103 aal5snap 0 0 0
  encapsulation bridge1483
  pppoe
!
pppoe subinterface atm 5/1.103.1
  encapsulation ppp
  ppp authentication pap
!
interface atm 5/1.104 point-to-point
  atm pvc 104 0 104 aal5snap 0 0 0
!
interface atm 5/1.125 point-to-point
!
interface fastEthernet 0/0
interface null 0
interface loopback 0
  ip address 127.0.0.1 255.0.0.0
!
interface ip shAtm50126
  ip share-interface atm 5/0.126
!
interface ip MikeShare2
  ip share-interface atm 5/1.1
!
interface mlppp joe
interface fastEthernet 0/0
  ip address 10.13.5.196 255.255.128.0
!
interface atm 5/0.100.1
  ip address 102.0.1.1 255.255.255.0

```

```

!
interface atm 5/0.102
  ip address 102.0.2.1 255.255.255.0
!
interface atm 5/0.103
  ip address 100.0.0.1 255.255.255.0
!
interface atm 5/0.103.1
  ip address 100.0.1.1 255.255.255.0
!
interface atm 5/0.104
  ip address 150.0.1.1 255.255.255.0
  ipv6 address 2000:0:17::1/60
!
ip route 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0 10.13.5.1
ip route 40.0.0.0 255.0.0.0 atm5/0.104
ip route 172.28.32.70 255.255.255.255 10.13.5.1
no ip source-route
!
!
ipv6
!
! =====
virtual-router foo
...
interface null 0
interface loopback 0
  ip address 127.0.0.2 255.0.0.0
!
interface atm 5/1.100.1
  ip address 102.0.1.2 255.255.255.0
!
interface atm 5/1.102
  ip address 102.0.2.2 255.255.255.0
!
interface atm 5/1.103
  ip address 100.0.0.2 255.255.255.0
!
interface atm 5/1.103.1
  ip address 100.0.1.2 255.255.255.0
!
interface atm 5/1.104
  ip address 150.0.1.2 255.255.255.0
  ipv6 address 2000:0:17::2/60
!
ip route 30.0.0.0 255.0.0.0 atm5/1.104
no ip source-route
!

```

## Customizing the Configuration Output

You can customize the configuration information by including or excluding lines of output based on the keywords described in this section.

Using a keyword with the **show configuration** command might be more effective than using **show configuration | begin**. When **show configuration** is used with a specific keyword, the current configuration is quickly determined and displayed for *only* that specified keyword. Executing **show configuration | begin** causes all output

of **show configuration** to be generated, but the output is not displayed until the **begin** criterion is met.

Use the **virtual-router** keyword to display the current configuration of a specified virtual router. You can combine the **virtual-router** keyword with the **category** keyword to display the current configuration of specific settings for a virtual router.

Use the **interface** keyword to display the current configuration of a particular interface. Use the **type** keyword to target specific interface types. You can exclude information about particular types of interfaces using the **exclude-category interface** keyword. You can exclude information about particular types of interfaces using the **exclude-category interface** keyword.

Use the **category** keyword to display the current configuration of a specific group of router settings. The settings are organized in categories by function.

Use the **tag-group** keyword with the category interfaces keywords to tag interfaces as belonging to a specific group and display all interfaces within a group.

Use the **tag-group** command to configure an interface tag group. Any number of interfaces can be in a tag group. The following interface types cannot be added to tag groups: tunnel, lag, mlppp, and mlframe-relay. An interface can be in only one tag group.

Table 30 on page 261 describes the categories of router settings and the type of information displayed for each category.

**Table 30: Categories of Router Settings**

Category	Configuration Displayed
aaa	Authentication, authorization, and accounting (AAA) settings, such as the default authentication protocol and the RADIUS accounting server
address-assignment	Address assignment settings for Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) and the local address server
flow-management	Flow management settings, such as firewalls, Network Address Translation (NAT), and IP flow statistics
interfaces	Physical interfaces (types and specifiers); this is the only category that displays information about interfaces
ip-protocols	Internet protocols, such as Border Gateway Protocol (BGP) and Open Shortest Path First (OSPF)
link-layer-forwarding	Link-layer settings, such as bridged interfaces and link-layer interface types
management	Router management settings, such as the CLI, bulk statistics, and Telnet
physical-layer-protocols	Physical layer protocols, such as DS1, DS3, and SONET/SDH
policy	Policy settings, such as policy lists, classifier groups, and rate-limit profiles

**Table 30: Categories of Router Settings** (continued)

Category	Configuration Displayed
qos	Quality of service (QoS) settings, such as traffic class, drop profile, and scheduler profile
system	System-level settings, such as timing, logging, and redundancy
tunneling	Tunneling protocols, such as IP Security (IPSec), Multiprotocol Label Switching (MPLS), and Layer Two Tunneling Protocol (L2TP)

Many of the categories described in Table 30 on page 261 contain subcategories of router settings. For example, you can specify **show configuration category management cli** to display only the configuration for the CLI. To display the names of subcategories that you can specify for each category, issue the **show configuration category categoryName ?** command.

You can combine the **category** keyword with the **virtual-router** keyword to display the current configuration of specific settings for a virtual router.



**NOTE:** When you specify categories with the **show configuration** command, the output might display additional configuration data that is not explicitly associated with the categories that you specified.

### **service show-config**

- Use to define the **show configuration** command display output.
- Specify format 1 to display the show configuration command output in its original format.
- Specify format 2 to significantly reduce the amount of time it takes to generate and display output for configurations that contain three or more virtual routers and a large number of interfaces.
- Example

```
host1#service show-config format 2
```

- Use the **no** version to revert the **show configuration** command output format to its default (format 1).
- See service show-config.

### **show configuration**

- Use to display the current configuration of the system, a specified virtual router, a specified interface, or a specified category of router settings.
- This command was formerly documented as **show config**; that abbreviation is still supported.
- You can create a configuration script from the output by saving it as a file with the .scr extension.

- This command provides configuration information based on the privilege level of the session (user). The output does not display any configuration data for commands that have privilege levels higher than that of the session. For example, if the session is enabled at level 5, issuing the **show configuration** command displays only output for commands at level 5 and below. For more information, see “CLI Command Privileges” on page 52.
- You can use the output filtering feature of the **show** command to include or exclude lines of output based on a text string you specify. See “Command-Line Interface” on page 29, for details.
- Example

```

host1# show configuration
! Configuration script being generated on TUE JAN 29 200X 00:31:12 UTC! Juniper Networks Edge Routing
Switch ERX-700
! Version: x.y.z (January 18, 200X 15:01)
! Copyright (c) 1999-200X Juniper Networks, Inc. All rights reserved.
Commands displayed are limited to those available at privilege level 10
! Juniper Networks Edge Routing Switch ERX-700
boot config running-configuration
boot system erx_x-y-z.rel
no boot backup
no boot subsystem
no boot backup subsystem
no boot force-backup
!
! Note: The following commands are here to ensure that all virtual routers and
! vrfs are created before other commands that may need to reference them.
! These commands will be repeated further on as each virtual router and vrf
! has its configuration presented.
!
virtual-router default
virtual-router boston
!
ip vrf vpna
virtual-router vrA
!
hostname host1
exception protocol ftp anonymous null
!
controller t1 6/0
channel-group 2 timeslots 1,3-8,10 speed 64
.
.
.
!
virtual-router vrA
aaa authentication ppp default radius
aaa accounting ppp default radius
!
ip address-pool local
interface null 0
ip bgp-community new-format
no ip source-route
!
snmp-server

```

```
!
! End of generated configuration script.
```

Example using **interface** keyword:

```
host1# show configuration interface serial 4/0
interface atm 4/0
  atm vc-per-vp 1024
  atm uni-version 3.0
!
interface atm 4/0.1 point-to-point
  profile pppoe myProfile
  qos-profile myQosProfile
!
interface atm 4/0.2 point-to-point
  qos-profile myQosProfile
  ip description TestIP
!
interface atm 4/0.3 point-to-point
```

Example using **category** keyword:

```
host1# show configuration category system file-system
boot config running-configuration
boot system m.rel
no boot backup
no boot subsystem
no boot backup subsystem
```

- See show configuration.

### ***show running-configuration***

- Use to display the configuration currently running on the router, a specified virtual router, a specified interface, or a specified category of router settings.

- Example

```
host1#show running-configuration
```

- Example 2

```
host1#show running-configuration interface serial 4/0
```

- Example 3

```
host1#show running-configuration category system file-system
```

- See show running-configuration.

### ***tag-group***

- Use to configure an interface tag group.
- Any number of interfaces can be in a tag group.
- Interface types tunnel, lag, mlppp, and mlframe-relay cannot be added to tag groups.

- An interface can be in only one tag group.
- Example

```
host1(config-if)#tag-group red
```

- Use the **no** version to remove the tag group.
- See tag-group.

## Detecting Corrupt File Configurations

You can detect corruption of running configuration files and CNF files on both the primary SRP when the corruption is due to a fatal duplicate key error. CNF files must be present on the active file system to monitor them; you cannot monitor CNF files that reside alone on the standby SRP.

You can use the **service check-config** command to control the mode of detection for corruption detection of the running configuration. Auto mode provides a background monitoring task that periodically checks the validity of running configurations. The **service config-monitor-periodicity** command enables you to set the time for background monitoring of the active and standby SRP. By default, background monitoring is not running. Manual mode is the default detection mode. For corruption detection of the CNF files, you must use manual mode.

A critical message that indicates whether the corrupted configuration files are recoverable appears prompting you to manually recover the corrupt files.

When duplicate key corruption is detected in either the active or standby SRP:

- File synchronization between the active and standby SRP occurs when HA is enabled. Configuration files are not synchronized to the standby SRP when corruption is detected and the auto-recovery option is disabled. You can restart file synchronization of configuration files only when you reinitialize the flash file system on the corrupted SRP.
- If HA is disabled, you cannot enable HA until you reinitialize the flash file system on the corrupted system. HA is disabled because of the redundancy corruption criteria. HA cannot be reenabled until the flash file system is reinitialized on the corrupted system.
- You cannot initialize unified ISSU until you reinitialize the flash file system on the corrupted system. If the corruption is detected after unified ISSU is initialized, HA is disabled, which then sets a redundancy criteria for corruption that prevents unified ISSU from starting.
- If monitoring is configured to run in auto mode when unified ISSU starts, monitoring reverts back to manual mode to prevent monitoring during a unified ISSU upgrade. After a successful unified ISSU upgrade, monitoring switches back to the originally configured mode on both SRPs.

File synchronization and monitoring the file system are separate operations. Depending on the wake up time of the monitoring task, there is a period of time when corruption can occur and the file systems are synchronized. We recommend

that you run the manual command to check the file system before you enable HA or perform any unified ISSU-related operations

### **service check-config**

- Use to detect corruption of running configuration files and CNF files on the primary SRP and the standby SRP when it is due to a fatal duplicate key error. You cannot monitor CNF files on the standby SRP.
- Auto mode checks the running configuration at regular intervals; auto mode cannot be used for CNF files.
- Use the default version to restore the default setting, manual detection.
- Example

```
host1(config)#service config-check auto
```

- Use the **no** version to restore the default action, manual detection.
- See service check-config.

### **service config-monitor-periodicity**

- Use to set the time for background monitoring of the active and standby SRP. By default, background monitoring is not running. For corruption detection of the CNF files, you must use manual mode.
- Auto mode checks the running configuration at regular intervals; auto mode cannot be used for CNF files.
- Use the default version to restore the default setting, manual detection.
- Example

```
host1(config)#service config-monitor-periodicity 2000
```

- There is no **no** version.
- See service config-monitor-periodicity.

### **show service config-monitor-periodicity**

- Use to display the time of the monitoring task for detecting corruption of a running configuration on both the primary SRP and the standby SRP.
- Example

```
host1#show service config-monitor-periodicity  
config-monitor-periodicity = 2000
```

- See show service config-monitor-periodicity.

## **Automatically Recovering Corrupt Configuration Files**

You can automatically recover corrupted CFG files detected in the running configuration.



When you turn on auto-recovery, the behavior of the file synchronization, stateful SRP switchover (high availability), and unified ISSU tasks changes to prevent synchronization of corrupt configuration. On detecting configuration file corruption, JUNOS Software determines whether a corrupt file is recoverable by the application. If the file is recoverable:

1. The configuration monitor on the SRP tries to recover it from a good configuration as determined by the application.
2. The file synchronization, high availability, and unified ISSU operations are re-enabled.

You can manually or automatically recover the recoverable corrupt configuration files in the running configuration as determined by the application.

You can use the **service check-config auto-recover** command to enable auto-recovery of corrupt CFG files in the running configuration.

You can use the **service check-config running-configuration** command to view a list of corrupt files in the running configuration and the files that are recoverable.

You can use the **service check-config running-configuration recover** command to recover the corrupted CFG files in the running configuration. You can recover only the files that the **service check-config running-configuration** command output lists as recoverable.

Auto-recovery of a corrupted running configuration in the active and standby SRPs works as follows:

- If the file system on the primary SRP is corrupt when HA is disabled and the mode of the **service check-config** command has been set to **auto-recover**, the following changes occur:
  - **File Synchronization**—Configuration files are not synchronized to the standby SRP until successful recovery of the corrupted files is complete.
  - **HA**—Enabling of HA is prevented during recovery and the state is restored on successful recovery.
  - **Unified ISSU**—If unified ISSU is in the *idle* state, the operation is disabled until recovery is complete. The unified ISSU process continues if it has started.
  - **Auto-Recovery**—A message indicates whether the configuration files are recoverable. If the files are recoverable, the auto-recovery process starts. If the recovery is unsuccessful, configuration monitoring is turned off. You can revert the SRP to the last-known good configuration on the standby SRP using the **srp switch force** command. The standby SRP boots up using the last indicated configuration using the **boot conf** command.
- If the file system on the primary SRP is corrupt when HA is enabled and the mode of the **service check-config** command has been set to **auto-recover**, the following changes occur:

- **File Synchronization**—Configuration files are not synchronized to the standby SRP when the HA state changes to disabled and the status is restored when the recovery window is complete.
- **HA**—Enabling of HA is prevented (HA remains in disabled state) during the recovery window and the state is restored after the recovery window is complete.
- **Unified ISSU**—If unified ISSU is in the *idle* state, the operation is disabled until successful recovery or the recovery window is complete. The unified ISSU process continues if it has started.
- **Auto-Recovery**—A message indicates whether the configuration files are recoverable. If the files are recoverable, the auto-recovery process starts. If the recovery is unsuccessful, configuration monitoring is turned off. You can revert the SRP to the last-known good configuration on the standby SRP using the **srp switch force** command. The standby SRP boots up using the last indicated configuration using the **boot conf** command.
- If the file system on the standby SRP is corrupt when HA is disabled and the mode of the **service check-config** command has been set to **auto-recover**, **auto**, or **manual**, the following changes occur:
  - **File Synchronization**—Configuration files do not synchronize and the synchronization state does not restore until successful recovery of the corrupted files or the recovery window is complete.
  - **HA**—Enabling of HA is prevented during recovery and the state is restored on successful recovery.
  - **Unified ISSU**—If unified ISSU is in the *idle* state, the operation is disabled until successful recovery or the recovery window is complete. The unified ISSU process continues if it has started.
  - **Auto-Recovery**—Monitoring of corrupt configuration stops and a message indicating whether the files are recoverable appears. If the SRP is successfully recovered, monitoring of corrupt configuration resumes. If recovery fails, reload the standby SRP module using the **reload standby-srp** command and re-initiate the flash system on the standby SRP.
- If the file system on the standby SRP is corrupt when HA is enabled and the mode of the **service check-config** command has been set to **auto-recover**, **auto**, or **manual**, the following changes occur:
  - **File Synchronization**—Configuration files are not synchronized when the HA state changes to disabled and the synchronization state is not restored until the successful recovery of the corrupted files or the recovery window is complete.
  - **HA**—HA is disabled during recovery and the state is restored on successful recovery.

- **Unified ISSU**—If unified ISSU is in the *idle* state, the operation is disabled until successful recovery or the recovery window is complete. The unified ISSU process continues if it has started.
- **Auto-Recovery**—Monitoring of corrupt configuration stops and a message indicating whether the files are recoverable appears. If the SRP is successfully recovered, monitoring of corrupt configuration resumes. If recovery fails, reload the standby SRP module using the **reload standby-srp** command and re-initiate the flash system on the standby SRP.
- If the file systems on both the primary and standby SRPs are corrupt when HA is disabled, the following changes occur:
  - **File Synchronization**—Configuration files are not synchronized and the synchronization state is not restored until the successful recovery of the corrupted files or the recovery window is complete.
  - **HA**—Enabling of HA is prevented during recovery and the state is restored on successful recovery.
  - **Unified ISSU**—If unified ISSU is in the *idle* state, the operation is disabled until successful recovery or the recovery window is complete. The unified ISSU process continues if it has started.
  - **Auto-Recovery**—Monitoring of corrupt configuration stops on both the primary and standby SRP modules and a message appears indicating whether the files are recoverable. If the SRPs are successfully recovered, monitoring of corrupt configuration resumes. If recovery fails, load another release on the primary SRP and run the **reload force** command. The primary and standby SRP modules re-initiate during a reboot.
- If the file systems on both the primary and standby SRPs are corrupt when HA is enabled, the following changes occur:
  - **File Synchronization**—Configuration files are not synchronized when the HA state changes to disabled and the synchronization state is not restored until the successful recovery of the corrupted files or the recovery window is complete.
  - **HA**—HA is disabled during recovery and the state is restored on successful recovery.
  - **Unified ISSU**—If unified ISSU is in the *idle* state, the operation is disabled until successful recovery or the recovery window is complete. The unified ISSU process continues if it has started.
  - **Auto-Recovery**—Monitoring of corrupt configuration stops on both the primary and standby SRP modules and a message appears indicating whether the files are recoverable. If the SRPs are successfully recovered, monitoring of corrupt configuration resumes. If recovery fails, load another release on the primary SRP and run the **reload force** command. The primary and standby SRP modules re-initiate during a reboot.

**service check-config auto-recover**

- Use to enable auto-recovery of files in the running configuration that are corrupted due to a fatal duplicate key error or the existence of values such as *0xFF* and *0x00* in sectors of a Flash. You cannot auto-recover CNF files on the primary and standby SRPs.

- Example

```
host1(config)#service check-config auto-recover
```

- Use the **no** version without the **auto-recover** option to restore the default action, manual detection.
- See service check-config.

### **service check-config running-configuration**

- Use to view a list of corrupt files in the running configuration and the files that are recoverable on the primary SRP and the standby SRP.

- Example

```
host1(config)#service check-config running-configuration
```

- Use the **no** version without the **running-configuration** option to restore the default action, manual detection.
- See service check-config.

### **service check-config running-configuration recover**

- Use to recover the corrupted CFG files in the running configuration. You can recover only the files that the **service check-config running-configuration** command output lists as recoverable.

- Example

```
host1(config)#service check-config running-configuration recover
```

- Use the **no** version without the **running-configuration recover** option to restore the default action, manual detection.
- See service check-config.

## **Configuring the System Automatically**

---

You can create an autoconfiguration script that runs whenever you reset the router. The following guidelines apply:

- You must name the script `autocfg.scr`.
- Add the commands desired to configure the system.
- For some configuration tasks, you might need to pause the CLI for about 10 seconds by adding a **sleep seconds** command. The exact period must be determined empirically because it depends on your configuration and the software release version.



**NOTE:** The `autocfg.scr` script is bypassed if you arm the system to load from a script (not `autocfg.scr`) through the **boot config** command or **boot backup** command.

---

## Saving the Current Configuration

---

By default, the system automatically saves any change to the system configuration to nonvolatile storage (NVS). This feature is known as Automatic Commit mode, but has no effect on the CLI prompt. For more information about displaying the current configuration of the system while in Automatic Commit mode, see “show configuration” on page 262 on “show configuration” on page 262.

You can disable this feature by issuing the **service manual-commit** command. In Manual Commit mode (again with no effect on the CLI prompt), any configuration change affects only the current system configuration (the running configuration). For more information about displaying the running configuration of the system while in Manual Commit mode, see “show running-configuration” on page 264 on “show running-configuration” on page 264.

If you are in Manual Commit mode and want to save the configuration changes to NVS, you must issue either the **write memory** command or the **copy running-configuration startup-configuration** command.

If you change the configuration while in Manual Commit mode and issue the **reload** command without saving the changes to the startup configuration, the system provides a warning, allowing you to save the changes before reloading.

You can use the **include-text-config** keyword with the **copy running-configuration** command to add the text configuration to the system configuration file in compressed format. Storing the text configuration in compressed format reduces the size of the system configuration file and the amount of space that the file occupies on the local flash card or network host. If you change from commit mode to manual-commit mode, the configuration that is available at that point in time is written into the `.cnf` file. A Perl script is provided in the Tools folder on one of the two *JUNOS software* CDs, depending on whether you want to install the software on an ERX model or an E120 and E320 model, shipped with your router that enables you to view the text configuration in a configuration file that contains both binary and text configuration. The Perl script supports multiple platforms. The “Usage and Troubleshooting document for desktop tool” file in PDF format provides an explanation of how to extract the system configuration file, using the `extractScrFromCnf.pl` script. For more information about using the Perl script, see “Using the Desktop Tool for Viewing Uncompressed Text Configuration” on page 274.



**NOTE:** To avoid any discrepancies between the text-generated file and the system configuration file, do not change the configuration when the **copy running-configuration** command is running.

---

### **copy running-configuration**

- Use to save the current configuration to a system configuration (\*.cnf) file.
- Use the **include-text-config** keyword to add the text configuration to the system configuration file in compressed format.
- Although this command is available in either Automatic Commit mode or Manual Commit mode, use this command only in Manual Commit mode. Issuing this command in Automatic Commit mode has no effect.
- The destination filename must have a .cnf extension.
- The destination file can be either a local or a network file.
- If you want to restore a previously saved configuration, use the **boot config** *cnfFileName* command.
- Example 1—Saves the current configuration on the router to the system 2.cnf file

```
host1#copy running-configuration system2.cnf
```

- Example 2—Saves the current configuration on the router to the system 2.cnf file and adds the text configuration to the system 2.cnf file in compressed format

```
host1#copy running-configuration system2.cnf include-text-config
```

- There is no **no** version.
- See copy running-configuration.

#### **copy running-configuration startup-configuration**

- Use to save all outstanding (unsaved) configuration changes to NVS.
- This command is an exact alias of the **write memory** command.
- This command is available if the system is in either Automatic Commit mode or Manual Commit mode. If issued while in Automatic Commit mode, the CLI notifies you that the command is not necessary, but allows you to proceed.
- If automatic synchronization between the primary and standby SRP modules is enabled (the default system behavior) and the system is in Manual Commit mode (the nondefault system behavior), issuing this command triggers file system synchronization immediately after the system writes, or commits, all outstanding configuration changes to NVS.
- This command is prevented during the high availability initialization state. If issued during this state, the CLI notifies you of the state and requests that you try again later.
- Example

```
host1#copy running-configuration startup-configuration
```

- There is no **no** version.
- See copy running-configuration startup-configuration.

#### **copy startup-configuration**

- Use to copy the previously saved startup configuration to a system configuration (\*.cnf) file. If you have made but not saved any configuration changes, those changes are not in the startup configuration.
- This command is available only if the system is in Manual Commit mode.
- Example

```
host1#copy startup-configuration system1.cnf
```

- There is no **no** version.
- See copy startup-configuration.

### **service manual-commit**

- Use to stop the system from automatically saving configuration changes to NVS.
- Issuing this command places the system into Manual Commit mode. This mode has no effect on the CLI prompt.
- Issuing this command causes an immediate save of configuration data not yet committed to NVS.
- If issued when high availability is initializing, the CLI notifies you of the state and requests that you try again later.
- Example

```
host1(config)#service manual-commit
```

- The **no** version returns the system to Automatic Commit mode; the **no** version has no effect if the system is already in Automatic Commit mode.
- See service manual-commit.

### **write memory**

- Use to save all outstanding (unsaved) configuration changes to NVS.
- This command is an exact alias of the **copy running-configuration startup-configuration** command.
- This command is available if the router is in either Automatic Commit mode or Manual Commit mode. If issued while in Automatic Commit mode, the CLI notifies you that the command is not necessary, but allows you to proceed.
- If automatic synchronization between the primary and standby SRP modules is enabled (the default system behavior) and the system is in Manual Commit mode (the nondefault system behavior), issuing this command triggers file system synchronization immediately after the system writes, or commits, all outstanding configuration changes to NVS.
- Example

```
host1#write memory
```

- There is no **no** version.
- See write memory.

## Using the Desktop Tool for Viewing Uncompressed Text Configuration

---

You can use a desktop tool that resides on your local client system to view the text configuration embedded in the system configuration file. You need to copy the system configuration file to your client system and run the desktop tool to view the uncompressed text configuration. This tool uses an executable to decompress the output of the **show configuration** command in the system configuration file. This executable is generated using the freely available GNU gcc compiler, which is platform-specific. The tool generates a temporary file in the directory where the Perl script is being run during the process of execution.

The desktop tool does not perform any CRC checking of the system configuration file before decompressing it. If the compressed data in the system configuration file is corrupt, a compression failure message is displayed. You must configure execute permissions for the files and executables that you install from the *JUNOS Software CD*.

### Installation Prerequisites for the Desktop Tool

The desktop tool has the following prerequisites for the installation of necessary executables, depending on the operating system that is running on your client system:

#### Requirements for Microsoft Windows Systems

The desktop tool has the following requirements for client systems running on Microsoft Windows platform:

1. The tool to extract the decompressed text configuration must be run in a shell environment. If a shell environment is not available on your Windows XP and Windows Vista system, you can download and install the Cygwin software from the following site:

<http://www.cygwin.com/setup.exe>

2. You must install the GCC compiler from the following site:

<http://www.mingw.org/>

This compiler is required to run the tool on all Windows platforms.

3. Choose the option to install "g++ compiler" when prompted during installation. The PATH environment variable must be set properly for the GCC compiler.

If Perl libraries are not available on your Windows XP and Windows Vista platforms, you must install Active Perl from the following site:

<http://www.activestate.com>



## Requirements for Sun Solaris Systems

The desktop tool has the following requirements for client systems running on Sun Solaris platforms. You must have execute permissions for the files.

1. By default, the GCC compiler is not available on Solaris 9 and Solaris 10 platforms, but is required to run the desktop tool on Solaris platforms. Install the compiler from the following site:

<http://www.sunfreeware.com/>

For example, type `/usr/sbin/pkgadd -d gcc-3.4.6-sol10-x86-local`.

2. If the Solaris patch is not available by default on your client system, install it from the following site:

<http://www.sunfreeware.com/>

For example, type `/usr/sbin/pkgadd -d libiconv-1.11-sol10-x86-local`.

3. Set the LD\_LIBRARY\_PATH environment variable by issuing the following command:

```
export LD_LIBRARY_PATH = "/usr/local/bin"
```

where `/usr/local/bin` is the directory in which the libraries are bundled.

## Requirements for Linux Systems

The GCC compiler is available with Linux 5.0 and Linux 5.1 platforms. If the GCC compiler is not installed on your Linux system, install the required RPMs from the Linux installation disk. Perl is also available with Linux 5.0 and Linux 5.1 installation.

## Usage Notes for the Perl Script

Issue the following command from the directory in which Perl is installed on your system:

```
perl_install_dir extractScrFromCnf.pl combinedCnf File
```

where

- *perl\_install\_dir* is the directory in which Perl is installed. You can find this directory by issuing the `which perl` command from the command prompt.
- **extractScrFromCnf.pl** is the Perl script that extracts the text configuration portion from the system configuration file.
- *combinedCnf File* is the `.cnf` file generated in compressed format that includes the text configuration.

We recommend that you copy the *combinedCnf File* to the directory in which the `extractScrFromCnf.pl` script is stored.

## Customizing the User Interface

---

You can access the CLI through a console connected directly to the system or through a Telnet session. This section describes how you can customize the user interface. Some commands apply to the console, and some commands apply to vty lines that support Telnet sessions.

### Setting the Console Speed

You can specify the console speed for only the current console session or for the current console session and all subsequent console sessions.

#### **speed**

- Use to set the speed for the current and all subsequent console sessions immediately.
- Example

```
host1(config)#line console 0
host1(config-line)#speed 14400
```

- Use the *no*version to revert to the default, 9600 bps.
- See speed.

#### **terminal speed**

- Use to set the speed for the current console session.
- Example

```
host1#terminal speed 14400
```

- There is no **no** version.
- See terminal speed.

### Configuring the Display Terminal

You can specify the number of lines that appear on a terminal screen and the number of characters that appear on a line.

#### **terminal length**

- Use to set the number of lines on a screen.
- If a command generates more lines than the number configured, the output pauses after each screen.
- Set the number of lines on a screen in the range 0–512.
- Use 0 for no pausing.
- Example

host1#**terminal length 25**

- There is no **no** version.
- See terminal length.

#### **terminal width**

- Use to set the width of the display terminal.
- Set the number of characters on a screen line in the range 30–512.
- Example

host1#**terminal width 80**

- There is no **no** version.
- See terminal width.

### **Specifying the Character Set**

You can specify the number of data bits per character for the current vty session and for all subsequent sessions on the specified vty lines. This feature allows you to display international characters on the terminal's screen.

#### **data-character-bits**

- Use to set the number of bits per character on the terminal's screen for all future sessions on the specified lines.
- Use the default setting, 8, to view the full set of 8-bit international characters. Be sure that the software on other devices in the network also supports international characters.
- Set the number of bits to 7 to view only characters in the standard ASCII set.
- Example

host1(config)#**line vty 1 3**  
host1(config-line)#**data-character-bits 7**

- There is no **no** version.
- See data-character-bits.

#### **terminal data-character-bits**

- Use to set the number of bits per character on the terminal's screen for the current session.
- Use the default setting, 8, to view the full set of 8-bit international characters. Be sure that software on other devices in the network also supports international characters.
- Set the number of bits to 7 to view only characters in the standard ASCII set.
- Example

```
host1#terminal data-character-bits 7
```

- There is no **no** version.
- See terminal data-character-bits.

## Configuring Login Conditions

You can issue the **dsr-detect** command to configure the system so that a data set ready (DSR) signal is required to log in to the console. If a session is in progress and the DSR signal is lost, the user is logged out automatically.

```
host1(config)#line console 0
host1(config-line)#dsr-detect
```

DSR is carried on pin 6 of the SRP module's RS-232 (DB-9) connector. The DSR input must be connected to the DSR output of a modem or the DTR output of another data terminal device, such as a terminal server, that supports this signal.

### **dsr-detect**

- Use to require that a DSR signal be detected on the line for a user to log in to the console.
- By default, DSR is not required and DSR detection is disabled.
- Example

```
host1(config-line)#dsr-detect
```

- Use the **no** version to remove the DSR requirement for login.
- See dsr-detect.

## Setting Time Limits for User Login

You can specify a time interval that the CLI waits for a user to provide a password when logging in to the console or a vty line. To do so:

1. Access the line configuration mode using either the console or vty keyword.
2. Specify the time during which the user must enter the password. For example:

```
host1(config)#line console 0
host1(config-line)#login
host1(config-line)#timeout login response 15
```

### **timeout login response**

- Use to set the time interval that the console or vty lines wait for the user to log in.
- If the interval passes and the user has not responded, the system closes the session or lines.

- Specify an interval in the range 0–300 seconds. A value of 0 means that there is no time limit during which the user must respond.
- The default value is 30 seconds.
- Example
 

```
host1(config-line)#timeout login response 15
```
- Use the **no** version to restore the default interval, 30 seconds.
- See timeout login response.

### Setting Time Limits for User Input

You can specify a time interval that the CLI waits for user input on the console or vty lines. To do so:

1. Access the line configuration mode using either the console or vty keyword.
2. Specify the time during which the user must enter information. For example:

```
host1(config)#line vty 0
host1(config-line)#exec-timeout 4192 13
```

#### **exec-timeout**

- Use to set the time interval that the console or vty lines wait for expected user input.
- If the interval passes and the user has not responded, the system closes the session or lines.
- Specify a time limit in the range 0–35791 minutes, and optionally specify the number of seconds.
- By default, there is no time limit.
- Example
 

```
host1(config-line)#exec-timeout 4192 13
```
- Use the **no** version to remove the time limit.
- See exec-timeout.

### Configuring CLI Messages

You can configure text banners for the CLI to display to users at different times in the connection process.

#### **banner**

- Use to configure message-of-the-day (MOTD), login, or exec banner to be displayed by the CLI:
  - **motd**—Displays the banner when a console or vty connection is initiated.

- **login**—Displays the banner before any user authentication (line or RADIUS authentication). The banner is also displayed if user authentication is not configured.
- **exec**—Displays the banner after user authentication (if any) and before the first prompt of a CLI session.
- If you do not specify an option, the default behavior is to display the banner as an MOTD.
- The first character in the banner string must be repeated at the end of the string; these characters delimit the banner. The CLI prompts you if you fail to repeat the opening delimiter. All text following the second occurrence of the delimiter is ignored without warning. The delimiter is case sensitive.
- Banner text can span multiple lines. It is truncated after 1,024 characters.
- Insert `\n` where you want the banner text to split and start a new line. Alternatively, you can press Enter on the CLI when you want the text to break. In the second case, you will be prompted for the remainder of the text after you press Enter. To display a backslash as part of the message, it must be immediately preceded by another backslash, like this: `\\`. Do not use a backslash as a delimiter or end a line with a backslash.
- To insert a `?` character inside the text of a banner, you must enter `Ctrl + v` before entering the `?` character. Failure to do so may produce undesired results.
- Examples

```

host1(config)#banner motd x This is an MOTD banner x
host1(config)#banner Y This is also an MOTD banner Y
host1(config)#banner "Quotes make good delimiters"
host1(config)#banner Xno space is required between the delimiter and the real
banner textX
host1(config)#banner b bad choice for a delimiter; everything after that second
b was ignored b
host1(config)#banner "This is one way\n to specify a multiple line banner"
host1(config)#banner "This is another way to specify a
Enter remainder of text message. End with the character '"'.
multiple line banner"

```

- Use the **default** version to restore the default setting, in which the banner is displayed on all lines.
- You can configure MOTD or exec banners, but not login banners, for the CLI to display on a per-line basis.
- Use the **no** version to remove the banner.
- See banner.

### **exec-banner**

- Use to display an exec banner on a particular line after user authentication (if any) and before the first prompt of a CLI session.
- Banners on the lines are enabled by default; the **no** version does not reenables banners on the lines.

- See “banner” on page 279 command description for more information about configuring an exec banner.

- Example

```
host1(config-line)#exec-banner
```

- Use the **default** version to restore the default setting, in which the banner is displayed on all lines.
- Use the **no** version to disable the exec banner on the line. If both the exec and MOTD banners are enabled on a line, issuing the **no exec-banner** command disables both the exec banner and the MOTD banner. The **no motd-banner** command behaves differently from the **no exec-banner** command.
- See exec-banner.

### ***motd-banner***

- Use to display an MOTD banner on a particular line when a connection is initiated.
- Banners on the lines are enabled by default; the no version does not reenables banners on the lines.
- See “banner” on page 279 command description for more information about configuring an MOTD banner.
- Example

```
host1(config-line)#motd-banner
```

- Use the **default** version to restore the default setting, in which the banner is displayed on all lines.
- Use the **no** version to disable the MOTD banner on the line. If both MOTD and exec banners are enabled on a line, issuing the **no motd-banner** command disables the MOTD banner and leaves the exec banner enabled. The **no motd-banner** command behaves differently from the **no exec-banner** command.
- See motd-banner.

## ***Monitoring the Console Settings***

You can use the following commands to monitor console settings.

### ***show line console 0***

- Use to view the parameters configured for all future console sessions and the current console session.
- Example

```
host1#show line console 0
dsr-detect disabled
configured speed 9600, current speed 9600
exec-timeout never
```

- See show line console 0.

### **show terminal**

- Use to view parameters of the current console session.
- Field descriptions
  - Length—Number of lines on the screen
  - Width—Number of characters on each line of the screen
  - data-character-bits—Number of bits per character
    - 7—Setting for the standard ASCII set
    - 8—Setting for the international character set
  - Speed—Speed of the console session
  - dsr-detect—Status of DSR signal detection
    - enabled—DSR signal must be detected for a user to log in to the console.
    - disabled—DSR signal need not be detected for a user to log in to the console.
  - exec-timeout—Time interval that the terminal waits for expected user input
    - Never—Indicates that there is no time limit
  - exec-banner—Status for the exec banner: enabled or disabled. This banner is displayed by the CLI after user authentication (if any) and before the first prompt of a CLI session.
  - motd-banner—Status for the MOTD banner: enabled or disabled. This banner is displayed by the CLI when a connection is initiated.
  - login-timeout—Time interval during which the user must log in.
    - Never—Indicates that there is no time limit
- Example

```
host1#show terminal
Length: 25 lines, Width: 80 columns
data-character-bits: 8 bits per character
Speed: 9600 bits per second
dsr-detect disabled
exec-timeout never
exec-banner enabled
motd-banner enabled
login-timeout 30 seconds
```

- See show terminal.



## Sending Messages

---

You can send a message to one or more terminals with the **send** command. You can specify a line number, a console number, or a vty number. You can also send the message to all terminals.

The following command sends the message “hello console” to line 0:

```
host1#send 0 “hello console”
```

The following command sends the message “hello everyone” to all terminals:

```
host1#send * “hello everyone”
```

If you begin the message on the same line as the **send** command, the first character of the message is considered to be a delimiter. You must use the same character to terminate the message. In both examples above, the delimiter was a double quotation mark (“”).

If you press Enter without typing the second delimiter, the CLI prompts you for more message text and reminds you to complete the message with the delimiter, as shown in the following example:

```
host1#send vty4 XYou can start a message on the same line  
Enter remainder of text message. End with the character 'X'.  
and continue it on subsequent lines; the CLI prompts you for  
Enter remainder of text message. End with the character 'X'.  
more message text until you enter the second delimiterX  
Proceed with send? [confirm]
```

If you do not begin the message on the same line as the **send** command, the CLI prompts you for the message text after you press Enter. The CLI does not recognize delimiters for these messages; you must enter Ctrl+z, as shown in the following example:

```
host1#send 0  
Enter remainder of text message. End with ^Z.  
Good morning, Major Tom^Z  
Proceed with send? [confirm]
```

The receiving terminals display the message without regard to other output currently displayed on the terminal. Pagination is not affected.

The sending terminal is not affected by the state of the intended receiving terminal. For example, if the receiving terminal is flow-controlled off or at a --More-- prompt, the message is still sent, and the sending terminal is available for further commands. The receiving terminal in this case displays the message when subsequently flow-controlled on or when the user responds to the --More-- prompt.

The receiving terminal displays the message, the line number of the sender, the username of the sender if the user was authenticated through RADIUS, and the time the message was sent.

### **send**

- Use to send a message to one or more terminals. You can specify a line number, a console number, or a vty number. You can use the **\*** keyword to send the message to all terminals.
- If you begin the message on the same line as the **send** command, the first character of the message is considered to be a delimiter. You must use the same character to terminate the message.
- The CLI prompts you for message text if you do not begin or complete the message on the same line as the **send** command. The CLI reminds you to signal the end of the message either with the delimiter or Ctrl + z.
- Example

```
host1#send 0 " hello console"
```

- There is no **no** version.
- See send.

## **Managing Memory**

---

The system performs most memory management tasks automatically. The system allocates some memory permanently and some memory temporarily. When applications are deleted, memory that the system assigned temporarily becomes available again.

The system releases available memory on an SRP module or line module automatically if that module requires extra memory for an application. However, you can force the system to release available memory on the primary SRP module if you issue either the **show processes memory** command or the **show utilization** command.

For information about the **show processes memory** command, see “Managing Files” on page 284. For information about the **show utilization** command, see “Managing Modules” on page 349.



**NOTE:** When you issue the **show utilization** command, the system releases available memory on the SRP module immediately; however, the display appears a few seconds later.

---

## **Managing Files**

---

You are responsible for file management. Table 31 on page 285 shows the types of system files and their corresponding extensions.

**Table 31: Types of System Files and Corresponding Extensions**

Type of File	Extension	Description
Configuration	*.cnf	Snapshot of the system's configuration
Core dump	*.dmp	File you can create for troubleshooting if a module fails
History	*.hty (reboot.hty)	Details of when and why modules rebooted
Log	*.log	A series of messages that describe events that occurred on the system
Macro	*.mac	A macro program
Release	*.rel	Software releases you can install in the system
Script	*.scr	A sequence of CLI commands. When you run a script file, the system executes the commands as though they were entered at the terminal
Secure Shell (SSH) Server public key	*.pub	Host key for the SSH server
Statistics	*.sts	Bulk statistics created when you run the bulkstats commands
Text	*.txt	Text file

System files may reside in four locations:

- The system space
- The user space
- A network host
- The standby SRP module

The system space contains files for system operation. For example, the current software configuration is stored in the system space.

The user space is reserved for FTP server operations and has the typical directory structure of a secure FTP server. The root or top level directory is a read-only directory that contains two subdirectories:

- `/incoming`—Read-write directory to and from which an FTP client can send and retrieve files.
- `/outgoing`—Read-only directory from which an FTP client can retrieve files.

Users can transfer files through FTP to the user space from a network host and vice versa. However, users cannot access the system space through FTP. To install a file from the user space to the system space, use the **copy** command. For detailed

information about transferring files between locations, see “Transferring Files” on page 295.

To conserve NVS and minimize the installation time, files are not stored in both the system space and the user space. When you issue the **copy** command to install a file from user space to system space, the E Series router establishes a link to the file, but does not make a physical copy.

## ***Managing the User Space from a Network Host***

If you enable the system’s FTP server (see “Configuring the FTP Server” on page 303), you can manage files on the user space from an FTP client on a network host. Table 32 on page 286 lists the FTP protocol commands that the E Series router supports. Whether you can perform these functions on the user space depends on the features that the FTP client offers.

**Table 32: FTP Commands That the System Supports**

FTP Command	Function
HELP	List supported commands.
USER	Verify username.
PASS	Verify password for the user.
QUIT	Quit the session.
LIST	List contents of a directory.
NLST	List directory contents using a concise format.
RETR	Retrieve a file.
STOR	Store a file.
CWD	Change working directory.
CDUP	Change working directory to parent.
TYPE	Change the data representation type.
PORT	Change the port number.
PWD, XPWD	Get the name of current working directory.
STRU	Change file structure settings (only stream mode supported).
MODE	Change file transfer mode (only stream mode supported).
PASV	Make the server listen on a port for data connection.
NOOP	Do nothing.
DELE	Delete a file.

**Table 32: FTP Commands That the System Supports** *(continued)*

FTP Command	Function
MKD, XMKD	Make directory.
RMD, XRMD	Remove directory.
RNFR	Rename from.
RNTO	Rename to.

## File Commands and FTP Servers

Commands—**copy**, **configure file**, and **macro**—that invoke a remote FTP server take place in the context of the current virtual router rather than the default virtual router. You must configure the remote FTP server so that any traffic destined for the virtual router can reach the virtual router; typically, you configure the FTP server to reach the default address of the system, which will always be able to reach the virtual router.

## Renaming Files

To rename files, use the **rename** command. Table 33 on page 288 shows the types of files you can rename in different locations.

### **rename**

- Use to rename a local file.
- You can change the base name but not the extension of a file.
- Example

```
host1#rename boston1.cnf boston2.cnf
```

- There is no **no** version.

**Table 33: File Types You Can Rename**

Destination				
Source	System Space	User Space (Linked Files and Unlinked Files)	Network Host Within a Firewall	Standby SRP Module
System	*.cnf	*.cnf	*.sts	None
	*.dmp	*.dmp		
	*.hty	*.hty		
	*.log	*.log		
	*.mac	*.mac		
	*.rel	*.scr		
	*.scr	*.txt		
	*.txt			
	Nonsystem files			
User Space	*.cnf	*.cnf	None	None
	*.hty (excluding reboot.hty)	*.dmp		
		*.hty		
	*.log (excluding system.log)	*.log		
	*.mac	*.mac		
	*.scr	*.pub		
	*.txt	*.rel		
		*.scr		
		*.sts		
		*.txt		
		Nonsystem files		
Network Host Within a Firewall	None	None	None	None
Standby SRP Module	None	None	None	None

- See rename.

## Deleting Files

Use the **delete** command to delete files in NVS. Table 34 on page 290 shows the types of files you can delete in different locations.

### **delete**

- Use to delete files in NVS.
- To delete a file in user space, specify the incoming or outgoing directory on the FTP server. You can specify the name of a subdirectory in the incoming or outgoing directory.
- You can include an asterisk (\*) as a wildcard at any position in a specified filename. The asterisk substitutes for zero or more characters in the name. You cannot use an asterisk in a directory or subdirectory name.
- You cannot delete reboot.hty or system.log files when you use a wildcard.
- When you do not use a wildcard, the CLI deletes the file immediately without prompting you for confirmation. When you use a wildcard, the CLI prompts you for confirmation unless you also specify the **force** keyword; in that case the deletion takes place without confirmation.
- The **force** keyword causes the immediate deletion of the directory or file even when it is not empty. However, if a file in the specified directory, or a specified file, is marked by the file system as in use because it is required for the current operation or configuration, the **force** keyword cannot force the deletion.
- The **force** keyword is ignored when you attempt to delete any .dmp or .tsa file (unless the deletion is issued from a .mac or .scr file); this means that the CLI always prompts for confirmation for these file types.
- Examples

```
host1#delete test-2.txt
host1#
```

```
host1#del test*.txt
Delete disk0:test-1.txt? [confirm] -> press n
disk0:test-1.txt: not deleted (per user request)
Delete disk0:test-2.txt? [confirm] -> press y
disk0:test-2.dmp: Deleted
Deleted 1 file, matched 2 files
```

```
host1#del test*.txt force
disk0:test-1.txt: deleted
disk0:test-2.txt: deleted
Deleted 2 files, matched 2 files
```

```
host1#del *.dmp force
WARNING: The force option is ignored for this file type.
Delete disk0:sample-1.dmp? [confirm] -> press n
disk0:sample-1.dmp: not deleted (per user request)
Delete disk0:sample-2.dmp? [confirm] -> press y
disk0:sample-2.dmp: Deleted
```

Deleted 1 file, matched 2 files

host1#**delete /outgoing/test.scr**

- There is no **no** version.

**Table 34: File Types You Can Delete**

Location			
System Space	User Space (Linked Files and Unlinked Files)	Network Host Within a Firewall	Standby SRP Module
*.cnf	*.cnf	None	*.dmp
*.dmp	*.dmp		
*.hty	*.hty		
*.log	*.log		
*.mac	*.mac		
*.rel	*.pub		
*.scr	*.rel (deletes *.rel file only and not associated files)		
*.sts			
*.txt	*.scr		
	*.sts		
	*.txt		
	Nonsystem files		

- See delete.

**Monitoring Files**

Use the **dir** command to view files in NVS.





**NOTE:** When high availability is enabled on the router, it is possible that files or file attributes may appear unsynchronized when they are not. When enabled, high availability mirrors configuration changes instantly from the active SRP to the standby SRP. However, although these changes are reflected immediately in memory, the standby SRP NVS is updated at 5 minute intervals.

**dir**

- Use to show a list of files in NVS.
- Specify a directory path, a local filename, a local device name, or some combination of these to view any local files or directories. You cannot use the **dir** command on a network device.
- You can include an asterisk (\*) at any position in a specified filename as a wildcard. The asterisk substitutes for zero or more characters in the name. You cannot use a wildcard in a path.
- Bulk statistics .sts files are stored in volatile storage on a RAM disk, and are displayed only when bulkstats is configured.



**NOTE:** When you issue the **dir** command from Boot mode, a reduced set of file types is displayed.

- Field descriptions
  - file—Name of file or directory (DIR indicates a directory)
  - size—Physical size of file
  - unshared size—Size of file in user space
    - Value of zero indicates that this file has been installed onto the system space and that there is a link to this file.
    - Value other than zero indicates that the file has not been installed onto the system space and equals the physical size of the file.
  - date—Date that file was created
  - in use—An exclamation point (!) indicates that the system is using this file
- Example 1

host1#**dir**  
Please wait.....

Active/standby file systems are synchronized.

file	size	unshared size
-----	-----	-----
disk0:/incoming <DIR>	0	
disk0:/outgoing <DIR>	0	
disk0:810beta13.cnf	280944	280944

disk0:800beta12.cnf	327011	327011
disk0:bng____1.txt	11092	11092
disk0:bng____2.txt	11092	11092
disk0:bng____3.txt	11092	11092
disk0:erx701rel.cnf	255400	255400
disk0:730beta19.cnf	283141	283141
disk0:730beta18.cnf	284503	284503
disk0:erx_8-0-0b0-24.cnf	327404	327404
disk0:7.3run.cnf	301635	301635
disk0:80beta_bce_backup.cnf	333228	333228
disk0:800beta5.cnf	300575	300575
disk0:820beta5.cnf	311616	311616
disk0:810beta16.cnf	297764	297764
disk0:SRP-10Ge_3_SC_08_22_2006_07_39.dmp	153268924	153268924
disk0:SRP-10Ge_3_SC_04_12_2007_09_47.dmp	182385184	182385184
disk0:reboot.hty	402368	402368
disk0:system.log	702	702
disk0:erx_9-0-0a1-7.rel	176128192	160912356
disk0:erx_8-1-0b1-2.rel	164065212	148633854
disk0:erx_8-2-0b1-5.rel	166117319	150685961
disk0:testing_cat.txt	21848	21848
standby-disk0:SRP-10Ge_1_SC_08_21_2006_13_48.dmp	153547479	153547479
standby-disk0:SRP-10Ge_1_SC_04_12_2007_10_04.dmp	194849368	194849368
standby-disk0:reboot.hty	123136	123136
standby-disk0:system.log	855	855

file	date (UTC)	in use
-----	-----	---
disk0:/incoming <DIR>	02/08/2008 15:06:42	
disk0:/outgoing <DIR>	02/08/2008 15:06:42	
disk0:810beta13.cnf	02/06/2007 15:13:44	
disk0:800beta12.cnf	09/29/2006 16:31:54	
disk0:bng____1.txt	02/12/2008 07:05:20	
disk0:bng____2.txt	02/12/2008 07:05:28	
disk0:bng____3.txt	02/12/2008 06:59:46	
disk0:erx701rel.cnf	10/07/2005 13:01:02	
disk0:730beta19.cnf	07/12/2006 07:21:22	
disk0:730beta18.cnf	06/19/2006 15:23:46	
disk0:erx_8-0-0b0-24.cnf	11/02/2006 12:23:38	
disk0:7.3run.cnf	08/21/2006 11:19:52	
disk0:80beta_bce_backup.cnf	10/04/2007 09:01:36	
disk0:800beta5.cnf	01/02/2007 16:01:36	
disk0:820beta5.cnf	05/09/2007 14:29:58	
disk0:810beta16.cnf	03/15/2007 06:58:14	
disk0:SRP-10Ge_3_SC_08_22_2006_07_39.dmp	08/22/2006 07:43:14	
disk0:SRP-10Ge_3_SC_04_12_2007_09_47.dmp	04/12/2007 09:51:08	
disk0:reboot.hty	01/09/2008 13:57:02	
disk0:system.log	11/12/2007 09:56:14	
disk0:erx_9-0-0a1-7.rel	10/04/2007 08:40:06	!
disk0:erx_8-1-0b1-2.rel	03/15/2007 06:50:32	
disk0:erx_8-2-0b1-5.rel	05/09/2007 14:22:22	
disk0:testing_cat.txt	03/13/2006 17:42:12	
standby-disk0:SRP-10Ge_1_SC_08_21_2006_13_48.dmp	08/21/2006 13:51:42	
standby-disk0:SRP-10Ge_1_SC_04_12_2007_10_04.dmp	04/12/2007 10:08:38	
standby-disk0:reboot.hty	01/09/2008 13:53:10	
standby-disk0:system.log	04/12/2007 09:47:24	

## Disk capacity

Device	Capacity (bytes)	Free (bytes)	Reserved (bytes)
--------	---------------------	-----------------	---------------------

```

-----
disk0:      1054900224  167372414  68157440
standby-disk0: 1054900224  153330775  68157440

```

#### ■ Example 2

```

host1#dir *.txt
Please wait.....

```

Active/standby file systems are synchronized.

```

-----
file              size      unshared
size
-----
disk0:bng__1.txt  11092    11092
disk0:bng__2.txt  11092    11092
disk0:bng__3.txt  11092    11092
-----
file              date (UTC)    in
use
-----
disk0:bng__1.txt  02/12/2008  07:05:20
disk0:bng__2.txt  02/12/2008  07:05:28
disk0:bng__3.txt  02/12/2008  06:59:46

```

#### Disk capacity

```

-----
Device          Capacity
(bytes)         Free
(bytes)         Reserved
(bytes)
-----
disk0:           1054900224  167372414  68157440
standby-disk0:   1054900224  153330775  68157440

```

#### ■ Example 3

```

host1#dir /incoming

```

```

-----
file              size      unshared
size              date (UTC)    in
use
-----
disk0:3-0-0a3-7.rel  256      0      12/19/2000  07:14:01
disk0:srp.exe        30012312  0      12/19/2000  07:14:12
disk0:srpIc.exe      1801208   0      12/19/2000  07:20:32
disk0:srpDiag.exe    6984222   0      12/19/2000  07:22:08

```

#### Disk capacity

```

-----
Device          Capacity
(bytes)         Free
(bytes)         Reserved
(bytes)
-----
disk0:           220200960  120616448  36700160

```

#### ■ Example 4

```

host1#dir /outgoing

```

```

-----
file              size      unshared
size              date (UTC)    in
use
-----

```

```

disk0:test.scr      1204          0  12/18/2000 03:01:04
disk0:foo.scr      1278        1278  12/20/2000 04:02:12

```

Disk capacity			
-----			
Device	Capacity (bytes)	Free (bytes)	Reserved (bytes)
-----	-----	-----	-----
disk0:	220200960	120616448	36700160

- There is no **no** version.
- See dir.

## Viewing Files

Use the **more** command to display the contents of a macro, script, or text file. The file can reside in NVS on the primary SRP module, in NVS on the redundant (standby) SRP module, or on a remote server that you access using FTP.

### **more**

- Use to display the contents of a macro, script, or text file that resides in NVS on the primary SRP module, in NVS on the redundant SRP module, or on a remote server that you access using FTP.
- Specify the file you want to display using one of the following formats, depending on the location of the file:
  - *fileName*—Name of the file that resides in NVS on the primary SRP module
  - *standby:fileName*—Name of the file that resides in NVS on the redundant (standby) SRP module
  - *serverName:filePathName*—Name of the remote server on which the file resides and the complete pathname of the file
- Example 1—Displays the contents of a text file named `erxconfig.txt` that resides in NVS on the primary SRP module

```
host1#more erxconfig.txt
```

- Example 2—Displays the contents of a macro file named `mysetup.mac` that resides in NVS on the redundant (standby) SRP module

```
host1#more standby:mysetup.mac
```

- Example 3—Displays the contents of a script file named `myconfig.scr` that resides on a remote server named `fileserv1`

```
host1#more fileserv1:/startup/scripts/myconfig.scr
```

- There is no **no** version.
- See more.

## Transferring Files

You may need to transfer files between the following locations:

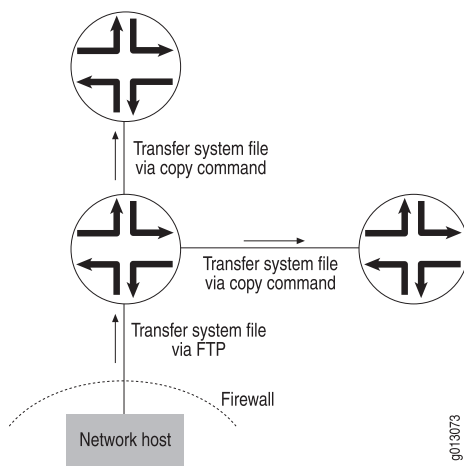
- System space
- User space
- Network host
- Standby SRP module

You can transfer files in any of three ways: the **copy** command, the system's FTP server, or a remote host that is configured as an FTP or a TFTP server. Table 35 on page 297 lists the types of files that you can transfer between the locations using the **copy** command, which activates a hidden FTP or TFTP client on the E Series router.

You can use the system's FTP server to transfer files between a network host and the user space. When a firewall separates the E Series router from the network host, you must use the FTP server to transfer files to the user space. You can then install the files from the user space to the system space by using the **copy** command. However, if there is no firewall between the E Series router and the network host, you can use the **copy** command, the remote FTP server, or the remote TFTP server to transfer files.

For example, you can transfer a file from a network host to an E Series router through FTP, and then transfer the file through the **copy** command from the E Series router to other E Series routers. See Figure 22 on page 295.

**Figure 22: Transferring System Files to the E Series Router**



## References

For more information about file transfer protocols, consult the following resources:

- RFC 959—File Transfer Protocol (FTP) (October 1985)

- RFC 1350—Trivial File Transfer Protocol (TFTP) (Revision 2) (July 1992)

## Copying and Redirecting Files

You have two options for copying or redirecting files to or from a remote FTP or TFTP server:

- Include all remote file data in the copy command. You can specify remote files using the URL format and the file redirect option for the related show commands.
- Use the **host** command to define the host and the appropriate file transfer protocol. FTP is the default if you do not specify a file transfer protocol or when Domain Name System (DNS) service is used to map IP addresses to the hostname.

If you include the remote file data, the copy command contains a source and destination filename, either of which (but not both) can be remote files. The following URL format is supported for both source and destination files:

```
protocol://[username[:password]@]location[/directory]/filename
```

The location can be a hostname or an IP address.

The two versions of the URL format are as follows:

```
ftp://[username[:password ]@]location[/directory]/filename
tftp://location[/directory]/filename
```



**NOTE:** The TFTP protocol does not support username and password. Entering a username and password in the TFTP version results in a command error.

---

The protocol specified in the command always overrides the protocol associated with the host entry, if any, in the host table. Some protocols, such as FTP, require a username and password with each request. For the URL version of the copy command, the following sequence is followed:

- If the command contains a username, the username and password specified in the command are used. The password null is used if the command does not contain a password.
- If the location in the URL is a hostname with a corresponding host entry (created by the **host** command), the username and password of the host entry are used. A host entry that is created without an explicit user name is created with the default username of anonymous and password of null.

The location is the IP address or hostname of the remote file server. The directory/filename is the full path of the file relative to the user login root path.

The characters in the URL format can be encoded. Any of the delimiter characters can be used in the host, username, password, and directory and file fields when added as encoded characters. The encoded characters must be three characters, starting with a percent and followed by the two hexadecimal digits that are the ASCII equivalent. The system converts all printable characters before passing them to the

protocol support. Unprintable characters (0-012F and 0x7f-0x7F) are not converted and are passed directly to the protocol. Printable characters (0x20– 0x7E) are decoded and all others (0x80–0xFF) are rejected.

In the following example, the username contains the @ delimiter character encoded as %40, and the directory passed to the FTP protocol layer is /dirA/dirB/dirC. The delimiter between the hostname and directory is a forward slash (/) character. To add a slash to the start of the directory specification, add the encoded slash after the host and directory delimiter.

```
ftp://user%40%40name:pwd@mary/%2fdirA/dirB/dirc/fileA
```

In the following example, the directory passed to the FTP protocol layer is dirA/dirB/dirC.

```
ftp://username:pwd@mary/dirA/dirB/dirc/fileA
```

## Using the copy Command

Table 35 on page 297 shows the types of files that you can transfer between the locations by using the **copy** command.

**Table 35: File Types You Can Transfer Using the copy Command**

Destination				
Source	User Space			
	System	(Linked Files and Unlinked Files)	Network Host Within a Firewall	Standby SRP Module
System	*.cnf	*.cnf	*.cnf	None
	*.hty (excluding reboot.hty)	*.hty	*.dmp	
	*.log (excluding system.log)	*.log	*.hty	
	*.mac	*.mac	*.log	
	*.pub	*.pub	*.mac	
	*.scr	*.scr	*.pub	
	*.txt	*.txt	*.scr	
			*.sts	
			*.txt	

**Table 35: File Types You Can Transfer Using the copy Command** *(continued)*

Destination				
Source	User Space			
	System	(Linked Files and Unlinked Files)	Network Host Within a Firewall	Standby SRP Module
User Space	*.cnf	*.cnf	None	None
	*.mac	*.hty		
	*.rel	*.log		
	*.scr	*.mac		
	*.txt	*.pub		
		*.rel ( *.rel file only, not files associated with the *.rel file)		
		*.scr		
		*.txt		
		Nonsystem files		
Network Host Within a Firewall	*.cnf	None	None	None
	*.mac			
	*.rel			
	*.scr			
	*.txt			
Standby SRP Module	system.log	system.log	system.log	None
	reboot.hty	reboot.hty	reboot.hty	
		*.dmp	*.dmp	

To transfer files using the **copy** command between the system space and a network host:

1. Determine whether there is a route to the network host, and create one if necessary. See *JUNOS IP, IPv6, and IGP Configuration Guide*.
2. Configure the network host as an FTP server, or use a remote host that is configured as a TFTP server.





**NOTE:** This command takes place in the context of the current virtual router (VR) rather than the default VR. You must configure the FTP server so that any traffic destined for the VR can reach the VR; typically, you configure the FTP server to reach the default address of the E Series router, which will always be able to reach the VR.

3. Add the FTP server to the static host table, and specify the file transport protocol (FTP or TFTP), so that the E Series router can access the network host.
4. (Optional) Specify a source interface to use in FTP packets leaving the router.
5. Copy the files.

### copy

- Use to copy a file from one location to another.



**NOTE:** You cannot copy script (.scr) or macro (.mac) files while in Boot mode. You can copy only .cnf, .hty, and .rel files. If you issue the **dir** command from Boot mode, existing .scr and .mac files are not displayed.

- See Table 35 on page 297 for the types of files that you can copy.
- Specify a network path to copy to or from another device on the network.
- Specify the incoming or outgoing directory to copy to or from the user space.
- Specify a subdirectory name to create a subdirectory within the incoming or outgoing directory in the user space.
- You cannot use wildcards.
- You cannot create or copy over files generated by the system; however, you can copy such files to an unreserved filename.
- Examples

```
host1#copy host1:westford.cnf boston.cnf
host1#copy /incoming/releases/2-8-0a3-7.rel 2-8-0a3-7.rel
host1#copy /shconfig.txt ftp://joe:passwd@173.28.32.156/ftpDir
/results/shConfigJoe.txt
```

- There is no **no** version.
- See copy.

### host

- Use to add or modify an entry to the host table. You can enter the optional username and password in plain text (unencrypted). Or, if you know the correct encrypted forms of the username and password, you can enter the encrypted forms (see below).
- This command supports both IPv4 and IPv6 address formats.
- This command allows network files to be accessible from a host.

- This command supports both FTP and TFTP for copying and redirecting files.
- You cannot invent an encrypted string to be used with the algorithm **8** option. You must use plain text (unencrypted) strings for the initial configuration. The only way to obtain a valid encrypted string is to enable password encryption (by issuing the **service password-encryption** command) and then examine the output of the **show configuration** command. Username and password encryption is made available primarily so that scripts generated from the **show configuration** output can be saved, used, and transferred without fear of password exposure.

- Example

```
host1(config)#host westford 10.10.8.7 ftp user25 easy53
```

- To determine the encrypted values for usernames and passwords entered in cleartext, you must do the following:
  1. Issue the **service password-encryption** command. This causes subsequently issued **show configuration** commands to generate encrypted forms of the username and password for this command, as well as for all other commands that support encryption. See “Managing the System” on page 245, for more information about the **service password-encryption** command.
  2. Issue the **show configuration** command and search for the **host** command. The encrypted forms are preceded by the number 8.
  3. You can copy and paste the command showing the encrypted forms into a macro or script to use as desired. Specify the number 8 before the username and before the password to enter an encrypted value.

- Example for encrypted values

```
host1(config)#service password-encryption
host1(config)#host test 10.2.3.4 ftp nick nick
host1(config)#end
host1#show config | inc host
hostname "host1"
host test 10.2.3.4 ftp 8 CU&l,XM(S 8 X=emZn>'S
```

- Use the **no** version to remove a specified host.
- See host.

### **ip ftp source-address**

- Use to specify an operational interface by IP address as the source interface for FTP packets sent by the system’s FTP client.
- This command overrides a setting you configured previously with the **ip ftp source-interface** command.
- If you issue this command, the output of the **show configuration** command includes an entry of the following format:

```
ip ftp source-address ipAddress
```

This entry also appears in the output if you delete an interface or change its IP address after issuing the **ip ftp source-interface** command, in which case the IP address is the one that was configured on the interface before you issued the **ip ftp source-interface** command.

- Example

```
host1(config)#ip ftp source-address 10.10.5.21
```

- Use the **no** version to restore the default, in which the source address in the FTP packets is that of the interface where the FTP connection is made.
- See `ip ftp source-address`.

### ***ip ftp source-interface***

- Use to specify an operational interface by interface type and location as the source interface for FTP packets sent by the system's FTP client.
- The interface you specify must have an IP address.
- This command overrides a setting you configured previously with the **ip ftp source-address** command.
- If you issue this command and the interface is valid, the output of the **show configuration** command includes an entry of the following format:

```
ip ftp source-interface interfaceType interfaceSpecifier
```

- *interfaceType*—Type of interface
- *interfaceSpecifier*—Location of the interface

For information about interface types and specifiers, see Interface Types and Specifiers in *JUNOS Command Reference Guide*.

- If you delete the interface or change its IP address, the output of the **show configuration** command appears as if you had entered the **ip ftp source-address** command:

```
ip ftp source-address ipAddress
```

- *ipAddress*—IP address of the interface when you issued the **ip ftp source-interface** command

- Example

```
host1(config)#ip ftp source-interface loopback1
```

- Use the **no** version to restore the default, in which the source address in the FTP packets is that of the interface where the FTP connection is made.
- See `ip ftp source-interface`.

## copy Command Examples

The examples in this section assume that the following host entries have been defined in the host table:

- host mary 172.28.32.156 ftp mike mikePwd
- host joe 172.28.32.99 ftp joe jPasswd

**Example 1** Copy a remote file to a local file by using the CLI file copy command format. The following command creates or replaces the local file autocfg.scr by copying the remote file autocfg.scr located in the directory ftpDir/scripts on the host mary. The username mike and password mikePwd from the host entry mary are used to access the remote file.

```
copy mary:ftpDir/scripts/autocfg.scr autocfg.scr
```

**Example 2** Copy a local file to a remote file by using file **copy** command format. The following command creates or replaces the remote file shConfigForJoe.txt in the directory ftpDir/results on the host joe by copying the local file shConfig.txt. The username joe and password jPasswd from the host entry joe are used to access the remote file.

```
copy shConfig.txt joe:ftpDir/results/shConfigForJoe.txt
```

**Example 3** Copy a remote file to a local file by using the URL format, use the hostname to specify the location, and specify the user name and password in the command. The following command creates or replaces the local file autocfg.scr by copying the remote file autocfg.scr located in the directory ftpDir/scripts on the host mary. The username fred and the password passwd in the command are used; the username and password in the host entry are ignored.

```
copy ftp://fred:passwd@mary/ftpDir/scripts/autocfg.scr autocfg.scr
```

**Example 4** Copy a remote file to a local file by using the URL format, use the hostname to specify the location, specify the user name in the command, and use the default value of the password. The following command creates or replaces the local file autocfg.scr by copying the remote file autocfg.scr located in the directory ftpDir/scripts on the host mary. The username fred from the command and the default password null are used; the username and password in the host entry are ignored.

```
copy ftp://fred@mary/ftpDir/scripts/autocfg.scr autocfg.scr
```

**Example 5** Copy a remote file to a local file by using the URL format, and use the hostname to specify the location. The protocol TFTP, which does not support usernames or passwords, is the protocol in the URL. The following command creates or replaces the local file autocfg.scr by copying the remote file autocfg.scr located in the directory ftpDir/scripts on the host mary. The protocol specified in the command is used; the protocol for the host entry mary is ignored.

```
copy tftp://mary/ftpDir/scripts/autocfg.scr autocfg.scr
```

**Example 6** Copy a remote file to a local file by using the URL format, use the hostname to specify the location, and use the username and password from the host entry. The following command creates or replaces the local file `autocfg.scr` by copying the remote file `autocfg.scr` located in the directory `ftpDir/scripts` on the host `mary`. The username `mike` and password `mikePwd` from the host entry are used.

```
copy ftp://mary/ftpDir/scripts/autocfg.scr autocfg.scr
```

**Example 7** Copy a remote file to a local file by using the URL format. Use the host's IP address to specify the location. The following command creates or replaces the local file `autocfg.scr` by copying the remote file `autocfg.scr` located in the directory `ftpDir/scripts` on the host `172.28.32.156`. Use the username `fred` to access the remote file.

```
copy ftp://fred@172.28.32.156/ftpDir/scripts/autocfg.scr autocfg.scr
```

**Example 8** Copy a local file to a remote file by using the URL format, and use the host's IP address to specify the location. The following command creates or replaces the remote file `shConfigJoe.txt` in the directory `ftpDir/results` on the host `172.28.32.156` by copying the local file `shConfig.txt`. The username `joe` and the password `passwd` from the command are used to access the remote file.

```
copy shConfig.txt ftp://joe:passwd@172.28.32.156/ftpDir/results/shConfigJoe.txt
```

**Example 9** Redirect the output of a command to a remote file by using the URL format, and use the host's IP address to specify the location. Execute **show config**, and redirect the output to the remote file `shConfigJoe.txt` in directory `ftpDir/results` on host `172.28.32.156` using username `joe` and password `passwd`.

```
show config > ftp://joe:passwd@172.28.32.156/ftpDir/results/shConfigJoe.txt
```

## Using TFTP to Transfer Files

You can use TFTP to copy files and redirect output from the E Series router to a remote server if the remote host supports TFTP. Before transferring files by the remote TFTP server, you must use the **host** command to define the host and to specify TFTP as the file transfer protocol.

The maximum file size is 32 MB for file transfer. The release package for JUNOS Release 6.1.0 and higher-numbered releases includes a split version of all release images that exceed 32 MB. Each chunk is less than 32 MB. You can therefore use TFTP with JUNOS Release 6.1.0 and higher-numbered releases to transfer large software images. The JUNOS software copies the split images and reassembles them to full size on the router. The file system on the router does not contain any additional images as a result of this operation.

## Configuring the FTP Server

To transfer files by the system's FTP server, you must configure the FTP server and ensure that FTP client software is installed on the network host.

Although you can transfer any type of file by FTP to the E Series router, the principal aim of this feature is to allow the transfer of system files to NVS. You can transfer files by FTP to the user space. You can then install files from the user space onto the system using the **copy** command. It is not possible to access the system files directly through FTP operations.

FTP sessions on the E Series router use the vty lines. The E Series router divides its vty resources between Telnet, SSH, and FTP services. Each FTP session requires one vty line. The FTP service uses the authentication method configured for the vty lines.

## Features

The system supports the following FTP features:

- Compliance with *RFC 959—File Transfer Protocol (FTP) (October 1985)*
- FTP passive mode
- Efficient NVS organization
- User authentication by RADIUS or password checking

## FTP Passive Mode

Normally, when a client connects to an FTP server, the client establishes the control channel with the server, and the server responds by opening a data channel to the client. However, when the FTP client and server are on opposite sides of a firewall that prohibits inbound FTP connections, the server cannot open a data channel to the client.

FTP passive mode overcomes this connection limitation. In passive mode, the client opens a control channel to the server, tells the server it wants to operate in passive mode, and opens the data channel to the server. This method of establishing the FTP connection allows both the control channel and the data channel to pass through the firewall in the allowed direction.

## Configuring Authentication

Before you enable the FTP server, configure the authentication procedure for the vty lines, as follows:

1. Configure host access lists.
2. Configure user authentication methods.
3. Configure the vty lines to use the host access lists and user authentication methods.

You can specify authentication by a RADIUS server or by password checking. If you choose no authentication service, any client can access the FTP server. For information about authentication on vty lines, see “Managing the System” on page 245.

## Configuration Tasks

FTP is disabled by default. You must enable the FTP server with the **ftp-server enable** command before the system allows FTP clients to connect.

### **ftp-server enable**

- Use to enable the FTP server and to monitor the FTP port for attempts to connect to the FTP server.
- You can enable the FTP server on the default virtual router only.
- Example

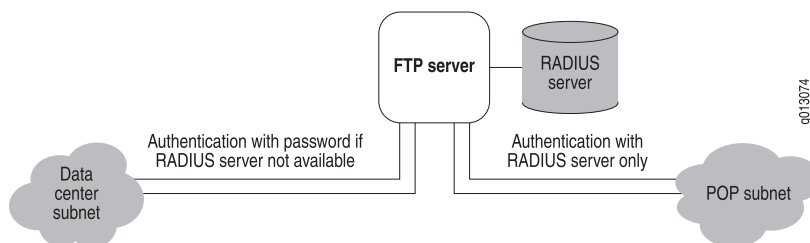
```
host1(config)#ftp-server enable
```

- Use the **no**version to terminate current FTP sessions and to disable the FTP server.
- See ftp-server enable.

## Configuration Example

Figure 23 on page 305 shows the scenario for this configuration example.

**Figure 23: FTP Configuration Example**



In this example, two FTP lines are required for administrators on the data center subnet, and two more lines are required for users on the POP subnet. The system verifies passwords of administrators on the data center subnet through either a RADIUS server or through simple line authentication if the RADIUS server is unreachable. However, the system verifies passwords of users on the POP subnet only through the RADIUS server.

The following example shows all steps for configuring this scenario, from specifying a RADIUS server to enabling the FTP line:

1. Configure the RADIUS server.

```
host1(config)#radius authentication server 10.6.131.51
host1(config-radius)#key abc123
host1(config-radius)#udp-port 1645
```

2. Configure two access lists—one named “DataCenter,” permitting only the data center subnet, and one named “Pops,” permitting only the POP subnet.

```
host1(config)#access-list DataCenter permit 10.6.128.0 255.255.128.0
host1(config)#access-list DataCenter deny any
host1(config)#access-list Pops permit 199.125.128.0 255.255.128.0
host1(config)#access-list Pops deny any
```

3. Configure two authentication method lists, named “RadiusAndLine” and “RadiusOnly.”

```
host1(config)#aaa new-model
host1(config)#aaa authentication login RadiusAndLine radius line
host1(config)#aaa authentication login RadiusOnly radius
```

4. Configure two FTP lines to be used by data center administrators.

```
host1(config)#line vty 0 1
host1(config-line)#password foobar
host1(config-line)#access-class DataCenter in
host1(config-line)#login authentication RadiusAndLine
```

5. Configure the remaining FTP lines to be used by POP administrators.

```
host1(config)#line vty 2 4
host1(config-line)#password foobar
host1(config-line)#access-class Pops in
host1(config-line)#login authentication RadiusOnly
```

6. Enable the FTP server.

```
host1(config)#ftp-server enable
```

## Monitoring the FTP Server

Use the **dir** command to monitor files on the FTP server. Use the **show ftp-server** and **show users** commands to monitor settings of the FTP server.

### **show ftp-server**

- Use to display information about the FTP server.
- Field descriptions
  - FTP Server state—Status of the FTP server: enabled or disabled
  - Open connections—Number of open connections to the FTP server
  - Statistics since server was last started—Data about the connection attempts since you enabled the FTP server
  - Statistics since last system reload—Data about the connection attempts since you last booted the system
    - attempts—Number of attempts to connect



- failed hosts—Number of connection attempts that failed because of disallowed host addresses
- failed users—Number of connection attempts that failed because users were not authenticated
- Example
 

```

host1#show ftp-server
FTP Server state: enabled, 0 open connections
Statistics since server was last started:
    attempts: 32
    failed hosts: 5
    failed users: 7
Statistics since last system reload:
    attempts: 35
    failed hosts: 5
    failed users: 8
      
```
- See show ftp-server.

### **show users**

- Use to display information about users of the vty lines.
- Specify the **all** keyword to view information for all configured lines (both connected and not connected).
- Specify the **detail** keyword to view detailed information.
- Field descriptions
  - line number—Number of the line to which the user is connected
  - line name—Name of the line, the service the line offers, and the relative line number
  - user—Name of the user
  - connected from—Location or IP address of the user
  - connected since—Date and time that the user connected to the line
  - idle time—Amount of time it has been since an entry was made from this line (detail only)
  - virtual router—Virtual router used by this line user (detail only)
  - privilege level—Privilege level of this line user (detail only)
  - current command—Command currently being executed by the user over this line (detail only)
- Example 1

```

host1#show users
line
number   line name   user   connected   connected since
-----

```

```

0*      console 0          console      02/12/2001 19:57
4       vty 3 (ftp)      fred      10.10.0.64 02/12/2001 20:04
5       vty 4 (telnet)   10.10.0.64 02/12/2001 20:04

```

Note: '\*' indicates current user.

#### ■ Example 2

```

host1#show users detail
line
number   line name      user      connected
         from      connected since  idle
         -----
0        console 0          console      08/14/2003 08:01 00:23:50
1*       vty 0 (telnet)      10.10.120.90 08/15/2003 10:37
line
number   virtual privilege
         router   level   current command
         -----
0        default  10
1*       default  10      show users detail
Note: '*' indicates current user.

```

#### ■ See show users.

## Copying Partial Releases

You can shorten the time it takes to copy a release from a server and reduce the amount of storage needed for a release. At the default setting, all subsystems are included when you copy a release from a server. Use the **exclude-subsystem** command to specify subsystems that you do not want to copy from the server. Use the **show subsystems** command to verify which files are included and excluded when you copy a release from a server.

Follow this example:

1. Determine which subsystems are included in the release on the server.

```
host1#show subsystems file m:/x/images/x-y-z.rel
```

2. Exclude any subsystems in the release that you do not need for the configuration.

```

host1#(config)#exclude-subsystem coc12
host1#(config)#exclude-subsystem oc12s

```

3. (Optional) Remove a subsystem from the exclude list.

```
host1#(config)#no exclude-subsystem oc12s
```

4. (Optional) Verify the subsystems that will be included and excluded in future release copies.

```

host1#show configuration
...

```

```
exclude-subsystem coc12
```

5. (Optional) After copying a release, view which subsystems were excluded.

```
host1#show subsystems file x8.rel
```

6. (Optional) Determine whether the currently running software is a result of a copy with excluded subsystems. The word “Partial” indicates that subsystems were excluded.

```
host1#show version
Juniper Networks, Inc. Operating System Software
Copyright (c) 200X Juniper Networks, Inc. All rights reserved.
System Release: x-y-z.rel Partial
```

### **exclude-subsystem**

- Use to exclude any subsystems that are in a release that you do not need for the system configuration.

- Example

```
host1(config)#exclude-subsystem coc12
```

- The subsystems that you indicate are added to the “exclude list.” All subsequent release copies will exclude the images for these subsystems from the release copy.

- Example

```
host1(config)#no exclude-subsystem coc12
```

- Use the **no** version of this command *with the subsystem name* to remove a subsystem from the exclude list. Use the **no** version of this command *without a subsystem name* to remove *all* subsystems from the exclude list.
- See exclude-subsystem.

### **show subsystems**

- Use to determine which subsystems are included in the current software release on the system or in a specified software release file.
- Specify either a local filename or a remote path and filename to view the subsystems that are included in a software release file other than the current software release on the system.
- Field descriptions
  - Required—Number of bytes of data for the required portion of the release.
  - Included Subsystems—Number of bytes of data for the included subsystems listed. All included subsystems in the release are listed.
  - Excluded Subsystems—Number of bytes of data for the excluded subsystems listed. All excluded subsystems in the release are listed.

- Use the command before you copy a release to verify which subsystems are present in the release.
- Example

```
host1#show subsystems file m:/x/images/x-y-z.rel
oc3
oc12p
oc12a
ge
fe8
coc12
oc12s
```

- Use the command after copying a release to verify which subsystems are included and excluded.
- Example

```
host1#show subsystems file x8.rel
Required: 1423005 bytes
Included Subsystems: 27882192 bytes
oc12p
oc12a
ge
fe8
coc12
oc12s

Excluded Subsystems: 6840211 bytes
oc3
```

- See show subsystems.

## Configuring the NFS Client

---

You can configure a virtual router on the E Series router as a Network File System (NFS) client to provide remote file access for E Series applications that need NFS-based transport.

The system provides NFS client support only for E Series applications designed to use NFS-based transport. Unlike the typical implementation on UNIX workstations, the E Series NFS client does not provide services such as mounting or unmounting of files through the CLI.

This section describes how to configure the NFS client if you are using an E Series application that requires NFS-based transport.

## References

The NFS client complies with the following standards:

- RFC 1094—Network File System Protocol Specification (March 1989)

- RFC 1057—Remote Procedure Call Protocol Specification (June 1988)

## Prerequisites

The E Series NFS client requires a remote host to act as an NFS server. The remote host must support NFS server protocol version 2 or higher.

## Configuration Tasks

To configure a virtual router as an NFS client:

1. Access the virtual router context.
2. Add the remote host to the host table.
3. Configure the remote host as an NFS server for this virtual router.
4. Specify the E Series interface that this virtual router will use to exchange NFS communications with this server.

### host

- Use to add or modify an entry to the host table.
- Example

```
host1:boston(config)#host host50 10.2.3.4
```

- Use the **no** version to remove a specified host.
- See host.

### ip nfs

- Use to specify the E Series interface that the current virtual router will use to exchange messages with the NFS server.
- Specify either the **source-address** keyword with the IP address of the interface or the **source-interface** keyword with the interface type and specifier. For information about interface types and specifiers, see Interface Types and Specifiers in *JUNOS Command Reference Guide*.
- Issuing this command provides connectivity between the E Series router and the remote host if the network configuration restricts communications between devices.
- Example

```
host1:boston(config)#ip nfs source-address 10.1.1.1  
host1:boston(config)#ip nfs source-interface atm 3/2.6
```

- Use the **no** version to delete the name server.
- See ip nfs.

### ip nfs host

- Use to configure a remote host as an NFS server for the current virtual router.
- Optionally, specify a user identity and a group identity that a user must specify to connect to the remote host. The default user identity is 2001, and the default group identity is 100.
- Example
 

```
host1:boston(config)#ip nfs host host50 user 1500 group 150
```
- Use the **no** version to disassociate this NFS server from the current virtual router.
- See ip nfs host.

## Monitoring the NFS Client

Use “show hosts” on page 338 command (see “Monitoring the System” on page 331) to monitor information about connected NFS servers. Use “show ip nfs” on page 312 command to display information about the interface that the current virtual router uses to exchange messages with the NFS server.

### show ip nfs

- Use to display information about the interface that the current virtual router uses to exchange messages with the NFS server.
- Field descriptions
  - Source address—IP address of the interface that the current virtual router uses to exchange messages with the NFS server.
  - Source interface—Type and specifier of the interface that the current virtual router uses to exchange messages with the NFS server. For information about interface types and specifiers, see Interface Types and Specifiers in *JUNOS Command Reference Guide*.
- Example
 

```
host1#show ip nfs
Source address is 1.1.1.1
```
- See show ip nfs.

## Using a Loopback Interface

The loopback interface provides a stable address for protocols (for example, BGP, Telnet, or LDP) to use so that they can avoid any impact if a physical interface goes down.

The loopback interface sends packets back to the router or access server for local processing. Any packets routed from the loopback interface, but not destined to the loopback interface, are dropped.



**NOTE:** Do not confuse loopback with the null 0 interface. Traffic routed to null 0 is discarded on the line module.

The **no** version deletes the loopback interface.

### **interface loopback**

- Use to access and configure the loopback interface.
- Provides a stable address to minimize impact of a physical interface going down.
- Example

```
host1(config)#interface loopback 20
host1(config-if)#ip address 10.10.20.5 255.255.255.254
```

- Use the **no** version to delete the loopback interface.
- See interface loopback.

## **Using the Telnet Client**

The system has an embedded Telnet client that enables you to connect to remote systems. You can configure a Telnet daemon to listen in virtual routers other than the default virtual router. You must be in the context of the desired virtual router to issue the command.

### **telnet**

- Use to open a Telnet connection to a remote system.
- Specify the IP address or name of the remote host.
- You can specify a VRF context in which the request takes place.
- Depending on how the remote system accepts Telnet requests, you can specify a port number or port name through which the system will connect to the remote host. In the Transmission Control Protocol (TCP), ports define the ends of logical connections that carry communications. In most cases, you can accept the default, port number 23, the Telnet port. For more information about port numbers and associated processes, see [www.iana.org](http://www.iana.org).
- You can force Telnet to use the IP address of an interface that you specify as its source address.
- Example

```
host1#telnet 192.168.35.13 fastEthernet 0
```

- There is no **no** version.
- See telnet.

### **telnet listen**

- Use to create a Telnet daemon to listen in a virtual router.
- Example

```
host1(config)#virtual-router 3
host1:3(config)#telnet listen port 3223
```

- Use the **no** version of the command to delete the daemon.
- See telnet listen.

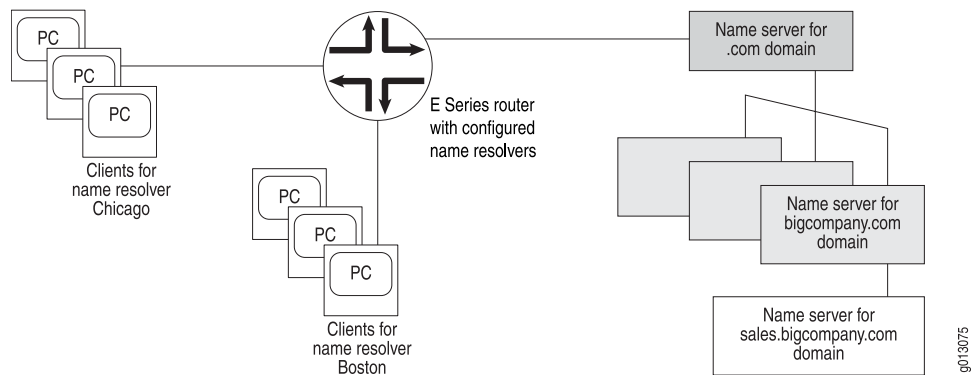
## Configuring DNS

You can configure virtual routers to act as *name resolvers* for Domain Name Service (DNS). DNS is a client/server mechanism that maps IP addresses to hostnames.

The name resolver is the client side of DNS and receives address-to-hostname requests from its own clients when they want to contact hosts on other networks. By polling *name servers*, the name resolver learns name-to-address translations for the hosts its clients want to contact.

A name server may provide the translation from its cache or may poll servers lower in the DNS hierarchy to obtain a translation. Typically, name servers at the top of the hierarchy recognize top level domain names and know which servers to contact for information about more detailed domain names. See Figure 24 on page 314.

**Figure 24: DNS Hierarchy Example**



DNS messages from a name resolver to a name server must include the domain name for the resolver's clients. Consequently, you must specify a default domain name for the clients. The default domain name is appended to unqualified hostnames (those without domain names).

The name resolver must be able to access at least one name server. Accordingly, you must configure a static route to a gateway that provides access to the name server and assign the name server to the name resolver. For more information, see "Assigning Name Servers" on page 315.



Each virtual router can have its own name resolver and domain name. However, if two virtual routers use the same name servers and belong to the same local domain, you do not need to configure name resolvers on both virtual routers. For more information, see “Using One Name Resolver for Multiple Virtual Routers” on page 316.

## References

For more information about the DNS, consult the following resources:

- RFC 1035—Domain Names – Implementation and Specification (November 1987)
- RFC 2308—Negative Caching of DNS Queries (DNS NCACHE) (March 1998)

## Assigning Name Servers

To assign name servers to the system:

1. Access the virtual router context.
2. Define static routes to the gateways that provide access to the name servers.
3. Enable the virtual router to query name servers.
4. Specify a default domain name for the hosts.
5. Specify the name servers.

**Example**

```
host1(config)#virtual-router boston
host1:boston(config)#ip route 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0 gatewayIpAddress
host1:boston(config)#ip domain-lookup
host1:boston(config)#ip domain-name urlofinterest.com
host1:boston(config)#ip name-server 10.2.0.3
host1:boston(config)#ip name-server 10.2.5.5
```

### *ip domain-lookup*

- Use to enable the system to query the configured DNS name servers when it needs an IP-hostname-to-IP-address translation.
- Domain lookup is disabled by default.
- Example

```
host1(config)#ip domain-lookup
```

- Use the **no** version to disable domain lookup.
- See ip domain-lookup.

### *ip domain-name*

- Use to define a default domain name for the clients that a name resolver serves.
- You must define a default domain name for each name resolver. Multiple name resolvers can use the same default domain name.

- If you map an unqualified hostname (one without a domain name) to an IP address with the **host ftp** command, the domain name is appended to the hostname before the name is stored in the host table.

- Example

```
host1(config)#ip domain-name bigcompany.com
```

- Use the **no** version to delete the domain name; that is, the domain name will no longer be appended to hostnames in the static host table.
- See ip domain-name.

### **ip name-server**

- Use to specify a DNS name server that the system can query for hostname-to-IP-address resolution.
- This command supports both IPv4 and IPv6 addressing formats.
- Example

```
host1(config)#ip name-server 192.168.25.100 1:2:3:4:5:6:7:8:9:0:a:b:c:d:e:f
```

- Use the **no** version to delete the name server.
- See ip name-server.

## **Using One Name Resolver for Multiple Virtual Routers**

You can use one name resolver for multiple virtual routers if those virtual routers use the same name servers and belong to the same local domain. To do so, complete the following steps:

1. Configure a name resolver for the first virtual router.
2. Access the context for the second virtual router.
3. Specify that the second virtual router should use the name resolver you configured for the first virtual router.
4. Repeat Steps 2 and 3 for other virtual routers that you want to point to this name resolver.

**Example** To configure the virtual router *boston* to use the same name servers as the default router, enter the following commands.

```
host1(config)#virtual router boston
host1:boston(config)#ip domain-lookup transit-virtual-router default
```

### **ip domain-lookup**

- Use to configure a virtual router to use the name servers you configured for another virtual router.
- Example

```
host1:boston(config)#ip domain-lookup transit-virtual-router default
```

- Use the **no** version to stop a virtual router from using the same name servers you configured for another virtual router.
- See `ip domain-lookup`.

## Monitoring DNS

After you configure DNS, you can use the **show ip domain-lookup** command to view information about the name servers.

### **show ip domain-lookup**

- Use to display the name servers that you have specified on the system with the **ip name-server** command.
- Field descriptions
  - Bind to client—Name of the virtual router context in parentheses, followed by the name of the virtual router providing the name resolver
  - Using following Domain Name Servers—Name servers you assigned
  - Using following Local Domain Names—Default domain names you specified
- Example—The virtual router *boston* uses the name resolver on the default virtual router.

```
host1#show ip domain-lookup
Bind to client: (boston)default
Using following Domain Name Servers:
10.2.0.3
11.1.1.1
10.1.1.1
1:2:3:4:5:6:7:8:9:0:a:b:c:d:e:f
Using following Local Domain Names :
urlofinterest.com
concord
```

- See `show ip domain-lookup`.

## Troubleshooting the System

You can use **log** commands to discover and isolate problems with the system. For information about using the log commands, see the *JUNOS System Event Logging Reference Guide*. Juniper Networks Customer Service can use core dump files to troubleshoot line module and SRP module failures.

### Creating Core Dump Files

You can enable the system to create a core dump file if a module fails. You can choose to send the core dump file to an FTP server or save the file to NVS. Juniper Networks Customer Service can then access the core dump file and analyze it to determine what went wrong. Local core dumps—stored in NVS—are enabled by

default. You can enable the core dump from Boot mode or Global Configuration mode.



**CAUTION:** Create a core dump file only under the direction of Juniper Networks Customer Service. Network function can be disrupted if you create a core dump file while the system is running in a network.

---

On the E120 and E320 routers, the failure of some components on a line module generates multiple core dumps to provide more complete information about system state at the time of the failure. Other E Series routers generate only a single core dump for line module failures. When you contact Juniper Networks Customer Service for assistance, send all of the generated core dump files.

### Boot Mode

To enable the core dump from Boot mode:

1. Access Boot mode by reloading the SRP module; then press the mb key sequence (case insensitive) during the countdown.
2. Specify where the system should transfer the core dump file.
3. Set the IP address and mask of the system interface over which you want to send the core dump file.
4. Specify the gateway through which the system sends the core dump file to the FTP server.
5. (Optional) Set a username and password for FTP access to the server where you transferred the core dump file.
6. Reload the operating system.

**Example**     **:boot##exception dump 192.168.56.7 CORE\_DUMPS**  
                  **:boot##exception protocol ftp user\_name user\_password**  
                  **:boot##exception gateway 192.168.12.3**  
                  **:boot##exception source 10.10.33.8 255.255.255.0**  
                  **:boot##reload**

### Global Configuration Mode

To enable the core dump from Global Configuration mode:

1. Access Global Configuration mode.
2. Specify where the system should transfer the core dump file.
3. Set the IP address and mask of the system interface over which you want to send the core dump file.
4. Specify the gateway through which the system sends the core dump file to the FTP server.

5. (Optional) Set a username and password for FTP access to the server where you want to transfer the core dump file.
6. (Optional) View parameters associated with creating a core dump file.

**Example**

```
host1(config)#exception dump 192.168.56.7 CORE_DUMPS
host1(config)#exception protocol ftp username userpassword
host1(config)#exception gateway 192.168.12.3
host1(config)#exception source 10.10.33.8 255.255.255.0
host1(config)#reload
```

### ***exception dump***

- Use to specify where the system should transfer the core dump file.
  - To send the file to an FTP server, enter the IP address of the FTP server and the name of the directory on the server to which the system will transfer the file.
  - To send the core dump file to NVS memory, use the local keyword.
  - Local core dumps—stored in NVS—are enabled by default.
- Example
 

```
host1(config)#exception dump 192.168.56.7 CORE_DUMPS
```
- Use the **no** version to disable the core dump.
- See exception dump.

### ***exception gateway***

- Use to specify the gateway through which the system sends the core dump file to the FTP server.
- Example
 

```
host1(config)#exception gateway 10.10.1.15
```
- Use the **no** version to return the value to its default (null).
- See exception gateway.

### ***exception protocol ftp***

- Use to set a username and password for FTP access to the server where you transferred a core dump file. The default settings are the username anonymous and no password.
- Specify the number 8 before the username and before the password to encrypt these values. By default, the username and password are not encrypted.
- Example
 

```
host1(config)#exception protocol ftp 8 user_core 8 user_password
```
- Use the **no** version to restore the default settings.
- See exception protocol ftp.

**exception source**

- Use to set the IP address and mask of the system interface over which you want to send the core dump file to the FTP server.
- You can optionally include an IP address mask.
- Example

```
host1(config)#exception source 192.168.1.33 255.255.255.0
```

- Use the **no** version to return the value to its default, null.
- See exception source.

**reload**

- Use to reload the software on the router immediately.
- Reloads the system software (.rel) file and the configuration (.cnf) file.
- Reloading the standby SRP causes high availability to be temporarily disabled until the standby SRP reloads and resynchronizes with the active SRP.
- Example

```
host1#reload
```

- There is no **no** version.
- See reload.

**show exception dump**

- Use to display the parameters associated with the core dump operation.
- Field descriptions
  - Dump host IP address—Address of the host where the system is configured to transfer the dump file
  - Dump directory—Name of directory on the host where the system is configured to transfer the dump file
  - Dump protocol—Protocol used to send the core dump file; currently only FTP is supported
  - User name—Name configured for access to the core dump file on the FTP server
  - Password—Password configured for access to the core dump file on the FTP server
  - Interface IP address—Address of the system interface configured to send the core dump file
  - Interface netmask—Mask of the system interface configured to send the core dump file
  - Gateway IP address—Address of gateway configured between the system and the FTP server

- Example

```
host1#show exception dump
Dump host IP address: 192.168.56.7
Dump directory: CORE_DUMPS/
Dump protocol: FTP
User name: user_name
Password: user_password
Interface IP address:
Interface netmask:
Gateway IP address:
```

- See show exception dump.

## Managing Core Dump Files

When a core dump occurs on a redundant SRP and you have the router configured to store network core dumps, the SRP that experiences the trouble retains the management Ethernet port to perform the core dump. This prevents the standby SRP from taking over operations until the core dump is complete.

When a router uses local NVS to store a core dump, the SRP does not need the management Ethernet port. However, because of the immense size of local core dump files, using NVS to store core dumps is not practical.

The SRP-120 available on the E120 router and the SRP-320 available on the E120 and E320 routers has a second NVS card which is dedicated to storing core dump files.

The core dump monitor eliminates the impact that core dumps may have on redundant routers by allowing you to manage core dump files in NVS. The core dump monitor allows you to automatically transfer core dump files from NVS to an FTP server location for storage. The core dump monitor can also automatically delete transferred core dump files.

The core dump monitor attempts to delete transferred files when all of the following conditions have been met:

- The router attempts to write a core dump file to NVS.
- NVS contains insufficient space to hold the new core dump file.
- The core dump files have already been transferred from NVS to an FTP server location using the automatic core dump monitor transfer process.

Only those core dump files that have already been transferred from NVS are considered for deletion. Of those, the oldest files are deleted first, and the router generates a log message for each core dump file it deletes.



**NOTE:** If the router NVS does not contain sufficient space to hold a new core dump file even after deleting all possible core dump files, the core dump fails and the router generates a log message for this condition.

---

## Enabling and Disabling the Core Dump Monitor

The core dump monitor is disabled by default. To enable the core dump monitor, use the **exception monitor** command. Use the **no** version of this command to disable the core dump monitor.

### **exception monitor**

- Use to enable the router core dump monitor and specify the location to which you want the router to transfer core dump files.
- To send the file to an FTP server, enter the IP address of the FTP server and the name of the directory on the server to which the system will transfer the file.
- Enabling the core dump monitor specifies that future core dump files be saved to NVS. See “exception dump” on page 319 command for details.
- Example

```
host1(config)#exception monitor 192.168.56.7 CORE_DUMPS
```

- Use the **no** version to disable the core dump monitor.



**NOTE:** You can use “exception protocol ftp” on page 319 command to assign a username and password to the targeted FTP server. If you choose not to define a username or password, the router uses the values of “anonymous” and “null,” respectively.

---

- See exception monitor.

## Specifying the Core Dump Monitor Interval

To specify the length of time that the router waits between checking for core dump files, use the **exception monitor interval** command. Use the **no** version of this command to revert the core dump monitor interval to its default value of 60 minutes (1 hour).

### **exception monitor interval**

- Use to specify the interval (in minutes) at which you want the router to check NVS for core dump files.
- Example

```
host1(config)#exception monitor interval 1000
```

- Use the **no** version to revert the core dump monitor interval to its default value, 60 minutes.
- See exception monitor interval.



## Viewing Core Dump Monitor Status

To view information about core dump monitor status and configuration, use the **show exception monitor** command.

### **show exception monitor**

- Use to display information about the core dump monitor status and configuration.
- Field descriptions
  - Core dump monitor—Status (enabled or disabled) of the core dump monitor
  - Next dump monitor check time—Time at which the core dump monitor will next check for any new core dump files
  - Host—IP address of the FTP host on which the core dump monitor saves core dump files
  - Directory—Directory or directory path on the host to where the core dump files are located
  - Core dump monitor interval—Time interval (in minutes) at which the core dump monitor checks for any new core dump files
  - Files on flash which have been transferred—A list of core dump files in the router NVS that have already been transferred to the FTP host
  - Files on flash which have not been transferred—A list of core dump files in the router NVS that have not yet been transferred to the FTP host
- Example

```
host1#show exception monitor
Core dump monitor is enabled
Next dump monitor check time: WED AUG 16 2003 15:50:38 UTC
Host: 10.10.120.99
Directory: monitor
Core dump monitor interval(minutes): 10

Files on flash which have been transferred
-----
standby:OC12Atm(P2)_5_IC_ERX-10-16-5b_09_15_2002_11_59.dmp
SRP-5GPlus_1_SC_tImBo-1Ab-3_09_18_2002_19_39.dmp

Files on flash which have not been transferred
-----
standby:SRP-10Ge_1_SC_ERX-10-24-36_09_24_2002_11_04.dmp
OC12-SERVER_5_FC1_E_ERX-10-24-36_03_28_2003_12_44.dmp
E3_1_IC_ERX-10-0f-ab_10_08_2002_16_10.dmp
```

- See show exception monitor.

## Accessing the Core Dump File

If a module fails and saves a core dump file to NVS memory (which can take several minutes), and you have not configured the Core Dump Monitor for automatic transfer, you must transfer the file to a network host before it can be examined. You can transfer the core dump file when the module is back online or has assumed a redundant status. For information about the status of modules, see *ERX Hardware Guide, Chapter 9, Troubleshooting*. To transfer the core dump file to a network host, use the **copy** command.

In a system with two SRP modules, the following behavior applies if you have configured the SRP modules to save core dump files to an FTP server:

- If the primary SRP module fails, it saves the core dump file to the FTP server before the standby SRP module assumes control.
- If the standby SRP module fails, it must save the core dump file to NVS because it has no access to any configured network host.

The **show version** command output indicates the failed SRP module state as not responding during the save process. Consequently, when the failed SRP module recovers and assumes the role of redundant module, the **show version** command output indicates the SRP module state as standby and displays output for the standby SRP. The standby SRP can notify the primary SRP during a core dump. Output from the **show version** command displays core dumping for the Standby SRP.

If the standby SRP boot image encounters a problem loading the diagnostics or operational image, the state of the standby SRP appears as disabled (image error). When standby SRP diagnostics encounter a test failure, the primary SRP is notified and the state is set to hardware error.

You can now transfer the core dump file to a network host for examination. For example, to transfer the file *SRP\_1\_SC\_05\_24\_2000\_02\_20.dmp* from NVS of the failed SRP module to the host server1, enter the following command:

```
host1#copy SRP_1_SC_05_24_2000_02_20.dmp
host:/public/server1/SRP-5G_1_SC_05_24_2000_02_20.dmp
```

### copy

- Use to copy a core dump file.
- You cannot use wildcards.
- You can copy core dump files only to network locations.
- You cannot create or copy over files generated by the system; however, you can copy such files to an unreserved filename.
- Example

```
host1#copy fault.dmp host:/public/server1/fault.dmp
```

- There is no **no** version.
- See copy.

## Capturing and Writing Core Dumps

You can capture and write a core dump to a file for an active or a standby SRP module or the line modules. You can store the file on the file system or on a network host. The SRP core dump files are stored on the respective SRP flash memory. The line module core dump files are stored on the active SRP flash memory at the instance of the core dump event. The core dump files are not synchronized between the active and the standby SRP module. You can use the resulting information to help diagnose a problem or to verify whether the core settings are correct (primarily for the network settings).

### **write core**

- Use to reboot the active SRP module, the standby SRP module, or the module in a specified slot, and write the core dump to a file.
- If you specify the force keyword, you are prompted for confirmation to reboot when the router is in a state that can lead to loss of configuration data or NVS corruption.



**NOTE:** The **force** keyword enables you to specify a slot only if that slot is an SRP module slot.

---

- If you do not specify a reason, Write Core is the default reason recorded in the reboot history.
- Example 1—Prompts for confirmation to reboot

```
host1#write core force
```

- Example 2—Reboots the module in slot 7 and writes a core memory file

```
host1#write core slot 7
```

- There is no **no** version.
- See write core.

## Understanding the Core Dump File

The dump file indicates which module has failed by referencing that module's hardware slot number. The hardware slot number is the slot number designation on the systems's backplane. This slot number is different from the chassis slot number that appears on the front of the chassis and in screen displays (for example, in the display resulting if you issue the **show version** command).

Table 36 on page 326 shows how the chassis slot numbers relate to the hardware slot numbers.

**Table 36: Chassis Slot Numbers Versus Hardware Slot Numbers**

Slot Number on Chassis	ERX7xx Model Hardware Slot Number	ERX14xx Model Hardware Slot Number	E320 Model Hardware Slot Number
0	1	0	16
1	3	1	17
2	4	2	18
3	5	3	19
4	6	4	20
5	7	5	21
6	8	7	8
7	9	9	10
8	–	10	9
9	–	11	12
10	–	12	13
11	–	13	25
12	–	14	26
13	–	15	27
14	–	–	28
15	–	–	29
16	–	–	30

## Tracking IP Prefix Reachability

You can use the **track** command to define an IPv4 prefix object and track its reachability. The **show track** command displays the tracked information for any specified objects.

### **show track**

- Use to display tracking details for the object you specify.
- Field descriptions
  - Track—Name of the object being tracked
  - IP Route—IP prefix being tracked
  - Virtual router—Virtual router on which the object resides

- First-hop interface—Outgoing interface to reach the prefix
- changes—Number of times the object has changed state
- Tracked by—Application that is doing the tracking
- Example

```
host1(config)#show track ERX_Bangalore

Track ERX_Bangalore
IP Route 1.1.1.0 255.255.255.0 reachability
in virtual router 1
Reachability is Up
First-hop interface is FastEthernet3/0
2 change(s)
Tracked by:
Vrrp in virtual router 1
```

- See show track.

### **show track brief**

- Use to display a one-line summary of all objects being tracked.
- Field descriptions
  - Object—Name of the object being tracked
  - Type—Type of object being tracked
  - Parameter—Parameter type being tracked
  - Value—State of the object being tracked
- Example

```
host1(config)#show track brief

Object  Type      Parameter  Value
ERX-WF  IP-route  reachability  Up
ERX-BNG IP-route  reachability  Up
```

- See show track brief.

### **track**

- Use to create an IPv4 object and to track its reachability.
- The name of the object must be unique for the chassis.
- Use the **vrf** keyword to specify the VRF on which the IP prefix resides.
- Example

```
host1(config)#track ERX_Bangalore vrf VR1 ip-route 10.10.24.6 255.255.0.0
reachability
```

- Use the **no** version to delete the object and stop tracking for that object.
- See track.

## Gathering Information for Customer Support

When you report a problem with your router, customer support personnel from the Juniper Networks Technical Assistance Center (JTAC) may request that you issue the **show tech-support** command. This command was created to help streamline the information-gathering process by providing a large amount of router information from one command and avoiding the need to access certain diagnostic commands.

The **show tech-support** command functions like any other show command, and you can issue this command the same way you issue any other show commands on the router. This means that you can redirect the output from the command to a file. For information about redirecting show command output, see “Redirection of show Command Output” on page 40.

Another command that customer support personnel might ask you to use is the **tech-support encoded-string** command. Customer support will provide you with an encoded string of commands that this command then executes.

### **tech-support encoded-string**

- Use to execute an encoded command string provided by Juniper Networks customer support personnel.
- This command requires privilege level 15 access.
- Optionally, specify a slot number on the router.
- Optionally, specify a reliable or fast connection type; fast does not work under some conditions. The default connection type is reliable.
- Example 1

```
host1(config)#tech-support encoded-string debug 1
```

- Example 2

```
host1(config)#tech-support slot 0 connection fast encoded-string debug1
```

- There is no **no** version.
- See tech-support encoded-string.

### **show tech-support**

- Use to display technical support information used by Juniper Networks customer support personnel to assist in troubleshooting the router.
- Example

```
host1#show tech-support
Show Technical Support
```

---

```
System Name      : host1
Time             : THU JUL 15 2004 17:12:48 UTC
System up since  : WED JUN 30 2004 16:07:51 UTC
Software release: 1088523900
Boot Flags       : 0x100663296
Slot Number      : 0
Serial Number    : 7100170293
Assembly Number  : 3400003701
Assembly Rev     : A07
Description      :
```

```
Command List:
CLI:show version
CLI:show boot
CLI:show hardware
CLI:show redundancy
CLI:show environment
CLI:show users detail
CLI:show utilization
CLI:show process cpu
CLI:show process memory
....
```

- See show tech-support.

## Managing and Monitoring Resources

---

The resource threshold monitor (RTM) allows you to set the rising and falling thresholds and trap hold-down times for certain interfaces. You can also view the resource threshold information.

### ***Enabling and Disabling the Resource Threshold Monitor***

You may want to set thresholds for certain interface resources on the router. The RTM allows you to specify rising and falling thresholds as well as hold-down times for certain interfaces by using the **resource if-type** and **resource threshold** commands.

#### ***resource if-type***

- Use to specify rising and falling thresholds and hold-down times for certain interfaces on a slot or systemwide basis.
- Example

```
host1(config)#resource if-type ip slot 4 falling 500
```

- Use the **no** version to set the threshold parameter to its default value (for rising, 90 percent of the maximum value of the resource; for falling, 1 percent of the maximum value of the resource; for hold-down time, 300 seconds).
- See resource if-type.

### **resource threshold**

- Use to disable the issuance of trap messages when the router reaches preset threshold limits.
- Example

```
host1(config)#resource threshold disable traps
```

- Use the **no** version to reenables traps for resource threshold conditions.
- See resource threshold.

## **Viewing Resource Threshold Information**

The RTM allows you to view information about resource use on the router. The show resource command displays statistical information about resources and their current threshold configurations.

### **show resource**

- Use to display statistical information about resources and their current threshold configurations.
- Field descriptions
  - Resource Threshold Trap—Status (enabled or disabled) of the resource threshold trap
  - type—Interface type
  - location—Location of the interface (system or slot location)
  - max capacity—Maximum capacity of the interface at either the system or slot level
  - current value—Current capacity of the interface at either the system or slot level
  - rising threshold—Rising threshold setting for the interface at either the system or slot level
  - falling threshold—Falling threshold setting for the interface at either the system or slot level
  - hold-down time—Hold-down time setting for the interface at either the system or slot level
- Example 1

```
host1#show resource
Resource Threshold Trap: enabled
```



type	location	max capacity	current value	rising threshold
ip interface	system	32000	1	28800
ip interface	slot 3	8192	0	7373
ip interface	slot 4	4095	0	3686
atm-sub-if interface	system	65536	0	58982
atm-vc interface	system	65536	0	58982
ppp-link interface	system	32768	0	29491
ppp-link interface	slot 3	2048	0	1843
ppp-link interface	slot 4	6	0	5
atm-active-sub-if interface	system	65536	0	58982
type	location	falling threshold	hold-down time	
ip interface	system	320	300	
ip interface	slot 3	82	300	
ip interface	slot 4	41	300	
atm-sub-if interface	system	655	300	
atm-vc interface	system	655	300	
ppp-link interface	system	328	300	
ppp-link interface	slot 3	20	300	
ppp-link interface	slot 4	0	300	
atm-active-sub-if interface	system	655	300	

■ Example 2

```
host1#show resource threshold trap
Resource Threshold Trap: enabled
```

■ See show resource.

## Monitoring the System

This section provides basic system commands that allow you to display information about the router's state. The **show configuration** command, for example, allows you to display the router's entire configuration.

### **baseline show-delta-counts**

- Use to configure the system to always display statistics relative to the most recent appropriate baseline.
- The system collects many statistics during its operation. Various show commands are available to display these statistics. Baselineing allows the user to identify a point in time relative to which such statistics can be reported.
- Typically, the optional **delta** keyword is used with show commands to specify that baselined statistics are to be shown. This command applies the “delta” function implicitly.
- Example

```
host1#baseline show-delta-counts
```

- Use the **no** version to have access to the total statistics.
- See baseline show-delta-counts.

### **show configuration**

- Use to display the current (running) configuration of the router, a specified virtual router, a specified interface, or a specified category of router settings.
- See full description and examples in “show configuration” on page 262 on “show configuration” on page 262.
- See show configuration.

### **show environment**

- Use to display information about the router’s physical environment, such as voltage or temperature.
- Optionally, specify the **all** keyword to view both the system environment information and the detailed temperature status table, or specify the **table** keyword to view only the temperature status table.
- The system displays a message if the voltage or temperature exceeds normal operating limits.
- The system enters thermal protection mode if the temperature exceeds maximum operating limits or if the fan system on the E120 and E320 routers. router reports a critical error. For information about thermal protection mode on ERX7xx models, ERX14xx models, and the ERX310 router, see *ERX Hardware Guide, Chapter 9, Troubleshooting*. For information about thermal protection mode on the E120 and E320 routers, see *E120 and E320 Hardware Guide, Chapter 9, Troubleshooting*.
- Field descriptions
  - chassis—Number of slots, midplane identifier, and hardware revision number
    - 14Slot—5 Gbps, 14 slot midplane
    - midplaneId7Slot—5 Gbps, 7 slot midplane
    - midplaneIdRx1400—10 Gbps ASIC compatible, 12 line module slots, 2 SRP module slots for ERX14xx models
    - midplaneIdRx700—10 Gbps ASIC compatible, 5 line module slots, 2 SRP module slots for ERX7xx models
    - 17 slot—100 or 320 Gbps, 17-slot midplane for the E120 router
    - 11 slot—320 Gbps, 11-slot midplane for the E120 router
  - fabric—Capacity and hardware revision of the fabric
  - fans—Status of fans
  - nvs—Status and capacity of NVS and amount of space used
  - power—States of power feeds
  - AC power—For ERX310 router only; states of power feeds

- srp redundancy—Availability of a redundant SRP module
- slots: cards missing or offline—Status of each slot
  - online
  - standby
  - offline
  - empty
- line redundancy—Number of redundancy groups installed
  - width—Number of slots the redundant midplane covers
  - spare—Slot that contains a spare line module
  - primary—Slot that contains the primary line module
- fabric redundancy—Status of redundancy on the switch fabric on the E120 and E320 routers
  - ok
  - none
- temperature—Status of the system temperature
- timing—Source of the timing signal
  - primary—Type and status of the primary timing signal
  - secondary—Type and status of the secondary timing signal
  - tertiary—Type and status of the tertiary timing signal
  - auto-upgrade—Status of the auto-upgrade parameter, which enables the system to revert to a higher-priority timing source after switching to a lower-priority timing source.
- system operational—Status of the system
- slot—Number of the slot in which the module resides
- type—Type of module in the slot on the E120 and E320 routers
- temperature—Temperature of the line module, SRP module, or SFM on the E120 and E320 routers
- processor temperature—Temperature of the line module or SRP module
- processor temperature status—Temperature condition of the line module
  - normal—Temperature is in normal range
  - too hot—Module is too hot; system will go into thermal protection mode if the temperature of any module exceeds 80° C
  - too cold—Module is too cold; system will go into thermal protection mode if the temperature of any module drops below –5° C

- IOA temperature—Temperature of the corresponding I/O module or IOA
- IOA temperature status—Temperature condition of the corresponding I/O module or IOA
  - normal—Temperature is in normal range
  - too hot—Module is too hot; system will go into thermal protection mode if the temperature of any module exceeds 80° C
  - too cold—Module is too cold; system will go into thermal protection mode if the temperature of any module drops below -5° C
- processor temperature ranges—Displays the temperature ranges for the line modules and SRP modules
- IOA temperature ranges—Displays the temperature ranges for the I/O modules on ERX7xx models, ERX14xx models, and the ERX310 router or IOAs on the E120 and E320 routers
- fabric temperature ranges—Displays the temperature ranges for the SRP modules and SFMs on the E120 and E320 routers
- Example 1—Displays the environment of an ERX7xx model

```

host1#show environment all
  chassis: 14 slot (id 0x3, rev. 0x0)
  fabric: 5 Gbps (rev. 1)
  fans: ok
  nvs: ok (81MB flash disk, 54% full)
  power: A ok, B not present
  AC power: A not present, B not present
  srp redundancy: none
*** slots: cards missing or offline
    online: 6 9
    standby: 8
    offline: 2
    empty: 0 1 3 4 5 7 10 11 12 13
  line redundancy: 1 redundancy group(s)
    width 6, spare 8, primary 9
  temperature: ok
  timing: primary
    primary: internal SC oscillator (ok)
    secondary: internal SC oscillator (ok)
    tertiary: internal SC oscillator (ok)
    auto-upgrade enabled
*** system operational: no

```

slot	processor temperature (10C - 70C)	processor temperature status	IOA temperature (10C - 70C)	IOA temperature status
0	31	normal	30	normal
3	31	normal	30	normal
5	31	normal	30	normal
7	31	normal	30	normal

```

processor temperature ranges
  below -5C is too cold
  above 80C is too hot
  low temperature warning below 10C

```

```

        high temperature warning above 70C
IOA temperature ranges
    below -5C is too cold
    above 80C is too hot
    low temperature warning below 10C
    high temperature warning above 70C

```

- Example 2—Displays the environment of an E320 router

```
host1#show environment all
```

```

chassis: 17 slot (id 0x3, rev. 0x0)
fabric: 100 Gbps (rev. 1)
fans: fanSubsystem0k
nvs: ok (977MB flash disk, 29% full), matches running config
power: A ok, B not present
srp redundancy: mode is file-system-synchronization      auto-sync
enabled, switch-on-error enabled
status unknown
*** slots: cards missing or offline
online: 0 6 13
offline: 7
empty: 1 2 3 4 5 11 12 14 15 16
fabric slots: ok
online: 6 7 8 9 10
line redundancy: none
temperature: ok
timing: primary
primary: internal SC oscillator (ok)
secondary: internal SC oscillator (ok)
tertiary: internal SC oscillator (ok)
auto-upgrade enabled
fabric redundancy: ok

*** system operational: no

```

slot	type	temperature (10C - 70C)	temperature status
0	LM-4	42	normal
0/1	GE-4 IOA	23	normal
6	SRP-100	32	normal
6	SFM-100	32	normal
6/0	SRP IOA	25	normal
7	SFM-100	30	normal
8	SFM-100	23	normal
9	SFM-100	25	normal
10	SFM-100	24	normal
13	LM-4	24	normal
13/0	GE-4 IOA	23	normal

```

fabric temperature ranges
    below -5C is too cold
    above 79C is too hot
    low temperature warning below 10C
    high temperature warning above 70C
processor temperature ranges
    below -5C is too cold
    above 79C is too hot

```

```

        low temperature warning below 10C
        high temperature warning above 70C
IOA temperature ranges
    below -5C is too cold
    above 79C is too hot
    low temperature warning below 10C
    high temperature warning above 70C

```

■ Example 3—Displays the environment on an E120 router

```

host1#show environment all
  chassis: 11 slot (id 0x8, rev. 0x0)
  fabric: 120 Gbps (rev. 1)
  fans: fanSubsystemOk
  nvs: ok (998MB flash disk, 14% full), matches running config
  power: A ok, B not present
  srp redundancy: mode is file-system-synchronization      auto-sync
enabled, switch-on-error enabled
in sync
slots: ok
online: 1 2 6
standby: 7
empty: 0 3 5
fabric slots: ok
online: 6 7 8 9 10
line redundancy: none
temperature: ok
timing: primary
primary: internal SC oscillator (ok)
secondary: internal SC oscillator (ok)
tertiary: internal SC oscillator (ok)
auto-upgrade enabled
fabric redundancy: ok

```

```
system operational: yes
```

slot	type	temperature (10C - 56C)	temperature status
1	LM-10	37	normal
1/1	GE-8 IOA	35	normal
2	LM-10	37	normal
2/1	GE-8 IOA	39	normal
4	LM-10A-ADV	37	normal
6	SRP-120	40	normal
6	SFM-120	40	normal
6/0	SRP IOA	30	normal
7	SRP-120	41	normal
7	SFM-120	41	normal
8	SFM-120	31	normal
9	SFM-120	32	normal
10	SFM-120	32	normal

```

fabric temperature ranges
    below -5C is too cold
    above 79C is too hot
    low temperature warning below 10C
    high temperature warning above 56C
processor temperature ranges

```

```

        below -5C is too cold
        above 79C is too hot
        low temperature warning below 10C
        high temperature warning above 51C
IOA temperature ranges
        below -5C is too cold
        above 79C is too hot
        low temperature warning below 10C
        high temperature warning above 56C

```

- Example 4—Displays the temperature status table on an E120 router

host1#**show environment table**

slot	type	temperature (10C - 56C)	temperature status
1	LM-10	37	normal
1/1	GE-8 IOA	35	normal
2	LM-10	37	normal
2/1	GE-8 IOA	39	normal
4	LM-10A-ADV	37	normal
6	SRP-120	40	normal
6	SFM-120	40	normal
6/0	SRP IOA	30	normal
7	SRP-120	41	normal
7	SFM-120	41	normal
8	SFM-120	31	normal
9	SFM-120	32	normal
10	SFM-120	32	normal

```

fabric temperature ranges
        below -5C is too cold
        above 79C is too hot
        low temperature warning below 10C
        high temperature warning above 56C
processor temperature ranges
        below -5C is too cold
        above 79C is too hot
        low temperature warning below 10C
        high temperature warning above 51C
IOA temperature ranges
        below -5C is too cold
        above 79C is too hot
        low temperature warning below 10C
        high temperature warning above 56C

```

- See show environment.

### **show fabric weights**

- Use to display multicast-to-unicast ratio for the router switch fabric.
- Field descriptions
  - multicast—Ratio value of multicast bandwidth
  - unicast—Ratio value of unicast bandwidth
- Example

```
host1#show fabric weights
```

```
Fabric scheduler weights: multicast = 1 , unicast = 8
```

- See show fabric weights.

### **show hosts**

- Use to display a list of configured network servers.
- Field descriptions
  - Static Host Table—Information about the connected static hosts
    - name—Name of the host
    - ip address—IPv4 or IPv6 address of the host
    - type of host—Type of host; for example, ftp means an FTP server
  - NFS Host Table—Information about connected NFS servers
    - name—Name of the NFS server
    - userid—Identity for the user
    - groupid—Identity for the group
- Example

```
host1#show hosts
```

```
Static Host Table
```

name	ip address	type
host1	10.2.0.124	ftp
hFtp	10.5.6.7	ftp
hTftp	10.5.6.7	tftp

```
Static Host Table
```

name	ip address	type
george	1111:2222:3333:4444:5555:6666:7777:8888	ftp
dsw	10.10.121.42	ftp
deab	10.6.128.12	ftp
mFtp	10.10.121.11	ftp
mTftp	10.10.121.11	tftp
mary	10.10.121.11	ftp
sd	10.10.121.80	ftp

```
NFS Host Table
```

name	userid	groupid
deab	2001	100

- See show hosts.

### **show processes cpu**



- Use to display the CPU use.
- Field descriptions
  - task name—Name of the process
  - times invoked—Number of times the process has been invoked
  - invocations per second—Frequency of the process invocation
  - total running time (msec)—Time the process has been running
  - percent running time—Percentage of the total running time attributable to this process
  - average time per invocation (usec)—Average number of microseconds per invocation of this process
  - 5 second utilization (%)—CPU use by the process for the last 5 seconds
  - 1 minute utilization (%)—CPU use by the process for the last minute
  - 5 minute utilization (%)—CPU use by the process for the last 5 minutes
- Example

```
host1# show processes cpu
```

Process Statistics

task name	times invoked	invocations per second	total running time (msec)	percent running time
-----	-----	-----	-----	-----
aaaAtm1483Config	1	0	0	0%
aaaServer	52	0	260	0%
agent1	399	0	3600	0%
ar1EthHelp	362856	4	590	0%
.				
.				
.				
templateMgr	48	0	540	0%
timerd	2346566	32	0	0%
~GONE~	405202	5	184700	0%
~IDLE~	0	0	360	0%
~INTERRUPT~	8840490	121	51050	0%
task name	average time per invocation (usec)	5 second utilization (%)	1 minute utilization (%)	5 minute utilization (%)
-----	-----	-----	-----	-----
aaaAtm1483Config	0	0	0	0
aaaServer	5000	0	0	0
agent1	9022	0	0	0
ar1EthHelp	1	0	0	0
ar1InternalNetwork	19	0	0	0
.				

```

.
.
~IDLE~          ---          0          0          0
~INTERRUPT~     5           0          0          0

```

- See `show processes cpu`.

### ***show processes memory***

- Use to display the amount of memory-related resources used by system processes. Because the router allocates memory to system processes in chunks, issuing this command performs a cleanup process to gather unused, available memory for reallocation.
- You can display different output variations by using the **application**, **slot**, and **virtual-router** keywords. In addition, you can combine these keywords in specific ways to display information combinations of application, slot, and virtual router.
- The appearance of parentheses in the output is significant. The parentheses indicate “partial accountability” of the current memory size. In other words, the values are accurate for the row in which they appear, but the memory value used for calculating the sum total for the column may be smaller than the value displayed. This can result in the sum total for the “current size” column not matching the sum of the values that appear within the column. This disparity can occur under shared memory conditions where a portion of the memory size for one or more of the virtual routers may be accounted for elsewhere, resulting in a lower column total.
- Field descriptions
  - Memory usage summary—Statistical information about the memory usage information being displayed
  - application—Name of the application being viewed (if applicable); asterisk (\*) if no application is specified
  - router—Name of the virtual router being viewed (if applicable); asterisk (\*) if no virtual router is specified
  - app—Application to which the statistics information applies
  - rtr—Virtual router to which the statistics information applies
  - vrf—Virtual routing and forwarding instance to which the statistics information applies
  - \_unassoc\_—Special virtual router output category that summarizes all memory that is not currently associated with any particular virtual router
  - current size—Amount of memory reserved by the listed application or virtual router
  - utilization—Percentage of reserved memory currently used for the listed application or router
  - headroom—Amount of memory overage available to each listed application or virtual router (if needed); 100 % indicates an unlimited headroom (that is, no memory limits are set for the application or virtual router)

■ Example 1

```
host1#show processes memory application
```

```
*** Memory usage summary (by application, 37 total) ***
application: *
router: *
```

app	current size	utilization	headroom
aaa	98K	3%	100%
bgp	90K	28%	100%
bridge	1M	4%	100%
cli	3K	8%	100%
dcm	64K	7%	100%
dhcp	644K	0%	100%
dns	4K	6%	100%
dvmrp	36K	0%	100%
ethernet	3K	75%	100%
forwarding	20K	50%	100%
gplaan	52K	0%	100%
igmp	1K	0%	100%
.			
.			

■ Example 2

```
host1#show processes memory virtual-router
```

```
*** Memory usage summary (by router, 4 total) ***
application: *
router: *
```

rtr	current size	utilization	headroom
_unassoc_	(40M)	7%	99%
default	(339K)	23%	100%
test	(366K)	23%	100%
vr5	(327K)	18%	100%
Total:	41M	7%	99%

■ Example 3

```
host1#show processes memory virtual-router vr5 application ip
```

```
*** Memory usage summary (by VRF) ***
application: ip
router: vr5
```

vrf	current size	utilization	headroom
-----	-----------------	-------------	----------

```

---  -----  -----  -----
vr5   (19K)           48%       100%

```

- See `show processes memory`.

### ***show reboot-history***

- Use to display the history of system and module resets.
- You can display the current `reboot.hty` file or a saved reboot history file.
- If you have a redundant router, it can be convenient to copy the redundant module's `reboot.hty` file to another filename for viewing with this command.
- Field descriptions
  - Entry—Number of entry in the reboot history; numbers range from lowest (most recent reset) to highest (oldest reset)
  - time of reset—Timestamp for reset
  - run state—State of system at reset
  - image type—Type of image running when the record is written
    - boot—Module is running the boot file
    - diagnostics—Module is running the diagnostics file
    - application—Module is running the software file
  - location—Slot that reset; location is offset by two slots at slot 7 and above (the SRP module in slot 6 shows location as slot 7, the SRP module in slot 7 shows location as slot 9, and slots 8-13 show location as 10-15, respectively).
  - build date—Build date of software version
  - reset type—Cause of reset
- Example

```

host1#show reboot-history
*** Entry 1 ***
time of reset: TUE APR 10 2001 20:25:59 UTC
run state: unknown
image type: diagnostics
location: slot (7)
build date: 0x3abf4337 MON MAR 26 2001 13:25:11 UTC
reset type: user reboot, task "scheduler", reason "not specified"
*** Entry 2 ***
time of reset: TUE APR 10 2001 20:25:44 UTC
run state: unknown
image type: diagnostics
location: slot (8)
build date: 0x3abf5d5f MON MAR 26 2001 15:16:47 UTC
reset type: user reboot, task "scheduler", reason "not specified"
*** Entry 3 ***
time of reset: TUE APR 10 2001 20:25:03 UTC
run state: unknown
image type: diagnostics

```

```

location: slot (4)
build date: 0x3abf3ee0 MON MAR 26 2001 13:06:40 UTC
reset type: user reboot, task "scheduler", reason "not specified"

```

- See show reboot-history.

### **show running-configuration**

- Use to display the configuration currently running on the router, a specified virtual router, a specified interface, or a specified category of router settings.
- See full description and examples in “show running-configuration” on page 264.
- See show running-configuration.

### **show version**

- Use to display the armed and running releases for every slot in the router and the operational status of the SRP module and line modules for all E Series routers.
- Use the **all** keyword with the E120 and E320 routers to display the operational status of the IOAs.
- Field descriptions
  - Model identification
  - Copyright—Copyright details for the system software
  - System Release—Filename, version, and date of the system software currently running on the router
  - System running for—How long the router has been running (time elapsed since the last boot of the router), date and time of last boot; does not reflect the uptime of a particular SRP module
  - slot—Physical slot that contains the line module
  - state—Status of the line module
    - booting—Line module is booting
    - disabled (assessing)—Router is evaluating the status of this line module
    - disabled (admin)—Line module disabled by **slot disable** command
    - disabled (cfg error)—Use of the line module in this slot violates the permitted configuration for the router. For example, the fabric cannot supply sufficient bandwidth to the line module in this position.
    - disabled (image error)—Software for this line module is missing or corrupted
    - disabled (mismatch)—Line module in this slot is a different type from that specified in the software. Correct the condition by inserting the original module, or use the **slot accept** command to find information about the new module.
    - hardware error—Line module has a hardware fault

- inactive—On ERX routers, either the I/O module is not present or the primary line module is fully booted and ready to resume operation. In the latter case, the standby is currently providing services. On E120 and E320 routers, one of the following conditions exists: the primary line module has no IOAs; or the primary line module has IOAs, but they have failed diagnostics; or the standby line module has taken over for the primary line module, and has control of the IOAs.
- initializing—Transitional state before the line module proceeds to the online, standby, or inactive state; diagnostics are complete, module is initializing software
- online—Line module is operating
- not present—Line module configured for this slot is missing
- not responding—Line module has a hardware or ROM problem
- standby—Spare line module or SRP module is fully booted and ready to operate if the primary line module or active SRP module fails
- unknown—Transitional state while the SRP is initializing
- type—Kind of module; an “e” at the end of an SRP module type (for example, SRP-5Ge) indicates that the module includes error checking code (ECC)
- admin—Status of the slot in the software
  - enabled—Slot is enabled
  - disabled—Slot is disabled
- spare—Line module is a spare for line module redundancy
- running release—Software that is running on the line module
- slot uptime—Length of time for which the module has been operational; a value of --- indicates that the module is not available.
- The following symbols and notices may be displayed at the end of the report:
  - # This release is a result of a subsystem override
  - \* This release is a result of a “boot slot” override
  - # The running or armed release on the slot is the same as the armed release for a subsystem. A subsystem is all the line modules of one type, such as OC3.
  - \* This release reflects whichever release the router is armed with at startup.
- Example 1—Displays the version of an ERX7xx model

host1#show version

```
Juniper Edge Routing Switch ERX-700
Copyright (c) 1999-2005 Juniper Networks, Inc. All rights reserved.
System Release: erx_7-1-0.rel Partial
Version: 7.1.0 [BuildId 4518] (December 21, 2005 11:23)
System running for: 25 days, 3 hours, 31 minutes, 5 seconds
(since THU DEC 22 2005 11:36:41 UTC)
```

slot	state	type	admin	spare	running release	slot uptime
0	standby	SRP-10Ge	enabled	---	erx_7-1-0.rel	---
1	online	SRP-10Ge	enabled	---	erx_7-1-0.rel	25d03h:28m:49s
2	---	---	---	---	---	---
3	---	---	---	---	---	---
4	online	CT3-12	enabled	---	erx_7-1-0.rel	25d03h:24m:46s
5	online	OC3-4A-APS	enabled	---	erx_7-1-0.rel	25d03h:24m:22s
6	online	GE	enabled	---	erx_7-1-0.rel	25d03h:24m:44s

■ Example 2—Displays the version of an E320 router

```
host1# show version
Juniper Edge Routing Switch E320
Copyright (c) 1999-2005 Juniper Networks, Inc. All rights reserved.
System Release: 7b12.rel
Version: 7.0.0 [BuildId 3468] (April 29, 2005 10:46)
System running for: 2 days, 19 hours, 16 minutes, 17 seconds
(since FRI MAY 13 2005 15:10:54 UTC)
```

slot	state	type	admin	spare	running release	slot uptime
0	online	LM-4	enabled	---	7b12.rel	2d19h:13m:24s
1	---	---	---	---	---	---
2	online	LM-4	enabled	---	7b12.rel	2d19h:13m:19s
3	---	---	---	---	---	---
4	---	---	---	---	---	---
5	---	---	---	---	---	---
6	online	SRP-100	enabled	---	7b12.rel	2d19h:14m:48s
6	online	SFM-100	enabled	---	---	2d19h:14m:47s
7	standby	SRP-100	enabled	---	7b12.rel	---
7	online	SFM-100	enabled	---	---	2d19h:14m:42s
8	online	SFM-100	enabled	---	---	2d19h:14m:44s
9	online	SFM-100	enabled	---	---	2d19h:14m:39s
10	online	SFM-100	enabled	---	---	2d19h:14m:40s
11	---	---	---	---	---	---
12	online	LM-4	enabled	---	7b12.rel	2d19h:13m:13s
13	---	---	---	---	---	---
14	online	LM-4	enabled	---	7b12.rel	2d19h:13m:08s
15	---	---	---	---	---	---
16	---	---	---	---	---	---

■ Example 3—Displays the version of an E320 router using the **all** keyword

```
host1# show version all
Juniper Edge Routing Switch E320
Copyright (c) 1999-2006 Juniper Networks, Inc. All rights reserved.
System Release: 7-3-0.rel
Version: 7.3.0 [BuildId 5759] (July 27, 2006 10:40)
```

System running for: 3 days, 1 hour, 37 minutes, 4 seconds  
(since FRI JUL 28 2006 09:08:14 UTC)

running

slot	state	type	admin	spare	release	slot uptime
0	online	LM-4	enabled	---	7-3-0.re1	3d01h:29m:01s
0/0	present	10GE IOA	enabled	---		---
0/1	---	---	---	---	---	---
1	online	LM-4	enabled	---	7-3-0b.re1	3d01h:26m:36s
1/0	present	OC12/STM4-2 POS IOA	enabled	---		---
1/1	---	---	---	---	---	---
2	online	LM-10 Uplink	enabled	---	7-3-0.re1	2d18h:27m:46s
2/0	present	10GE PR IOA	enabled	---		---
2/1	---	---	---	---	---	---
3	online	LM-4	enabled	---	7-3-0.re1	2d19h:03m:53s
3/0	present	10GE IOA	enabled	---		---
3/1	---	---	---	---	---	---
4	online	LM-10 Uplink	enabled	---	7-3-0.re1	3d01h:24m:39s
4/0	present	10GE PR IOA	enabled	---		---

running

slot	state	type	admin	spare	release	slot uptime
4/1	---	---	---	---	---	---
5	---	---	---	---	---	---
5/0	---	---	---	---	---	---
5/1	---	---	---	---	---	---
6	standby	SRP-320	enabled	---	7-3-0.re1	---
6	online	SFM-320	enabled	---	---	3d01h:33m:48s
7	online	SRP-320	enabled	---	7-3-0.re1	3d01h:34m:04s
7	online	SFM-320	enabled	---	---	3d01h:33m:59s
7/0	present	SRP IOA	enabled	---		---
8	online	SFM-320	enabled	---	---	3d01h:34m:03s
9	online	SFM-320	enabled	---	---	3d01h:33m:50s
10	online	SFM-320	enabled	---	---	3d01h:33m:53s
11	online	LM-4	enabled	---	7-3-0.re1	3d01h:26m:43s
11/0	present	OC12/STM4-2 ATM IOA	enabled	---		---
11/1	---	---	---	---	---	---
12	online	LM-4	enabled	---	7-3-0.re1	2d18h:26m:59s
12/0	present	GE-8 IOA	enabled	---		---



```

12/1 present GE-8 IOA          enabled ---          ---
13  online LM-4                enabled ---  7-3-0.rel  2d18h:17m:34s
13/0 present GE-4 IOA          enabled ---          ---
13/1 ---                      ---          ---          ---          ---
14  online LM-4                enabled ---  7-3-0.rel  3d01h:27m:06s
14/0 ---                      ---          ---          ---          ---
14/1 present OC12/STM4-2 POS IOA enabled ---          ---
15  online LM-4                enabled ---  7-3-0.rel  3d01h:26m:28s
15/0 ---                      ---          ---          ---          ---
15/1 present OC12/STM4-2 ATM IOA enabled ---          ---
16  online LM-4                enabled ---  7-3-0.rel  3d01h:25m:17s
16/0 present OC3/STM1-8 ATM IOA enabled ---          ---
16/1 present OC3/STM1-8 ATM IOA enabled ---          ---

```

■ Example 4—Displays the version of an E120 router

```

host1# show version
Juniper Edge Routing Switch E120
Copyright (c) 1999-2007 Juniper Networks, Inc. All rights reserved.
System Release: 8-2-0b0-9.rel
          Version: 8.2.0 beta-0.9 [BuildId 7030] (April 2, 2007 13:04)
System running for: 1 day, 8 hours, 38 minutes, 0 seconds
              (since MON APR 09 2007 05:57:30 UTC)
              running
slot  state  type  admin  spare  release  slot uptime
-----
0    ---    ---    ---    ---    ---    ---
1    online  LM-10  enabled ---    8-2-0b0-9.rel 1d08h:32m:29s
2    online  LM-10  enabled ---    8-2-0b0-9.rel 1d08h:32m:24s
3    ---    ---    ---    ---    ---    ---
4    ---    ---    ---    ---    ---    ---
5    ---    ---    ---    ---    ---    ---
6    online  SRP-120 enabled ---    8-2-0b0-9.rel 1d08h:34m:46s
6    online  SFM-120 enabled ---    ---    1d08h:34m:45s
7    standby SRP-120 enabled ---    8-2-0b0-9.rel ---
7    online  SFM-120 enabled ---    ---    1d08h:34m:35s
8    online  SFM-120 enabled ---    ---    1d07h:31m:04s
9    online  SFM-120 enabled ---    ---    1d08h:34m:26s
10   online  SFM-120 enabled ---    ---    1d08h:34m:30s

```

■ Example 5—Displays the version of an E120 router using the **all** keyword

```

host1# show version all
Juniper Edge Routing Switch E120
Copyright (c) 1999-2007 Juniper Networks, Inc. All rights reserved.
System Release: 8-2-0b0-9.rel
          Version: 8.2.0 beta-0.9 [BuildId 7030] (April 2, 2007 13:04)
System running for: 1 day, 8 hours, 38 minutes, 6 seconds
              (since MON APR 09 2007 05:57:30 UTC)
              running

```

slot	state	type	admin	spare	release	slot uptime
0	---	---	---	---	---	---
0/0	---	---	---	---	---	---
0/1	---	---	---	---	---	---
1	online	LM-10	enabled	---	8-2-0b0-9.rel	1d08h:32m:35s
1/0	---	---	---	---	---	---
1/1	present	GE-8 IOA	enabled	---	---	---
2	online	LM-10	enabled	---	8-2-0b0-9.rel	1d08h:32m:29s
2/0	---	---	---	---	---	---
2/1	present	GE-8 IOA	enabled	---	---	---
3	---	---	---	---	---	---
3/0	---	---	---	---	---	---
3/1	---	---	---	---	---	---
4	online	LM-10S	enabled	---	10-1-0b1-6-A.rel	2d19h:29m:47s
4/0	---	---	---	---	---	---
4/1	present	GE-8 IOA	enabled	---	---	---
5	---	---	---	---	---	---
5/0	---	---	---	---	---	---
5/1	---	---	---	---	---	---
6	online	SRP-120	enabled	---	8-2-0b0-9.rel	1d08h:34m:51s
6	online	SFM-120	enabled	---	---	1d08h:34m:51s
6/0	present	SRP IOA	enabled	---	---	---
7	standby	SRP-120	enabled	---	8-2-0b0-9.rel	---
7	online	SFM-120	enabled	---	---	1d08h:34m:41s
8	online	SFM-120	enabled	---	---	1d07h:31m:09s
9	online	SFM-120	enabled	---	---	1d08h:34m:32s
10	online	SFM-120	enabled	---	---	1d08h:34m:36s

- See show version.

## Chapter 6

# Managing Modules

This chapter describes how to manage line modules, switch route processor (SRP) modules, switch fabric modules (SFMs), I/O modules, and I/O adapters (IOAs) in E Series routers.

This chapter contains the following sections:

- Overview on page 349
- Platform Considerations on page 350
- Disabling and Reenabling Line Modules, SRP Modules, and SFMs on page 354
- Disabling and Reenabling IOAs on page 356
- Removing an SRP Module on page 357
- Replacing Line Modules on ERX Routers, the E120 Router, and the E320 Router on page 358
- Replacing IOAs on the E120 Router and the E320 Router on page 362
- Software Compatibility on page 366
- Configuring Performance Rate of Line Modules on ERX7xx Models and the ERX1410 Router on page 367
- Managing Flash Cards on SRP Modules on page 373
- Updating the Router with JUNOS Hotfix Files on page 387
- Managing the Ethernet Port on the SRP Module on page 397
- Enabling Warm Restart Diagnostics on Modules on page 400
- Ignoring Diagnostic Test Failures on page 402
- Monitoring Modules on page 403

## Overview

---

When managing modules, you need to consider both software and hardware procedures. For example, before you remove an SRP module, you must enter the **halt** command to prevent damage to nonvolatile storage (NVS).

This chapter describes the software issues associated with managing modules. Each section in the chapter covers a different topic; where appropriate, a section contains an overview of the topic, configuration tasks, and information about monitoring the associated settings.

## Platform Considerations

---

Procedures for managing modules vary depending on the type of E Series router that you have. The following sections describe the types of modules that you can manage for each type of E Series router and the general software procedures associated with them.

### ***ERX7xx Models, ERX14xx Models, and the ERX310 Broadband Services Router***

You can manage line modules, I/O modules, and SRP modules on ERX7xx models, ERX14xx models, and the ERX310 router. For more information about these modules, see the *ERX Module Guide*.

For information about upgrading software on SRP modules, see “Installing JUNOS Software” on page 127. For information about related procedures and installing modules, see *ERX Hardware Guide, Chapter 4, Installing Modules*.

#### **Line Modules and I/O Modules**

Most line modules available with these E Series models pair with a corresponding I/O module; however, some line modules do not require a corresponding I/O module. For example, the Service Module (SM) does not have a corresponding I/O module.

By configuring the performance line rate for a line module in the Juniper Networks ERX705, ERX710, and ERX1410 Broadband Services Routers, you can enable the line modules either to operate at full line rate performance or to allow line modules to operate at a rate dependent on the resources available. For more information, see “Configuring Performance Rate of Line Modules on ERX7xx Models and the ERX1410 Router” on page 367.

The Juniper Networks ERX1440 Broadband Services Router has two turbo slots (numbered 2 and 4). You can install certain line modules in the turbo slots to achieve greater line rate performance than when the modules are installed in other slots. For more information, see *JUNOS Physical Layer Configuration Guide*.

Redundancy is supported for some line modules on these models. For more information, see *SRP Module Redundancy* in *JUNOS Service Availability Guide*.

For more information about interface types and specifiers for ERX7xx models, ERX14xx models, and the ERX310 router, see Interface Types and Specifiers in *JUNOS Command Reference Guide*.

#### **SRP Modules**

If you want to configure the performance line rate for a line module on supported routers, you must consider the bandwidth requirements of the SRP module that is installed on the router. For more information, see “Configuring Performance Rate of Line Modules on ERX7xx Models and the ERX1410 Router” on page 367.

Redundancy is supported for SRP modules on certain E Series routers; for more information, see *SRP Module Redundancy* in *JUNOS Service Availability Guide*.

SRP modules have a corresponding SRP I/O module that contains a Fast Ethernet management port. You can configure this port to access the router from a Telnet session or SNMP. For more information, see “Managing the Ethernet Port on the SRP Module” on page 397 .

For information about using high availability mode for stateful SRP switchover, see “Managing Modules” on page 349.

## **E120 and E320 Broadband Services Routers**

You can manage line modules, SRP modules, SFMs, and IOAs on the E120 and E320 routers. For more information about these modules, see the *E120 and E320 Module Guide*.

For information about related procedures and installing modules, see *E120 and E320 Hardware Guide, Chapter 4, Installing Modules*. For information about upgrading software on SRP modules, see the *E120 and E320 Hardware Guide*.

### **Line Modules and IOAs**

Line modules on the E120 and E320 routers act as frameforwarding engines for the physical interfaces, which are the IOAs.

You cannot configure the performance line rate of line modules for E120 and E320 Routers. Redundancy is supported for line modules on this router. For more information, see *Line Module Redundancy in JUNOS Service Availability Guide*.

On the E120 router, line modules can be installed in slots 0–5. On the E320 router, line modules can be installed in slots 0–5 and 11–16. Both the E120 and E320 routers have two turbo slots, numbered 2 and 4. When a line module is installed in a turbo slot, it spans slots 2–3 and 4–5. The bandwidth of slot 3 or slot 5 is used for a line module in slot 2 or slot 4 if that line module requires the turbo slot.



**NOTE:** If a line module is installed in slot 3 or slot 5, and the line module in slot 2 or 4 requires bandwidth, the system configures the line module it detects first. The state of the other line module is displayed as disabled (cfg error).

---

The 100 Gbps switch fabric that is available with the SRP 100 on the E320 router allocates 3.4 Gbps of overall bandwidth to each regular line module slot and 10 Gbps of overall bandwidth to each of the turbo slots. With a 100 Gbps fabric configuration, you must install the ES2 10G Uplink LM in the turbo slots. For more information, see *JUNOS Physical Layer Configuration Guide*.

The 120 Gbps switch fabric on the E120 router allocates 10 Gbps of overall bandwidth to each line module slot. Similarly, the 320 Gbps switch fabric on the E320 router allocates 10 Gbps of overall bandwidth to each line module slot. For both configurations, you can install any line module in any of the slots.

A line module on the E120 and E320 routers can accommodate one full-height IOA or up to two half-height IOAs per slot. In the software, adapter 0 identifies the right

IOA bay (E120 router) and the upper IOA bay (E320 router); adapter 1 identifies the left IOA bay (E120 router) and the lower IOA bay (E320 router).

You can configure the slot by using the command-line interface (CLI), as well as the individual IOAs. For example, if you want to disable the line module installed in slot 3, issue the **slot disable 3** command. If you want to disable the IOA in the upper bay or left bay of slot 3, issue the **adapter disable 3/0** command. Table 37 on page 352 lists the IOA bay values that you use to manage half-height and full-height IOAs.

For some IOAs, issuing the **adapter disable 3/0** command reboots the line module. Modules that support hot-swapping enable you to remove and add an IOA in a slot without rebooting the line module. If the slot is populated with another active IOA, it continues to operate.

Depending on the IOA type, you can manage IOAs from certain slots or bays. Table 37 on page 352 lists the IOA management information, including valid IOA combinations and hot-swapping support.

**Table 37: IOA Management Information**

IOA		Right Bay (E120) Upper Bay (E320) (Adapter 0)	Left Bay (E120) Lower Bay (E320) (Adapter 1)	Both Bays Concurrently	Combined with Other IOAs in Same Slot	Hot-Swapping Support
ES2-S1	GE-4	Yes	Yes	No	No	Yes
ES2-S1	GE-8	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes (GE-8 when paired with ES2 4G LM or ES2 10G LM; GE-8, OC3/STM1, and OC12/STM4 IOAs when paired with ES2 4G LM)	Yes
ES2-S3	GE-20	Yes (Full-height IOA)	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable	No
ES2-S1	10GE	Yes (Full-height IOA)	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable	No
ES2-S2	10GE PR	Yes (Full-height IOA)	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable	No

**Table 37: IOA Management Information** (continued)

IOA	Right Bay (E120) Upper Bay (E320) (Adapter 0)	Left Bay (E120) Lower Bay (E320) (Adapter 1)	Both Bays Concurrently	Combined with Other IOAs in Same Slot	Hot-Swapping Support
ES2-S1 OC3-8 STM1 ATM	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes (GE-8, OC3/STM1, and OC12/STM4 IOAs only)	Yes
ES2-S1 OC12-2 STM4 ATM	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes (GE-8, OC3/STM1, and OC12/STM4 IOAs only)	Yes
ES2-S1 OC12-2 STM4 POS	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes (GE-8, OC3/STM1, and OC12/STM4 IOAs only)	Yes
ES2-S1 OC48 STM16 POS	Yes	Yes	No	No	Yes
ES2-S1 Service	Yes  (Full-height IOA)	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable	No
ES2-S1 Redund	Yes  (Full-height IOA; slots 0 and 11 only)	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable	No
ES2-SRP IOA	Yes	Yes	Not applicable	Not applicable	Yes

For more information about interface types and specifiers for the E120 and E320 routers, see Interface Types and Specifiers in *JUNOS Command Reference Guide*.

### SRP Modules and SFMs

The router accommodates up to two SRP modules and three SFMs that act as an integrated system controller (SC) and switch fabric system. The SC is located on the SRP modules; the router's switch fabric is distributed between the SRP modules and SFMs. The switch fabric is divided into fabric slices; each SRP module and SFM has a resident fabric slice. At least four of the five possible fabric slices must be installed for the E120 and the E320 routers to operate.

You can configure the E120 router with a 320 Gbps fabric by installing SRP 120 modules and SFM 120 modules, or SRP 320 modules and SFM 320 modules.

You can configure the E320 router with a 100 Gbps fabric by installing SRP 100 modules and SFM 100 modules. To achieve increased switch fabric capacity and speed, you can configure the E320 router with a 320 Gbps fabric by installing SRP 320 modules and SFM 320 modules.

You can configure the SC and the fabric slices on the SRP modules separately. For example, if you disable the fabric slice on the standby SRP module by using the **slot disable 7 fabric** command, the SC on that SRP module is still enabled.

Redundancy is supported for SRP modules on the E120 and E320 routers. For more information, see *SRP Module Redundancy* in *JUNOS Service Availability Guide*.

SRP modules on the E120 and E320 routers have two slots for flash cards; other E Series routers have only a single slot. Cards installed in the second slot can be used only for core dump (.dmp) files. For more information, see “Managing Flash Cards on SRP Modules” on page 373.

SRP modules on the E120 and E320 routers have a corresponding SRP IOA that contains a Fast Ethernet management port. You can configure this port to access the router from the CLI or SNMP. For more information, see “Managing the Ethernet Port on the SRP Module” on page 397 .

For information about using high availability mode for stateful SRP switchover, see “Managing Modules” on page 349.

## Disabling and Reenabling Line Modules, SRP Modules, and SFMs

Disabling a line module, an SRP module, or an SFM has the same effect as removing that module from a slot. A disabled module cannot operate, although its configuration remains in NVS. For the module to operate, you must reenabling it.

### **slot disable**

- Use to disable the module in the specified slot.
- You can use this command to disable a module so that you can run diagnostic tests on the module.
- You cannot use this command on a standby SRP module.
- If you specify a slot on the E120 or E320 router that contains an SRP module, you disable the SC subsystem on that slot by default. You do not, however, disable the fabric slice that resides on the slot.
  - Use the **srp** keyword to disable only the portion of the SC subsystem that resides on a specified SRP module.
  - Use the **fabric** keyword to disable only the fabric slice that resides on the specified SRP module.
- If you specify a slot that contains a line module, you disable only the line module; you do not disable the line module and the I/O modules and IOAs associated



with it. To disable a specific IOA on the E120 or E320 Router, issue “adapter disable” on page 356 command.

- Example 1—Disables the module in slot 3

```
host1(config)#slot disable 3
```

- Example 2—Disables the SRP module and the SC subsystem in slot 7 (applies only to the E120 and E320 routers)

```
host1(config)#slot disable 7
```

- Example 3—Disables only the fabric slice on the SRP module in slot 7 (applies only to E120 and E320 routers)

```
host1(config)#slot disable 7 fabric
```

- There is no **no** version.
- See slot disable.

### **slot enable**

- Use to enable the module in the specified slot.
- Allows you to restart the module that was installed in the slot.
- You cannot use this command on a standby SRP module.
- If you specify a slot on the E120 or E320 Broadband Services Routers that contains an SRP module, you enable the SC subsystem on that slot by default. You do not, however, enable the fabric slice that resides on the slot.
  - Use the **srp** keyword to enable only the portion of the SC subsystem that resides on a specified SRP module.
  - Use the **fabric** keyword to enable only the fabric slice that resides on the specified SRP module.
- If you specify a slot that contains a line module, you enable only the line module; you do not enable the line module and the I/O modules and IOAs associated with it. To enable a specific IOA on the E120 or E320 Broadband Services Routers, use “adapter enable” on page 356 command.
- The default is enable.
- Example 1—Enables the module in slot 3

```
host1(config)#slot enable 3
```

- Example 2—Enables the SRP module and the SC subsystem in slot 7 (applies only to E120 and E320 routers)

```
host1(config)#slot enable 7
```

- Example 3—Enables only the fabric slice on the SRP module in slot 7 (applies only to E120 and E320 routers)

```
host1(config)#slot enable 7 fabric
```

- There is no **no** version.
- See slot enable.

## Disabling and Reenabling IOAs

---

Disabling an IOA on the E120 or E320 router has the same effect as removing that IOA from a slot. A disabled IOA cannot operate, although its configuration remains in NVS. To allow the IOA to operate, you must reenabling it.

### **adapter disable**

- Use to disable the IOA in the specified IOA bay.
- You can use this command to disable an IOA so that you can run diagnostic tests on it.
- On IOAs that support hot-swapping, issuing this command does not reboot the line module. On unsupported IOAs, issuing this command does reboot the line module associated with the IOA, but does not disable the line module. Issue the **slot disable** command to disable the line module. For a list of IOAs that support hot-swapping, see Table 37 on page 352.
- When you issue the **adapter disable** command in a redundancy configuration, the line module (primary or spare) currently associated with that IOA is rebooted. If the IOA is protected by a line module redundancy group, an automatic line module redundancy switchover or revert can be triggered by the line module reboot. To prevent undesired line module redundancy actions, issue the **redundancy lockout** command for the primary line module slot before issuing the **adapter disable** command. For more information, see *Line Module Redundancy* in *JUNOS Services Availability Configuration Guide*.
- In the software, adapter 0 identifies the right IOA bay (E120 router) and the upper IOA bay (E320 router); adapter 1 identifies the left IOA bay (E120 router) and the lower IOA bay (E320 router).
- Example—Disables the IOA residing in the upper bay of slot 5 in an E320 router

```
host1(config)#adapter disable 5/0
```

- There is no **no** version.
- See adapter disable.

### **adapter enable**

- Use to enable the IOA in the specified IOA bay.
- Enables you to restart the IOA that was installed in the slot.
- The default is enable.
- On IOAs that support hot-swapping, issuing this command does not reboot the line module. On unsupported IOAs, issuing this command reboots the line module associated with the IOA, but does not enable the line module. Issue the **slot**

**enable** command to enable the line module. For a list of IOAs that support hot-swapping, see Table 37 on page 352.

- When you issue the **adapter enable** command in a redundancy configuration, the line module (primary or spare) currently associated with that IOA is rebooted. If the IOA is protected by a line module redundancy group, an automatic line module redundancy switchover or revert can be triggered by the line module reboot. To prevent undesired line module redundancy actions, issue the **redundancy lockout** command for the primary line module slot before issuing the **adapter enable** command. For more information, see *Line Module Redundancy in JUNOS Services Availability Configuration Guide*.
- In the software, adapter 0 identifies the right IOA bay (E120 router) and the upper IOA bay (E320 router); adapter 1 identifies the left IOA bay (E120 router) and the lower IOA bay (E320 router).
- Example—Enables the IOA residing in the upper bay of slot 5 in an E320 router  

```
host1(config)#adapter enable 5/0
```
- There is no **no** version.
- See adapter enable.

## Removing an SRP Module

Before you remove an SRP module, you must issue the **halt** command, which stops operation on that module. If the router contains both primary and redundant SRP modules, you can specify which modules the command should affect. You can also configure the router to prompt you when the modules are in a state that might lead to loss of configuration data or NVS corruption.



**CAUTION:** If you do not use the **halt** command before removing or powering down an SRP module, the router's NVS may become corrupted.

For information about physically removing an SRP module, see *ERX Hardware Guide, Chapter 4, Installing Modules*.

### **halt**

- Use to stop the router's operation before you remove or power down an SRP module
- The following guidelines apply when you issue the **halt** command in Privileged Exec mode:
  - Specify neither the **primary-srp** nor the **standby-srp** keyword to stop operation on both SRP modules.
  - Specify the keyword **primary-srp** to stop operation on the primary SRP module only. This action causes the redundant SRP module to assume the primary role.

- Specify the keyword **standby-srp** to stop operation on the redundant SRP module only.
- If you do not specify the **force** keyword, the procedure fails if:
  - The SRP modules are in certain states, such as during a synchronization. In these cases, the router will display a message that indicates that the procedure cannot currently be performed and the reason why. However, if the SRP modules are in other states that could lead to a loss of configuration data or NVS corruption, the router displays a message that explains the state of the SRP modules and asks you to confirm (enter yes or no) whether you want to proceed.
  - The SRP modules are in any state that could lead to loss of configuration data or NVS corruption, and the router will display a message that explains why the command failed.
- In Boot mode, you cannot issue any keywords with this command.
- When the high availability state is active or pending, this command ensures that the router configuration, up to when you issued the **halt** command, is mirrored to the standby SRP.
- When you issue this command, the router prompts you for a confirmation before the procedure starts.
- Remove or power down the SRP module within 2 minutes of executing the **halt** command. Otherwise, the SRP module will automatically reboot.
- Examples
 

```
host1#halt
host1#halt primary-srp
host1#halt standby-srp force
```
- There is no **no** version.
- See **halt**.

## Replacing Line Modules on ERX Routers, the E120 Router, and the E320 Router

You can install line modules in slots previously occupied by different types of line modules. For example, on the ERX1440 router, you can replace a GE-2 line module and a GE-2 SFP I/O module in a slot that previously contained an OCx/STMx/DS3-ATM line module and an OC3-4 I/O module.

When you configure a line module and an I/O module or IOAs, the router stores the configuration in NVS. In some cases, you must erase the interface configuration on the slot and reconfigure it after you have installed the new line module. However, some line modules on E120 and E320 routers enable you to replace the line module without reconfiguring the interfaces on the slot.

On the E120 and E320 routers, you can replace the following line modules:

- ES2 4G LM with ES2 10G ADV LM and vice versa when paired with one of the following IOAs:

- ES2-S1 GE-8 IOA
- ES2-S1 REDUND IOA
- ES2 10G LM with ES2 10G ADV LM and vice versa when paired with one of the following IOAs:
  - ES2-S1 GE-8 IOA
  - ES2-S2 10GE PR IOA
  - ES2-S1 REDUND IOA
- ES2 4G LM with ES2 10G LM and vice versa when paired with one of the following IOAs:
  - ES2-S1 GE-8 IOA
  - ES2-S1 REDUND IOA



**NOTE:** The ES2 10G LM cannot provide backup for a redundancy group that includes one or more ES2 10G ADV LMs. When you replace an ES2 10G ADV LM with an ES2 10G LM and the module is paired with an ES2-S1 Redund IOA, ensure that the provisioned redundancy group does not include an ES2 10G ADV LM.

Tasks to replace a line module are:

- “Replacing a Line Module by Erasing the Slot Configuration” on page 359
- “Replacing a Line Module Without Erasing the Slot Configuration” on page 360

### ***Replacing a Line Module by Erasing the Slot Configuration***

Use this procedure when you must erase the slot configuration to replace line modules on the ERX routers or on E120 and E320 routers.

For information about replacing the ES2 4G LM or an ES2 10G LM without erasing the slot configuration, see “Replacing Line Modules on ERX Routers, the E120 Router, and the E320 Router” on page 358 .

To replace a line module:

1. Copy your slot configuration so you can reconfigure the interfaces after replacing the line module.
2. (Optional) If line module redundancy is configured for the slot, disable redundancy for the slot.

```
host1(config)#redundancy lockout 7
```

3. Disable the slot.

```
host1(config)#slot disable 7
```

4. Remove the current line module and insert the new line module.
5. Issue the **slot accept** command for the affected slot.

```
host1(config)#slot accept 7
```

The **slot accept** command erases the configuration and enables you to reconfigure the new line module.

6. When the replacement line module has come online, reconfigure the interfaces.
7. If you disabled redundancy in Step 2, enable redundancy for the slot when the replacement line module has come online.

```
host1(config)#no redundancy lockout 7
```

### Replacing a Line Module Without Erasing the Slot Configuration

Use this procedure when you are replacing an ES2 4G LM with an ES2 10G LM or an ES2 10G ADV LM, or vice-versa. Both line modules must already be paired with an ES2-S1 GE-8 IOA or the ES2-S1 Redund IOA.

You can also use this procedure when you are replacing ES2 10G LM with ES2 10G ADV LM, or vice-versa. In this case, both the line modules must be paired with any one of the following IOAs:

- ES2-S2 10GE PR IOA
- ES2-S1 10GE PR IOA
- ES2-S1 REDUND IOA

You can replace a single line module or all of the line modules in a redundancy group using this procedure.



**NOTE:** In some cases, the ES2 4G LM and ES2 10G LM support different system maximums and protocols. Before you replace an ES2 4G LM with an ES2 10G LM or ES2 10G ADV LM, make sure that:

- The ES2 10G LM or ES2 10G ADV LM supports the features already configured on the slot for the ES2 4G LM.
- The ES2 10G LM or ES2 10G ADV LM can support the existing system maximums configured on the ES2 4G LM.

If you have a configuration on the ES2 4G LM that is not supported on the ES2 10G LM or ES2 10G ADV LM, you must erase the configuration before replacing the line module. For more information, see “Replacing a Line Module by Erasing the Slot Configuration” on page 359 .

---

To replace a line module without erasing the slot configuration:

1. (Optional) If line module redundancy is configured for the slot, disable redundancy.

```
host1(config)#redundancy lockout 1
```

2. Disable the slot.

```
host1(config)#slot disable 1
```

3. After the line module has booted, issue the **show version** command to ensure that the status of the line module is disabled (admin).

```
host1#show version
```

```
Juniper Edge Routing Switch E120
```

```
.....
```

slot	state	type	admin	spare	running release	slot uptime
0	---	---	---	---	---	---
1	online	LM-10	disabled (admin)	---	9-1-0b0-9.re1	1d08h:32m:29s
2	online	LM-10A-ADV	enabled	---	10-1-0b1-6-A.re1	2d19h:29m:18s
3	---	---	---	---	---	---

```
.....
```

4. Remove the current line module and insert the new line module without removing the IOA.

For example, remove the ES2 4G LM and insert the new ES2 10G LM or ES2 10G ADV LM. Do not remove the ES2-S1 GE-8 IOA or the ES2-S1 Redund IOA.

5. After the new line module has booted, issue the **show version** command to ensure that the status of the line module is disabled (mismatch).

```
host1#show version
```

```
Juniper Edge Routing Switch E120
```

```
.....
```

slot	state	type	admin	spare	running release	slot uptime
0	---	---	---	---	---	---
1	online	LM-4	disabled (mismatch)	---	9-1-0b0-9.re1	1d08h:32m:29s
2	online	LM-10A-ADV	enabled	---	10-1-0b1-6-A.re1	2d19h:29m:18s
3	---	---	---	---	---	---

```
.....
```

6. Issue the **slot replace** command on the slot.

```
host1(config)#slot replace 1
```



**TIP:** If the line module is in a redundancy group and you did not disable redundancy in Step 1, the system switches to the spare line module. The system reloads both the replaced line module and the spare line module when you issue the **slot replace** command.

7. If you disabled redundancy for the slot in Step 1, enable redundancy when the replacement line module has come online.

```
host1(config)#no redundancy lockout 1
```

8. (Optional) If the following settings were configured before replacing the module, reconfigure the settings:
  - a. Configure the Ethernet physical interface configuration using an SNMP set request for entPhysicalAssetID and entPhysicalAlias.
  - b. Specify the threshold values for specific interface types for the slot.

```
host1(config)#resource if-type ip slot 1 threshold
```

- Related Topics**
- redundancy lockout
  - resource if-type
  - slot accept
  - slot replace
  - snmp-server

## Replacing IOAs on the E120 Router and the E320 Router

When you configure an IOA in an IOA bay on the E120 and E320 routers, the router stores the configuration in NVS.

When you replace an IOA that supports hot-swapping with the same type of IOA, the line module goes online immediately. When you replace an IOA that *does not* support hot-swapping with the same type of IOA, the line module reboots.

Before you install an IOA that was previously occupied by another IOA in the E120 or E320 router—for example, an ES2-S1 GE-4 IOA in an IOA bay that previously contained an ES2-S1 OC3-8 STM1 ATM IOA—consider whether the IOA that you are replacing supports hot-swapping. For example:

- When you replace an IOA that does not support hot-swapping, the line module reboots. Before installing the different type of IOA, issue the **adapter erase** or **slot erase** command for the slot that contains the IOA bay.
- When you replace an IOA that supports hot-swapping, the line module becomes inactive with a “mismatch” state. After installing the different type of IOA, issue the **adapter accept** command or the **slot erase** command for the slot that contains the IOA bay.



## Replacing SRP Modules and SFMs

If you remove a standby SRP module or an SFM, you must issue the **slot erase** command to delete the configuration. If you fail to issue the **slot erase** command, then the E Series router cannot guarantee that the SRP modules were synchronized. In this situation, the E Series router does not properly execute a simple **reload** command.

To reload the router you must do either of the following:

- Issue the **reload force** command.
- Issue the **slot erase** command followed by the **reload** command.

If you perform one of the following actions, you must reset the configuration of the router to factory default:

- Replace a 5-Gbps SRP module with a 10-Gbps SRP module or vice versa.
- Transfer an SRP module from an ERX7xx router to a Juniper Networks ERX1410 router or vice versa.

You cannot use the **slot accept** command to force the router to accept the new SRP module.

When you have installed the SRP module in the new location, reset the configuration of the router to factory defaults as follows:

1. Reload the operating router, then press mb key sequence (case-insensitive) during the countdown.

```
host1#reload
```

2. Reboot the router with the factory defaults.

```
:boot##boot config factory-defaults
```

3. Reload the operating router.

```
:boot##reload
```

For more information about the **reload** and **boot config** commands, see “Booting the System” on page 507.

### **adapter accept**

- Use to delete the configuration of the IOA in the specified IOA bay after you install a different type of IOA.
- This command enables you to create a fresh configuration for the module installed in the IOA bay.
- You can also use this command to accept an empty IOA bay that was previously occupied.

- Issuing this command reboots the line module associated with the IOA, but it does not erase the line module's configuration. To erase the configuration of the line module and its associated IOAs, issue "slot accept" on page 364 command.
- Issuing this command erases the interfaces associated with the specified IOA. To erase the interfaces for both IOAs installed in a slot, issue the **slot accept** command.
- Depending on the previous configuration of the slot, the system might take a few moments to execute this command.
- Example—Accepting the IOA in the upper bay of slot 5 in an E320 router

```
host1(config)#adapter accept 5/0
```

- There is no **no** version.
- See adapter accept.

### **adapter erase**

- Use to delete the configuration of the specified IOA in the specified IOA bay before you install a different type of IOA.
- This command enables you to create a fresh configuration for the IOA to be installed in the IOA bay.
- Issuing this command reboots the line module associated with the IOA, but it does not erase the line module's configuration. To erase the configuration of the line module and its associated IOAs, issue "slot erase" on page 365 command.
- Issuing this command erases the interfaces associated with the specified IOA. To erase the interfaces for both IOAs installed in a slot, issue the **slot erase** command.
- Example—Erasing the IOA in the upper bay of slot 5 in an E320 router

```
host1(config)#adapter erase 5/0
```

- There is no **no** version.
- See adapter erase.

### **slot accept**

- Use to delete the configuration of the module in the selected slot after you install a different type of module.
- This command enables you to create a fresh configuration for the module installed in the slot.
- You can also use this command to accept an empty slot that was previously occupied.
- You cannot use this command on a primary SRP module; however, you can use it on a standby SRP module.
- You can use this command only when the state of the module in the slot is not present or disabled (mismatch).

- If you specify a slot on an E120 or E320 router that contains an SRP module, you accept the configuration of the SC subsystem on that slot by default. You do not, however, accept the configuration of the fabric slice that resides on the slot.
  - Use the **srp** keyword to accept only the configuration of the portion of the SC subsystem that resides on a specified SRP module.
  - Use the **fabric** keyword to accept only the configuration of the fabric slice that resides on the specified SRP module.
- If you specify a slot that contains a line module, you erase the configuration of the line module and the I/O modules or IOAs associated with it. To erase the configuration of a specific IOA on the E120 or E320 router, use “adapter accept” on page 363 command.
- Depending on the slot’s previous configuration, the router might take a few moments to execute this command.
- The following is a sample log message resulting from putting an OC3 line module in a slot that was previously configured for a line module:

```
ERROR 02/07/2003 15:16:20 system (slot 3): boardId mismatch: read 0x6 (OC3
dual port without classifier), configured 0x2e (OC12 ATM)
ERX-00-17-04(config)# slot accept 3
Please wait....
ERX-00-17-04(config)#ERROR 02/07/2003 15:16:31 system (slot 3):
unrecognized board type (0x6)
```

To resolve the problem, issue the slot accept command for slot 3.

- Example 1—Accepts the configuration of the module in slot 3
 

```
host1(config)#slot accept 3
```
- Example 2—Accepts the configuration of the specified SRP module and the SC subsystem in slot 7 (applies only to E120 and E320 routers)
 

```
host1(config)#slot accept 7
```
- Example 3—Accepts the configuration of the SC on the SRP module in slot 7 (applies only to E120 and E320 routers)
 

```
host1(config)#slot accept 7 srp
```
- There is no **no** version.
- See slot accept.

### **slot erase**

- Use to delete the configuration of the module in the selected slot before you install a different type of module.
- This command enables you to create a fresh configuration for the module installed in the slot.

- You cannot use this command on a primary SRP module; however, you can use it on a standby SRP module.
- If you specify a slot on the E120 or E320 router that contains an SRP module, you erase the configuration of the SC subsystem on that slot by default. You do not, however, erase the configuration of the fabric slice that resides on the slot.
  - Use the **srp** keyword to erase only the configuration of the portion of the SC subsystem that resides on a specified SRP module.
  - Use the **fabric** keyword to erase only the configuration of the fabric slice that resides on the specified SRP module.
- If you specify a slot that contains a line module, you erase the configuration of the line module and the I/O modules or IOAs associated with it. To erase the configuration of a specific IOA on the E120 or E320 router, use “adapter erase” on page 364 command.
- Example 1—Erases the configuration of the module in slot 3

```
host1(config)#slot erase 3
```

- Example 2—Erases the configuration of the specified SRP module and the SC subsystem in slot 7 (applies only to E120 and E320 routers)

```
host1(config)#slot erase 7
```

- Example 3—Erases the configuration of the SC on the SRP module in slot 7 (applies only to E120 and E320 routers)

```
host1(config)#slot erase 7 srp
```

- There is no **no** version.
- See slot erase.

## Software Compatibility

---

An E Series software release supports a specific set of line modules and associated I/O modules or IOAs. Before you install a new line module, I/O module, or IOA, you should install a software release that supports the new module.

### Line Modules

If the router uses a software version that does not support a line module that you install, you see the message unrecognized board type, and the router disables the module. When you issue a **show version** command, the state of the line module is disabled (admin).

If you subsequently boot the router with software that supports the line module, the line module becomes available and its state is enabled.

## I/O Modules and IOAs

If the router uses a software version that does not support an I/O module or IOA that you install, the I/O module or IOA will be unavailable, and you will not be able to upgrade the software on the router. To upgrade the software:

1. Remove the I/O module or IOA.
2. Reboot the line module that corresponds to this I/O module or IOA. See “Booting the System” on page 507.
3. When the line module has rebooted, install the I/O module or IOA.
4. Upgrade the software on the router. See “Installing JUNOS Software” on page 127.

## Configuring Performance Rate of Line Modules on ERX7xx Models and the ERX1410 Router



**NOTE:** The information in this section does not apply to the ERX1440, ERX310, E120, or E320 router. It also does not apply to the OC48 line module, which is supported only by the ERX1440 router.

Line modules in an ERX1440 or an ERX310 router always operate at line rate performance. However, you can configure ERX7xx models and the Juniper Networks ERX1410 Broadband Services Router to enable the line modules either to operate at full line rate performance or to allow line modules to operate at a rate dependent on the resources available.

Operating at full line rate performance restricts the combination of line modules in the router. Operating at a rate dependent on the resources available allows a much more extensive combination of line modules in the router and is known as *bandwidth oversubscription*.

To configure performance:

1. Choose a combination of line modules appropriate for the performance. See “Choosing a Combination of Line Modules” on page 367.
2. Disable slots that contain unwanted line modules, or modify the combination of line modules in the router. See “Disabling and Reenabling Line Modules, SRP Modules, and SFMs” on page 354, and *ERX Hardware Guide, Chapter 4, Installing Modules*.
3. Specify the type of performance. See “Specifying the Type of Performance” on page 371.

### Choosing a Combination of Line Modules

For line rate performance, the total bandwidth required by the line modules in the slot group must not exceed the bandwidth available from the SRP module. In this

case, the combination of line modules that can reside in a slot group depends on the following:

- The number of slots per group
- The bandwidth available from the SRP module
- The bandwidth required by each line module
- In the case of the SRP-5G + and SRP-10G modules, the switches (upper and lower) that the line module can use.

### Slot Groups

The number of slots in a group depends on the E Series model. For information about slot groups, see *ERX Hardware Guide, Chapter 4, Installing Modules*.

### SRP Modules Bandwidth

Different SRP modules offer different bandwidths:

- The SRP-10G module provides 2.5 Gbps bandwidth per slot group.
- The SRP-5G + module (ERX705 router only) provides:
  - 2.5 Gbps bandwidth per slot group
  - 5 Gbps bandwidth per router

### Line Modules Bandwidth and Switch Usage

The SRP-5G + and SRP-10G modules comprise two switches; each switch provides 50 percent of the bandwidth.

The line modules in a slot group cannot operate at line rate if:

- The sum of their bandwidths exceeds the bandwidth that the SRP module can supply per slot group.
- The sum of the bandwidths they require from one SRP switch exceeds the bandwidth that the SRP switch can supply per slot group.

Table 38 on page 368 shows the bandwidth that each line module requires for line rate performance and the switches that the line module can use on the SRP-5G + and SRP-10G modules.

**Table 38: Bandwidth Statistics for Line Modules**

Line Module	Total Bandwidth Required (Gbps)	Switches Used on SRP-5G+ and SRP-10G Modules
cOCx/STMx	2.46	Both switches
COCX-F3	2.46	Both switches

**Table 38: Bandwidth Statistics for Line Modules** *(continued)*

Line Module	Total Bandwidth Required (Gbps)	Switches Used on SRP-5G+ and SRP-10G Modules
CT3/T3-F0	2.46	Both switches
GE/FE	2.46	Both switches
IPSec Service	2.46	Both switches
OC3/STM1 GE/FE	2.46	Both switches
OCx/STMx ATM	1.22	Both switches
OCx/STMx POS	2.46	Both switches

### Allowed Combinations for Line Rate Performance

The SRP-5G+ and SRP-10G modules support all the line modules listed in Table 38 on page 368.

Only certain combinations of line modules allow line rate performance (see Table 39 on page 370 through Table 41 on page 370). However, if performance lower than line rate is acceptable, you can use any combination of line modules in a slot group.

For example, the SRP-10G module offers a total bandwidth of 2.5 Gbps for each slot group. The GE line module requires 2.46 Mbps bandwidth for operation at line rate, and can use both switches in the SRP-10G module. If you require line rate from a GE line module, install only one GE line module in the slot group. However, if lower performance is acceptable, you can install two or three GE line modules in a slot group and enable bandwidth oversubscription.

When bandwidth oversubscription is enabled, all line modules optimize use of the resources available. For example, if two GE line modules are installed in a slot group, each line module is allocated 50 percent of the available bandwidth. However, if one line module is using less bandwidth than it is allocated, the other line module can use more bandwidth than it is allocated and can operate at a greater rate.

Table 39 on page 370, Table 40 on page 370, and Table 41 on page 370 indicate combinations of line modules that allow line rate performance.

**Table 39: Combinations of Line Modules for Line Rate Performance—SRP-10G Module in an ERX7xx Model**

Possible Combinations of Line Modules	Examples of Allowed Combinations	Examples of Forbidden Combinations
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>One supported line module and one empty slot in slot group 1 <b>NOTE:</b> The SRP-10G module supports all line modules listed in Table 38 on page 368.</li> <li>Two OCx/STMx ATM line modules in slot group 1</li> <li>One supported line module in slot groups 2, 3 and 4</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>One OCx/STMx POS line module in slot group 1, a GE/FE line module in slot group 2, and one OCx/STMx ATM line module in slot group 4</li> <li>Two OCx/STMx ATM line modules in slot group 1, one GE/FE line module in slot group 2, and one SM in slot group 3</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A GE/FE line module and any other line module in slot group 1</li> <li>Two OCx/STMx POS line modules in slot group 1</li> </ul>

**Table 40: Combinations of Line Modules for Line Rate Performance—SRP-10G Module in an ERX1410 Router**

Possible Combinations of Line Modules	Examples of Allowed Combinations	Examples of Forbidden Combinations
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>One supported line module and two empty slots in any slot group <b>NOTE:</b> The SRP-10G module supports all line modules listed in Table 38 on page 368.</li> <li>Two OCx/STMx ATM line modules and one GE/FE module and one empty slot in any slot group (bandwidth oversubscription enabled)</li> <li>One OC3/STM1 GE/FE module in any slot (bandwidth oversubscription disabled)</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>One COCX-F3 line module in slot group 1, a GE/FE line module in slot group 2, and a OCx/STMx POS line module in slot group 3</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Three OCx/STMx ATM line modules in any slot group</li> <li>Two GE/FE line modules in any slot group</li> </ul>

**Table 41: Combinations of Line Modules for Line Rate Performance—SRP-5G+ Module in an ERX705 Router**

Possible Combinations of Line Modules In Slot Groups	Examples of Allowed Combinations	Examples of Forbidden Combinations
<p><b>NOTE:</b> The total bandwidth of all line modules must not exceed 5 Gbps. To make optimal use of the available bandwidth, put line modules that require maximum bandwidth in slot 2, 3, or 4.</p>		



**Table 41: Combinations of Line Modules for Line Rate Performance—SRP-5G+ Module in an ERX705 Router** (continued)

Possible Combinations of Line Modules In Slot Groups	Examples of Allowed Combinations	Examples of Forbidden Combinations
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>One supported line module and one empty slot in slot group 1 <b>NOTE:</b> The SRP-5G+ module supports all line modules listed in Table 38 on page 368.</li> <li>Two OCx/STMx ATM line modules in slot group 1</li> <li>One cOCx/STMx, COCX-F3, CT3/T3 FO, GE/FE, IPSec Service, or OCx/STMx line module in slot groups 2, 3, and 4</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Two OCx/STMx ATM line modules (total 2.44 Gbps) in slot group 1, and a GE/FE line module (2.46 Gbps) in slot group 4</li> <li>Two OCx/STMx ATM line modules (total 2.44 Gbps) in slot group 1, and a COCX-F3 line module in slot group 2</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Two OCx/STMx ATM line modules (total 2.44 Gbps) in slot group 1, a GE/FE line module (2.46 Gbps) in slot group 3, and an OCx/STMx POS line module (2.46 Gbps) in slot 4 (violates chassis limitation)</li> <li>Two OCx/STMx POS line modules (total 4.92 Gbps) in slot group 1 (violates slot group limitation)</li> </ul>

## Specifying the Type of Performance

After you have installed a suitable combination of line modules, you can specify a different type of performance. To specify the type of performance:

1. Issue the **show bandwidth oversubscription** command.
2. If the setting is not the one you want, enable or disable bandwidth oversubscription.
3. Reboot the router.

### bandwidth oversubscription

- Use to enable bandwidth oversubscription for an ERX7xx model or ERX1410 router. Reboot the router after you have issued this command to change the bandwidth oversubscription status.
- By default, bandwidth oversubscription is enabled.
- Example  

```
host1(config)#bandwidth oversubscription
```
- Use the **no** version to disable bandwidth oversubscription. Reboot the router after you have issued this command to change the bandwidth oversubscription status.
- See bandwidth oversubscription.

## Monitoring Bandwidth Oversubscription

Use the **show bandwidth oversubscription** and **show utilization** (see “Monitoring Modules” on page 403) commands to monitor the status of bandwidth oversubscription.

**show bandwidth oversubscription**

- Use to display the bandwidth oversubscription status for an ERX7xx model or ERX1410 router.
- Example 1: This example shows the display when bandwidth oversubscription is enabled.

```
host1#show bandwidth oversubscription
Bandwidth oversubscription is currently in effect.
```

- Example 2: This example shows the display that appears after you issue the **no bandwidth oversubscription** command to disable bandwidth oversubscription.

```
host1#no bandwidth oversubscription
host1#show bandwidth oversubscription
Bandwidth oversubscription is currently in effect.
Bandwidth oversubscription will not be in effect the next time the system
reboots.
```

- Example 3: This example shows the display when bandwidth oversubscription is disabled.

```
host1#show bandwidth oversubscription
Bandwidth oversubscription is currently not in effect.
```

- Example 4: This example shows the display that appears after you issue the **bandwidth oversubscription** command to enable bandwidth oversubscription.

```
host1#bandwidth oversubscription
host1#show bandwidth oversubscription
Bandwidth oversubscription is currently not in effect.
Bandwidth oversubscription will be in effect the next time the system
reboots.
```

- See show bandwidth oversubscription.

**Troubleshooting Bandwidth Oversubscription**

If you enter a forbidden combination of line modules or exceed the slot group bandwidth when you have not configured bandwidth oversubscription, you will see an error message.

For example, suppose you originally configure the router for bandwidth oversubscription and then want to change to full line rate performance. You forget to remove line modules or disable slots, and enter the **no bandwidth oversubscription** command. The following message appears:

```
host1(config)#no bandwidth oversubscription
% failed : bandwidth over subscribed at slot 0-2
```

To resolve the problem, remove the unwanted line modules, or disable the slots that contain those line modules.

## Managing Flash Cards on SRP Modules

---

Each SRP module contains a flash card that stores system files. On the E120 and E320 routers, each SRP module can have an additional flash card; the second card is reserved for the storage of core dumps.

In this documentation, the flash card on the primary SRP module is referred to as the primary flash card; the flash card on the redundant SRP module is referred to as the redundant flash card.

If you have two SRP modules installed in a router, you can use flash cards of different capacities on the SRP modules. The effective capacity of the higher-capacity flash card equals that of the lower-capacity flash card.

### Flash Features

The software contains a number of features that optimize the way the router restores its configuration if it is shut down improperly:

- The router tracks improper shutdowns.
- After an improper shutdown, the router runs an investigation of the file allocation table (FAT) the next time it reboots.
- The router creates backups of critical files.
- When you install a new flash card or restart the router after shutting it down incorrectly, a utility scans the flash card to detect corrupt sectors. If the utility finds files or directories that contain corrupt sectors, it removes the files and directories, because they can no longer be used. The utility also fixes problems with unused sectors. If the utility cannot correct a corrupt sector, it marks the sectors so that they cannot be reused. Errors in the boot block, FAT, or root directory are fatal and cannot be corrected by the scan utility.
- In a router that contains two SRP modules, if the scanning utility detects corrupt sectors in flash on the primary SRP module during rebooting, the primary SRP module reboots again. Both SRP modules now have standby status and reboot. The first SRP module to complete rebooting becomes the primary. Because the former redundant module started to reboot first, it likely becomes the primary. When the former primary module has rebooted and the scan utility has fixed corrupt sectors in its flash card, the SRP modules will synchronize. Any files or directories removed by the scan utility are restored during the synchronization.
- If you reboot the router before it has completely written configuration updates to the flash card, the router starts with the last saved configuration. If you reboot the router after it has written the configuration updates to the flash card, but before it has applied those updates to actual configuration data, the configuration update process resumes immediately following the reboot and is completed before any application accesses its configuration data.

## Flash Features on the E120 Router and the E320 Router

The E120 and E320 routers can have a second flash card installed with its SRP modules. Device names are reserved for the E120 and E320 routers flash card slots: disk0, disk1, standby-disk0, and standby-disk1. For backward compatibility, you can use the name standby, which is equivalent to standby-disk0. You can use the second card (disk1 or standby-disk1) only for storage of core dump (.dmp) files. When the a card is installed and mounted as disk1 or standby-disk1, all .dmp files are automatically stored on this card. You must use the card mounted as disk0 or standby-disk0 for all other file types. Core dump files are stored on disk0 or standby-disk0 only when a second card is not installed.

The **copy**, **dir**, **delete**, and **rename** commands all recognize the device names, as in the following examples. Disk1 and standby-disk1 accept only dump files. This means that you can copy only .dmp files to the second disk, delete only .dmp files from the second disk, and rename only .dmp files on the second disk.

```
host1#copy reset05.dmp server2:reset05.dmp
host1#copy disk0:051802.dmp server2:reset05.dmp
host1#delete disk1:reset05.dmp
host1#delete standby:reset05.dmp
host1#delete standby-disk0:reset05.dmp
host1#delete standby-disk1:reset05.dmp
host1#rename standby-disk1:foo.dmp standby-disk1:bar.dmp
host1#rename foo.dmp /outgoing/bar.dmp
host1#dir
Please wait...
active/standby file systems are synchronized
```

unshared file	size	size	date (UTC)	in use
-----	-----	-----	-----	---
disk0:reboot.hty	654336	654336	03/01/2005 16:08:28	
disk0:system.log	3644	3644	11/30/2004 20:48:18	
disk0:special.rel	159256660	61695156	02/18/2005 10:31:48	
disk0:lm4_12.dmp	344200394	344200394	02/12/2005 12:12:12	
standby-disk0:lm4_13.dmp	344200394	344200394	02/13/2005 13:13:13	
disk1:lm4_14.dmp	344200394	344200394	02/14/2005 14:14:14	
standby-disk1:lm4_15.dmp	344200394	344200394	02/15/2005 15:15:15	
disk0:boston.scr	833	833	02/22/2005 17:46:18	
disk0:bulkstats.scr	170	170	02/13/2006 17:34:30	
ram:bulkstats1.sts	737	737	03/07/2006 09:07:52	

```

Disk capacity
-----
Device      Capacity      Free      Reserved
  (bytes)    (bytes)    (bytes)
-----
disk0:  1025482752  342066375  68157440
ram:      5767168    5734400    0

```

Because the device names are reserved, if you upgrade from a release where you previously used those names for remote hostnames, an error message appears when you try to use that remote hostname:

```
%ambiguous file name, reserved disk device name "disk1" must be removed from
host table
```

To prevent corruption of flash cards, always issue the **halt** command before you remove an SRP module. See “Removing an SRP Module” on page 357. Issue the **halt** command before you remove a flash card installed as disk 0 or standby disk 0. Flash cards installed and mounted as disk1 or standby disk1 can be safely removed by issuing the **no mount** command for the card and then ejecting the card. Always reboot the router using the rebooting procedure. See “Booting the System” on page 507. Do not reboot the router by switching it off and on.

## Installing and Removing Flash Cards

For information about replacing flash cards, see *ERX Hardware Guide, Chapter 4, Installing Modules*, or *E120 and E320 Hardware Guide, Chapter 4, Installing Modules*.

Before you remove the second flash card (disk1) on the SRP 120 module or the SRP 320 module, you must first unmount the card with the **no mount** command. This command causes the file system to reject all subsequent requests for opening files on the flash card and closes all open files. When this is accomplished, the disk is marked as safely unmounted and a status message indicates that is safe to eject the disk. A status message is displayed when you issue the **mount** or **no mount** command:

- When you issue the **mount** command:
  - % Device is mounted
  - % Device is already mounted
  - % Device is not present
- When you issue the **no mount** command:
  - % Device is dismounted
  - % Device is already dismounted
  - % Device is not present
  - % Command failed, files are open on device



**CAUTION:** When you eject a mounted disk 0 while the router is in an operational state, the SRP module initiates a reload. When you eject a mounted disk 1, data on the disk can be corrupted, but the router does not reboot.

---

### **mount**

- Use to mount the disk. If the disk was not safely unmounted previously, then before mounting the file system and permitting user access the command initiates disk and file system integrity checks. These checks are the same ones that are automatically performed when a disk is installed and the SRP module is reloaded.
- This command applies only to the flash card installed in slot 1 on an SRP 320 module. The command is rejected if you specify disk0, because that card is required for system operation and cannot be unmounted.
- Example

```
host1#mount disk1
```

- The **no** version prepares the flash card for safe removal. The router subsequently behaves as if the second flash card is no longer present. To access the second card, you must either eject and re-insert the card, or issue the mount command for the card. You can use the **force** keyword to force the dismount even when files on the flash disk are open for modification.
- See mount.

## Synchronizing Flash Cards



**NOTE:** The information in this section does not apply to the ERX310 router, which does not support SRP module redundancy.

When the router contains two SRP modules, the contents of the modules' flash cards need to be synchronized. Synchronization prevents the redundant flash card from overwriting saved files on the primary flash card if the primary SRP module fails and the redundant SRP module takes control.

By default, autosynchronization is enabled on the router. Autosynchronization runs as a background process every 5 minutes, tracking changes in image, configuration, and script files, and keeping the two SRP modules synchronized. You can also synchronize the SRP modules manually by issuing the **synchronize** command.

Before synchronization, the router does the following:

- Verifies that critical files on the primary SRP module are present. If files are missing, the router does not proceed with the synchronization.
- Verifies whether there is enough space on the redundant flash card to copy all the new or changed files from the primary flash card.

Depending on the outcome of the space verification, the router proceeds as follows:

- If the card has enough space, the router copies new or changed files from the primary flash card to the redundant flash card without deleting any files on the redundant flash card. If the router is interrupted while it is synchronizing with this method, the synchronization resumes when it has recovered from the interruption.
- If the card does not have enough space, the router deletes any files on the redundant flash card that do not appear on the primary flash card, then copies new or changed files from the primary flash card to the redundant flash card. If the router is interrupted while it is synchronizing with this method, it does not resume the synchronization when it has recovered from the interruption.

If an SRP synchronization is in progress or has failed and the router is recovering, the router prevents the redundant SRP module from taking the primary role while the primary is rebooting and for 30 seconds after the primary module has rebooted. These conditions prevent a redundant SRP module with corrupted or missing files

from becoming the primary and overwriting files or directories on the primary module.

### **synchronize**

- Use to force the file system of the redundant SRP module to synchronize with the flash file system of the primary SRP module.
- If you synchronize the redundant SRP module with the primary SRP module and the redundant module is armed with a release different from the one it is currently running, the redundant SRP module is automatically rebooted to load the armed release.
- Optionally, you can use the **low-level-check** keyword to force the router to validate all files or only configuration files in NVS, and to synchronize all files that failed the checksum test during the **flash-disk-compare** command as well as any other files that are unsynchronized. See “Validating and Recovering Redundant SRP File Integrity” on page 378 for details.



**NOTE:** In most cases, use the **synchronize** command instead of the **synchronize low-level-check** command. The **synchronize low-level-check** command is provided for troubleshooting, and is intended to be used under direction from JTAC.

#### ■ Examples

```
host1#synchronize
host1#synchronize low-level-check all
host1#synchronize low-level-check configuration
```

- There is no **no** version.
- See synchronize.

### **Synchronizing Flash Cards of Different Capacities**

If the capacity of the primary flash card is equal to or smaller than that of the redundant flash card, the router copies all the files from the primary flash card to the redundant flash card. However, if the capacity of the primary flash card exceeds that of the redundant flash card, the router creates a hidden synchronization reserve file on the primary flash card, provided enough space is available for the file.

The purpose of the synchronization file is to prevent the creation of data that cannot fit on the redundant flash card. The file contains no useful data, and does not appear when you view the files in NVS. The size of the file is equal to the difference in capacities of the two flash cards. For example, if the primary flash card has a capacity of 224 MB, and the redundant flash card has a capacity of 220 MB, the size of the synchronization file is 4 MB, and only 220 MB of space is available on the primary flash card.

If the primary flash card does not have enough space to create the synchronization reserve file, the **synchronize** command fails, and you see a warning message on the console. To resolve this issue, either delete unwanted files from the primary flash card or replace the redundant flash card with a higher-capacity flash card.

## Disabling Autosynchronization

If autosynchronization is enabled while you are copying long scripts or installing new software releases, it detects a disparity between the modules during the middle of the process. This feature causes significant unnecessary synchronization, resulting in prolonged copy times.

If you have installed a redundant SRP module, perform the following steps before copying long scripts:

1. Turn off autosynchronization with the **disable-autosync** command.
2. Perform the installation or copy the script.
3. Reenable autosynchronization with the **no disable-autosync** command.
4. Manually synchronize the modules with the **synchronize** command.

Refer to the commands and guidelines in the previous section and in the sections that follow.

### ***disable-autosync***

- Use to turn off automatic synchronization between the primary and redundant SRP modules.
- Example
 

```
host1(config)#disable-autosync
```
- Use the **no** version to revert to the default situation, in which automatic synchronization runs as a background process every 5 minutes.
- See `disable-autosync`.

## Validating and Recovering Redundant SRP File Integrity



**NOTE:** The information in this section does not apply to the ERX310 router, which does not support SRP module redundancy.

Even when flash cards on the primary and redundant SRP modules are synchronized, differences can exist in the content of files that reside on the primary flash card and the redundant flash card. You can use the **flash-disk compare** command to detect these differences so you can validate and, if necessary, recover the file integrity of the redundant SRP module.

The **flash-disk compare** command validates only those files that are synchronized between the primary and redundant SRP modules. It does not compare files that are normally excluded from the synchronization process, such as log files and core dump files. The command uses a simple checksum error detection algorithm to compare the contents of a file residing on the flash card of the primary SRP module with the contents of the same file residing on the flash card of the redundant SRP module.



To validate and recover redundant SRP file integrity:

1. Ensure that the file systems on the primary flash card and the redundant flash card are synchronized. (See “Synchronizing Flash Cards” on page 376 for details.)
2. Issue the **flash-disk compare** command, specifying whether to perform the checksum validation for all files in NVS or only for configuration files.

```
host1#flash-disk compare all
host1#flash-disk compare configuration
```

The **flash-disk compare configuration** command, which validates only configuration files, excludes larger files such as software releases and scripts from the validation process. As a result, this command takes less time to complete than the **flash-disk compare all** command, which validates all NVS files.

3. Review the **flash-disk compare** output to determine whether any files failed the checksum validation.

If the **flash-disk compare** command detects differences in the content of one or more files, the router reports a checksum test failure.

4. If one or more files failed the checksum validation, determine whether the corrupted files reside on the primary SRP module or on the redundant SRP module.
5. If the corrupted file resides on the primary SRP module, issue the **srp switch** command to force a switch from the primary SRP module to the redundant SRP module.

This action ensures that the error-free version of the file will be on the SRP module that takes control after the switch.

6. Issue the **synchronize** command with the **low-level-check** keyword to force the router to:
  - Validate all files in NVS (when you use the **all** keyword) or only configuration files in NVS (when you use the **configuration** keyword).
  - Synchronize all files that failed the checksum test during the **flash-disk compare** command, as well as any other unsynchronized files.

```
host1#synchronize low-level-check all
host1#synchronize low-level-check configuration
```

This action resolves any file discrepancies between the primary and redundant SRP modules and restore SRP file integrity.



**NOTE:** Both the **flash-disk compare** and **synchronize low-level-check** commands perform CPU-intensive processing that can take several minutes to complete. For best results, do not run these commands simultaneously on the same router. In addition, do not run multiple instances of the **flash-disk-compare** command simultaneously on the same router.

---

**flash-disk compare**

- Use to perform a checksum validation that compares the contents of the NVS file system on the primary SRP module with the contents of the NVS file system on the redundant SRP module.
- The command validates only those files that are synchronized between the primary and redundant SRP modules; it does not validate log files, core dump files, and other files that are excluded from the system synchronization process.
- Specify one of the following keywords:
  - **all**—Compares all files in NVS; this option can take several minutes to complete.
  - **configuration**—Compares only configuration files; this option takes less time to complete because it compares only a subset of the files in the NVS file system.
- If all files pass the validation test, the router reports that all checksums matched and displays the total number of files and total number of bytes of information compared.
- If one or more files fail the validation test, the router reports a checksum test failure and does not display the total number of files and bytes compared.
- If one or more of the following conditions exist, the command fails and the router displays a message that explains why it cannot perform the checksum test:
  - The file systems on the primary flash card and the redundant flash card are not synchronized.
  - The router does not contain a redundant SRP module.
  - The redundant SRP module is offline.
- Example 1—Shows output when all files passed the validation test

```

host1#flash-disk compare all
WARNING: This command may take several minutes to complete.
Proceed? [confirm]
WARNING: No changes should be made to the system while this command is in
progress.
Please wait.....
All file checksums matched.
Number of Files = 866
Number of Bytes = 61660650

```

- Example 2—Shows output when one or more configuration files failed the validation test

```

host1#flash-disk compare configuration
WARNING: This command may take several minutes to complete.
Proceed? [confirm]
WARNING: No changes should be made to the system while this command is in
progress.
Please wait.....
At least one configuration file failed checksum test.

```

- There is no **no** version.
- See flash-disk compare.

### **synchronize**

- Use to force the NVS file system of the redundant SRP module to synchronize with the NVS file system of the primary SRP module.
- If you synchronize the redundant SRP module with the primary SRP module and the redundant module is armed with a release different from the one it is currently running, the redundant SRP module is automatically rebooted to load the armed release.
- Optionally, you can use the **low-level-check** keyword to force the router to validate all files or only configuration files in NVS, and to synchronize all files that failed the checksum validation test during the **flash-disk-compare** command as well as any other files that are unsynchronized.
- When you use the **low-level-check** keyword, you must also specify one of the following keywords:
  - **all**—Validates all files in NVS, and synchronizes all files that failed the checksum test as well as any other unsynchronized files; this option can take several minutes to complete.
  - **configuration**—Validates all configuration files in NVS, and synchronizes all files that failed the checksum test as well as any other unsynchronized files; this option takes less time to complete because it validates only a subset of the files in the NVS file system.
- If one or more of the following conditions exist when you use the **low-level-check** keyword, the command fails and the router displays a message that explains why it cannot perform the synchronization:
  - The router does not contain a redundant SRP module.
  - The redundant SRP module is offline.
  - The armed releases are different on the primary SRP and redundant SRP.
- Examples
 

```
host1#synchronize
host1#synchronize low-level-check all
host1#synchronize low-level-check configuration
```
- There is no **no** version.
- See synchronize.

### **Reformatting the Primary Flash Card**

You can reformat the primary flash card. To do so:

1. Access Boot mode.

- a. From Privileged Exec mode, enter the reload command. Information about the reloading process is displayed.
- b. When the countdown begins, press the mb key sequence (case-insensitive).

The CLI enters Boot mode (:boot## prompt). If you do not press the mb key sequence, the reloading process continues and returns the CLI to the normal User Exec mode.

2. Issue the **flash-disk initialize** command.

### **flash-disk initialize**

- Use to reformat the flash card.
- You can perform a low-level format of the flash card.
- On the E120 and E320 routers only, you can use this command to format a second flash card installed as disk1. You can issue this command in Boot mode for either flash card. In Privileged Exec mode, you can use the **disk1** keyword to access the unmounted second flash card while the router is in an operational state.
- This command is available for disk1 in Privileged Exec mode only on SRP 320 modules. This command is not accepted for disk0 in Privileged Exec mode.
- Example 1

```
host1#halt primary-srp
host1#reload
WARNING: Execution of this command will cause the system to reboot.
Proceed with reload? [confirm]
Reload operation commencing, please wait...
[ Press mb]
:boot##flash-disk initialize
```

- Example 2—On an SRP 320 module

```
host1#no mount disk1
% Device is dismounted
host1#flash-disk initialize disk1
WARNING: Execution of this command will cause the contents of disk1 to be
erased.
Proceed with Flash disk initialization? [confirm]
Please wait.....
```

- There is no **no** version.
- See flash-disk initialize.

## **Copying the Image on the Primary SRP Module**



**NOTE:** The information in this section does not apply to the ERX310 router, which does not support SRP module redundancy.

You can copy the contents of NVS on the primary SRP module to a spare flash card. To do so:

1. Access Boot mode.
  - a. From Privileged Exec mode, enter the reload command. Information about the reloading process is displayed.
  - b. When the countdown begins, press the mb key sequence (case-insensitive).

This CLI enters Boot mode (:boot## prompt).

If you do not press the mb key sequence, the reloading process continues and returns the CLI to the normal User Exec mode.

2. Issue the **flash-disk duplicate** command.
3. Follow the instructions on the screen. When prompted, insert the original or spare flash card in the primary SRP module.

### **flash-disk duplicate**

- Use to copy the contents of the primary flash card to a spare flash card.
- The primary and spare flash cards must be from the same manufacturer and must have the same size.



**NOTE:** This command is available only in Boot mode.

---

- When you issue the **flash-disk duplicate** command, insert the original and spare flash cards when prompted. The router copies the flash card contents incrementally, so you may need to exchange the flash cards several times.
- Example

```
host1#halt primary-srp
host1#reload
WARNING: Execution of this command will cause the system to reboot.
Proceed with reload? [confirm]
Reload operation commencing, please wait...
[ Press mb]
:boot##flash-disk duplicate
```

- There is no **no** version.
- See flash-disk duplicate.

## **Scanning Flash Cards**

You can find both structural errors in the data in NVS and physical errors in the flash card. You can also remove files with errors, and attempt to repair structural or physical errors.

### **check-disk**

- Use to find and repair structural inconsistencies and damage in the DOS file system in NVS on the primary SRP module.
- If the router contains primary and redundant modules, only NVS on the primary SRP module is scanned.
- On the E120 and E320 routers only, you can use this command to check and repair a second flash card installed as disk1. You can issue this command in Boot mode for either flash card. In Privileged Exec mode, you can use the **disk1** keyword to access the unmounted second flash card while the router is in an operational state.
- This command is available for disk1 in Privileged Exec mode only on SRP 320 modules. This command is not accepted for disk0 in Privileged Exec mode.
- Example

```
:boot## check-disk disk0
Copyright (c) 1993-1996 RST Software Industries Ltd. Israel. All rights
reserved
ver: 2.6 FCS
Disk Check In Progress ...
    total disk space (bytes) :          512,122,880
    bytes in each allocation unit :          8,192
    total allocation units on disk :          62,515
    bad allocation units :              1
    available bytes on disk :        120,651,776
    available clusters on disk :        14,728
    maximum available contiguous chain (bytes) : 120,651,776
    available space fragmentation (%) :          0
    clusters allocated :          47,786
Done Checking Disk.
```

- There is no **no** version.
- See check-disk.

### **flash-disk scan**

- Use to find and repair files with physical errors in NVS. These errors are created if the router is not powered down or reset correctly.
- If the router contains primary and redundant modules, only NVS on the primary SRP module is scanned.
- Use the **repair** keyword to fix nonfatal errors found on the disk. If the repair fails, the router no longer uses the corrupted areas.
- On the E120 and E320 routers only, you can use this command to find and repair files on a second flash card installed as disk1. You can issue this command in Boot mode for either flash card. In Privileged Exec mode, you can use the disk1 keyword to access the unmounted second flash card while the router is in an operational state.
- This command is available for disk1 in Privileged Exec mode only on SRP 320 modules. This command is not accepted for disk0 in Privileged Exec mode.
- Example

In this example, the user scans NVS and finds one file with an error. The user then issues the **flash-disk scan** with the **repair** keyword to remove the file. Finally, the user scans NVS again, and finds no files with errors.

```
:boot##flash-disk scan
Proceed with Flash disk scan? [confirm]
Srp PCMCIA Card Scan...
Boot Block OK
File Allocation Table OK
Root Directory OK
Checking File Space
Please Wait...
Checking Free Space
Please Wait...
PCMCIA Card Scan Detected Errors in:
\\images\ct1Diag\ct1Diag3c440e9e.cmp

PCMCIA Card Scan successful!

:boot##flash-disk scan repair
WARNING: Execution of this command may cause the contents of the Flash
disk to be modified.
Proceed with Flash disk scan? [confirm]
Srp PCMCIA Card Scan...
Boot Block OK
File Allocation Table OK
Root Directory OK
Checking File Space
Please Wait...
Checking Free Space
Please Wait...
PCMCIA Card Scan Removed:
\\images\ct1Diag\ct1Diag3c440e9e.cmp

PCMCIA Card Scan successful!

:boot##flash-disk scan
Proceed with Flash disk scan? [confirm]
Srp PCMCIA Card Scan...
Boot Block OK
File Allocation Table OK
Root Directory OK
Checking File Space
Please Wait...
Checking Free Space
Please Wait...
PCMCIA Card Scan successful!
```

- There is no **no** version.
- See flash-disk scan.

## Monitoring Flash Cards

Use the `show nvs` command to monitor the status of NVS on the primary SRP module. Use the `show flash` command to view information about the flash card.

**show flash**

- Use to display information about the flash card.
- Field descriptions
  - Active System Controller—Information for flash cards on the active SRP module
  - disk0—Flash card installed in slot 0 of the SRP module
  - disk1—Flash card installed in slot 1 of the SRP module; available only on SRP modules for the E120 and E320 routers
  - Manufacturer—Name of manufacturer of the installed flash card
  - Capacity—Total capacity of the flash card, in bytes
  - Standby System Controller—Information for flash cards on the standby SRP module
- Example

```
host1#show flash
```

```

                Active System Controller:
                -----
Device    Manufacturer    Capacity    Status
-----
disk0     SILICONSYSTEMS    1047126528    mounted
disk1     STI                  1024966656    mounted

                Standby System Controller:
                -----
Device    Manufacturer    Capacity    Status
-----
standby-disk0    SILICONSYSTEMS    1047674880    mounted
standby-disk1    SILICONSYSTEMS    1047674880    mounted

```

- See show flash.

**show nvs**

- Use to monitor NVS status.
- Field descriptions
  - total nvs file sizes—Sum of sizes of all files in NVS, in bytes
  - total nvs file errors—Number of read and write errors in all files in NVS
  - nvs flash in use—NVS used, in bytes
  - available nvs flash—NVS available, in bytes
- Example

```

host1#show nvs
total nvs file sizes = 228864
total nvs file errors = 0

```



```
nvs flash in use =      1265152
available nvs flash =   35435008
```

- See show nvs.

## Updating the Router with JUNOSe Hotfix Files

---

A JUNOSe hotfix is a file or collection of files that you can apply to update an operational E Series router to address one or more specific, critical software issues. The hotfix can replace or add functionality to one or more software components. Hotfixes also enable the delivery of software updates without having to load an entire software release. Hotfixes can also deploy debugging code to collect data that facilitates troubleshooting of software issues.

Although most hotfixes can also be manually activated without reloading the router, some hotfixes cannot. You can configure any hotfix to be activated automatically when the router reloads.

A hotfix consists of a .hfx file and possibly other supporting files. The .hfx file manages the associated files in much the same way that a .rel file manages supporting files associated with a release image.

To use a hotfix, you must use the **copy** command to download the file from a network host to the router. You cannot copy the hotfix to an FTP file server. You can use file system commands such as **dir**, **rename**, and **delete** with the hotfix. After a hotfix is copied to the local flash card, it remains there until you explicitly delete it.

Hotfixes must be activated to take effect. A *startup* hotfix is automatically activated during system initialization. A *hot-patchable* hotfix does not require a reload to become active; it takes effect immediately if compatibilities and dependencies are correctly met. You can manually install hot-patchable hotfixes with the **hotfix activate** command. Hot-patchable hotfixes can also be configured to be activated as a startup hotfix.

Arming a hotfix prepares it for activation after a system reload. You can configure hotfixes in several ways with the **boot hotfix** and **hotfix activate** commands, as in the following examples:

- Activated immediately on an active router but not armed as a startup hotfix. In this case, the hotfix is activated only until the SRP module reloads. If the SRP module reloads, then you must manually activate the hotfix again (if desired) with the **hotfix activate** command.
- Activated immediately on an active router and armed as a startup hotfix. In this case the hotfix is automatically activated after every reload.
- Armed as a startup hotfix with the **boot hotfix** command but not immediately activated. In this case the hotfix is activated when the SRP module reloads.

When a system reloads with the backup settings specified by the **boot backup** command, no armed hotfixes are activated. The currently armed hotfix settings are retained in the event that the router reverts back to its normal boot settings.

## Hotfix Compatibility and Dependency

Hotfixes can have compatibility and dependency requirements. A given hotfix is compatible with one or more releases. It can be dependent on one or more other hotfixes being active. Compatibility and dependency requirements are stored as part of the hotfix. The requirements are enforced at the time of arming or activation. If the software installed and active on the router does not match the requirements specified in the hotfix, then activation of the hotfix fails. Such a failure generates appropriate error and log messages.

The following restrictions can apply to a hotfix:

- **Dependency**—A hotfix that must be active or armed before another hotfix can be activated or armed.
- **Safe With**—A list of hotfixes with which another hotfix is compatible and can safely be concurrently armed or activated. This list applies only to hotfixes that have some patched functionality in common and are armed or activated concurrently.
- **Unsafe With**—A list of hotfixes with which another hotfix is not compatible and cannot safely be concurrently armed or activated. The CLI displays a warning message when you try to activate a hotfix that is unsafe with one or more active or armed hotfixes.
- **Manual Activate [Active / Standby] Srp**—The name of a binary flag that indicates whether manual activation of the hotfix is allowed on the active and standby SRP modules. When the flag is set to false, you cannot manually activate the hotfix; instead, the hotfix can only be activated as a startup hotfix. The CLI displays a warning message when you try to activate a hotfix that cannot be manually activated.
- **Manual Deactivate [Active / Standby] Srp**—The name of a binary flag that indicates whether manual deactivation of the hotfix is allowed on the active and standby SRP modules. When the flag is set to false, you cannot manually deactivate the hotfix. You must disarm the hotfix and reload the router. The CLI displays a warning message when you try to deactivate a hotfix that cannot be manually deactivated.
- **Line card requires reload**—The name of a binary flag that indicates whether line modules require a reload for the hotfix to become active on the module. The CLI displays a warning message if the line modules must be reloaded. If the warning is confirmed, the SRP module reloads each line module. The flag applies to all line modules targeted by the hotfix that are installed in the router.

Hotfixes remain armed only for compatible releases. If you change the armed release by issuing the **boot system** command, hotfixes that are not compatible with the new release are no longer armed. However, if you subsequently rearm a compatible release, the previously armed hotfixes for that release are automatically armed again.

## Removing Hotfixes

You can deactivate, disarm, and delete hotfixes from a router. When you deactivate a hotfix, any functionality that was added as part of the hotfix is automatically removed (even though the .hfx file remains on the router).

You cannot deactivate a hotfix that is a dependency for other hotfixes until you deactivate the dependent hotfixes. When a hotfix is no longer active, you can use the **delete** command to remove the hotfix file from the flash card.

## Hotfixes and Backup Settings

The **boot backup** command does not explicitly support hotfix files. When a system reloads with the backup settings specified by the **boot backup** command, no armed hotfixes are activated. However, the armed hotfix settings are retained in the event that the system reverts to its normal (nonbackup) boot settings. If that happens, these hotfixes are automatically rearmed and reactivated after a reload.

## Hotfixes and Standby SRP Modules

Hotfixes are supported in redundant SRP module configurations. Hotfix files are synchronized between the active and standby SRP modules by both automatic and manual synchronization. Hotfix activation restrictions are enforced identically on the active and standby SRP modules. A hotfix that is hot-patchable on the active module is hot-patchable on the standby module. A hotfix that requires startup activation on the active SRP module also requires startup activation on the standby SRP module.

Hotfixes are synchronized from the active SRP module to the standby SRP module. The standby SRP automatically activates the hotfixes that are armed as startup hotfixes. However, if the synchronization reveals that the set of active hotfixes on the standby SRP module is different from the set of armed hotfixes on the active SRP module, then the standby SRP module automatically reboots. This action causes the standby SRP module to activate the startup hotfixes. When you activate or arm a hotfix for startup activation, compatibility and dependency checks are performed independently on the active and standby SRP modules.

## Hotfixes and Line Modules

For line modules, a hotfix consists of one or more image fixes specific to a particular model of module or to a module type, depending on the fix. When a hotfix is activated, each image fix contained in the hotfix is activated on all applicable modules that are installed in the router. When existing line modules come online during startup and when new line modules are inserted in the chassis, image fixes for that particular line module are requested and activated during module startup.

Line module image hotfixes that have been armed as startup hotfixes are activated before application configuration occurs on the line module.

Only image fixes contained in hotfixes that are active on the primary SRP module can be activated on the line modules during startup. Hotfixes that are armed but not active on the primary SRP module are not activated on line modules.

A hotfix can contain a combination of image fixes. System controller (SC) and interface controller (IC) image fixes are cumulative and activated in the order in which they were armed. For forwarding controller (FC) image fixes, the last one armed is the only one applied.



**NOTE:** Because image fixes are activated in a particular order, we recommend that you create a list of any hotfixes that you are currently running or intend to run with a new FC image fix. JTAC can then provide you with the correct order of activation.

A hotfix cannot be partially activated on a router. If activation of any image hotfix fails on any corresponding module, the entire activation fails for all applicable line modules. Activation failure results in the generation of an appropriate log message. E Series routers do not support activation of a hotfix on a per-slot basis or a per-subsystem basis.

For example, suppose that a hotfix contains an image fix for the SRP module and the GE-2 line module. The SRP image fix is successfully activated on the SRP module, but the activation of the GE-2 image fix fails for some reason. In this case, the SRP module image fix is deactivated and no further attempts are made to activate the image fix on other GE-2 modules.

### **boot hotfix**

- Use to arm the specified hotfix as a startup hotfix that is automatically activated the next time the SRP module reboots.
- Arming fails if the specified hotfix depends on a hotfix that is not already armed. In this event, the CLI displays an error message similar to the following:

```
% The hotfix, 975, requires the following hotfixes to be armed:
990
```

- Arming fails if the hotfix is not compatible with the armed release. The CLI displays the following error message:

```
% Hotfix is incompatible with armed release.
```

- When a router reverts to its backup boot settings, as specified by the **boot backup** command, no armed hotfixes are activated. The armed hotfix settings are retained in the event the router reverts back to its normal boot settings.
- Example

```
host1(config)#boot hotfix hf63037.hfx
```

- Use the **no** version to disarm a specified hotfix. You can disarm all hotfixes armed for all releases by specifying the **all-releases** keyword. If any startup hotfixes are armed, the CLI then prompts you to confirm the deletion,

If the hotfix being disarmed is a dependency for another armed hotfix, the command fails and the CLI displays an error message similar to the following:

```
The hotfix, 990, has the following armed dependents which must be disarmed
first:
975
```

```
% Disarming failed
```

When you disarm hotfixes that have dependencies, you must disarm them in the reverse sequence from which they were armed. However, if you have issued the **all-releases** keyword, the disarming automatically takes place in the correct order.

- See boot hotfix.

### **no boot hotfix all-releases**

- Use in Boot mode to disarm all armed hotfixes for all releases.
- Example

```
:boot##no boot hotfix all-releases
```

- There is no affirmative version of this command; there is only a **no** version.
- See no boot hotfix all-releases.

### **hotfix activate**

- Use to manually activate the specified hotfix.
- Each image fix contained in the hotfix is downloaded from the local flash card to the SRP module and any corresponding line module, and then activated on the modules.
- When a new line module is inserted in the router, all applicable image fixes are activated during initialization of the module. Activation is performed by the line module operational image before application configuration takes place on the module.
- An activation failure for any image fix on its corresponding line module causes the entire activation to fail. The image fix is then deactivated on any modules on which it was successfully activated.
- Activation fails if the specified hotfix is incompatible with the running release. In this event, an error message similar to the following is displayed:

```
% Hotfix is incompatible with running release.
```

- Activation fails if the specified hotfix depends on other hotfixes that have not been activated. The CLI displays an error message similar to the following:

```
The hotfix, 975, requires the following hotfixes to be activated:
990
```

```
% Activation failed
```

- Startup hotfixes cannot be manually activated. If you attempt to manually activate a startup hotfix, the operation fails and generates the following error message:

% Manual activation not allowed

- Example

```
host1#hotfix activate hf63037.hfx
```

- Use the **no** version to manually deactivate the specified hotfix. Deactivation restores the system to the state that existed before the hotfix was activated. You can specify the **all** keyword to deactivate all active hotfixes.

When you deactivate hotfixes that have dependencies, you must deactivate them in the reverse sequence from which they were armed. However, if you have issued the **all** keyword, the disarming automatically takes place in the correct order.

- See hotfix activate.

## Monitoring Hotfixes

Several commands provide information about hotfixes that have been loaded on the router. You can use the **show hotfix** command to discover the armed and activation status of all hotfixes or a specific hotfix. The output lists the hotfix by name and a unique ID number, which is useful if the filename has been changed. This command also displays dependencies for each hotfix; that is, other hotfixes that must be activated before that hotfix can be activated. For more usage details and sample output, see “show hotfix” on page 393.

The **dir** command displays all hotfixes present on the local flash card. The in use field indicates that the hotfix is either currently activated or armed to be activated as a startup hotfix for the currently armed release.

```
host1# dir
*** Active/standby file systems are not synchronized. ***
Active System Controller:
```

file	size	unshared size	date (UTC)	in use
reboot.hty	596288	596288	03/07/2005 19:35:52	
system.log	6762	6762	03/07/2005 17:30:08	
haIpSetup.mac	4874	4874	03/24/2004 10:02:08	
6-0-1p0-5.rel	148489185	148489185	02/28/2005 18:17:32	!
hf63035.hfx	30445	30445	03/07/2005 14:04:02	!
hf63030.hfx	28675	28675	03/05/2005 18:22:32	
...				

You can use the **show version** command to display a summary of each of the hotfixes currently activated on the system, including the hotfix name and hotfix ID.

```

host1#show version
Juniper Edge Routing Switch ERX-1400
Copyright (c) 1999-2005 Juniper Networks, Inc. All rights reserved.
System Release: 6-0-1p0-5.rel
      Version: 6.0.1 patch-0.5   (January 28, 2005  14:55)
      Active hotfixes:
            hf63036.hfx (Id: 1020)
            hf63037.hfx (Id: 1030)
System running for: 7 days, 3 hours, 55 minutes, 5 seconds
(since FRI FEB 04 2005 13:01:30 UTC)

```

The **show boot** command displays the current boot settings, including armed hotfixes that will be activated when the router reboots.

```

host1#show boot

System Release: 6-0-1p0-5.rel
      Armed Hotfixes: hf63035.hfx
                     hf63036.hfx
                     hf63037.hfx
System Configuration: running-configuration

```

The header of the **show configuration** command output includes the armed hotfix summary. You can issue the **show configuration system file-system** command to display the **boot hotfix** commands that restore the router to its current configuration when you issue the configuration script on a router configured with factory defaults.

Hotfixes that are active when you issue the **show configuration** command are not part of the command output or the resulting configuration script. Only armed hotfixes are part of the **show configuration** script.

```

host1#show configuration system file-system
! Configuration script being generated on TUE MAR 22 2005 16:43:41 UTC
! Juniper Edge Routing Switch ERX-1400
! Version: 6.0.1 patch-0.5   (January 28, 2005  14:55)
! Active hotfixes: hf63036.hfx (Id: 23453036)
!                   hf63037.hfx (Id: 34563037)
! Copyright (c) 1999-2005 Juniper Networks, Inc. All rights reserved.
!
! Commands displayed are limited to those available at privilege level 15
!
boot config running-configuration
boot system 6-0-1p0-5.rel
boot hotfix hf63036.hfx
boot hotfix hf63037.hfx
no boot backup
no boot subsystem
no boot backup subsystem
no boot force-backup

```

### **show hotfix**

- Use to display the name, ID, activation and arming status, and dependencies for all hotfixes or a specific hotfix available on the local file system.
- You can issue the **detail** keyword to additionally display a synopsis of the hotfix behavior. The detailed output for a specific hotfix also indicates compatible and incompatible hotfixes and lists modules affected by the hotfix.

- Field descriptions

- name—Filename of the hotfix
- id—Number uniquely identifying the hotfix; nonconfigurable so that you can identify the hotfix if the filename has been changed
- active—Status of hotfix activation; X indicates that the hotfix is active
- armed—Status of hotfix arming; X indicates that the hotfix is armed to be activated; only hotfixes armed for the currently armed release are displayed as armed
- requires—Hotfix ID number or numbers identifying hotfix dependencies, which are hotfixes that must be activated before this hotfix can be activated
- synopsis—Brief description of the functionality or behavior of the hotfix
- Description—More detailed description of the functionality or behavior of the hotfix
- Dependencies—Hotfix ID number or numbers identifying hotfix dependencies, which are hotfixes that must be activated before this hotfix can be activated
- Safe to repatch—Hotfix ID number or numbers of hotfixes that can be concurrently active with this hotfix; applies only to hotfixes that fix the same existing functionality
- Unsafe with—Hotfix ID number or numbers of hotfixes that are incompatible and cannot be activated at the same time as this hotfix
- Notes—Restrictions on manual activations or deactivations

- Example 1

```
host1#show hotfix
```

name	id	active	armed	requires
-----	----	-----	-----	-----
sleep.hfx	975	X	X	990
clock.hfx	990	X	X	
showHotfix.hfx	2010			
incompatible.hfx	410			
hfActivate.hfx	960			

- Example 2—The **detail** keyword additionally displays a synopsis of the hotfix.

```
host1#show hotfix detail
```

name	id	active	armed	requires
-----	----	-----	-----	-----
sleep.hfx	975	X	X	990
clock.hfx	990	X	X	
showHotfix.hfx	2010			
incompatible.hfx	410			
hfActivate.hfx	960			



name	synopsis
sleep.hfx	Modify the output of the sleep command.
clock.hfx	Modify the behavior of show clock.
showHotfix.hfx	Changes the output of show hotfix.
incompatible.hfx	Changes the output of show hotfix.
hfActivate.hfx	Change log message severity for hotfix activate.

- Example 3—The **detail** keyword for a particular hotfix displays the most detailed information.

```

host1#show hotfix clock.hfx detail
HotfixId: 990

Synopsis: Modify the behavior of show clock.

Active: Yes
Armed: Yes

Description: Changes the output of the show clock command.

Affected modules: SRP, GE, VTM

Dependencies:

Safe to repatch:

Unsafe with:

Notes:
1) This hotfix can only be activated when the active SRP reloads
2) Arming this hotfix will cause the standby SRP to reload

```

- See show hotfix.

### Example: Using and Monitoring Hotfixes

This example presents several aspects of hotfix use. In this example, 6-0-1p0-5.rel is the currently armed and active release. Hotfix hf63035.hfx is compatible with this release and is currently activated and armed as a startup hotfix.

```

host1# dir
Active System Controller:

```

file	size	unshared size	date (UTC)	in use
reboot.hty	596288	596288	03/07/2005 19:35:52	
system.log	6762	6762	03/07/2005 17:30:08	
haIpSetup.mac	4874	4874	03/24/2004 10:02:08	
6-0-1p0-5.rel	125987342	125987342	02/30/2005 18:17:32	!
6-1-0.rel	148489185	148489185	02/28/2005 20:19:20	
hf63035.hfx	30445	30445	03/07/2005 14:04:02	!

```

hf63036.hfx                27445        27445    03/07/2005 16:12:05
hf63037.hfx                28324        28324    03/07/2005 16:13:25

```

```
host1# show hotfix detail
```

```

name      id      active  armed  requires
-----

```

```

hf63035.hfx 12343035    X      X
hf63036.hfx 23453036
hf63037.hfx 34563037                23453036

```

```

name      synopsis
-----
hf63035.hfx  Fix for CQ63035, bgp crash, out of resources
hf63036.hfx  Fixed show version formatting issue
hf63037.hfx  Increased max session limit on ERX310 to 32,000

```

```
host1(config)# boot hotfix hf63037.hfx
```

```
% The hotfix, 34563037, requires the following hotfix(es) to be armed:
23453036
```

The hf63036.hfx hotfix must be armed as a startup hotfix:

```
host1(config)# boot hotfix hf63036.hfx
```

This command succeeds because hf63036.hfx is compatible with the currently armed release, 6-1-0.rel, and has no dependencies on other hotfixes.

Now the attempt to arm hf63037.hfx succeeds because its dependency on hf63036.hfx has been met.

```
host1(config)# boot hotfix hf63037.hfx
```

Now suppose the user reloads the router:

```
host1# reload
```

As the router loads the armed release, 6-1-0.rel, the hotfix loader discovers three armed startup hotfixes, hf63035.hfx, hf63036.hfx, and hf63037.hfx. Only hf63036.hfx and hf63037.hfx are activated. Hotfix hf63035.hfx is disarmed because it is incompatible with the new running release. The router therefore becomes operational running 6-1-0.rel with hf63036.hfx and hf63037.hfx activated.

```

host1# dir unshared
file      size      in      size      date (UTC)      use
-----
reboot.hty 596288    596288    03/07/2005 19:35:52
system.log 6762      6762      03/07/2005 17:30:08
haIpSetup.mac 4874      4874      03/24/2004 10:02:08
6-0-1p0-5.rel 125987342 125987342 02/30/2005 18:17:32
6-1-0.rel 148489185 148489185 02/28/2005 20:19:20  !
hf63035.hfx 30445     30445     03/07/2005 14:04:02
hf63036.hfx 27445     27445     03/07/2005 16:12:05  !
hf63037.hfx 28324     28324     03/07/2005 16:13:25  !

```

```
host1# show hotfix
```

```

name      active  armed  requires
-----

```

```

hf63035.hfx
hf63036.hfx      X      X
hf63037.hfx      X      X      23453036

```

Now suppose the user attempts to deactivate hf63036.hfx:

```
host1#no hotfix activate hf63036.hfx
```

The hotfix, 23453036, has the following active dependents which must be deactivated first:

```
34563037
```

```
% De-activation failed.
```

The command fails because hf63037.hfx is dependent on hf63036.hfx. Interdependent hotfixes must be deactivated and disarmed in the reverse order that they were activated.

When 6-0-1p0-5.rel is re-armed and the router reloaded, the hotfix loader determines that the startup hotfixes, hf63036.hfx and hf63037.hfx, are incompatible with the release. It disarms these hotfixes. The user decides to delete the now unnecessary hotfixes from the router.

```
host1# delete hf63036.hfx
```

```
host1# delete hf63037.hfx
```

```
host1# dir
```

Active System Controller:

file	size	unshared size	date (UTC)	in use
reboot.hty	596288	596288	03/07/2005 19:35:52	
system.log	6762	6762	03/07/2005 17:30:08	
haIpSetup.mac	4874	4874	03/24/2004 10:02:08	
6-0-1p0-5.rel	125987342	125987342	02/30/2005 18:17:32	!
6-1-0.rel	148489185	148412851	02/28/2005 20:19:20	
hf63035.hfx	30445	30445	03/07/2005 14:04:02	!

```
host1# show hotfix detail
```

name	active	armed	requires
hf63035.hfx	X	X	---

## Managing the Ethernet Port on the SRP Module

You can configure the Fast Ethernet management port to access the router from a Telnet session or SNMP.

On ERX7xx models, ERX14xx models, and ERX310 router, the Fast Ethernet port is located on the SRP I/O module. For more information about configuring the Fast Ethernet port on an SRP I/O module, see *ERX Hardware Guide, Chapter 7, Accessing ERX Routers*.

Use the Fast Ethernet port on the SRP I/O module only as a router management port. Do not use this port to route traffic for Fast Ethernet or higher-level protocols such

as transport or routing protocols, because doing so affects the performance of the router.

On the E120 and E320 routers, the Fast Ethernet port is located on the SRP IOA. For more information about configuring the Fast Ethernet port on an SRP IOA, see *E120 and E320 Hardware Guide, Chapter 7, Accessing E Series Routers*.

### **interface fastEthernet**

- Use to select a Fast Ethernet interface on a line module or an SRP module.
- On ERX7xx models, ERX14xx models, and the ERX310 router, specify the Fast Ethernet interface management port by using the *slot/port* format.
- On the E120 and E320 routers, you can specify the Fast Ethernet port on the SRP IOA by using the *slot/adaptor/port* format. The port on the SRP IOA is always identified as 0.
- Example 1—Selects a Fast Ethernet management port on ERX7xx models, ERX14xx models, or the ERX310 router

```
host1(config)#interface fastEthernet 0/0
```

- Example 2—Selects a Fast Ethernet management port on the E320 Broadband Services Router

```
host1(config)#interface fastEthernet 6/0/0
```

- Use the **no** version to remove IP from an interface or subinterface.
- See interface fastEthernet.

## **Monitoring Statistics**

You can set a baseline and view statistics on the Fast Ethernet port of the SRP module in the same way that you would for other Ethernet interfaces. See *JUNOS Physical Layer Configuration Guide*.

## **Monitoring the Ethernet Configuration for the SRP Module**

Slots 0 and 1 are reserved for SRP modules on ERX7xx models; slots 6 and 7 are reserved for SRP modules on ERX14xx models, the E120 Router, and the E320 Router. When you configure the Fast Ethernet interface on an SRP module, the output of the **show configuration** command always indicates that the interface is configured in the lower of the two slots (slot 0 or slot 6). This indication is true if you configure the interface on a redundant SRP module in the higher slot or even if you have only one SRP module and it is installed in the higher slot, as shown in the following example:

```
host1#show version
Juniper Edge Routing Switch ERX-700
Copyright (c) 1999-2005 Juniper Networks, Inc. All rights reserved.
System Release: erx_7-1-0.rel Partial
Version: 7.1.0 [BuildId 4518] (December 21, 2005 11:23)
```

```

System running for: 25 days, 3 hours, 31 minutes, 5 seconds
(since THU DEC 22 2005 11:36:41 UTC)
slot  state      type      admin  spare  running release      slot uptime
-----
0      standby  SRP-10Ge  enabled ---    erx_7-1-0.rel    ---
1      online   SRP-10Ge  enabled ---    erx_7-1-0.rel    25d03h:28m:49s
2      ---      ---      ---    ---    ---             ---
3      ---      ---      ---    ---    ---             ---
4      online   CT3-12    enabled ---    erx_7-1-0.rel    25d03h:24m:46s
5      online   OC3-4A-APS enabled ---    erx_7-1-0.rel    25d03h:24m:22s
6      online   GE        enabled ---    erx_7-1-0.rel    25d03h:24m:44s

host1#configure terminal
Enter configuration commands, one per line.  End with ^Z.
host1(config)#interface fastethernet 0/0
host1(config-if)#ip address 10.6.130.83 255.255.128.0
host1(config-if)#exit
host1(config)#ip route 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0 10.6.128.1
host1(config)#exit
host1#show config
! Configuration script being generated on TUE SEP 14 2004 13:22:06 UTC
! Juniper Edge Routing Switch ERX-700
! Version: 6.0.0 beta-1.8 [BuildId 2538] (September 7, 2004 12:46)
! Copyright (c) 1999-2004 Juniper Networks, Inc. All rights reserved.
!
! Commands displayed are limited to those available at privilege level 10
!
boot config running-configuration
boot system erx_6-0-0b1-8.rel
no boot backup
no boot subsystem
no boot backup subsystem
no boot force-backup
!
! Note: The following commands are here to ensure that all virtual routers and
! vrfs are created before other commands that may need to reference them.
! These commands will be repeated further on as each virtual router and vrf
! has its configuration presented.
!
virtual-router default
virtual-router vr8
!
!
hostname "host1"
exception protocol ftp anonymous null
!
controller t3 2/0
[...]
!
interface fastEthernet 0/0
ip address 10.6.130.83 255.255.128.0
!
ip route 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0 10.6.128.1
! Trap Source: <not configured>
! Note: SNMP server not running.
!

```

## Enabling Warm Restart Diagnostics on Modules

You can enable the system to perform diagnostic tests on SRP modules and line modules when the specified module is warm restarted. The system performs all the diagnostic tests that normally run when the module is cold started.

SRP modules on all E Series routers support warm restart diagnostics. Table 42 on page 400 lists the line modules that support warm restart diagnostics.

**Table 42: Supported Line Modules**

Line Module
cOCx FO
CT3/T3-F0
OCx/STMx ATM
GE/FE
GE-2
GE-HDE
OC3/STM1 GE/FE
OC48
ES2 4G LM
ES2 10G Uplink LM

The number of diagnostic tests that the system performs on line modules depends on whether you have configured line module redundancy. If you enable warm restart diagnostics on the spare line module when all other line modules are active, the system performs diagnostic tests on the spare line module including the spare I/O module.

Enabling warm restart diagnostics on a primary line module forces the line module to switch over to the spare line module.

To ensure complete diagnostic test coverage, we recommend that you disable line module redundancy using the **redundancy lockout** command before enabling warm restart diagnostics.

### Enabling Warm Restart Diagnostics

Use the **diag** command to enable warm restart diagnostics on a module.

**diag**

- Use to restart the specified SRP module or line module and enable the system to perform diagnostic tests on the module.
- Use the **force** keyword to enable the system to manually confirm conflicting conditions when the slot of the active SRP module is specified.
- If you specify a slot on the E120 and E320 routers that contains an SRP module, you can use the *subsystem* variable to perform diagnostic tests on a subsystem on the SRP module. We recommend that you perform diagnostic tests on one subsystem at a time to avoid interrupting network traffic transmitting through the fabric modules.
  - Use the **srp** keyword to perform diagnostic tests on the SC subsystem that resides on a specified SRP module.
  - Use the **fabric** keyword to run diagnostic tests on the fabric slice that resides on the specified SRP module.
- Example 1—Enables warm restart diagnostics on a line module
 

```
host1#diag 3 force
```
- Example 2—Enables warm restart diagnostics on the fabric subsystem of an active SRP module on the E320 Router
 

```
host1#diag 6 fabric
```
- There is no **no** version.
- See diag.

## Enabling Diagnostics

Use the **diag** command to enable warm restart diagnostics on a module. Use the **diag-level** command to set the diagnostics level on a module.

### *diag-level*

- Use to set the diagnostics level on the active or standby SRP module to reduce the boot time during a cold and a warm boot.
- Use the **normal** keyword (default) to execute full diagnostics on the boot of the line card.
- Use the **bypass** keyword to skip diagnostic tests on the boot of the line card.
- Example —Bypasses diagnostic tests
 

```
host1#diag—level bypass
```
- There is no **no** version.
- See diag-level.

## Ignoring Diagnostic Test Failures

---

You can ignore diagnostic test failures on the line module or SRP. This enables you to categorize diagnostic failures and determine the impact on functional behavior.

To ignore diagnostic test failure on the line module or SRP:

1. Select the slot number of the slot that you want to ignore diagnostic test failure. This information is stored on the SRP and is independent of the hardware in the slot. You can reload a particular slot to boot the module to the operational image.

```
host1#slot ignore-diagnostic-failure 0
```

2. Issue the **show environment** command to check which line modules are configured to ignore diagnostics test failure.

```
host1#show environment
chassis: 14 slot (id 0x5, rev. 0x1)
fabric: 40 Gbps (rev. 0)
fans: fanSubsystem0k
nvs: ok (488MB flash disk, 43% full), matches running config
power: A ok, B not present
srp redundancy: mode is high-availability, state initializing
               auto-sync enabled, switch-on-error enabled
               sync in progress
slots: ok
  online: 0 6 12
  standby: 7
  empty: 1 2 3 4 5 8 9 10 11 13
  diagnostic failure is ignored on slot: 0
line redundancy: none
temperature: ok
timing: primary
  primary: internal SC oscillator (ok)
  secondary: internal SC oscillator (ok)
  tertiary: internal SC oscillator (ok)
  auto-upgrade enabled
system operational: yes
```

3. Issue the **no** version of the command to return to the default setting for the slot:

```
host1(config)# no slot ignore-diagnostic-failure 12
```

4. Issue the **show environment** command to check that the slot no longer ignores diagnostic test failures :

```
host1#show environment
chassis: 14 slot (id 0x5, rev. 0x1)
fabric: 40 Gbps (rev. 0)
fans: fanSubsystem0k
nvs: ok (488MB flash disk, 43% full), matches running config
power: A ok, B not present
srp redundancy: mode is high-availability, state initializing
               auto-sync enabled, switch-on-error enabled
               sync in progress
slots: ok
  online: 0 6 12
```



```

standby: 7
empty: 1 2 3 4 5 8 9 10 11 13
diagnostic failure is ignored on slot: 0,6,7
line redundancy: none
temperature: ok
timing: primary
    primary: internal SC oscillator (ok)
    secondary: internal SC oscillator (ok)
    tertiary: internal SC oscillator (ok)
    auto-upgrade enabled
system operational: yes

```

If an SRP failure occurs when the router boots from the factory defaults or when your configuration is lost, you can ignore test failures from the boot menu:

1. From the boot prompt, issue the option **ignore-srp-diagnostic-results** command.

```
:boot##option ignore-srp-diagnostic-results
```

2. Verify that the setting is correct:

```

:boot##show options
no option auto-boot-disable
option countdown
no option debug-startup
no option halt-on-failure
no option bypass-diagnostics
no option stay-in-diagnostics
option ignore-srp-diagnostic-results
no option instruction-cache-disable
no option watchdog-disable
no option redirect-serial
no option diagnostics-burn-in
no option start-wdb
no option start-standby-wdb
no option assertions-in
no option memory-debug
no option disable-backpress
no option stl-debug

```

- Related Topics**
- slot ignore-diagnostic-failure
  - show environment

## Monitoring Modules

---

Use the following commands to view information about all router modules.

### **show hardware**

- Use to display information about SRP modules, line modules, and I/O modules in ERX7xx models, ERX14xx models, and the ERX310 router.
- Use to display information about the chassis, SRP modules, SFMs, line modules, IOAs, and the fan tray in the E120 and E320 routers.

- **Field descriptions**
  - slot—Physical slot that contains the module
  - type—Kind of module or chassis and fan tray in the E120 and E320 routers; an “e” at the end of an SRP module type (for example, SRP-5Ge) indicates that the module includes error-checking code (ECC) memory.
  - serial number—Serial number of the module, chassis, or fan tray
  - assembly number—Part number of the module, chassis, or fan tray
  - assembly rev.—Hardware revision of the module, chassis, or fan tray
  - ram (MB)—Memory capacity of the host processor
  - number of MAC addresses—Total number of Ethernet addresses on an I/O module or an IOA
  - base MAC address—Lowest Ethernet address on an I/O module or an IOA
  - Tray—Number of the fan tray in the E120 and E320 routers; 0 indicates the primary fan
  - Major/Minor rev—Revision number of the module on the E120 and E320 routers
- **Example 1**—Displays the status of hardware on an ERX7xx model

```
host1#show hardware
```

slot	type	serial number	assembly number	assembly rev.	ram (MB)
0	SRP-10Ge	4305358981	3500005472	A06	2048
1	SRP-10Ge	4305359020	3500005472	A06	2048
2	---	---	---	---	---
3	---	---	---	---	---
4	CT3-12	4305337201	3500010901	A07	128
5	OC3/OC12/DS3-ATM	4605300290	3500103958	A06	256
6	GE/FE	4605340294	3500104554	A08	256

slot	type	serial number	assembly number	assembly rev.	number of MAC addresses
0	---	---	---	---	---
1	SRP-10Ge I/O	4605250426	3500003302	A02	1
2	---	---	---	---	---
3	---	---	---	---	---
4	CT3/T3-12 I/O	4305316605	3500010801	A02	---
5	OC3(8)-MM I/O	4304443600	4500001501	A03	4
6	GE-SFP I/O	4605310064	4500002001	A05	1

slot	base MAC address
0	---
1	0090.1aa0.577a
2	---
3	---

```

4
5      0090.1a41.7c68
6      0090.1aa0.6216

```

- Example 2—Displays the status of hardware on the E320 router

```
host1#show hardware
```

```

Chassis
-----
type      serial      assembly      assembly      Major/Minor
number    number      rev.          rev
-----
Chassis    5504200687  4400006402    01            0.101

Modules
-----
slot      type      serial      assembly      assembly      ram      Major/Min
number    number    number      rev.          rev.          (MB)     rev
-----
0          ---      ---      ---      ---      ---      ---
1          ---      ---      ---      ---      ---      ---
2          LM-4      4303470363  4500006301    01          256      1.101
3          ---      ---      ---      ---      ---      ---
4          ---      ---      ---      ---      ---      ---
5          ---      ---      ---      ---      ---      ---
6          ---      ---      ---      ---      ---      ---
6          ---      ---      ---      ---      ---      ---
7          SRP-100   4304218323  4500006601    03          1024     1.103
7          SFM-100   4304218323  4500006601    03          ---      1.103
8          SFM-100   4304206756  4500006701    04          ---      1.104
9          SFM-100   4304206762  4500006701    04          ---      1.104
10         SFM-100   4304206737  4500006701    04          ---      1.104
11         ---      ---      ---      ---      ---      ---
12         ---      ---      ---      ---      ---      ---
13         ---      ---      ---      ---      ---      ---
14         ---      ---      ---      ---      ---      ---
15         ---      ---      ---      ---      ---      ---
16         ---      ---      ---      ---      ---      ---

Adapters
-----
slot      type      serial      assembly      assembly      number
number    number    number      rev.          rev.          of
          addresses
-----
0/0        ---      ---      ---      ---      ---
0/1        ---      ---      ---      ---      ---
1/0        ---      ---      ---      ---      ---
1/1        ---      ---      ---      ---      ---
2/0        GE-4 IOA  4304020462  4500006800    11          4
2/1        ---      ---      ---      ---      ---
3/0        ---      ---      ---      ---      ---
3/1        ---      ---      ---      ---      ---
4/0        ---      ---      ---      ---      ---
4/1        ---      ---      ---      ---      ---
5/0        ---      ---      ---      ---      ---
5/1        ---      ---      ---      ---      ---

```

7/0	SRP IOA	4303470366	4500006500	02	2
11/0	---	---	---	---	---
11/1	---	---	---	---	---
12/0	---	---	---	---	---
12/1	---	---	---	---	---
13/0	---	---	---	---	---
13/1	---	---	---	---	---
14/0	---	---	---	---	---
14/1	---	---	---	---	---
15/0	---	---	---	---	---
15/1	---	---	---	---	---
16/0	---	---	---	---	---
16/1	---	---	---	---	---

slot	base MAC address	Major/Minor rev
---	-----	-----
0/0	---	---
0/1	---	---
1/0	---	---
1/1	---	---
2/0	0090.1a00.17ec	1.111
2/1	---	---
3/0	---	---
3/1	---	---
4/0	---	---
4/1	---	---
5/0	---	---
5/1	---	---
7/0	0090.1a00.17ae	1.102
11/0	---	---
11/1	---	---
12/0	---	---
12/1	---	---
13/0	---	---
13/1	---	---
14/0	---	---
14/1	---	---
15/0	---	---
15/1	---	---
16/0	---	---
16/1	---	---

Fan(s)					
Tray	type	serial number	assembly number	assembly rev.	Major/Minor rev
---	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----
0	Primary FAN	4303370009	4400007000	01	1.101
---	---	---	---	---	---

- Example 3—Displays the status of hardware on the E120 router

```
host1#show hardware
```

Chassis				
type	serial number	assembly number	assembly rev.	Major/Minor rev
-----	-----	-----	-----	-----
Chassis	4307018011	4580002602	01	0.101

Modules						
slot	type	serial number	assembly number	assembly rev.	ram (MB)	Major/Minor rev
0	---	---	---	---	---	---
1	LM-10	4306493492	4500009501	08	1024	1.108
2	LM-10	4306493502	4500009501	08	1024	1.108
3	---	---	---	---	---	---
4	---	---	---	---	---	---
5	---	---	---	---	---	---
6	SRP-120	4306483377	4501008401	02	4096	1.102
6	SFM-120	4306483377	4501008401	02	---	1.102
7	SRP-120	4306483378	4501008401	02	4096	1.102
7	SFM-120	4306483378	4501008401	02	---	1.102
8	SFM-120	4306493692	4501008501	02	---	1.102
9	SFM-120	4306493725	4501008501	02	---	1.102
10	SFM-120	4306493734	4501008501	02	---	1.102

Adapters					
slot	type	serial number	assembly number	assembly rev.	number of MAC addresses
0/0	---	---	---	---	---
0/1	---	---	---	---	---
1/0	---	---	---	---	---
1/1	GE-8 IOA	4306472048	4500009102	A04	8
2/0	---	---	---	---	---
2/1	GE-8 IOA	4306362247	4500009102	A03	8
3/0	---	---	---	---	---
3/1	---	---	---	---	---
4/0	---	---	---	---	---
4/1	---	---	---	---	---
5/0	---	---	---	---	---
5/1	---	---	---	---	---
6/0	SRP IOA	4306483232	4501006502	A00	2
slot	base MAC address	Major/Minor rev			
0/0	---	---			
0/1	---	---			
1/0	---	---			
1/1	0090.1a42.7327	2.4			
2/0	---	---			
2/1	0090.1a42.5223	2.3			
3/0	---	---			
3/1	---	---			
4/0	---	---			
4/1	---	---			
5/0	---	---			
5/1	---	---			
6/0	0090.1a42.76c4	2.0			

Fan(s)					
Tray	type	serial number	assembly number	assembly rev.	Major/Minor rev

----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----
0	Primary FAN	4306505285	4400010001	01	1.101

- See show hardware.

### **show utilization**

- Use to display information about the resources that modules consume.
- When you issue this command, the router releases available memory on the SRP module immediately; however, the display appears a few seconds later.
- To display detailed information about the average CPU utilization percentage calculated over 5-second, 1-minute, and 5-minute intervals for each module installed in the router, use the **detail** keyword.
- Field descriptions
  - slot—Slot in which the module resides
  - type—Type of module
  - heap (%)—Percentage of the RAM that is currently in use by software running on the module
  - cpu (%)—Percentage of the module CPU capacity currently used; this field appears only when the **detail** keyword is omitted
  - bw exceed—Status of bandwidth oversubscription for this slot; this field appears only when bandwidth oversubscription is configured
    - Y indicates that this slot is in an oversubscribed slot group
    - --- indicates that no module is installed or slot has no bandwidth oversubscription
- The following additional fields appear when the **detail** keyword is used:
  - last available cpu (%)—Average CPU utilization percentage for each installed module during the last 5-second interval for which data was available. If the current CPU utilization data for a module is *not* available at any point, the last available cpu (%) field displays the last available 5-second CPU utilization percentage, which is the same value that appears in the cpu (%) field when the **detail** keyword is omitted. If the current 5-second CPU utilization data is available, the last available cpu (%) field and the 5 sec cpu (%) field display the same value.
  - 5 sec cpu (%)—Average CPU utilization percentage for each installed module during the most recent 5-second interval
  - 1 min cpu (%)—Average CPU utilization percentage for each installed module during the most recent 1-minute interval
  - 5 min cpu (%)—Average CPU utilization percentage for each installed module during the most recent 5-minute interval
- Depending on the output of the **show utilization** command when you use the **detail** keyword, some or all of the following symbols and explanatory notes might appear:

- --- indicates an empty slot on ERX7xx models, ERX14xx models, or the ERX310 router. For the E120 and E320 routers, this symbol indicates either an empty slot, or a fabric slice that resides on an SRP module or on a switch fabric module (SFM).
- ??? indicates that the current CPU utilization data is unavailable for the specified interval. Data might be unavailable for one or more of the following reasons:
  - A slot is in an inactive state.
  - A line module is very busy (that is, using 100 percent of its CPU capacity) and is unable to send its CPU utilization data to the SRP module.
  - A line module is experiencing communication problems that prevent it from sending its CPU utilization data to the SRP module.
- \*\*\* indicates that a module installed in the slot is running an incompatible version of JUNOS software.
- Example 1—Displays basic information about the resources consumed on the router

```

host1#show utilization
Please wait....
      System Resource Utilization
      -----

```

slot	type	heap (%)	cpu (%)	bw exceed
0	---	---	---	---
1	OC12Atm(P2)	59	44	Y
2	OC3/OC12-ATM	67	53	Y
3	---	---	---	---
4	---	---	---	---
5	OC3d	79	0	---
6	SRP-10G	27	1	---
7	---	---	---	---
8	---	---	---	---
9	---	---	---	---
10	---	---	---	---
11	---	---	---	---
12	---	---	---	---
13	---	---	---	---

- Example 2—Displays detailed information about the average CPU utilization percentage calculated over 5-second, 1-minute, and 5-minute intervals for each module installed in an ERX7xx model, ERX14xx model, or ERX310 router

In this example, slot 12 is empty (as indicated by the --- symbol), the CPU utilization for the FE-8 module installed in slot 10 is unavailable (as indicated by the ??? symbol), and the SRP module installed in slot 7 is running an incompatible version of JUNOS software (as indicated by the \*\*\* symbol).

```

host1#show utilization detail
Please wait...

```

System Resource Utilization							
slot	type	heap (%)	last available cpu (%)	bw exceed	5 sec cpu (%)	1 min cpu (%)	5 min cpu (%)
0	OC3-4A	63	76	---	76	70	71
1	COC3/COC12	11	2	---	2	4	3
2	COC3-4	39	11	---	11	17	20
3	OC3-4A	58	61	---	???	???	68
4	OC3-4A	88	100	---	100	96	92
5	OC3-4A	94	100	---	100	93	87
6	SRP-40G+	11	84	---	84	85	73
7	SRP-40G+	18	29	---	***	***	***
8	OC3-4P	25	20	---	20	17	22
9	FE-8	61	48	---	48	53	47
10	FE-8	???	???	---	???	???	???
11	CT3-12	11	2	---	2	4	10
12	---	---	---	---	---	---	---
13	CT3-12	32	16	---	16	12	16

Note: '---' indicates empty slots.  
 '???' indicates data not available.  
 '\*\*\*' indicates board running incompatible version of software.

- Example 3—Displays detailed information about the average CPU utilization percentage calculated over 5-second, 1-minute, and 5-minute intervals for each module installed in an E320 router.

In this example, slots 3, 5, 12, 14, and 16 are empty (as indicated by the --- symbol), fabric slices are present on the SFM-100 modules in slots 8, 9, and 10 (also indicated by the --- symbol), the CPU utilization for the LM-4 module installed in slot 1 is unavailable (as indicated by the ??? symbol), and the SRP-100 module installed in slot 7 is running an incompatible version of JUNOS software (as indicated by the \*\*\* symbol).

```
host1#show utilization detail
Please wait...
```

System Resource Utilization							
slot	type	heap (%)	last available cpu (%)	bw exceed	5 sec cpu (%)	1 min cpu (%)	5 min cpu (%)
0	LM-4	9	1	---	1	1	1
1	LM-4	???	???	---	???	???	???
2	LM-4	23	3	---	???	4	8
3	---	---	---	---	---	---	---
4	LM-4	60	1	---	1	1	1
5	---	---	---	---	---	---	---
6	SRP-100	15	3	---	3	2	3
7	SRP-100	10	1	---	***	***	***
8	SFM-100	---	---	---	---	---	---
9	SFM-100	---	---	---	---	---	---
10	SFM-100	---	---	---	---	---	---
11	LM-4	60	1	---	1	1	1



12	---	---	---	---	---	---	---
13	LM-4	68	3	---	3	3	3
14	---	---	---	---	---	---	---
15	LM-4	66	1	---	1	1	1
16	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

Note: '---' indicates empty slots or fabric Slices.

'???' indicates data not available.

'\*\*\*' indicates board running incompatible version of software.

- See show utilization.



## Chapter 7

# Passwords and Security

Passwords and security are of utmost importance for the security of your router. This chapter provides the information you need to configure your E Series router to be secure for all levels of users.

This chapter contains the following sections:

- Overview on page 413
- Platform Considerations on page 413
- Setting Basic Password Parameters on page 414
- Setting and Erasing Passwords on page 417
- Vty Line Authentication and Authorization on page 423
- Virtual Terminal Access Lists on page 431
- Secure System Administration with SSH on page 432
- Restricting User Access on page 442
- Denial of Service (DoS) Protection on page 446

## Overview

---

One of your major management responsibilities is to secure your router. To do this, assign passwords or secrets to the router. In Global Configuration mode, you can set passwords or secrets to prevent unauthorized users from accessing the router in Privileged Exec mode.

Passwords and secrets have the same degree of security on your router, and they are used interchangeably. You can define either a password or a secret for your router, but not both.

## Platform Considerations

---

Passwords and security are supported on all E Series routers.

For information about the modules supported on E Series routers:

- See the *ERX Module Guide* for modules supported on ERX7xx models, ERX14xx models, and the ERX310 Broadband Services Router.
- See the *E120 and E320 Module Guide* for modules supported on the E120 and E320 Broadband Services Routers.

## Setting Basic Password Parameters

This section shows how to set up basic passwords and secrets on your router. You cannot create your own encrypted passwords and secrets. You must use encrypted passwords and secrets that the router generates.



**NOTE:** See “Setting and Erasing Passwords” on page 417 for additional commands for erasing and monitoring passwords.

### Creating Encrypted Passwords

This example encrypts password *t1meout1* and creates a password for privilege level 10.

1. Enable and configure the password. The **0** keyword specifies that you are entering an unencrypted password.

```
host1(config)#enable password level 10 0 t1meout1
```

2. Display the encrypted password.

```
host1(config)#exit
host1#show secret
```

Current Password Settings			
level	encryption type	encrypted password/secret	mode
0			
1			
2			
3			
4			
5			
6			
7			
8			
9			
10	7 (password)	dq]XG`,%N"SS7d}o)_?Y	configured
11	7 (password)	dq]XG`,%N"SS7d}o)_?Y	inherited
12	7 (password)	dq]XG`,%N"SS7d}o)_?Y	inherited
13	7 (password)	dq]XG`,%N"SS7d}o)_?Y	inherited
14	7 (password)	dq]XG`,%N"SS7d}o)_?Y	inherited
15	7 (password)	dq]XG`,%N"SS7d}o)_?Y	inherited

You or users with high privilege levels can now use the encrypted password, *dq]XG`,%N"SS7d}o)\_?Y*, with the **password** command.

## Creating Secrets

This example generates a secret for the password *rocket*, and creates a secret for privilege level 15.

1. Enable and configure the secret. The **0** keyword specifies that you are entering an unencrypted secret.

```
host1(config)#enable secret level 15 0 rocket
```

2. Display the secret.

```
host1(config)#exit
host1#show secret
Current Password Settings
-----
level      encryption      encrypted
-----      -
           type      password/secret      mode
-----      -
0
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15          5 (secret)    bcA";+1aeJD8)/[1ZDP6  configured
```

You or users with high privilege levels can now use the encrypted password, *bcA";+1aeJD8)/[1ZDP6*, with the **password** command.

## Encrypting Passwords in Configuration File

You can also direct the system software to encrypt passwords saved in the configuration file by using the **service password-encryption** command. This command is useful to keep unauthorized individuals from viewing your password in your configuration file. It is important to remember that this command uses a simple cipher and is not intended to protect against serious analysis. You can tell if a string is encrypted if it is preceded by an 8.

## Commands and Guidelines

Use the following commands and guidelines to set passwords or secrets for the privilege levels.

**enable password**

- Use to set a password, which controls access to Privileged Exec mode and some configuration modes.
- Enter the password in plain text (unencrypted) or cipher text (encrypted). In either case, the system stores the password as encrypted.
- The first time you define a password, you must enter it in plain text. To view its encrypted form, use the **show config** display. To redefine the password at a later date, you can enter the password in its encrypted form.
- You can use the following keywords:
  - 0 (zero)—Specifies an unencrypted password
  - 7—Specifies an encrypted password
- Example 1 (unencrypted password)
 

```
host1(config)#enable password 0 mypassword
```
- Example 2 (encrypted password)
 

```
host1(config)#enable password 7 x13_2
```
- Use the **no** version to remove the password.
- See enable password.

**enable secret**

- Use to set a secret, which controls access to the Privileged Exec mode and some configuration modes.
- Enter the secret in plain text (its unencrypted form) or cipher text (its encrypted form). In either case, the system stores the secret as encrypted.
- The first time you define a secret, you must enter it in plain text. To view its encrypted form, use the **show config** display. To redefine the secret at a later date, you can enter the secret in its encrypted form.
- You can use the following keywords:
  - 0 (zero)—Specifies an unencrypted secret
  - 5—Specifies an encrypted secret
- Example 1 (unencrypted secret)
 

```
host1(config)#enable secret 0 yalta45
```
- Example 2 (encrypted secret)
 

```
host1(config)#enable secret 5 y13_x
```
- Use the **no** version to remove the secret.
- See enable secret.

**service password-encryption**

- Use to encrypt passwords that are saved in the system's configuration file. The command converts plain text to cipher text. The default is no encryption.
- Use of this command prevents casual observers from viewing passwords, for example, in data obtained from **show config** displays. The command is not intended to provide protection from serious analysis.
- This command does not apply to passwords set with **enable secret**, **enable password**, or **password** (Line Configuration mode).
- This command does apply to authentication key passwords and BGP neighbor passwords.
- Example

```
host1(config)#service password-encryption
```

- Use the **no** version to remove the encryption assignment.
- See service password-encryption.

## Setting and Erasing Passwords

---

You can set the following passwords:

- Enable passwords that control access to different groups of commands.
- A console password that controls access to the console.
- Passwords for individual vty lines or groups of vty lines.

## Privilege Levels

Different groups of commands are associated with privilege levels (Table 43 on page 417). You can set enable passwords to allow users to access commands at different privilege levels.

**Table 43: Commands Available at Different Privilege Levels**

Privilege Level	Commands Available
0	<b>help</b> , <b>exit</b> , <b>enable</b> , and <b>disable</b> commands
1	User Exec commands plus commands at level 0
5	Privileged Exec <b>show</b> commands plus commands at levels 0 and 1
10	All commands except support commands
15	Support commands that Juniper Networks Technical Support may provide and all other commands

To maximize security and usability, set different passwords for levels 1, 5, 10, and 15. By default, no **enable** passwords exist.

### Accessing Privilege Levels

If users have access to the console, they automatically have access to privilege level 0. To access higher levels of privilege, they must enter the **enable privilege-level** command. When users specify a privilege level, the system determines whether there is a password at that level. If there is not, the system prompts the user for the password for the lower level closest to the requested level.

### Setting Enable Passwords

To set up **enable** passwords, use the commands described in “Setting Basic Password Parameters” on page 414.

### Erasing Enable Passwords

If you forget an **enable** password or secret, you can erase all enable passwords and secrets.

Two commands allow you to erase passwords and secrets: **erase secrets** and **service unattended-password-recovery**. It is important to fully understand the purpose of these commands and how they work with each other.

The **erase secrets** command can be used to delete all existing passwords. To use this command, you must be physically present at the router to complete the operation. After the command has been executed, you have a finite number of seconds to press the software reset button on the SRP module. You can execute this command from the console or any vty.

The **service unattended-password-recovery** command provides you with a way to delete existing passwords and secrets without physically being present at the router. You must have the proper privilege level to execute the command, and you can execute it from either the console or any vty.

When you execute **service unattended-password-recovery**, you change the behavior of **erase secrets**. You can now delete passwords and secrets from the console by executing **erase secrets** without a time restraint or having to be physically present at the router. When you use the **no** version of **service unattended-password-recovery**, you revert the functionality of erase secrets to the factory default setting.

To erase all **enable** passwords or secrets:

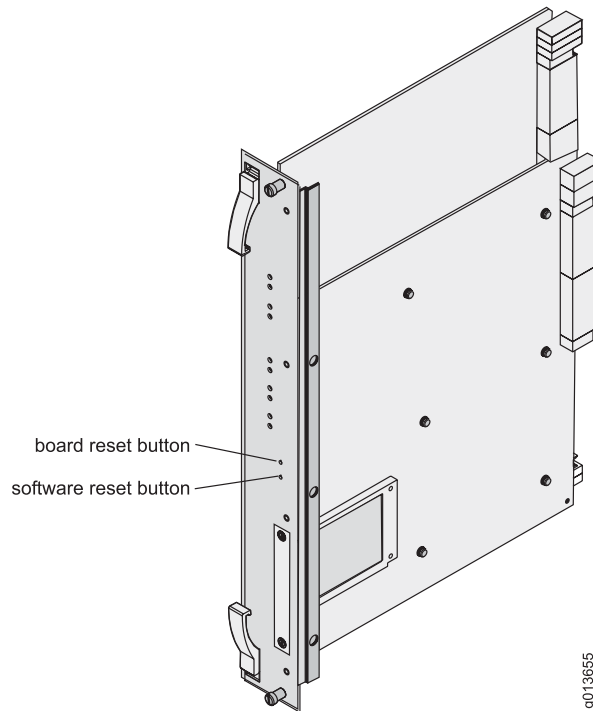
1. Log in to the router.
2. Erase the existing **enable** password or secret. Specify the number of seconds to allow for the erase operation.

```
host1>erase secrets 60
```



3. Within the time limit that you specified for the **erase secrets** command, press the recessed software reset button on the primary SRP module (see Figure 25 on page 419).

**Figure 25: Location of the Software Reset Button**



**NOTE:** If you do not press the software reset button within the time limit, the system will not erase the password, and you will need to repeat the process.

### **erase secrets**

- Use to delete all CLI passwords and secrets.
- After you issue this command, press the software reset button (see Figure 25 on page 419) within the time you specify for this command.
- Allows you to set the number of seconds (1–60) for this procedure to be accomplished.
- Allows you to set a new password when you have forgotten your password.
- Can be used with the **service unattended-password-recovery** command.
- Example

```
host1>erase secrets 60
```

- There is no **no** version.
- See erase secrets.

**service unattended-password-recovery**

- Use to allow you to delete all passwords and secrets from the console without being physically present at the router.
- When executed, this command changes the behavior of the **erase secrets** command, which will not take any parameters and will not be available through a vty session.
- Example

```
host1(config)#service unattended-password-recovery
```

- Use the **no** version to revert erase secrets to factory default settings.
- See service unattended-password-recovery.

**Setting a Console Password**

By default, there is no console password. To set a console password:

1. Make sure that you know the enable password for the system.

If you need to reset the enable password, see “Privilege Levels” on page 417.

2. Access Privileged Exec mode, and enter the enable password if prompted.
3. Access Global Configuration mode.
4. Access Line Configuration mode.

```
host1(config)#line console 0
```

5. Enable password checking at login.

```
host1(config-line)#login
```

6. Specify a password.

```
host1(config-line)#password 7 dqjXG`,%N"SS7d}o)_?Y
```

**line**

- Use to specify the vty lines or the console.
- Example

```
host1(config)#line vty 1 4
```

- Use the **no** version to remove a vty line or a range of lines from your configuration; users will not be able to run Telnet, SSH, or FTP to lines that you remove. When you remove a vty line, the system removes all lines above that line. For example, **no line vty 6** causes the system to remove lines 6 through 29. You cannot remove lines 0 through 4.
- See line.

**login**

- Use to enable password checking at login.
- The default setting is to enable a password.
- Example

```
host1(config)#line vty 1 4
host1(config-line)#login
```

- Use the **no** version to disable password checking and allow access without a password.
- See login.

**password**

- Use to specify a password on the console, a line, or a range of lines.
- If you enable password checking, but do not configure a password, the system will not allow you to access virtual terminals.
- Use the following keywords to specify the type of password you will enter:
  - 0 (zero)—Unencrypted password
  - 5—Secret
  - 7—Encrypted password



**NOTE:** To use an encrypted password or a secret, you must follow the procedure in “Setting Basic Password Parameters” on page 414 to obtain the encrypted password or secret. You cannot create your own encrypted password or secret; you must use a system-generated password or secret.

---

- Example 1 (unencrypted password)

```
host1(config-line)#password 0 mypassword
```

- Example 2 (secret)

```
host1(config-line)#password 5 bcA";+1aeJD8)/[1ZDP6
```

- Example 3 (encrypted password)

```
host1(config-line)#password 7 dq]XG`,%N"SS7d}o)_?Y
```

- Use the **no** version to remove the password. By default, no password is specified.
- See password.

## Erasing the Console Password

If you forget the console password, you can erase the existing value and configure a new one. This action deletes all authentication for the console line. To erase existing passwords:

1. Reboot the router by pressing the recessed software reset button on the primary SRP module (Figure 25 on page 419) and then pressing the **mb** key sequence during the countdown.
2. Disable authentication at the console level.

```
:boot##disable console authentication
```

If you remember the password at this point, you can override this action by entering:

```
:boot##no disable console authentication
```

3. Reload the operating system.

```
:boot##reload
```

When the operating system reloads, you can access the console without a password.



**NOTE:** You can log in to the console without a password until you set a new password.

## Monitoring Passwords

You can use the **show secrets** command to view all current passwords and secrets.

### show secrets

- Use to display all passwords and secrets.
- Passwords and secrets appear in their encrypted form.
- In the mode column, *inherited* indicates whether a secret was inherited from a lower password level. The **show secrets** command displays only secrets configured by the user; it does not display inherited secrets.
- Example

```
host1#show secrets
Current Password Settings
-----
level  encryption      encrypted      mode
-----  -
0
1
2
```

```

3
4
5      7 (password)  zRFj_6>^]10kZR@e!|S$  configured
6      7 (password)  zRFj_6>^]10kZR@e!|S$  inherited
7      7 (password)  zRFj_6>^]10kZR@e!|S$  inherited
8      7 (password)  zRFj_6>^]10kZR@e!|S$  inherited
9      7 (password)  zRFj_6>^]10kZR@e!|S$  inherited
10     7 (password)  zRFj_6>^]10kZR@e!|S$  inherited
11     7 (password)  zRFj_6>^]10kZR@e!|S$  inherited
12     7 (password)  zRFj_6>^]10kZR@e!|S$  inherited
13     7 (password)  zRFj_6>^]10kZR@e!|S$  inherited
14     7 (password)  zRFj_6>^]10kZR@e!|S$  inherited

```

- See show secrets.

## Vty Line Authentication and Authorization

---

The router supports 30 virtual tty (vty) lines for Telnet, Secure Shell Server (SSH) and FTP services. Each Telnet, SSH, or FTP session requires one vty line. You can add security to your router by configuring the software to validate login requests. There are two modes of authentication for a vty line:

- Simple authentication—Password-only authentication through the local configuration
- AAA authentication—Username and password authentication through a set of authentication servers

You can enable AAA authorization, which allows you to limit the services available to a user. Based on information retrieved from a user's profile, the user is either granted or denied access to the requested server.

### Configuring Simple Authentication

To configure simple authentication:

1. Specify a vty line or a range of vty lines on which you want to enable the password.

```

host1(config)#line vty 8 13
host1(config-line)#

```

2. Specify the password for the vty lines.

```

host1(config-line)#password 0 mypassword

```

3. Enable login authentication on the lines.

```

host1(config-line)#login

```

4. Display your vty line configuration.

```

host1#show line vty 8
no access-class in
data-character-bits 8
exec-timeout never
exec-banner enabled
motd-banner enabled
login-timeout 30 seconds

```

### **line**

- Use to specify the vty lines on which you want to enable the password.
- You can set a single line or a range of lines. The range is 0–29.
- Example

```
host1(config)#line vty 8 13
```

- Use the **no** version to remove a vty line or a range of lines from your configuration; users will not be able to run Telnet, SSH, or FTP to lines that you remove. When you remove a vty line, the system removes all lines above that line. For example, **no line vty 6** causes the system to remove lines 6 through 29. You cannot remove lines 0 through 4.
- See line.

### **login**

- Use to enable password checking at login.
- The default setting is to enable a password.
- Example

```
host1(config-line)#login
```

- Use the **no** version to disable password checking and allow access without a password.
- See login.

### **password**

- Use to specify a password on a single line or a range of lines.
- If you enable password checking but do not configure a password, the system will not allow you to access virtual terminals.
- Specify a password in plain text (unencrypted) or cipher text (encrypted). In either case, the system stores the password as encrypted.
- Use the following keywords to specify the type of password you will enter:
  - 0 (zero)—Unencrypted password
  - 5—Secret
  - 7—Encrypted password



**NOTE:** To use an encrypted password or a secret, you must follow the procedure in “Setting Basic Password Parameters” on page 414 to obtain the encrypted password or secret. You cannot create your own encrypted password or secret; you must use a system-generated password or secret.

- Example 1 (unencrypted password)

```
host1(config-line)#password 0 mypassword
```

- Example 2 (secret)

```
host1(config-line)#password 5 bcA";+1aeJD8)/[1ZDP6
```

- Example 3 (encrypted password)

```
host1(config-line)#password 7 dqjXG`,%N"SS7d}o)_?Y
```

- Use the **no** version to remove the password. By default, **no password** is specified.
- See password.

### **show line vty**

- Use to display the configuration of a vty line.
- Field descriptions
  - access-class—Access-class associated with the vty line
  - data-character-bits—Number of bits per character
    - 7—Setting for the standard ASCII set
    - 8—Setting for the international character set
  - exec-timeout—Time interval that the terminal waits for expected user input
    - Never—Indicates that there is no time limit
  - exec-banner—Status for the exec banner: enabled or disabled. This banner is displayed by the CLI after user authentication (if any) and before the first prompt of a CLI session.
  - motd-banner—Status for the message of the day (MOTD) banner: enabled or disabled. This banner is displayed by the CLI when a connection is initiated.
  - login-timeout—Time interval during which the user must log in.
    - Never—Indicates that there is no time limit
- Example

```
host1#show line vty 0
no access-class in
data-character-bits 8
```

```
exec-timeout 3w 3d 7h 20m 0s
exec-banner enabled
motd-banner enabled
login-timeout 30 seconds
```

- See show line vty.

## Configuring AAA Authentication and AAA Authorization

Before you configure AAA authentication and AAA authorization, you need to configure a RADIUS and/or TACACS+ authentication server. Note that several of the steps in the configuration procedure are optional.

To configure AAA new model authentication and authorization for inbound sessions to vty lines on your router:

1. Specify AAA new model authentication.

```
host1(config)#aaa new-model
```

2. Create an authentication list that specifies the types of authentication methods allowed.

```
host1(config)#aaa authentication login my_auth_list tacacs+ line enable
```

3. (Optional) Specify the privilege level by defining a method list for authentication.

```
host1(config)#aaa authentication enable default tacacs+ radius enable
```

4. (Optional) Enable authorization, and create an authorization method list.

```
host1(config)#aaa authorization commands 15 boston if-authenticated tacacs+
```

5. (Optional) Disable authorization for all Global Configuration commands.

```
host1(config)#no aaa authorization config-commands
```

6. Specify the range of vty lines.

```
host1(config)#line vty 6 10
host1(config-line)#
```

7. (Optional) Apply an authorization list to a vty line or a range of vty lines.

```
host1(config-line)#authorization commands 15 boston
```

8. Specify the password for the vty lines.

```
host1(config-line)#password xyz
```

9. Apply the authentication list to the vty lines you specified on your router.



```
host1(config-line)#login authentication my_auth_list
```

### **aaa authentication enable default**

- Use to allow privilege determination to be authenticated through the TACACS + or RADIUS server. This command specifies a list of authentication methods that are used to determine whether a user is granted access to the privilege command level.
- The authentication methods that you can use in a list include these options: **radius**, **line**, **tacacs +**, **none**, and **enable**.
- To specify that the authentication should succeed even if all methods return an error, specify **none** as the final method in the command line.
- Requests sent to a TACACS + or RADIUS server include the username that is entered for login authentication.
- If the authentication method list is empty, the local **enable** password is used.
- Example

```
host1(config)#aaa authentication enable default tacacs+ radius
```

- Use the **no** version to empty the list.
- See aaa authentication enable default.

### **aaa authentication login**

- Use to set AAA authentication at login. This command creates a list that specifies the methods of authentication.
- After you have specified **aaa new-model** as the authentication method for vty lines, an authentication list called default is automatically assigned to the vty lines. To allow users to access the vty lines, you must create an authentication list and either:
  - Name the list default.
  - Assign a different name to the authentication list, and assign the new list to the vty line using the **login authentication** command.
- The authentication methods that you can use in a list include these options: **radius**, **line**, **tacacs +**, **none**, and **enable**.
- The system traverses the list of authentication methods to determine whether a user is allowed to start a Telnet session. If a specific method is available but the user information is not valid (such as an incorrect password), the system does not continue to traverse the list and denies the user a session.
- If a specific method is unavailable, the system continues to traverse the list. For example, if **tacacs +** is the first authentication type element on the list and the TACACS + server is unreachable, the system attempts to authenticate with the next authentication type on the list, such as **radius**.
- The system assumes an implicit denial of service if it reaches the end of the authentication list without finding an available method.
- Example

```
host1(config)#aaa authentication login my_auth_list tacacs+ radius line none
```

- Use the **no** version to remove the authentication list from your configuration.
- See aaa authentication login.

### aaa authorization

- Use to set the parameters that restrict access to a network.
- Use the keyword **exec** to determine if the user is allowed to run Exec mode commands. The commands that you can execute from Exec mode provide only user-level access.
- Use the keyword **commands** to run authorization for all commands at the specified privilege level (0–15). See Table 43 on page 417 for a description of privilege levels.
- You can enter up to three authorization types to use in an authorization method list. Options include: **if-authenticated**, **none**, and **tacacs +**.



**NOTE:** For information about TACACS +, see *JUNOS Broadband Access Configuration Guide*.

---

- Authorization method lists define the way authorization is performed and the sequence in which the methods are performed. You can designate one or more security protocols in the method list to be used for authorization. If the initial method fails, the next method in the list is used. The process continues until either there is successful communication with a listed authorization method or all methods defined are exhausted.
- Example

```
host1(config)#aaa authorization exec
```

- Use the **no** version to delete the method list.
- See aaa authorization.

### aaa authorization config-commands

- Use to reestablish the default created when the **aaa authorization commands** command was issued.
- After the **aaa authorization commands** command has been issued, **aaa authorization config-commands** is enabled by default, which means that all configuration commands are authorized.
- Example

```
host1(config)#aaa new-model
host1(config)#aaa authorization command 15 parks tacacs+ none
host1(config)#no aaa authorization config-commands
```

- Use the **no** version to disable AAA configuration command authorization.
- See aaa authorization config-commands.

### **aaa new-model**

- Use to specify AAA new model as the authentication method for the vty lines on your router.
- If you specify AAA new model and you do not create an authentication list, users will not be able to access the router through a vty line.
- Example

```
host1(config)#aaa new-model
```

- Use the **no** version to restore simple authentication.
- See aaa new-model.

### **authorization**

- Use to apply AAA authorization to a specific vty line or group of lines.
- Use the **exec** keyword to apply this authorization to CLI access in general.
- Use the **commands** keyword to apply this authorization to user commands of the privilege level you specify.
- You can specify the name of an authorization method list; if no method list is specified, the default is used.
- After you enable the **aaa authorization** command and define a named authorization method list (or use the default method list) for a particular type of authorization, you must apply the defined list to the appropriate lines for authorization to take place.
- Example

```
host1(config)#line vty 6
host1(line-config)#authorization commands 15 sonny
```

- Use the **no** version to disable authorization.
- See authorization.

### **line**

- Use to specify the virtual terminal lines.
- You can set a single line or a range of lines. The range is 0–29.
- Example

```
host1(config)#line vty 6 10
```

- Use the **no** version to remove a vty line or a range of lines from your configuration; users will not be able to run Telnet, SSH, or FTP to lines that you remove. When you remove a vty line, the system removes all lines above that

line. For example, **no line vty 6** causes the system to remove lines 6 through 29. You cannot remove lines 0 through 4.

- See line.

### **login authentication**

- Use to apply an authentication list to the vty lines you specified on your router.
- Example

```
host1(config-line)#login authentication my_auth_list
```

- Use the **no** version to specify that the system should use the default authentication list.
- See login authentication.

### **password**

- Use to specify a password on a line or a range of lines if you specified the line option with “aaa authentication login” on page 427 command.
- If you enable password checking but do not configure a password, the system will not allow you to access virtual terminals.
- Use the following keywords to specify the type of password you will enter:
  - 0 (zero)—Unencrypted password
  - 5—Secret
  - 7—Encrypted password



**NOTE:** To use an encrypted password or a secret, you must follow the procedure in “Setting Basic Password Parameters” on page 414 to obtain the encrypted password or secret. You cannot create your own encrypted password or secret; you must use a system-generated password or secret.

---

- Example 1 (unencrypted password)

```
host1(config-line)#password 0 mypassword
```

- Example 2 (secret)

```
host1(config-line)#password 5 bcA";+1aeJD8)/[1ZDP6
```

- Example 3 (encrypted password)

```
host1(config-line)#password 7 dqjXG`,%N"SS7d}o)_?Y
```

- Use the **no** version to remove the password. By default, **no password** is specified.
- See password.

## Virtual Terminal Access Lists

---

You can provide additional security for your router by using access lists to restrict access to vty lines.

When the router attempts to authenticate a user, it always selects the first vty line that has an access class that permits that user's host. The vty line's configuration must authenticate the user to allow access. Otherwise, the user can never gain access. Consequently, we recommend that you use identical authentication configurations for all vtys that have the same access class list.

To set up access lists:

- Associate the access list with inbound Telnet sessions.

```
host1(config)#line vty 12 15
host1(config-line)#access-class Management in
```

- Configure an access list.

```
host1(config)#access-list Management permit ip 192.168.11.16 0.0.0.15 any
host1(config)#access-list Management permit ip 192.168.4.0 0.0.0.255
host1(config)#access-list Management deny ip any any
```

### ***access-class in***

- Use to associate the access list with vty lines.
- Example—This example sets the virtual terminal lines to which you want to restrict access and specifies an access class to grant access to incoming requests.

```
host1(config)#line vty 12 15
host1(config-line)#access-class Management in
```

- Use the **no** version to remove access restrictions.
- See access-class in.

### ***access-list***

- Use to configure an access list.
- Example

```
host1(config)#access-list Management permit ip 192.168.11.16 0.0.0.15 any
```

- Use the **no** version to remove the access list.
- See access-list.

## Secure System Administration with SSH

---

The system supports the SSH protocol version 2 as a secure alternative to Telnet for system administration.



**NOTE:** Versions earlier than 2.0.12 of the SSH protocol client are not supported. The SSH server embedded within the router recognizes SSH clients that report an SSH protocol version of 1.99, with the expectation that such clients are compatible with SSH protocol version 2.0. Clients that report an SSH protocol version of 1.99 apparently do so to determine the protocol version supported by the server.

---

SSH provides the following major features:

- Server authentication through a Diffie-Hellman key exchange—Protects against hackers interjecting mimics to obtain your password. You can be confident that you are connected to your own router.
  - User authentication—Ensures that the router is allowing connection from a permitted host and remote user.
- 



**NOTE:** Digital Signature Standard (DSS) public key user authentication for SSH is not supported. Only password type SSH user authentication is supported. RADIUS and TACACS + password authentication are the only user authentication protocols currently supported. RADIUS authentication is enabled by default. If authentication is disabled, then all SSH clients that pass protocol negotiation are accepted.

---

- Data encryption and key-protected hashing—Provides a secure, trustable session to the upper-layer user interface. Encryption provides confidentiality by preventing unauthorized persons from listening in on management traffic. Encryption and hashing ensure data integrity to obstruct man-in-the-middle attacks, in which unauthorized persons access messages and modify them without detection.

## Transport

The SSH transport layer handles algorithm negotiation between the server and client over TCP/IP. Negotiation begins when the SSH client and server send each other textual information that identifies their SSH version. If they both agree that the versions are compatible, the client and server exchange lists that specify the algorithms that they support for key exchange, encryption, data integrity through a message authentication code (MAC), and compression. Each party sends two lists. One list has the algorithms supported for transmission; the other has the algorithms supported for receipt. The algorithms are specified in order of preference in each list. The client and server use the algorithm for each process that matches the client's highest preference and is supported by the server. If no intersection is found, the negotiation attempt fails and the connection is terminated.

If algorithm negotiation is successful, the server sends its public host key to the client for authentication so the client can be certain that it is connected to the intended host rather than to an imposter. The client compares the key to its host key database. The client authenticates the server if the key is found in the database. If the key is not present, then the client can accept or reject this new, unknown key depending on how you have configured the client. For more information, see “Host Key Management” on page 433.

When the client authenticates the server’s host key, it begins the transport key exchange process by sending the key data required by the negotiated set of algorithms. The server responds by sending its own key data set. If both sides agree that the keys are consistent and authentic, the keys are applied so that all subsequent messages between client and server are encrypted, authenticated, and compressed according to the negotiated algorithms.

## **User Authentication**

User authentication begins after the transport keys are applied. The client typically asks the server which authentication methods it supports. The server responds with a list of supported methods with no preference.

The system software currently supports RADIUS and TACACS+ password authentication. RADIUS authentication is enabled by default. Based on the authentication protocol that a user enables, the RADIUS or TACACS+ server validates the username and password from its database. If user authentication is disabled, then all SSH clients that pass protocol negotiation are accepted.

## **Connection**

The SSH connection layer creates the user session when the user is authenticated. The server waits for a connection request. The router currently supports only shell requests, which the server interprets as a request for entry into a CLI session. The server ignores any other requests, such as X11 or TCP/IP tunneling.

## **Key Management**

The E Series router implementation of SSH provides for management of user keys and host keys.

### **User Key Management**

Key administration is still under development for the server environment.

### **Host Key Management**

You create a host key for the SSH server with the **crypto key generate dss** command. If a host key already exists, this command replaces it with a new key and terminates all ongoing SSH sessions. Any SSH clients that previously accepted the old host key reject the new key the next time the client and server connect. The client then typically instructs the end user to delete the locally cached host key and to try to connect again.



---

**CAUTION:** Use caution issuing the **crypto key generate dss** command from an SSH client. Issuing this command will terminate that SSH session; it will be the last command you send from that session.

---

The public half of the host key is sent from the server to the client as part of the transport layer negotiation. The client attempts to find a match for this key with one stored locally and assigned to the server. If the client does not find a match, it can accept or reject the key sent from the server. Refer to your client documentation for detailed information. You typically configure the client to do one of the following:

- Never accept an unknown key.
- Always accept an unknown key.
- Query the administrator before accepting an unknown key.

If you do not want the client ever to trust the server when it sends an unknown key, you must manually copy—using the **copy** command—the host key from each server to each intended client. This is the only way to be certain that each client has a local copy of the necessary keys for matching during negotiation.

If you configure the client to accept unknown keys—either automatically or with administrator approval—this acceptance policy applies only to the first time the client receives a key from a particular server. When the SSH client accepts a host key, it stores the key locally and uses it for all future comparisons with keys received from that host. If the client subsequently receives a different key—a new unknown—from that server, it is rejected.

You cannot configure an SSH client to accept a new key after it has accepted a key from an SSH server. You must delete the old key before a new key can be accepted.

## Performance

Generating a host key is computationally intensive and can take up to several minutes depending on the load of the system. The system cannot accept any CLI inputs from that session while it is generating the key.

Encryption, data integrity validation, and compression are all computationally intensive. These features can affect router performance in the following ways:

- Reduce the effective baud rate compared with Telnet or the local CLI. Users are unlikely to notice this performance degradation because user interaction is inherently slow compared with other system operations.
- Increase the general load on the system CPU.

## Security Concerns

You might be concerned about security with the current support of SSH for the following reasons:



- Only RADIUS and TACACS+ user authentication methods are supported. If you disable user authentication, all users are accepted if the client and server successfully complete negotiation.
- Because the load on the system CPU increases with use of SSH, you might be concerned about denial-of-service attacks. However, the forwarding engine takes care of this issue, because it limits the rate at which it sends packets to the system controller. A flood of packets from a packet generator does not cause problems regardless of whether SSH is enabled.

### **Before You Configure SSH**

You must obtain and install a commercial SSH client on the host from which you want to administer the system. Versions earlier than 2.0.12 of the SSH client are not supported.

Determine your Telnet policy before you configure SSH on your system. Effective use of SSH implies that you should severely limit Telnet access to the system. To limit Telnet access, create access control lists that prevent almost all Telnet usage, permitting only trusted administrators to access the system through Telnet. For example, you might limit access to administrators who need to Telnet to the system from a remote host that does not have the SSH client installed.

You must install and configure a RADIUS server on a host machine before you configure SSH on your router. Refer to your RADIUS server documentation for information about choosing a host machine and installing the server software. You must also configure the RADIUS client on your router. See *JUNOS Broadband Access Configuration Guide* for more information.

### **SSH Configuration Tasks**

You configure SSH on individual virtual routers, rather than on the global system. To configure SSH:

1. Access the context of the virtual router.
2. Configure encryption.(Optional)
3. Configure user authentication, including connection parameters.
4. Configure message authentication.(Optional)
5. Enable SSH.
6. Display SSH to verify configuration.

#### **Configuring Encryption**

The embedded SSH server and external SSH client maintain separate lists of the encryption algorithms that each supports. Lists are kept for inbound and outbound algorithms. For the server:

- Inbound means the algorithms that the server supports for information coming in from a client.

- Outbound means the algorithms that the server supports for information it sends out to a client.

You must configure each list separately. By default, all of the supported encryption algorithms are available. You need to configure encryption only if you need to specifically remove or add any supported algorithm from the list. Refer to your SSH client documentation for details on configuring encryption on your client. The system supports the following SSH algorithms for encryption:

- 3des-cbc—A triple DES block cipher with 8-byte blocks and 24 bytes of key data. The first 8 bytes of the key data are used for the first encryption, the next 8 bytes for the decryption, and the following 8 bytes for the final encryption.
- blowfish-cbc—A block cipher with 8-byte blocks and 128-bit keys that provides strong encryption and is faster than DES.
- twofish-cbc—A block cipher with 16-byte blocks and 256-bit keys that is stronger and faster than Blowfish encryption.

Although it is not recommended, you can also specify **none**. In this case, the system does not perform encryption.

### ***ip ssh crypto***

- Use to add an encryption algorithm to the specified support list for the SSH server.

Example 1—This example adds the blowfish-cbc algorithm to the list of supported inbound algorithms.

```
host1(config)#ip ssh crypto client-to-server blowfish-cbc
```

Example 2—This example removes the 3des-cbc algorithm from the list of supported outbound algorithms.

```
host1(config)#ip ssh crypto server-to-client no 3des-cbc
```

- The **default** version restores the specified list to the factory default, which includes all supported algorithms (3des-cbc, twofish-cbc, and blowfish-cbc). The default list does not include the none option.

Example

```
host1(config)#ip ssh crypto server-to-client default 3des-cbc
```

- If you do not specify a direction (client-to-server or server-to-client), the command applies the algorithm to both inbound and outbound lists.
- Use the **no** version to remove or exclude an algorithm from the specified list.
- See `ip ssh crypto`.

## Configuring User Authentication

The router supports RADIUS and TACACS+ for user authentication. RADIUS authentication is enabled by default. You must have previously configured a RADIUS or a TACACS+ server on a host system and its respective client (RADIUS or TACACS+) on your system.

You can specify timeout and retry limits to control the SSH connection process. The limits apply only from the time the user first tries to connect until the user has been successfully authenticated. The timeout limits are independent of any limits configured for virtual terminals (vty). The following limits are supported:

- User authentication protocol—SSH user authentication protocol enabled on the router.
- SSH timeout—Maximum time allowed for a user to be authenticated, starting from the receipt of the first SSH protocol packet.
- Authentication retry—Number of times a user can try to correct incorrect information—such as a bad password—in a given connection attempt.
- Sleep—Prevents a user that has exceeded the authentication retry limit from connecting from the same host within the specified period.

### ***ip ssh user-authentication-protocol***

- Configures the SSH user authentication protocol. E-Series routers support RADIUS and TACACS+ user authentication protocols.
- Specify an RADIUS or TACACS+.
- Example

```
host1(config)#ip ssh user-authentication-protocol TACACS+
```

- Use the **no** to restore the SSH user authentication protocol to the default, RADIUS.
- See ip ssh authentication-retries.

### ***ip ssh authentication-retries***

- Use to set the number of times that a user can retry a failed authentication, such as trying to correct a wrong password. The SSH server terminates the connection when the limit is exceeded.
- Specify an integer in the range 0–20.
- Example

```
host1(config)#ip ssh authentication-retries 3
```

- Use the **no** version to restore the default value, 20 retry attempts.
- See ip ssh authentication-retries.

### ***ip ssh disable-user-authentication***

- Use to disable SSH password authentication. If you disable SSH authentication, the authentication protocol becomes None and all SSH clients that pass protocol negotiation are accepted.
- RADIUS authentication is enabled by default.
- Example

```
host1(config)#ip ssh disable-user-authentication
```

- Use the **no** version to restore default user authentication protocol, RADIUS.
- See `ip ssh disable-user-authentication`.

### ***ip ssh sleep***

- Use to set a sleep period in seconds for users that have exceeded the authentication retry limit. Connection attempts from the user at the same host are denied until this period expires.
- Specify any nonnegative integer.
- Example

```
host1(config)#ip ssh sleep 300
```

- Use the **no** version to restore the default value, 600 seconds.
- See `ip ssh sleep`.

### ***ip ssh timeout***

- Use to set a timeout period in seconds. The SSH server terminates the connection if protocol negotiation—including user authentication—is not completed within this timeout.
- Specify an integer in the range 10–600.
- Example

```
host1(config)#ip ssh timeout 480
```

- Use the **no** version to restore the default value, 600 seconds.
- See `ip ssh timeout`.

## **Configuring Message Authentication**

The SSH server and SSH client maintain separate lists of the message authentication algorithms that each supports. Lists are kept for *inbound* and *outbound* algorithms. For the server, *inbound* means the algorithms that the server supports for information coming in from a client. For the server, *outbound* means the algorithms that the server supports for information it sends out to a client. You must configure each list separately. By default, all of the supported encryption algorithms are available. You need to configure encryption only if you need to specifically remove or add any supported algorithm from the list. The system supports the following SSH algorithms for hash function-based message authentication:

- **hmac-sha1**—Uses Secure Hash Algorithm 1 (SHA-1) to create a 160-bit message digest from which it generates the MAC.
- **hmac-sha1-96**—Uses the first 96 bits of the SHA-1 message digest to generate the MAC.
- **hmac-md5**—Uses MD5 hashing to create a 128-bit message digest from which it generates the MAC.

Although it is not recommended, you can also specify **none**. In this case, the system does not verify the integrity of the data.

### ***ip ssh mac***

- Use to add a message authentication algorithm to the specified support list for the SSH server.

Example 1—This example adds the hmac-md5 algorithm to the list of supported outbound algorithms.

```
host1(config)#ip ssh mac server-to-client hmac-md5
```

- If you do not specify a direction (client-to-server or server-to-client), the command applies the algorithm to both inbound and outbound lists.
- The **default** version restores the specified list to the factory default, which includes all supported algorithms (hmac-md5, hmac-sha1, and hmac-sha1-96). The default list does not include the *none* option.
- Example 2—This example restores the hmac-sha1 algorithm to the list of supported inbound algorithms.

```
host1(config)#ip ssh mac client-to-server default hmac-sha1
```

- Use the **no** version to remove or exclude an algorithm from the specified list.

Example 3—This example removes the hmac-sha1 algorithm from the list of supported inbound algorithms.

```
host1(config)#ip ssh mac client-to-server no hmac-sha1
```

- See `ip ssh mac`.

## **Enabling and Disabling SSH**

The SSH server daemon starts only if the server host key exists when the router boots. The host key resides in NVS and is persistent across system reboots. After it has started, the daemon listens for traffic on TCP port 22. The server daemon is disabled by default.

### ***crypto key dss***

- Use the **generate** keyword to create the SSH server host key and enable the daemon.
- Example

```
host1(config)#crypto key generate dss
```

- Use the **zeroize** keyword to remove the SSH server host key and stop the SSH daemon if it is running. Issuing this command terminates any active client sessions. The next time the router boots after this command is issued, the SSH server daemon is not started.
- The command is not displayed by the **show configuration** command.



**NOTE:** SSH can be enabled or disabled regardless of the state of the Telnet daemon. If SSH is enabled, use access control lists to limit access through Telnet. See “Virtual Terminal Access Lists” on page 431 for information about using access control lists.

---

- Example

```
host1(config)#crypto key zeroize dss
```

- There is no **no** version.
- See crypto key dss.

## Displaying SSH Status

You can monitor the current state of the SSH server with the **show ip ssh** command.

### **show ip ssh**

- Use to display the current state of the SSH server.
- Use the **detail** keyword to display the encryption and MAC algorithm lists for the client and server. For each active session, **detail** shows the version of SSH running on the client and the algorithms in use for encryption and message authentication.
- Field descriptions
  - daemon status—Indicates whether the SSH server is enabled; if so, how long it has been up
  - supported encryption, inbound—Encryption algorithms supported inbound from the client
  - supported encryption, outbound—Encryption algorithms supported outbound to the client
  - supported MAC, inbound—Message authentication code algorithms supported inbound from the client
  - supported MAC outbound—Message authentication code algorithms supported outbound to the client
  - connections since last system reset—Number of connections made through SSH since the last time the system was reset

- connections since daemon startup—Number of connections made since the SSH server was enabled
- active sessions—Number of SSH sessions currently active
  - id—Session ID number
  - username—Username for the remote user that initiated the session
  - host—IP address of the remote client
  - uptime (d:h:m:s)—Duration of the session
  - client version—Version of the SSH software run by the remote client
  - ciphers inbound/outbound—Encryption algorithms used by the client and the system for this session
  - MAC inbound/outbound—Message authentication code algorithms used by the client and the system for this session
- Example

```
host1#show ip ssh detail
```

```
SSH Server version: SSH-2.0-2.0.12
```

```
SSH Server status: enabled, up since THU JUL 24 2008 16:01:17 UTC
```

```
supported encryption, inbound: 3des-cbc,blowfish-cbc,twofish-cbc
supported encryption, outbound: 3des-cbc,blowfish-cbc,twofish-cbc
supported MAC, inbound: hmac-sha1,hmac-sha1-96,hmac-md5
supported MAC, outbound: hmac-sha1,hmac-sha1-96,hmac-md5
```

```
user authentication: enabled
user authentication protocol: TACACS+
```

```
retry limit: 20
sleep period: 600
timeout: 600
```

```
connections since last system reset: 4 out of 4 attempts
connections since daemon startup:   4 out of 4 attempts
```

```
active sessions: 1
```

id	username	host	uptime (d:h:m:s)	client version	ciphers inbound/outbound	MAC inbound/outbound
3	mcarr	10.0.0.145	0:00:00:19	SSH-2.0-2.0.12 F-SECURE SSH	3des-cbc/3des-cbc	hmac-md5/hmac-md5

- To view failed connection attempts and other protocol errors logged at the error severity level, use the **show log data** command:

```
host1#show log data category ssh severity error
```

- See show ip ssh.

## Terminating an SSH Session

You can use the session identifier to terminate an SSH session.

### **disconnect ssh**

- Use to terminate an active SSH session.
- Use the **show ip ssh** command to determine the session identifier for the session to terminate.
- Example

```
host1(config)#disconnect ssh 12
```



**NOTE:** You can also use the **clear line vty** terminal command to terminate SSH sessions. In that case, use the **show users** command to determine the virtual terminal number to specify with the **clear line vty** terminal command.

- There is no **no** version.
- See disconnect ssh.

## Restricting User Access

Users who are authenticated through RADIUS or TACACS + can be restricted to certain sets of commands and virtual routers (VRs). The levels of access are shown in Table 44 on page 442. For information about TACACS +, see *JUNOS Broadband Access Configuration Guide*.

**Table 44: CLI User Access Levels**

Access Level	Commands Available
0	<b>disable</b> , <b>enable</b> , <b>exit</b> , and <b>help</b> commands
1	Level 0 commands and all other commands available in User Exec mode
5	Level 1 commands and all Privileged <b>show</b> commands
10	All commands except support and privilege change commands
15	Commands that Juniper Networks Technical Support may provide and all other commands



## Restricting Access to Commands with RADIUS

You can use RADIUS authentication to specify a level of commands that a user is allowed. If you do not configure RADIUS authentication for the console or virtual terminals, all users who successfully log in are automatically granted Level 1 access.

The vendor-specific attribute (VSA) Admin-Auth-Level supports the levels of access shown in Table 44 on page 442. In addition to VSA access level support, the software provides access to levels 1 and 10 through the Initial-Auth-Level in the standard RADIUS Service-Type attribute. If the RADIUS Service-Type attribute is included in the RADIUS Access-Accept message, the standard attribute overrides any VSA setting.

If you are using the RADIUS Service-Type attribute to assign access levels, the system sets the Initial-Auth-Level as follows:

- If the Service-Type attribute is set to administrative, then the Initial-Auth-Level is set to 10.
- If the Service-Type attribute is set to nas prompt or login, the Initial-Auth-Level is set to 1.

## Per-User Enable Authentication

After a user has been authenticated through RADIUS, the RADIUS server provides the E Series router with the names of the privilege levels (for example, 10 ) that the user has **enable** access to. When the user attempts to access a privilege level through the **enable** command, the system either denies or approves the user's request.

The decision to deny or approve the user's request is based on the list the system received through RADIUS. See Table 45 on page 443.

**Table 45: Juniper Networks–Specific CLI Access VSA Descriptions**

VSA	Description	Type	Length	Subtype	Subtype Length	Value
Initial-CLI-Access-Level	Specifies the initial level of access to CLI commands.	26	len	18	sublen	Single attribute; enter only: 0, 1, 5, 10, or 15
Alt-CLI-Access-Level	Specifies level of access to CLI commands.	26	len	20	sublen	Single attribute; enter only: 0, 1, 5, 10, or 15



**NOTE:** All levels to which a user can have access must explicitly be specified in the Admin-Auth-Set VSA.

The user is not prompted for a password, because the system knows whether or not the user should have access to the requested level. If the user is not authenticated through RADIUS, the router uses the system-wide **enable** passwords instead.

## Restricting Access to Virtual Routers

You can use RADIUS authentication to specify whether users can access all virtual routers (VRs), one specific VR, or a set of specific VRs.



**NOTE:** This classification is independent of the command access levels configurable through the Initial-CLI-Access-Level VSA.

The VSA Allow-All-VR-Access controls access; the VSA Virtual-Router controls the VR to which the user logs in, and the VSA Alt-CLI-Virtual-Router-Name specifies which VRs other than the VR specified by the VSA virtual-router are accessible to restricted users. See Table 46 on page 444.

**Table 46: Juniper Networks–Specific Virtual Router Access VSA Descriptions**

VSA	Description	Type	Length	Subtype	Subtype Length	Value
Allow-All-VR-Access	Specifies user access to all virtual routers.	26	len	19	sublen	Integer: 0 – disable, 1 – enable
Virtual-Router	Specifies the VR to which the user logs in or the only VR to which a user has access. The default setting is the default VR.	26	len	1	sublen	String: <i>virtual-router-name</i>
Alt-CLI-Virtual-Router-Name	Specifies a VR, other than the VR specified by the Virtual-Router VSA, to which the user has access. You can define this VSA multiple times to define a set of VRs to which a user has access.	26	len	21	sublen	String: <i>virtual-router-name</i>

## VSA Configuration Examples

Consider a router on which five VRs have been configured. The VRs are called Boston, Chicago, Detroit, Los Angeles, and San Francisco. The following examples illustrate how to use the VSAs to control a user's access to these VRs.

- Example 1** In this example, you want the user to have access to all VRs and to log in to the default VR. Accept the default setting or set the following VSA:
- Allow-All-VR-Access—1
- Example 2** In this example, you want the user to have access to all VRs and to log in to the VR Boston. Set the VSAs as follows:
- Allow-All-VR-Access—1
  - Virtual-Router—Boston
- Example 3** In this example, you want the user to have access only to the VR Boston. Set the VSAs as follows:
- Allow-All-VR-Access—0
  - Virtual-Router—Boston
- Example 4** In this example, you want the user to log in to VR Boston, and to have access to VRs Chicago, Los Angeles, and San Francisco. Set the VSAs as follows:
- Allow-All-VR-Access—0
  - Virtual-Router—Boston
  - Alt-CLI-Virtual-Router-Name—Chicago
  - Alt-CLI-Virtual-Router-Name—Los Angeles
  - Alt-CLI-Virtual-Router-Name—San Francisco

## Commands Available to Users

If you do not configure RADIUS authentication for the console or virtual terminals, there are no restrictions on VR access for any user who successfully logs in to the router. For example, nonrestricted users can:

- Issue the **virtual-router** command in Privileged Exec mode, to switch to another previously created virtual router.
- Issue the **virtual-router** command in Global Configuration mode to create a new virtual router and switch to its context.
- Access Global Configuration mode to configure the router and virtual routers.
- View all settings for the router and all virtual routers.

User restricted to one or a set of specific VRs can see and use only a limited set of commands to monitor the status of those VRs and view some configuration settings on those VRs. More specifically, such users:

- Can issue the virtual-router command in Privileged Exec mode to switch to another previously configured VR to which they have access.
- Cannot create new VRs or access VRs other than those to which they have access.
- Cannot access Global Configuration mode and cannot configure VRs to which they have access.
- Cannot see or use any commands associated with the file system, boot settings, or system configuration.

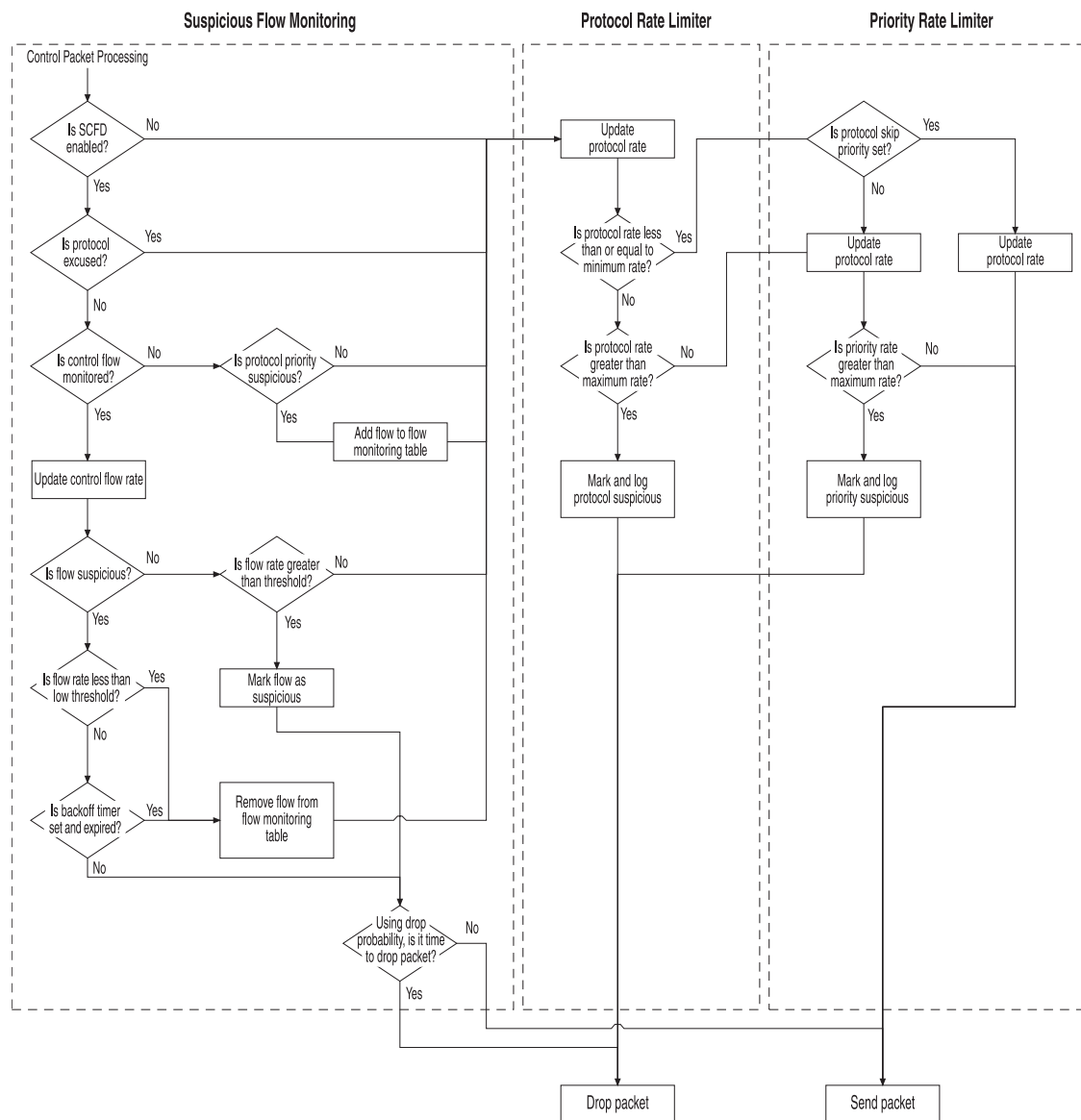
The following table lists some, but not all, commands accessed from Exec mode that are available only to users with no VR restriction:

<b>clear line</b>	<b>reload</b>	<b>show redundancy</b>
<b>clock set</b>	<b>reload slot</b>	<b>show secrets</b>
<b>copy</b>	<b>rename</b>	<b>show subsystems</b>
<b>copy running-configuration</b>	<b>redundancy force-switchover</b>	<b>show timing</b>
<b>delete</b>	<b>redundancy revert</b>	<b>show users</b>
<b>dir</b>	<b>show boot</b>	<b>show utilization</b>
<b>disconnect ssh</b>	<b>show config</b>	<b>srp switch</b>
<b>configure</b>	<b>show exception dump</b>	<b>synchronize</b>
<b>erase secrets</b>	<b>show ip ssh</b>	–
<b>halt</b>	<b>show line</b>	–

## Denial of Service (DoS) Protection

A denial-of-service (DoS) attack is any attempt to deny valid users access to network or server resources by using up all the resources of the network element or server. Denial of service protection provides reactive prevention from attack and determines whether the source of traffic is valid or invalid. DoS protection includes diagnostic tools and configuration options. DoS protection groups provide a simple policy that can be applied to interfaces, which can specify a set of parameters to tune behavior.

Figure 26 on page 447 shows an example of the state of a flow with DoS protection using suspicious control flow detection (SCFD).

**Figure 26: Typical Control Packet Processing**

### Suspicious Control Flow Detection

To reduce the chance of a successful denial of service (DoS) attack and to provide diagnostic abilities while undergoing an attack, the system can detect suspicious control flows and keep state on those flows. A flow is a specific control protocol on a specific interface from a particular source. When the system determines that a control flow is suspicious, it can take corrective action on that control flow.

Keeping full state on each control flow can use a large number of resources. Instead, the system detects which flows have suspicious traffic. If a control flow is marked as suspicious, every packet associated with the flow is considered suspicious. When

a packet is marked as suspicious, it is dropped based on drop probability before being delivered to the control processor.

When a distributed DoS attack occurs on a line module, suspicious flow control resources can be exhausted. To provide further counter measures, you can enable the group feature, where flows are grouped together and treated as a whole. If you do not use the group feature, suspicious flows can fill up the suspicious flow table and prevent detection of additional attacking flows.

## ***Suspicious Control Flow Monitoring***

Each protocol has a per-protocol rate limit. The rate limiter is used to limit the rate of packets that proceed to the control processor for the specific protocol. Per-protocol rate limiting is also used to begin the process by which flows of the specific protocol are monitored.

Each priority has a per-priority rate limit. The rate limiter limits the rate of packets that proceed to the control processor for the specific priority. It also begins the process by which flows of the specific priority are monitored.

All protocols on each line module have a rate limit. Each protocol is associated with a given priority, which is also provided with a rate limit. When a slot comes under attack, the first lines of defense are the protocol and priority rate limiters. If the line module determines that a specific protocol or priority is under attack (because the rate has been exceeded), it proceeds to monitor all flows from the problem protocol or priority. Initially, a control flow is marked as nonsuspicious.

After a control flow is placed in the suspicious flow table, the system inspects all packets that belong to the flow. The interface controller (IC) and forwarding controller (FC) monitor the table to determine whether the suspicious flow has a packet rate above the suspicious level. If the packet rate is above this level, the flow is marked as suspicious. Marking a control flow as suspicious affects only a particular protocol on a particular interface. When a flow is marked as suspicious, all packets belonging to that flow are marked as suspicious and trapped at the forwarding controller.

Suspicious control flows are continually monitored. The flow can be restored if the flow goes below the low threshold level. The flow can also be restored based on a backoff timer. The flow is removed from the suspicious flow table if the related interface is removed.

Approximately 2000 flows can be monitored as suspicious at any time for each line module. When the suspicious flow table on a particular line module reaches its maximum and the system is not set to group flows, flows that should be marked as suspicious proceed as nonsuspicious. When you return a suspicious flow to a nonsuspicious state or delete it, the flows that did not fit into the table are added to the table.

By default, the system groups flows when the suspicious flow table size is exceeded on a line module. When the flow table is full, instead of marking a specific flow in that group as suspicious and providing information on each flow on that line module, the system groups flows based on group membership and provides information on the group instead of each flow. This flow information is useful under severe distributed

DoS attacks. Group membership is based on physical port and control protocol; all flows in that group are considered suspicious.

## **Configurable Options**

You can configure the following options for suspicious flow detection:

- Global on or off. When the option is set to off, flows or packets are not marked as suspicious. The default is on.
- Actions a line module takes when the suspicious flow table on the line module overflows:
  - Overflow—Stop recognizing new suspicious flows
  - Group—Group flows into logical groupings where some individual flows are monitored as a group
- Suspicious threshold for each protocol. The threshold is the rate in packets per second at which a flow becomes suspicious. A zero setting disables suspicious flow detection for the protocol. Flows are subject to protocol and priority rate limits, but not to suspicious flow detection.
- Low threshold for each protocol. The threshold rate determines whether an interface transitions from suspicious back to nonsuspicious. A zero setting means that the flow does not transition back to nonsuspicious based on packet rate.
- Backoff time in seconds for each protocol. After this period expires, the flow transitions to nonsuspicious regardless of the current rate. When set to zero, an interface does not return to the nonsuspicious state using a time mechanism.

You can also clear the following:

- All suspicious flows from the suspicious flow table for a specific slot.
- Suspicious flows from the suspicious flow table for the entire system.
- A single suspicious flow; returns the flow to the nonsuspicious state.

## **Display Options**

For monitoring purposes, you can:

- Display all suspicious control flows when the system has recognized an attack.
- Display the current state and the number of transitions into suspicious state for the protocol and priority.
- Display historical counts about the number of flows made suspicious.
- View a trap or log generated when a control flow is considered suspicious.
- View a trap or log generated when a control flow is no longer suspicious.

## **Traps and Logs**

The system generates a trap and a log message under the following conditions:

- A control flow transitions into a suspicious state; another trap and log message is generated on removal from a suspicious state.
- A protocol transitions to or from the suspicious state.
- A priority transitions to or from the suspicious state.
- The suspicious flow control system is overflowing or grouping flows on a line module.

You can control trap and log messages using CLI or SNMP commands.

## **Suspicious Control Flow Commands**

Use the commands described in this section to regulate suspicious control flows.

### ***baseline suspicious-control-flow-detection counts***

- Use to set a baseline for statistics for suspicious control flow detection.
- Example

```
host1#baseline suspicious-control-flow-detection counts
```

- There is no **no** version.
- See baseline suspicious-control-flow-detection counts.

### ***clear suspicious-control-flow-detection***

- Use to clear the active state for suspicious control detection.
- If you do not specify a slot or interface, clears all suspicious flows.
- If you specify a slot, clears all specified suspicious flows on that slot.
- If you specify an interface and protocol, and source mac-address, clears that specific flow.
- Example

```
host1#clear suspicious-control-flow-detection interface atm 1/0.1 ppp Control  
address 0000.0001.0002
```

- There is no **no** version.
- See clear suspicious-control-flow-detection.

### ***suspicious-control-flow-detection grouping-off***

- Use to turn off overflow protection for suspicious control flow detection, enabling flows to be grouped into larger entities when the line module flow table overflows.
- Example

```
host1(config)#suspicious-control-flow-detection grouping-off
```

- Use the **no** version to turn on overflow protection.
- See suspicious-control-flow-detection grouping-off.



**suspicious-control-flow-detection off**

- Use to turn off the suspicious control flow detection.
- Example

```
host1(config)#suspicious-control-flow-detection off
```

- Use the **no** version to turn on suspicious control flow detection, which is the default.
- See suspicious-control-flow-detection off.

**suspicious-control-flow-detection protocol backoff-time**

- Use to set the backoff time in seconds for a specific protocol that triggers the suspicious flow to return to a nonsuspicious state.
- When set to zero, a suspicious control flow for a protocol does not return to a nonsuspicious state using a time mechanism.
- Example

```
host1(config)#suspicious-control-flow-detection protocol iposi backoff-time 300
```

- Use the **no** version to restore the defaults for the protocol, 300 seconds.
- See suspicious-control-flow-detection protocol backoff-time.

**suspicious-control-flow-detection protocol low-threshold**

- Use to set a threshold for a specific protocol; if the flow rate falls below this rate, a suspicious flow changes to the nonsuspicious state.
- Low threshold is the rate in packets per second at which a suspicious flow becomes no longer suspicious.
- When set to zero, a suspicious flow cannot change to the nonsuspicious state by means of a low threshold rate. To clear this flow, you must use the **clear suspicious-control-flow-detection** command.
- Example

```
host1(config)#suspicious-control-flow-detection protocol iposi low-threshold 512
```

- Use the **no** version to restore the defaults for the protocol.
- See suspicious-control-flow-detection protocol low-threshold.

**suspicious-control-flow-detection protocol threshold**

- Use to set the threshold in packets per second for a specific protocol, which triggers the flow to become a suspicious flow.
- When set to zero, a suspicious flow cannot change to the nonsuspicious state via a threshold rate.
- Example

```
host1(config)#suspicious-control-flow-detection protocol iposi threshold 1024
```

- Use the **no** version to restore the defaults for the protocol.
- See suspicious-control-flow-detection protocol threshold.

## Monitoring Suspicious Control Flow

Use the commands described in this section to monitor suspicious control flows.

### **show suspicious-control-flow-detection counts**

- Use to display statistics for suspicious control flow detection. When a slot is specified, displays only information for the specific slot. If no slot is specified, displays information for all slots.
- The **delta** keyword displays statistics for the current baseline.
- Field descriptions
  - Number of suspicious flows total—Total number of suspicious flows, current and past
  - Number of suspicious flows current—Number of suspicious flows currently detected and monitored
  - Number of groups total—Total number of groups, current and past
  - Number of groups current—Number of groups currently detected and monitored
  - Number of false negatives total—Total number of flows monitored that have not become suspicious (exceeded their threshold)
  - Number of false negatives current—Current number of flows monitored that have not become suspicious (exceeded their threshold)
  - Number of table overflows—Number of times a flow table overflows
- Example

```
host1(config)#show suspicious-control-flow-detection counts
Suspicious Flow Detection System Counts
  Number of suspicious flows total: 0
  Number of suspicious flows current: 0
  Number of groups total: 0
  Number of groups current: 0
  Number of false negatives total: 0
  Number of false negatives current: 0
  Number of table overflows: 0
```

- See show suspicious-control-flow-detection counts.

### **show suspicious-control-flow-detection flows**

- Use to display suspicious flows.
- Field descriptions

- Interface—Interface for the flow
- Protocol—Control protocol of the flow
- MAC address—Source MAC address of the flow
- InSlot—For certain flows detected on egress, the possible ingress slot of the flow
- Rate (pps)—Rate of the flow
- Peak Rate (pps)—Peak rate of the flow
- Time Since Create—Time since the flow was determined to be suspicious, in hh:mm:sec format
- Example

```
host1(config)# show suspicious-control-flow-detection flows
Suspicious Flow Detection System Flows
```

Interface	Protocol	MAC address	In Slot	Peak Rate (pps)	Rate (pps)	Time since Create
-----	-----	-----	----	----	-----	-----
GigabitEthernet 1/0/7	Ethernet ARP	0000.0100.0002	---	1000030	1000050	00:00:32
*group 3 slot 1	EthernetArpMiss	0000.0100.0003	---	1000	3000	00:10:10

- See show suspicious-control-flow-detection flows.

#### **show suspicious-control-flow-detection info**

- Use to display information about suspicious flows.
- You can specify the following keywords:
  - **delta**—Displays statistics for the current baseline
  - **brief**—Displays only suspicious information
  - **slot**—Displays information for the specific slot
- Field descriptions
  - Protocol Information
    - Protocol—Control protocol of the flow
    - State
      - OK—Protocol is currently not receiving an excess amount of traffic.
      - Suspicious—Protocol detected as receiving an excess amount of traffic within the last backoff time in number of seconds.
  - Transitions—Number of times this protocol or priority has transitioned to the suspicious state
  - Priority Information
    - Priority—Priorities map to a specific queue and color; priority groups are Hi-Green, Hi-Yellow, Lo-Green and Lo-Yellow.

- State:
  - OK—Protocol is currently not receiving an excess amount of traffic
  - Suspicious—Protocol detected as receiving an excess amount of traffic within the last backoff time in number of seconds.
- Transitions—Number of times this protocol or priority has transitioned to the suspicious state

■ Example

```
host1(config)#show suspicious-control-flow-detection info slot 2
```

```
Suspicious Flow Detection System Information
```

```
Suspicious Flow Detection System is enabled
```

Using Groups

The suspicious control flow system is not in overflow state or using groups

Protocol Information

Protocol	State	Transitions
-----		
Ppp Echo Request	OK	0
Ppp Echo Reply	OK	0
Ppp Echo Reply Fastpath	OK	0
Ppp Control	OK	0
Atm Control (ILMI)	OK	0
Atm OAM	OK	0
Atm Dynamic Interface Column Creation	OK	0
Atm Inverse ARP	OK	0
Frame Relay LMI Control	OK	0
Frame Relay Inverse Arp	OK	0
Pppoe Control	OK	0
Pppoe Config Dynamic Interface Column Creation	OK	0
Ethernet ARP Miss	OK	0
Ethernet ARP	OK	0
Ethernet LACP packet	OK	0
Ethernet Dynamic Interface Column Creation	OK	0
Slep SLARP	OK	0
MPLS TTL Exceeded On Receive	OK	0
MPLS TTL Exceeded On Transmit	OK	0
MPLS MTU Exceeded	OK	0
Ipssec Transport Mode L2tp Control	OK	0
NAT/Firewall Payload	OK	0
NAT/Firewall Update Table	OK	0
DHCP External	OK	0
IP OSI	OK	0
IP TTL Expired	OK	0
IP Options Other	OK	0
IP Options Router Alert	OK	0
IP Multicast/Broadcast Other	OK	0
IP Multicast DHCP (SC)	OK	0
IP Multicast Control (SC)	OK	0
IP Multicast Control (IC)	OK	0
IP Multicast VRRP	OK	0
IP Multicast Cache Miss	OK	0
IP Multicast Cache Miss Auto Reply	OK	0
IP Multicast Wrong Interface	OK	0

IP Local DHCP (SC)	OK	0
IP Local Dhcp (IC)	OK	0
IP Local Icmp Echo	OK	0
IP Local Icmp Other	OK	0
IP Local LDP	OK	0
IP Local BGP	OK	0
IP Local OSPF	OK	0
IP Local RSVP	OK	0
IP Local PIM	OK	0
IP Local COPS	OK	0
IP Local L2tp Control (SC)	OK	0
IP Local L2tp Control (IC)	OK	0
IP Local Other	OK	0
IP Local Subscriber Interface Miss	OK	0
IP Route To SRP Ethernet	OK	0
IP Route No Route Exists	OK	0
IP Normal Path MTU	OK	0
IP Neighbor Discovery	OK	0
IP Neighbor Discovery Miss	OK	0
IP Search Error	OK	0
IP MLD	OK	0
IP Local PIM Assert	OK	0
IP Local BFD	OK	0
IP IKE	OK	0
IP Reassembly	OK	0
IP Local Icmp Frag	OK	0
IP Local Frag	OK	0
IP Application Classifier HTTP Redirect	OK	0

Priority Information		
Priority	State	Transitions
-----		
Hi-Green-IC	OK	0
Hi-Yellow-IC	OK	0
Lo-Green-IC	OK	0
Lo-Yellow-IC	OK	1
Hi-Green-SC	OK	0
Hi-Yellow-SC	OK	0
Lo-Green-SC	OK	0
Lo-Yellow-SC	OK	0

- See show suspicious-control-flow-detection info.

### ***show suspicious-control-flow-detection protocol***

- Use to display protocol information for suspicious control flows.
- Field descriptions
  - Protocol—Control protocol
  - Threshold—Threshold in packets per second
  - Lo-Threshold—Low threshold in packets per second
  - Backoff-Time—Backoff time in seconds
- Example

host1(config)#show suspicious-control-flow-detection protocol			
Protocol	Threshold	Lo-Threshold	Backoff-Time
-----			
Ppp Echo Request	10	5	300
Ppp Echo Reply	10	5	300
Ppp Echo Reply Fastpath	10	5	300
Ppp Control	10	5	300
Atm Control (ILMI)	10	5	300
Atm OAM	10	5	300
Atm Dynamic Interface Column Creation	10	5	300
Atm Inverse ARP	10	5	300
Frame Relay LMI Control	10	5	300
Frame Relay Inverse Arp	10	5	300
Pppoe Control	512	256	300
Pppoe Config Dynamic Interface Column Creation	10	5	300
Ethernet ARP Miss	128	64	300
Ethernet ARP	128	64	300
Ethernet LACP packet	10	5	300
Ethernet Dynamic Interface Column Creation	512	256	300
SLep SLARP	128	64	300
MPLS TTL Exceeded On Receive	10	5	300
MPLS TTL Exceeded On Transmit	10	5	300
MPLS MTU Exceeded	10	5	300
Ipssec Transport Mode L2tp Control	2048	1024	300
NAT/Firewall Payload	512	256	300
NAT/Firewall Update Table	512	256	300
DHCP External	1024	512	300
IP OSI	2048	1024	300
IP TTL Expired	10	5	300
IP Options Other	512	256	300
IP Options Router Alert	2048	1024	300
IP Multicast/Broadcast Other	512	256	300
IP Multicast DHCP (SC)	512	256	300
IP Multicast Control (SC)	2048	1024	300
IP Multicast Control (IC)	512	256	300
IP Multicast VRRP	512	256	300
IP Multicast Cache Miss	128	64	300
IP Multicast Cache Miss Auto Reply	128	64	300
IP Multicast Wrong Interface	10	5	300
IP Local DHCP (SC)	512	256	300
IP Local Dhcp (IC)	512	256	300
IP Local Icmp Echo	512	256	300
IP Local Icmp Other	128	64	300
IP Local LDP	2048	1024	300
IP Local BGP	2048	1024	300
IP Local OSPF	64	32	300
IP Local RSVP	2048	1024	300
IP Local PIM	2048	1024	300
IP Local COPS	2048	1024	300
IP Local L2tp Control (SC)	2048	1024	300
IP Local L2tp Control (IC)	512	256	300
IP Local Other	512	256	300
IP Local Subscriber Interface Miss	512	256	300
IP Route To SRP Ethernet	512	256	300
IP Route No Route Exists	10	5	300
IP Normal Path MTU	10	5	300

IP Neighbor Discovery	128	64	300
IP Neighbor Discovery Miss	128	64	300
IP Search Error	10	5	300
IP MLD	512	256	300
IP Local PIM Assert	512	256	300
IP Local BFD	1024	512	300
IP IKE	512	256	300
IP Reassembly	2048	1024	300
IP Local Icmp Frag	512	256	300
IP Local Frag	512	256	300
IP Application Classifier HTTP Redirect	128	64	300

- See show suspicious-control-flow-detection protocol.

### **show snmp interfaces**

- Use to display a list of interface types that are compressed in the interface tables and the interface numbering method configured on the router.
- Field descriptions
  - Compressed(Removed) Interface Types—List of interface types that are removed from the ifTable and ifStackTable
  - Armed Interface Numbering Mode—Interface numbering method configured on the router: RFC1213, RFC2863
  - maxIfIndex—Maximum value that the system will allocate to the ifIndex field
  - maxIfNumber—Maximum number of interfaces allowed in the ifTable
  - Interface Description Setting—Method used to encode the ifDescr and ifName objects: common, legacy, proprietary
- Example

```
host1#show snmp interfaces
Compressed(Removed) Interface Types:
HDLC, FT1, ATM, ATM1483
Armed Interface Numbering Mode:
RFC1213, maxIfIndex=65535, maxIfNumber=65535
Interface Description Setting: proprietary
```

- See show snmp interfaces.

## **Denial-of-Service Protection Groups**

A DoS protection group provides a simple policy that can be applied to interfaces. This policy can specify a complete set of parameters to tune the behavior of the DoS protection groups. The system uses these parameters to determine the priority and rates for various control protocols. The rate of traffic for a particular protocol is unlikely to be the same on all ports in the system. A configuration can have several types of interfaces, such as DHCP access clients, PPPoE access clients, and uplink interfaces. Each of these interfaces requires a different DoS configuration. All

interfaces are associated with a default DoS protection group, which has standard system defaults. The maximum rates are per line module, and the drop probability is 100 percent (all suspicious packets are dropped).

## Group Parameters

DoS protection groups support the following set of parameters:

- Protocol-to-priority mapping enables you to map a protocol to one of four priorities.
- Protocol burst enables you to configure the burst level for the protocol. The burst is configurable in packets, and defaults to a value in packets that is one half of the maximum rate.
- Protocol maximum rate limit (per line module) enables you to map a protocol to a maximum rate limit. This rate limit applies to all packets for a particular protocol for interfaces belonging to this particular DoS protection group on a line module. By having a DoS protection group on a single line module, the total maximum rate for a protocol can be up to the sum of the four rates configured, depending on the DoS group attached to an interface. You can set a maximum rate of zero for protocols that are not used. The actual rate never exceeds the maximum rate, but the actual rate allowed can be less than the configured maximum rate because of the weighting of protocols within a DoS protection group and the use of multiple DoS protection groups.
- Protocol weight with respect to other protocols in the DoS protection group enables you to balance the priority of the protocols. For each priority grouping, weight determines the effective minimum rate that each protocol receives. Within each priority, the sum of the minimum rates for all protocols using that priority is equal to or less than the priority rate times the over-subscription value. Each priority has a separate rate for each DoS protection group.
- Protocol drop probability for suspicious packets enables you to map a protocol to a specific drop probability. The drop probability is the percentage probability that a suspicious packet is dropped.
- Protocol skip priority rate limiter enables you to configure the system so that the specified protocol is not subject to the priority rate limiter for the priority and DoS protection group selected. The default is off—the protocol is subject to priority rate limiting.
- Priority rate sets the rate of the priority in packets per second for the line module. If this rate is exceeded, it triggers DoS suspicious control flow detection.
- Priority burst enables you to set the number of packets allowed to exceed the maximum rate before packets are dropped and DoS suspicious control flow detection is triggered.
- Priority oversubscription enables you to set an oversubscription factor for the priority rate limiter. In addition to the priority rate, it calculates the minimum rate limits for protocols with a priority grouping and allows for oversubscription of the priority rate. The value indicates a percentage that the priority rate limiter is allowed to be oversubscribed, in the range 100–1000.



## Attaching Groups

By default, each interface belongs to the default DoS protection group. The name is the only non-configurable aspect of the default DoS protection group.

The DoS protection group is a configurable parameter for all Layer 2 and IP interfaces. Similar to other configurable interface parameters, the DoS protection group can be set using profiles.

Because all newly created interfaces default to using the default DoS protection group, they do not inherit any DoS protection group association from a higher or lower interface binding.

The DoS group applies to all types of control flows for the specific interface. For example, an IP interface supports a variety of control protocols, each of which can be separately mapped to a priority and drop probability, but to a single DoS protection group.

## Protocol Mapping

Table 47 on page 459 and Table 48 on page 460 list the protocols mapped within DoS protection groups.

**Table 47: Layer 2-Related Protocols**

CLI Name	Description of Flow
atmControl	ATM ILMI packets
atmOAM	ATM OAM packets
atmDynamicIf	ATM dynamic interface column creation
atmInverseArp	ATM inverse ARP packets
dhcpExternal	DHCP external packets
ethernetArpMiss	Ethernet/Bridged Ethernet request to send ARP
ethernetArp	Ethernet/Bridged Ethernet reception of ARP packet
ethernetLacp	Ethernet LACP packet
ethernetDynamicIf	Ethernet/Bridged Ethernet dynamic VLAN interface creation
flisInPayload	Firewall/NAT payload

**Table 47: Layer 2-Related Protocols** *(continued)*

CLI Name	Description of Flow
flisInPayloadUpdateTbl	Firewall/NAT payload and update table
frameRelayControl	Frame Relay LMI packets
frameRelayArp	Frame Relay inverse ARP packets
itmL2tpControl	IPSec transport mode L2TP control packets
mplsTtlOnRx	MPLS TTL expired on ingress
mplsTtlOnTx	MPLS TTL expired on egress
mplsMtu	MPLS MTU exceeded
pppEchoRequest	PPP echo request packets destined for the IC
pppEchoReply	PPP echo reply packets destined for the IC
pppEchoReplyFast	PPP echo request packets generating an FC-based reply
pppControl	other PPP control packets
pppoeControl	PPPoE PADx packets
pppoePppConfig	PPPoE handling of PPP LCP packets for dynamic interface creation
slipSlarp	Serial Line Interface SLARP packets

**Table 48: IP-Related Protocols**

CLI Name	Description of Flow
ipAppClassifierHttpRedirect	IP Application Classifier (HTTP redirect) packets
ipIke	IP IKE packet
ipLocalBfd	IP BFD packets
ipLocalBgp	IP BGP packets

**Table 48: IP-Related Protocols** *(continued)*

CLI Name	Description of Flow
ipLocalCops	IP COPS packets
ipLocalDemuxMiss	IP Subscriber Interface Miss packets
ipLocalDhcpIc	IP DHCP packets destined for the IC (not broadcast)
ipLocalDhcpSc	IP DHCP packets destined for the SC (broadcast and IC not enabled)
ipLocalFrag	IP fragments not classifiable
ipLocalIcmpEcho	IP ICMP echo request and reply
ipLocalIcmpFrag	IP ICMP packets that are not further classifiable (most likely large ping packets)
ipLocalIcmpOther	IP ICMP except echo request and reply
ipLocalL2tpControlIC	IP L2TP control packets for IC
ipLocalL2tpControlSC	IP L2TP control packets for SC
ipLocalLDP	IP LDP packets
ipLocalOspf	IP OSPF packets
ipLocalOther	IP Local packets not otherwise classified
ipLocalPim	IP PIM packets (except typeAssert)
ipLocalPimAssert	IP PIM assert type packets
ipLocalRsvp	IP RSVP packets
ipMld	IP Multicast listener packet
ipMulticastBroadcastOther	Ip Multicast/Broadcast not otherwise classified
ipMulticastCacheMiss	IP Multicast route table misses
ipMulticastCacheMissAutoRp	IP Multicast route table Auto-RP misses
ipMulticastControlIc	IP IGMP packets for the IC
ipMulticastControlSc	IP Multicast control packet not otherwise classified
ipMulticastDhcpSc	IP Multicast DHCP destined for SC
ipMulticastVrrp	IP VRRP packets
ipMulticastWrongIf	IP Multicast on wrong interface
ipNeighborDiscovery	IPv6 Neighbor Discovery

**Table 48: IP-Related Protocols** (continued)

CLI Name	Description of Flow
ipNeighborDiscoveryMiss	IPv6 Neighbor Discovery miss
ipNormalPathMtu	IP Path MTU request
ipOptionsOther	IP options not otherwise classified
ipOptionsRouterAlert	IP Router Alert
ipOsi	OSI packets
ipReassembly	IP packets that have been reassembled on a server card
ipRouteNoRoute	IP packets with no route indication
ipRouteToSrpEthernet	Packets routed to the SRP Ethernet
ipTtlExpired	IP TTL expired

## DoS Protection Group Configuration Example



**NOTE:** To configure a DoS protection group for an interface, you must configure the settings under the default group, which is the only group that is currently supported.

To configure a DoS protection group for an interface:

```
host1(config)#dos-protection-group default
host1(config-dos-protection)#protocol AtmOam rate 512
host1(config-dos-protection)#protocol PppoeControl rate 512
host1(config-dos-protection)#protocol IpLocalOther rate 512
```

To display the configuration:

```
host1#show dos-protection-group default
```

```
default (canned-group: defaultCanned) *modified -- no references
```

Protocol	Dest	Mod	Rate	Burst	Weight	DropProb	Priority	Skip
Ppp Echo Request	IC	-	2048	1024	100	100	HI green	Y
Ppp Echo Reply	IC	-	2048	1024	100	100	HI green	Y
Ppp Echo Reply Fastp	FC	-	0	0	100	100	Data path	Y
Ppp Control	IC	-	2048	1024	100	100	HI green	N
Atm Control (ILMI)	IC	-	2048	1024	100	100	HI green	Y
Atm OAM	IC	*	512	512	100	100	LO green	N
Atm Dynamic Interface Column Creation	IC	-	1024	512	100	100	HI yellow	N
Atm Inverse ARP	IC	-	256	128	100	100	LO yellow	N
Frame Relay Control	IC	-	2048	1024	100	100	HI green	Y

(LMI)									
Frame Relay Inverse Arp	IC	-	256	128	100	100	LO	yellow	N
Pppoe Control	IC	*	512	512	100	100	HI	yellow	N
Pppoe Ppp Config Dynamic Interface Column Creation	IC	-	1024	512	100	100	HI	yellow	N
Ethernet ARP Miss	IC	-	256	128	100	100	LO	yellow	N
Ethernet ARP	IC	-	256	128	100	100	LO	yellow	N

## DoS Protection Group Commands

Use the commands described in this section to create DoS protection groups and attach them to different types of interfaces with the **atm dos-protection-group** command.

- Use to attach an ATM DoS protection group to an interface.
- Example

```
host1(config-if)#atm dos-protection-group group1
```

- Use the **no** version to remove the attachment of the DoS protection group from the interface.

**bridge1483 dos-protection-group**

- Use to attach a bridge 1483 DoS protection group to an interface.
- Example

```
host1(config-if)#bridge1483 dos-protection-group group1
```

- Use the **no** version to remove the attachment of the DoS protection group from the interface.
- See `bridge1483 dos-protection-group`.

***dos-protection-group***

- Use to create a DoS protection group and enter DoS Protection Group Configuration mode.
- A group named default always exists.
- Example

```
host1(coonfig)#dos-protection-group default
```

- Use the **no** version to remove the DoS protection group.
- See `dos-protection-group`.

**ethernet dos-protection-group**

- Use to attach an Ethernet DoS protection group to an interface.
- Example

```
host1(config-if)#ethernet dos-protection-group group1
```

- Use the **no** version to remove the attachment of the DoS protection group from the interface.
- See ethernet dos-protection-group.

### ***frame-relay dos-protection-group***

- Use to attach a Frame Relay DoS protection group to an interface.
- Example

```
host1(config-if)#frame-relay dos-protection-group group1
```

- Use the **no** version to remove the attachment of the DoS protection group from the interface.
- See frame-relay dos-protection-group.

### ***hdlc dos-protection-group***

- Use to attach an HDLC DoS protection group to an interface.
- Example

```
host1(config-if)#hdlc dos-protection-group group1
```

- Use the **no** version to remove the attachment of the DoS protection group from the interface.
- See hdlc dos-protection-group.

### ***ip dos-protection-group***

- Use to attach an IP DoS protection group to an interface.
- Example 1

```
host1(config-if)#ip dos-protection-group group1
```

- Example 2

```
host1(config)#dos-protection-group default  
host1(config-dos-protection)#protocol AtmOam rate 512  
host1(config-dos-protection)#protocol PppoeControl rate 512  
host1(config-dos-protection)#protocol IpLocalOther rate 512
```

- Use the **no** version to remove the attachment of the DoS protection group from the interface.
- See ip dos-protection-group.

### ***ipv6 dos-protection-group***

- Use to attach an IPv6 DoS protection group to an interface.
- Example

host1(config-if)#**ipv6 dos-protection-group group1**

- Use the **no** version to remove the attachment of the DoS protection group from the interface.
- See ipv6 dos-protection-group.

#### ***lag dos-protection-group***

- Use to attach a LAG DoS protection group to an interface.
- Example

host1(config-if)#**lag dos-protection-group group1**

- Use the **no** version to remove the attachment of the DoS protection group from the interface.
- See lag dos-protection-group.

#### ***ppp dos-protection-group***

- Use to attach a PPP DoS protection group to an interface.
- Example

host1(config-if)#**ppp dos-protection-group group1**

- Use the **no** version to remove the attachment of the DoS protection group from the interface.
- See ppp dos-protection-group.

#### ***pppoe dos-protection-group***

- Use to attach a PPPoE DoS protection group to an interface.
- Example

host1(config-if)#**pppoe dos-protection-group group1**

- Use the **no** version to remove the attachment of the DoS protection group from the interface.
- See pppoe dos-protection-group.

#### ***priority burst***

- Use to set the burst size in packets for the priority.
- Example

host1(config-dos-protection)#**priority Hi-Green-IC burst 32**

- Use the **no** version to return to the default value.
- See priority burst.

#### ***priority over-subscription-factor***

- Use to set the oversubscription value for the priority rate limiter.
- The oversubscription value and the priority rate are used to calculate the minimum rate limits for port compression.
- Allows an oversubscription of the priority rate because all protocols within a priority are not generally used simultaneously.
- Example

```
host1(config-dos-protection)#priority Hi-Green-IC over-subscription-factor 100
```

- Use the **no** version to return no oversubscription value.
- See priority over-subscription-factor.

### ***priority rate***

- Use to set the rate in packets-per-second for the priority.
- Example

```
host1(config-dos-protection)#priority Hi-Green-IC rate 6000
```

- Use the **no** version to return to the default value of 0.
- See priority rate.

### ***protocol burst***

- Use to set the burst size in packets-per-second for the protocol.
- The default value is one half the maximum rate in packets.
- Example

```
host1(config-dos-protection)#protocol IpLocalDhcpIc burst 65535
```

- Use the **no** version to set the default value, which is equal to half of the configured maximum rate.
- See protocol burst.

### ***protocol drop-probability***

- Use to map a protocol to a specific drop probability, which is the percentage probability of an exceeded packet being dropped.
- Example

```
host1(config-dos-protection)#protocol IpLocalDhcpIc drop-probability 100
```

- Use the **no** version to set the drop probability to the value specified in the associated default group.
- See protocol drop-probability.

### ***protocol priority***



- Use to set the priority for the protocol.
- Example

```
host1(config-dos-protection)#protocol IpLocalDhcplc priority hiGreen
```

- Use the **no** version to set the priority to the value specified in the associated default group.
- See protocol priority.

### ***protocol rate***

- Use to map a protocol to a maximum rate limit.
- The rate limit applies to all packets of the protocol for interfaces belonging to the DoS protection group.
- A particular protocol can be up to the sum of the four rates configured, depending on the DoS group attached to an interface.
- Use a maximum rate of 0 for protocols that are not used.
- The actual rate never exceeds the maximum rate, but can be less than the configured maximum rate due to the weighting of the protocols within a DoS protection group and the use of multiple DoS protection groups.
- Example

```
host1(config-dos-protection)#protocol IpLocalDhcplc rate 100
```

- Use the **no** version to set the value to the value specified in the associated default group.
- See protocol rate.

### ***protocol skip-priority-rate-limiter***

- Use to set the skip priority rate limiter for the protocol.
- The specified protocol is not subject to the priority rate limiter for the priority and DoS protection group selected.
- The default sets the protocol such that it is subject to priority rate limiting.
- Example

```
host1(config-dos-protection)#protocol IpLocalDhcplc skip-priority-rate-limiter
```

- Use the **no** version to set the value to the default, which is not to use skip-priority-rate-limiter.
- See protocol skip-priority-rate-limiter.

### ***protocol weight***

- Use to set the weight for the protocol.
- For each port compression, weight determines the effective minimum rate that each protocol receives.

- Within each port compression, the sum of the minimum rates for all protocols is equal to or less than the priority rate.
- For each priority, there is a separate rate for each DoS protection group.
- Example

```
host1(config-dos-protection)#protocol IpLocalDhcplc weight 100
```

- Use the **no** version to set the weight to the value specified in the associated default group.
- See protocol weight.

#### ***use canned-group***

- Use to create a DoS protection group that uses a pre-programmed set of parameters.
- Use the **revert** keyword to return the values to the canned group values
- Example

```
host1#use canned-group group1
```

- Use the **no** version to associate the group with the default canned group settings.
- See use canned-group.

#### ***vlan dos-protection-group***

- Use to attach a VLAN DoS protection group to an interface.
- Example

```
host1(config-if)#vlan dos-protection-group
```

- Use the **no** version to remove the attachment of the DoS protection group from the interface.
- See vlan dos-protection-group.

### ***Monitoring DoS Protection Groups***

Use the commands described in this section to monitor DoS protection groups.

#### ***show dos-protection-group***

- Use to display DoS protection groups.
- If you do not specify a group, displays the names of the currently configured DoS protection groups.
- If you specify a group, displays information about the specified group.
- If you do not specify the **brief** keyword, displays a list of references (interfaces and templates) to the DoS protection group,

- When *\*modified\** appears next to the name of the DoS protection group, the group or protocol within the group has changed from the preprogrammed value of the associated group.
- Example

```
host1(config)#show dos-protection-group
DOS Protection Groups:
Default (canned-group: " default" ) *modified*
Uplink  (canned-group: " link"  )
ATM     (canned-group: " ppoe"  ) *modified*
VLAN    (canned-group: " mixed-access" )
```

- See show dos-protection-group.



## Chapter 8

# Writing CLI Macros

An E Series router has an embedded macro language that enables you to define and run macros that can generate and execute CLI commands. Macro files—identified by the *.mac* extension—can be used to store more than one macro. Depending on your needs, you might want to store all of your macros in one file, group macros by function, or store only one macro per file.

This chapter contains the following sections:

- Platform Considerations on page 471
- Writing Macros on page 471
- Detecting and Recording Macro Errors on page 489
- Running Macros on page 494
- Scheduling Macros on page 497
- Practical Examples on page 501

### Platform Considerations

---

Macros are supported on all E Series routers.

For information about the modules supported on E Series routers:

- See the *ERX Module Guide* for modules supported on ERX7xx models, ERX14xx models, and the ERX310 Broadband Services Router.
- See the *E120 and E320 Module Guide* for modules supported on the E120 and E320 Broadband Services Routers.

### Writing Macros

---

You must write macros on your computer, not on the E Series router. The macros can contain loops, variables, string and numeric values, and conditional statements. Macros can invoke other macros (as long as they are contained within the same macro file), including themselves, but infinite recursion is not permitted. Macros are case-insensitive.

Macros consist of *control expressions* and *noncontrol expressions*. Control expressions are enclosed by *control brackets*, which are angle-bracket and number sign pairs, like this: `< # controlExpression # >`. Examples of control expressions include the macro

name and macro end statements, and *while* loops. A control expression can include multiple operation statements if you separate the statements with semicolons (;). For example:

```
<# i:=0; while i++ < 3 #>
```

All macros must have names consisting only of letters, numbers, and the underline character (\_). The first character of a macro name cannot be a number. If you include more than one macro within a macro file, each macro must have a unique name. The first line of a macro defines the macro's name:

```
<# macroName #>
```

Noncontrol expressions are not enclosed by control brackets and simply become part of the generated CLI command text.

You must end all macros with the following control expression:

```
<# endtmp1 #>
```

You can add comments to your control expressions to clarify the code by prefacing the comment with forward slashes (//) inside the control brackets:

```
<# endtmp1 //A comment in the macro end expression #>
```

Text after the // is ignored when the macro is run and is not displayed by the CLI.

You can also add comments outside the control expressions by prefacing the comment with an exclamation point (!). The CLI displays these comments if you use the **test** or **verbose** keywords with the **macro** command; the CLI never interprets these comments as commands.

```
!This is a comment outside any control expression
```

You can improve the readability of a macro by using tabs to indent expressions. Leading and trailing tabs have no effect on the macro output, because they are removed when the macro is run.

**Example** The following is a simple macro that you can use to configure the IP interface on the Fast Ethernet port of the SRP module after you have restored the factory defaults:

```
<# ipInit #>
<# ipAddress := env.getline (" IP Address of System?" ) #>
ena
conf t
int f0/0
ip addr <# ipAddress; '\n' #>
ip route 10.0.0.0 255.0.0.0 192.168.1.1
host pk 10.10.0.166 ftp
<# endtmp1 #>
```

## Environment Commands

Macros use environment commands to write data to the macro output, to determine a value, or to call other commands. Table 49 on page 473 describes the environment commands that are currently supported.

**Table 49: Environment Commands**

Command	Description
<code>env.delay(int <i>delay</i>)</code>	Causes the macro to delay further execution for the number of seconds specified by <i>delay</i>
<code>env.getLine</code>	Prompts the user with a question mark (?) and waits for a response
<code>env.getLine(string <i>prompt-string</i>)</code>	Prompts the user with the value of <i>prompt-string</i> and waits for a response
<code>env.getLineMasked</code>	Prompts the user with a question mark (?), waits for a response, and echoes the response with an asterisk (*) for each character entered by the user
<code>env.getLineMasked(string <i>prompt-string</i>)</code>	Prompts the user with the value of <i>prompt-string</i> , waits for a response, and echoes the response with an asterisk (*) for each character entered by the user
<code>env.argc</code>	Returns the number of arguments passed to the macro
<code>env.argv(n)</code>	Returns the value of the <i>n</i> th argument, such that $1 < n \leq \text{env.argc}$  The returned value is a string, not a number; if you want to use this value for a subsequent numeric operation, you must first convert it to a number with the <code>env.atoi(string)</code> command
<code>env.argv(0)</code>	Returns the name of the macro
<code>env.atoi(string)</code>	Converts the specified string to a numeric value
<code>env.atoi(env.argv(n))</code>	Converts input values to integers
<code>env.setResult</code>	Sets parameters within a macro for display through the <code>macroData</code> log at the NOTICE severity level following the completion of the macro
<code>env.getErrorCommand</code>	Returns the command string that triggered a macro error
<code>env.getErrorStatus</code>	Returns the reason for a triggered error
<code>env.startCommandResults</code>	Starts the capture of command output
<code>env.stopCommandResults</code>	Stops the capture of command output
<code>env.getResults</code>	Returns one line of output from the capture buffer

**Table 49: Environment Commands** *(continued)*

Command	Description
<code>env.regexMatch(string)</code>	Checks a string against a regular expression
<code>env.getRegexMatch(string)</code>	Extracts a string from a larger string

## Capturing Output of Commands

Macro language commands can start and stop the capture of JUNOS command output and save the results.

The `env.startCommandResults` command starts JUNOS output capture and flushes any existing capture buffer. The capture stops when directed by a **stop** command or when the buffer maximum of 5,242,880 (5MB) characters is reached. The command output in the buffer is stored as normally seen on the terminal output. A `< CR >` ends a line of buffer data.

The `env.stopCommandResults` command stops JUNOS output captures. The `env.getResults` command obtains one line of output from the capture buffer.

The `env.startCommandResults`, `env.stopCommandResults`, and `env.getResults` commands apply to one CLI session. There is no effect on CLI sessions other than the CLI session running the macro.

The `env.getResults` command gets the next line of the capture buffer. Each call gets the next line of the capture buffer. The command returns the first line the first time it is called after a capture start (`env.startCommandResults`). It resets the next line it returns by passing a line number argument. An argument of 0 or 1 returns the first line.

For example:

```
<# env.startCommandResults #>
show version
<# env.stopCommandResults #>
! possibly other JUNOS commands
<# while something is true #>
  <# outputLine := env.getResults #>
  . . .
  <# endwhile #>
```

## Adding Regular Expression Matching to Macros

Use the following syntax to check a string against a regular expression:

```
env.regexMatch(stringToMatch, someRegularExpression)
```

For example, the string `outputLine` is checked to determine whether it starts with the value `System`:



```
<# if env.regexpMatch(outputLine, "^System") #>
...
<# endif #>
```

In this example, the string interface is checked to determine whether it has the correct syntax:

```
<# interface := env.argv(1) #>
<# if env.regexpMatch(interface, "[0-9]+/[0-9]+$") #>
...
<# endif #>
```

### ***Extracting a Substring Based on Regular Expression Matching***

A string can be extracted from a larger string using the following syntax:

```
env.getRegexpMatch(stringToMatch, someRegularExpression, occurrence)
```

This example gets the third occurrence of a sequence of numbers followed by a space, followed by a sequence of letters within string outputLine:

```
<# value := env.getRegexpMatch(outputLine, "[0-9]+ [a-zA-Z]+", 3) #>
```

This example gets the interface value from an interface string:

```
<# interface := env.getRegexpMatch(interface, "[0-9]+/[0-9]+", 1) #>
```

### ***Adding Global Variables for Availability to the onError Macro***

Global variables can be set in any macro and retrieved without being explicitly passed in another macro. The global variable is set with the following syntax:

```
env.setVar(name, value)
```

The name is a quoted string and the value can be a character string or number.

The global variable is retrieved with the following syntax:

```
value := env.getVar(name).
```

The name is a quoted string and the value is the value stored by an earlier env.setVar.

A macro can contain one onError macro. The onError macro is like any other macro file template. There can only be one macro with the name onError in the macro file.

In this example, the macro sets a global variable before using it in a configuration command:

```
<# badInt #>
<# interface := "9/0" #>
<# env.setVar("interface",interface) #>
config t
interface fast <# interface; '\n' #>
ip add 7.6.5.4 255.255.255.0
```

```

<#endtmpl#>

<# onError #>
<# c := env.getVar("interface") #>
<# setoutput console #>
<# "begin output\n" #>
<# "The interface value: ";c; "\n" #>
<# endsetoutput #>
end
<#endtmpl#>

```

When the macro runs, the global variable `interface` is set and the `interface` command contains an invalid interface value. The CLI reports a syntax error and the macro `onError` is called. Within the `onError` macro, the global variable `interface` is retrieved.

```

ERX-40-4a-cc#macro b.mac badInt
Macro 'badInt' in file 'b.mac' starting execution (Id: 18)
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with ^Z.
The interface command contains a bad interface value.
ERX-40-4a-cc(config)#interface fast 9/0
                        ^
% interface not found

```

The CLI reports a syntax error and the macro `onError` is called. Within the `onError` macro, the global variable `interface` is retrieved.

```

The interface value: 9/0
The macro terminates.
Macro 'badInt' in file 'b.mac' ending execution (Id: 18)

```

## Unique IDs for Macros

Each macro that is started has an associated macro ID. The ID is displayed when the macro is started and when the macro ends. Log messages for `macroScheduler` also display the unique ID.

For example, macro `c` in file `bench.mac` is started on a Telnet session and the unique ID is 25. The following start and end messages are output to the CLI session:

```

Macro 'c' in file 'bench.mac' starting execution (Id: 25)
...
Macro 'c' in file 'bench.mac' ending execution (Id: 25)

```

## Accurate Use of Error Status When Accessed Outside of onError Macro

When the status is requested from a macro other than the `onError` macro, the error status reported is unavailable and the error string is empty.

For example, the following macro gets the command error and status. The macro is not an `onError` macro so the status is reported as unavailable.

```

<# errorStatusTest #>

<# setoutput console #>

```

```

<# "error: " $ env.getErrorCommand $ "\n" #>
<# "status: " $ env.getErrorStatus $ "\n\n" #>
<# endsetoutput #>

<#endtmpl#>

```

When you run the macro, the error command is blank and the error status is Status is not available:

```

ERX-40-4a-cc#macro b.mac errorStatusTest
Macro 'errorStatusTest' in file 'b.mac' starting execution (Id: 17)
error:
status: "Macro is not onError. Status is not available"

Macro 'errorStatusTest' in file 'b.mac' ending execution (Id: 17)

```

## Variables

A local variable enables you to store a value used by the macro while it executes. The macro can modify the value during execution. Local variables can be integers, real numbers, or strings. The initial value of local variables is zero.

Like macros, local variables must have a name consisting only of letters, numbers, or the underline character (\_). The variable name must not begin with a number. You must not use a reserved keyword as a variable name. A line that ends with a variable needs a new line character at the end of the line.

## Literals

A literal is an exact representation of numeric or string values. Every number is a literal. Place single or double quotation marks around a string to identify it as a string literal. You can specify special characters within a literal string by prefacing them with a backslash as follows:

quotation mark	\'
double quotation mark	\"
tab	\t
carriage return	\r
new line	\n
string end	\0
backslash	\\

**Examples**

```

42
98.6
'string literal'

```

“ count”

“ \t this string starts with a tab and ends with a tab \t”

## Operators

You can use operators to perform specific actions on local variables or literals, resulting in some string or numeric value. Table 50 on page 478 lists the available macro operators in order of precedence by operation type. Operators within a given row are equal in precedence.

**Table 50: Macro Operators**

Operation Type	Operators						
Extraction	substr()	rand()	round()	truncate()			
String	\$						
Multiplicative	*	/	%				
Arithmetic	+	-	++	--			
Relational	<	>	<=	>=	=	!=	
Logical		&&	!				
Assignment	:=						
Miscellaneous	[ ]	,	()	.	;	<#	#>

Table 51 on page 478 briefly describes the action performed by each operator.

**Table 51: Operator Actions**

Operation	Operator	Action
Arithmetic (binary)	+	Adds the right and left sides together
Arithmetic (binary)	-	Subtracts the element to the right of the operator from the element to the left of the operator
Assignment	:=	Evaluates the elements to the right of the operator, then assigns that value to the local variable to the left of the operator
Combine	\$	Creates a new string by joining the values of the right and left sides; converts any numeric values to strings before joining
Less than	<	Evaluates as true (returns a 1) if the element to the left of the operator is <i>less than</i> the expression to the right of the operator; otherwise the result is false (0)

**Table 51: Operator Actions** (continued)

Operation	Operator	Action
Greater than	>	Evaluates as true (returns a 1) if the element to the left of the operator is <i>greater than</i> the expression to the right of the operator; otherwise the result is false (0)
Less than or equal to	< =	Evaluates as true (returns a 1) if the element to the left of the operator is <i>less than or equal to</i> the expression to the right of the operator; otherwise the result is false (0)
Greater than or equal to	> =	Evaluates as true (returns a 1) if the element to the left of the operator is <i>greater than or equal to</i> the expression to the right of the operator; otherwise the result is false (0)
Equal to	=	Evaluates as true (returns a 1) if the element to the left of the operator is equivalent to the expression to the right of the operator; otherwise the result is false (0)
Not equal to (logical NOT)	!=	Evaluates as true (returns a 1) if the element to the left of the operator is not equal to the expression to the right of the operator; otherwise the result is false (0)
Logical OR		Evaluates as true (returns a 1) if the values of either the left or right sides is nonzero; evaluation halts at the first true (1) expression
Logical AND	&&	Evaluates as true (returns a 1) if the values of the left and right sides are both nonzero; evaluation halts at the first false (0) expression
Miscellaneous	[ ]	See “Invoking Other Macros” on page 487 for usage.
Miscellaneous	,	See “While Constructs” on page 485 for usage.
Miscellaneous	( )	Groups operands and operators to achieve results different from simple precedence; effectively has the highest precedence
Miscellaneous	.	Provides access to environment commands; see Table 49 on page 473. Provides access to macros; see “Invoking Other Macros” on page 487
Miscellaneous	;	Separates operation statements within a control expression
Miscellaneous	< # # >	Encloses control expressions
Multiplication	*	Multiplies the expression to the left of the operator by the expression to the right
Division	/	Divides the expression to the left of the operator by the expression to the right

**Table 51: Operator Actions** *(continued)*

Operation	Operator	Action
Modulo	%	Divides the expression to the left of the operator by the expression to the right and returns the integer remainder. If the expression to the left of the operator is less than the expression to the right, then the result is the expression to the left of the operator.
Postincrement	+ +	Increments the variable after the expression is evaluated
Postdecrement	- -	Decrements the variable after the expression is evaluated
Preincrement	+ +	Increments the variable before the expression is evaluated
Predecrement	- -	Decrements the variable before the expression is evaluated
Negation	!	Reverses the logical state of its operand. 0 is returned for nonzero operands. 1 is returned for operands that evaluate to zero.
Arithmetic (unary)	+	Provides the absolute value of the value
Arithmetic (unary)	-	Provides the inverse of the value
Substring	substr()	Extracts a portion of a string
Randomize	rand()	Generates a random integer between the provided endpoints, inclusive
Round	round()	Rounds the value to the nearest integer
Truncate	truncate()	Truncates a noninteger value to the value left of the decimal point

## Assignment

Use the assignment operator (`:` `=`) to set the value of a local variable. The expression to the right of the operator is evaluated, and then the result is assigned to the local variable to the left of the operator. The expression to the right of the operator can include the local variable if you want to modify its current value.

**Example**

```
<# i := i + 1 #>
<# count := count - 2 #>
```

## Increment and Decrement

You can use the increment operator (`+ +`) to increase the value of a local variable by one. You specify when the value is incremented by the placement of the operator. Incrementing occurs after the expression is evaluated if you place the operator to the right of the operand. Incrementing occurs before the expression is evaluated if you place the operator to the left of the operand.

**Example 1** `<# i := 0; j := 10 #>`  
`<# j := j - i++ #>`

In Example 1, the result is that *i* equals 1 and *j* equals 10, because the expression is evaluated ( $10 - 0 = 10$ ) before *i* is incremented.

**Example 2** `<# i := 0; j := 10 #>`  
`<# j := j - ++i #>`

In Example 2, the result is still that *i* equals 1, but now *j* equals 9, because *i* is incremented to 1 before the expression is evaluated ( $10 - 1 = 9$ ).

Similarly, you can use the decrement operator (`--`) to decrement local variables. Placement of the operator has the same effect as for the increment operator.

When a local variable with a string value is used with the increment or decrement operators, the value is permanently converted to an integer equal to the length in characters of the string value.

## String Operations

The combine operator (`$`) concatenates two strings into one longer string. Numeric expressions are converted to strings before the operation proceeds. The variable *local* evaluates to “ want a big” :

**Example** `\<# local := “ want a ” $ “ big” #>`

## Extraction Operations

The extraction operations are substring (`substr`), randomize (`rand`), round, and truncate. These operators are equal in precedence, and all take precedence over the string operator.

You can use the substring operator (`substr`) to extract a shorter string from a longer string. To use the substring operator, you must specify the source string, an offset value, and a count value. You can specify the string directly, or you can specify a local variable that contains the string. The offset value indicates the place of the first character of the substring to be extracted; “ 0” indicates the first character in the source string. The count value indicates the length of the substring. If the source string has fewer characters than the sum of the offset and count values, then the resulting substring has fewer characters than indicated by the count value.

**Example** `<# local := “ want a ” $ “ big” $ “ string” #>`  
`<# substr(local, 5, 12) #>The result is “ a big string”`  
`<# substr(local, 0, 10) #>The result is “ want a big”`  
`<# substr(“ ready” , 0, 4) #>The result is “ read”`

The random operator produces a random integer value from the specified inclusive range; in the following example, the result is between 1 and 10:

```
<# number:= rand(1,10) #>
```

The round operator rounds off the number to the nearest integer:

```
<# decimal:= 4.7 #>
<# round(decimal) #>The result is decimal is now 5
```

The truncate operator truncates noninteger numbers to the value left of the decimal point:

```
<# decimal:= 4.7 #>
<# truncate(decimal) #>The result is decimal is now 4
```

## Arithmetic Operations

The arithmetic operations are multiply (\*), divide (/), modulo (%), add (+), and subtract (-). Multiply, divide, and modulo are equal in precedence, but each has a higher precedence relative to add and subtract. Add and subtract are equal in precedence.

**Example**

```
<# 4 % 3 + 12 - 6 #>The result is 7
```

When a local variable with a string value is used with arithmetic operators, the value is temporarily converted to an integer equal to the length in characters of the string value. You can use the env.atoi commands to avoid this situation.

## Relational Operations

The relational operations compare the value of the expression to the left of the operator with the value of the expression to the right. The result of the comparison is 1 if the comparison is true and 0 if the comparison is false.

If the expressions on both sides of the operator are strings, they are compared alphabetically. If only one expression is a string, the numeric value is used for comparison. Arithmetic operators have a higher precedence.

**Example**

```
<# i := 9; i++ < 10 #>The result is 1
<# i := 9; ++i < 10 #>The result is 0
```

## Logical Operations

You can use the logical operators AND (&&), OR (||), and NOT (!) to evaluate expressions. The result of the operation is a 1 if the operation is true and 0 if the operation is false.

For the logical AND, the result of the operation is true (1) if the values of the expressions to the left and right of the operator are both nonzero. The result of the operation is false (0) if either value is zero. The evaluation halts when an expression is evaluated as zero.



For the logical OR, the result of the operation is true (1) if the values of the expression on either the left or right of the operator is nonzero. The result of the operation is false (0) if both values are zero. The evaluation halts when an expression is evaluated as nonzero.

The NOT operator must precede the operand. The operation inverts the value of the operand; that is, a nonzero expression becomes 0, and a zero expression becomes 1. For the logical NOT, the result of the operation is true (1) if it evaluates to zero, or false if it evaluates to nonzero.

**Example**

```
<# i := 6; i >= 3 && i <= 10 #>The result is 1
<# i := 1; i >= 3 && i <= 10 #>The result is 0
<# i := 6; i >= 3 || i <= 10 #>The result is 1
<# i := 1; i >= 3 && i <= 10 #>The result is 0
<# i := 5; !i #> The result is 0
<# i := 5; j := 0; !i && !j #>The result is 0
<# i := 5; j := 0; !i || !j #>The result is 1
```

Relational operators have a higher precedence than logical AND and OR. The NOT operator is equal in precedence to the increment and decrement operators.

## Miscellaneous Operations

The positive (+) and negative (-) operations must precede the operand. The result of a positive operation is the absolute value of the operand. The result of a negative operation is the negative value of the operand; that is, a +(-5) becomes 5 and a -(-2) becomes 2. These operators have the same precedence as the increment and decrement operators. If there is an operand on both sides of these operators, they are interpreted as the add and subtract operators.

**Example**

```
<# local_abs := +local #>
<# local_neg := -local #>
```

All operations are performed in the order implied by the precedence of the operators. However, you can modify this order by using parentheses (( )) to group operands and operators. Operations within parentheses are performed first. The result is that of the operations within the parentheses.

**Example**

```
<# 4 % (3 + 12) - 6 #>The result is -6
<# 5 && 2 > 1 #>The result is 1
<# (5 && 2) > 1 #>The result is 0
```

Results of control expressions are written to the output stream when the expression consists of the following:

- A single local variable
- A single literal element
- An operation whose result is not used by one of the following operations:

assignment	predecrement	postdecrement	while
------------	--------------	---------------	-------

if	preincrement	postincrement
----	--------------	---------------

---

**Example**

```
<# localvar #>value of localvar is written
<# " any string" #>" any string" written
<# 4 % 3 + 12 - 6 #>" 7" is written
<# 4 % (3 + 12) - 6 #>" -6" is written
<# i := i + 1 #>nothing is written
<# count := (count - 2) #>nothing is written
```

## Conditional Execution

You can use *if* or *while* constructs in macros to enable conditional execution of commands.

### If Constructs

*If* constructs provide a means to execute portions of the macro based on conditions that you specify. An *if* construct consists of the following components:

- An opening *if* expression
- A group of any number of additional expressions
- (Optional) Any number of *elseif* expressions and groups of associated expressions
- (Optional) An *else* expression and any associated group of expressions
- An *endif* expression to indicate the end of the *if* structure

The *if* expression and any optional *elseif* expressions must include a lone environment value command, a local variable, a literal, or some operation using one or more operators.

Only one of the groups of expressions within the *if* construct is executed, according to the following scheme:

1. The *if* expression is evaluated. If the result is true (nonzero), the associated expression group is executed.
2. If the result is false (zero), then the first *elseif* expression, if present, is evaluated. If the result is true (nonzero), the associated expression group is executed.
3. If the result of evaluating the first *elseif* expression is false (zero), the next *elseif* expression is evaluated, if present. If the result is true (nonzero), the associated expression group is executed.

If all *elseif* expressions evaluate to false (zero) or if no *elseif* expressions are present, then the *else* expression group—if present—is executed.

4. This evaluation process continues until an expression evaluates to nonzero. If there is no nonzero evaluation, then no expression group is executed.

You can write an empty expression group so that no action is performed if this group is selected for execution. You can nest *if* structures within other *if* structures or *while* structures.

The following sample macro demonstrates various *if* structures:

```
<#                if_examples                #>
<# //----- #>
<# if 1 #>
! This is always output because any nonzero value is " true."
<# endif #>
<# if 0 #>
! This is never output because a value of zero is " false."
<# endif #>
<# // Here's an example with elseif and else. #>
<# color := env.getline("What is your favorite color? ") #>
<# if color = "red" #>
! Red is my favorite color, too.
<# elseif color = "pink" #>
! Pink is a lot like red.
<# elseif color = "black" #>
! Black is just a very, very, very dark shade of red.
<# else #>
! Oh. That's nice.
<# endif #>
<# // Here's a nested if example. #>
<# sure := env.getline("Are you sure that " $ color $ " is your favorite color? ") #>
<# if substr(sure, 0, 1) = 'y' || substr(sure, 0, 1) = 'Y' #>
<# if color != "black" && color != "white";
shade := env.getline("Do you prefer dark " $ color $
" or light " $ color $ "? ") #>
<# if shade = "dark" #>
! I like dark colors, too.
<# elseif shade = "light" #>
! I prefer dark colors myself.
<# else #>
! Hmmm, that's neither dark nor light.
<# endif #>
<# else #>
! Oh. That's nice.
<# endif #>
<# else #>
! I didn't think so!
<# endif #>
<# endtmpl #>
```

## While Constructs

*While* constructs provide a means to repeatedly execute one or more portions of the macro based on a condition that changes during the execution. A *while* construct consists of the following components:

- An opening *while* expression
- A group of any number of additional expressions
- An *endwhile* expression to indicate the end of the *while* structure

The *while* expression must include a lone environment value command, a local variable, a literal, or some operation using one or more operators. Each time that this expression evaluates to nonzero, the associated expression group is executed.

You can place an iteration expression after the *while* expression. This optional expression is evaluated after each execution of the *while* expression group.

You can include *if* structures within a *while* structure. You can also include special control expressions indicated by the *break* or *continue* expressions. The *break* expression breaks out of the *while* structure by halting execution of the expression group and executing the first expression after the *endwhile* statement. The *continue* expression skips over the rest of the expression group, evaluates any iteration expression, then continues with the execution of the *while* structure. The *while* structure is limited to 100,000 repetitions by default. You can nest up to 10 *while* structures.

**Example** The following sample macro demonstrates various *while* structures:

```
<#                               while_examples                               #>
<# //----- #>
<# // Remember that variables are automatically initialized to 0. #>
! Table of squares of the first 10 integers:
<# while ++i <= 10 #>
!<#i;" ";i*i;"\n"#>
<# endwhile #>
<# // Remember that the value of a string used as an integer is the number. #>
<# // of characters in the string. #>
<# stars := "" #>
<# while stars < 10, stars := stars $ "*" #>
!<# stars;"\n" #>
<# endwhile #>
<# while stars > 0, stars := substr(stars, 0, stars-1) #>
!<# stars;"\n" #>
<# endwhile #>
<# // An example of the continue and break statements. #>
<# // Also note that many statements can be grouped. #>
! All the positive even numbers less than 11
<# i:=0; while ++i < 100 #>
<#if i%2; continue; endif; if i > 10; break; endif; !" $ i $ "\n"; #>
<# endwhile #>
<# // While constructs will NOT iterate forever. #>
<# while 100 > 0 // This is always true, but the macro will eventually stop #>
<# ++iterations; endwhile #>
! The while loop iterated <#iterations#> times.
<# endtmp1 #>
```

## Passing Parameters in Macros

You can pass parameters to an entry macro. The system translates these parameters to the correct data type.



**NOTE:** The *env.argv* array is separate from this feature and still functions as designed. In other words, the *env.argv* array continues to pass parameters as text strings. To use *env.argv* array values for subsequent numeric operations, you must first convert the values to a number by using the *env.atoi(string)* command.

**Example** The following macro (saved as *m.mac*) uses values specified in a CLI command to compute the final result:

```
<# m(left,right,third) #>
<# multi := left * right #>
<# multiFinal := multi * third #>
<# setoutput console #>
<# " The result is: multiFinal; " \n" #>
<# endsetoutput #>
<# endtmpl #>
```

The following example provides the output from using this macro:

```
host1#macro m.mac m 5 6 7
host1#The result is: 210
```

## Generating Macro Output

You may want a macro to provide output while it is operating. In simple cases, you can use the **verbose** keyword to echo commands to the display and display comments as the macro executes. For more information about the **verbose** keyword, see “Example 2” on page 481 in “Invoking Other Macros” on page 487.

When running more complex macros or macros that contain a lot of commands or comments, you may want to output only certain information (that is, not all commands and comments). In this case, you can use `<# setoutput console #>` to send the information directly to the console display when it executes.

**Example 1** The following example shows how you can send output directly to the console:

```
<# setoutput console #>
This message appears in the console window (whether or not you use verbose mode).
<#endsetoutput #>
```

**Example 2** The following example shows how you can send a single argument to the console:

```
<# puts (msg) #>
!=====
!=====
! output "msg" to console
!=====
!=====
<# setoutput console #>
<# msg; "\n"#>
<#endsetoutput #>
<# endtmpl #>
!=====
!=====
<# tmpl.puts(" Hello World" )
```

## Invoking Other Macros

Macros can invoke other macros within the same macro file; a macro can also invoke a macro from another macro file if the invocation takes place in literal text, that is,

not within a control expression. A macro can invoke itself directly or indirectly (an invoked macro can invoke the macro that invoked it); the number of nested invocations is limited to 10 to prevent infinite recursion.

Within each macro, you can specify parameters that *must* be passed to the macro when it is invoked by another. You must specify named variables enclosed in parentheses after the macro name in the first line of the macro, as shown in this example:

```
<# macroName (count, total) #>
```

Additional parameters can be passed as well. Parameters can be local variables, environmental variables, literals, or operations. The invoking macro passes local variables by reference to the invoked macro. Passing parameters has no effect on the invoking macro unless the parameter is a local variable that is changed by the invoked macro. When the invoked macro completes execution, the local variable assumes the new value for the invoking macro.

The invoked macro can use the **param[*n*]** expression to access parameters passed to it, where *n* is the number of the parameter passed. This is useful if optional parameters can be passed to a macro or if the same iterative algorithm needs to process the parameters.

Use the expression **param[0]** to return the total number of parameters passed to the macro. Use the **return** keyword to halt execution of the invoked macro and resume execution of the invoking macro. Use the **exit** keyword to halt execution of all macros.

**Example 1** The following sample macro demonstrates macro invocation:

```
<#                invoking_examples                #>
<# //----- #>
<# name := env.getline("What is your first name? ") #>
! First, <#name#>, we will invoke the if_examples and
! the while_examples macros...
<# tmpl.if_examples; tmpl.while_examples #>
! Hey <#name#>, have you noticed that your name backwards is:
!<# eman:= ""; tmpl.reversestring(name, eman); eman; "\n"#>
<#  tmpl.argumentlist("a", "b", "c")#>
<# endtmpl #>
<# argumentlist #>
<# if param[0] = 0; return; endif #>
! argumentList() was called with the following arguments:
<# while ++i <= param[0]#>
! <#param[i];"\n"#>
<# endwhile #>
<# endtmpl #>
<# reversestring (string, gnirts) #>
<# i := 0 + string; // i is now equal to the number of characters in string. #>
<# while --i >= 0; gnirts := gnirts $ substr(string, i, 1); endwhile #>
<# endtmpl #>
```

**Example 2** The following macro in file macro1.mac invokes a macro from within another file, macro2.mac:

```
<# callAnotherMacro #>
<# localVar := 5 #>
```

```
macro macro2.mac macroName2 <# localVar #> string1
<# endtmp1 #>
```

This macro passes the value of `localVar` to `macroName2`. The value of `localVar` remains at 5 for `callAnotherMacro`, regardless of any operations upon that variable in the second macro. In other words, an invoked macro in another file cannot return any values to the invoking macro.

The output of `callAnotherMacro` looks like this:

```
host1# macro verbose macro1.mac callAnotherMacro
host1#!Macro 'callAnotherMacro' in the file 'macro1.mac' starting execution (Id: 55)
macro macro2.mac macroName2 5 string1
!Macro 'macroName2' in the file 'macro2.mac' starting execution
!Macro 'macroName2' in the file 'macro2.mac' ending execution
host1#!Macro 'callAnotherMacro' in the file 'macro1.mac' ending execution (Id: 55)
```

The invoked macro cannot invoke a third macro from another file. Only a single level of invocation is supported.

## Detecting and Recording Macro Errors

---

You can control how a macro responds when an error occurs during execution. By creating and adding an `onError` macro to your macro file, you can specify that, on the occurrence of an error, macro execution within the current macro stops and the `onError` macro is invoked. An `onError` macro can call other macros. If another error occurs after the `onError` macro is invoked, macro execution stops again and the `onError` macro is invoked again. This process continues either until the `onError` macro completes or until reaching the recursion limit of 10.

### Detectable Macro Errors

CLI macros detect various errors when a macro is executed. Some of these errors are detected without the use of an `onError` macro; they include the following:

- Macro file not found
- Macro not found
- Macro compilation error
- Macro does not complete error due to excessive looping or recursion

The following errors are detected only when a CLI macro file contains an `onError` macro:

- Syntactic error in executed CLI command
- Runtime error in executed CLI command

In addition to these detectable errors, you can use the following environment commands to return textual error information to the `macroData` log file:

- `env.getErrorCommand`
- `env.getErrorStatus`



**CAUTION:** Though you can use the **`env.getErrorCommand`** and **`env.getErrorStatus`** commands in any macro, the only appropriate place from which to execute these commands is from an **`onError`** macro.

---

## Logging Macro Results

You can use the **`env.setResult`** command to set parameters within a macro to display information through the macroData log file. When defined, parameter information appears in the macroData log file at the NOTICE severity level following the completion of the macro.

The following example defines several results (1 through 5):

```
<# numberMacro #>
<# env.setResult("A", " " $1 ) #>
<# env.setResult("A", " " $2 ) #>
<# env.setResult("A", " " $3 ) #>
<# env.setResult("A", " " $4 ) #>
<# env.setResult("A", " " $5 ) #>
<#endtmpl#>
```

Each value is sent to the macroData log file, starting with 1 and ending with 5. Each successive value overwrites the previous value in the log file. In other words, if the macro ends after setting the third result (that is, 3) the log file displays the following:

A is 3

If the macro finishes completely, the log file displays the following:

A is 5

## Viewing Macro Errors

You can view macro error information in the macroData log file using the **`show log data`** command and specifying the **`macroData`** keyword for the category.



**NOTE:** Each execution of a macro, by any user and by any name, obtains a unique ID. This ID appears in the starting and ending message of the macro output and for each log message in the macroData log.

---

### **`show log data`**



- Use to display log event data using the **category** keyword and the macroData category.
- **delta**—Limits the display to events that occurred after the time set with the log baseline command.
- **severity**—Displays events that have a specific severity level.
- Example

```
host1(config)# show log data category macroData severity debug
NOTICE 01/07/2006 09:46:57 macroData: Macro 'badInterfaceCommandMacro' in file 'testInterfaceCommand.mac'
  starting execution (Id: 402) on vty, 0
ERROR 01/07/2006 09:46:57 macroData: (Id: 402) Command error:  interface fastEthernet 500, Command execution
  error
NOTICE 01/07/2006 09:46:57 macroData: (Id: 402) commandError is interface fastEthernet 500
NOTICE 01/07/2006 09:46:57 macroData: (Id: 402) commandErrorStatus is Command execution error
NOTICE 01/07/2006 09:46:57 macroData: (Id: 402) runStatus is Loop:500
NOTICE 01/07/2006 09:46:57 macroData: Macro 'badInterfaceCommandMacro' in file 'testInterfaceCommand.mac'
  ending execution (Id: 402) on vty, 0
```

- See show log data.

## onError Macro Examples

The following examples provide an indication of how the onError macro can assist in using and troubleshooting macro files. The examples purposely contain errors and show the result when using the onError macro.

### Detecting Invalid Command Formats

In this example, the following macro file (*badInterfaceCommand.mac*) performs a loop. Within each loop, the CLI executes the **interface fastEthernet** command using an invalid interface format:

```
<# badInterfaceCommandMacro #>
<# env.setResult("runStatus","start" ) #>
<# theLoopCount := 500 #>
conf t
<# while theLoopCount > 0 #>
<# env.setResult("runStatus", "Loop:" $ theLoopCount ) #>
interface fastEthernet <# theLoopCount; '\n' #>
<# -theLoopCount #>
<# endwhile #>
<# env.setResult("runStatus","complete" ) #>
<#endtmpl#>
<# onError #>
<# env.setResult("commandError", env.getErrorCommand) #>
<# env.setResult("commandErrorStatus", env.getErrorStatus) #>
<#endtmpl#>
```

If the macro were to run to completion, the CLI would execute the commands as follows:

```
interface fastEthernet 500
```

```

interface fastEthernet 499
.
.
.
interface fastEthernet 1

```

Because the macro uses invalid interface formats, executing the macro without the embedded `onError` macro would result in error output for each loop. However, the `onError` macro detects the error and stops the macro. Using the `onError` macro, the output appears as follows:

```

host1(config)# macro testInterfaceCommand.mac badInterfaceCommandMacro
Macro 'badInterfaceCommandMacro' in file 'testInterfaceCommand.mac' starting execution (Id: 402)
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with ^Z.
ERX-40-94-fb(config)#interface fastEthernet 500
                                   ^
% invalid interface format
Macro 'badInterfaceCommandMacro' in file 'testInterfaceCommand.mac' ending execution (Id: 402)

```

You can determine the execution progress through the `runStatus` result entry in the `macroData` log file. For this example, the `runStatus` value of 500 indicates that the macro ended early.

```

host1(config)# show log data category macroData severity debug
NOTICE 01/07/2006 09:46:57 macroData: Macro 'badInterfaceCommandMacro' in file 'testInterfaceCommand.mac'
starting execution (Id: 402) on vty, 0
ERROR 01/07/2006 09:46:57 macroData: (Id: 402) Command error: interface fastEthernet 500, Command execution
error
NOTICE 01/07/2006 09:46:57 macroData: (Id: 402) commandError is interface fastEthernet 500
NOTICE 01/07/2006 09:46:57 macroData: (Id: 402) commandErrorStatus is Command execution error
NOTICE 01/07/2006 09:46:57 macroData: (Id: 402) runStatus is Loop:500
NOTICE 01/07/2006 09:46:57 macroData: Macro 'badInterfaceCommandMacro' in file 'testInterfaceCommand.mac'
ending execution (Id: 402) on vty, 0

```

## Detecting Invalid Commands

In this example, the following macro file (*badExecCommand.mac*) is programmed to execute four `exec` mode commands. However, the second command in the sequence is invalid.

```

<# badExecCommandMacro #>
<# env.setResult("runStatus","start" ) #>
show clock
<# env.setResult("runStatus","after first show clock" ) #>
foo
<# env.setResult("runStatus","after foo" ) #>
show privilege
<# env.setResult("runStatus","after show privilege" ) #>
show clock
<# env.setResult("runStatus","complete" ) #>
<#endtmpl#>
<# onerror #>
<# errCmd := env.getErrorCommand #>

```

```

<# errStatus := env.getErrorStatus #>
<# env.setResult("commandError", errCmd) #>
<# env.setResult("commandErrorStatus", errStatus) #>
<#endtmpl#>

```

If the macro were to run to completion, the following commands would be executed:

```

show clock
foo
show privilege
show clock

```

Without the `onError` macro, the macro would indicate the invalid command, but it would also continue with the rest of the configuration. When using the `onError` macro, the macro stops when it encounters the invalid command.

Executing the macro that contains the `onError` macro, the output appears as follows:

```

host1# macro badExecCommandTest.mac badExecCommandMacro
Macro 'badExecCommandMacro' in file 'badExecCommandTest.mac' starting execution (Id: 101)
SUN JAN 08 2005 07:21:50 UTC
ERX-40-94-fb#foo
      ^
% Invalid input detected at '^' marker.
Privilege level is 15
Macro 'badExecCommandMacro' in file 'badExecCommandTest.mac' ending execution (Id: 101)

```

You can determine the execution progress through the `runStatus` result entry in the `macroData` log file. For this example, the log output indicates the command error and displays the following to indicate that the macro ended early:

`runStatus` is after foo

```

host1# show log data category macroData severity debug
NOTICE 01/08/2006 07:14:13 macroData: Macro 'startmin' in file 'master.mac' starting execution (Id: 1)
on vty, 0
NOTICE 01/08/2006 07:14:18 macroData: Macro 'startmin' in file 'master.mac' ending execution (Id: 1) on
vty, 0
NOTICE 01/08/2006 07:21:50 macroData: Macro 'badExecCommandMacro' in file 'badExecCommandTest.mac' starting
execution (Id: 101) on vty, 0
ERROR 01/08/2006 07:21:50 macroData: (Id: 101) Command error: foo, Command syntax error
NOTICE 01/08/2006 07:21:50 macroData: (Id: 101) commandError is foo
NOTICE 01/08/2006 07:21:50 macroData: (Id: 101) commandErrorStatus is Command syntax error
NOTICE 01/08/2006 07:21:50 macroData: (Id: 101) runStatus is after foo
NOTICE 01/08/2006 07:21:50 macroData: Macro 'badExecCommandMacro' in file 'badExecCommandTest.mac' ending
execution (Id: 101) on vty, 0

```

## Detecting Missing Macros

In this example, the following macro file (*badMacroInvocation.mac*) is programmed to invoke a missing or nonexistent macro (*tmpl.foo*).

```

<# badMacroInvocation #>
<# env.setResult("runStatus","start" ) #>

```

```

<# tmpl.foo #>
<# env.setResult("runStatus","complete" ) #>
<#endtmpl#>
<# onerror #>
<# errCmd := env.getErrorCommand #>
<# errStatus := env.getErrorStatus #>
<# env.setResult("commandError", errCmd) #>
<# env.setResult("commandErrorStatus", errStatus) #>
<#endtmpl#>

```

When using the `onError` macro, the macro stops when it encounters the missing macro. The output appears as follows:

```

host1# macro badMacroInvocation.mac badMacroInvocation
Macro 'badMacroInvocation' in file 'badMacroInvocation.mac' starting execution (Id: 407)
% can't find macro foo
Macro 'badMacroInvocation' in file 'badMacroInvocation.mac' ending execution (Id: 407)

```

You can determine the execution progress through the `runStatus` result entry in the `macroData` log file. For this example, the log output indicates the macro error and displays the following to indicate that the macro ended prior to invoking the macro:

start

```

host1# show log data category macrodata severity debug
NOTICE 05/27/2005 12:39:10 macroData: Macro 'badMacroInvocation' in file 'badMacroInvocation.mac' starting
  execution (Id: 407) on vty, 0
ERROR 05/27/2005 12:39:10 macroData: (Id: 407) Command error: foo, macro not found
NOTICE 05/27/2005 12:39:10 macroData: (Id: 407) commandError is foo
NOTICE 05/27/2005 12:39:10 macroData: (Id: 407) commandErrorStatus is macro not found
NOTICE 05/27/2005 12:39:10 macroData: (Id: 407) runStatus is start
NOTICE 05/27/2005 12:39:10 macroData: Macro 'badMacroInvocation' in file 'badMacroInvocation.mac' ending
  execution (Id: 407) on vty, 0

```

## Running Macros

---

Although you must write macros on a computer, you can copy them to the system. Issue the **macro** command from the CLI to execute both local macros and macros stored remotely.

You can display the commands that are generated by the macro file without executing the commands by using the **test** keyword. We recommend you confirm that the test display matches your expectations before you execute the macro to run the commands.

You can terminate a macro while it is running by pressing `Ctrl + c`. You can close Telnet and SSH windows while a macro is running, but the macro does not terminate until it completes the current command.

### **macro**

- Use to execute a macro that generates—and can execute—CLI commands. This command is available in all command modes.
- This command invokes a hidden FTP client and takes place in the context of the current virtual router (VR) rather than the default VR. You must configure the FTP server so that any traffic destined for the VR can reach the VR; typically, you configure the FTP server to reach the default address of the system, which will always be able to reach the VR.
- You can specify both a macro filename and a macro contained within that file. For example, the following command looks for the file *confatm.mac* and runs the macro named *atmOverDs3* contained within the file:

```
host1(config)#macro confatm.mac atmOverDs3
```

- You can specify only a macro filename. The command searches in the specified file for a macro named *start*. The command fails if the *start* macro does not exist. For example, the following command looks for the file *confatm.mac* and runs the macro named *start* contained within the file:

```
host1(config)#macro confatm.mac
```

- You can specify only the macro name, using the **name** keyword, if the macro file is stored locally in NVS and has the same name as the included macro you want to invoke. For example, the following command looks for the file *confatm.mac* and runs the macro named *confatm* contained within the file:

```
host1(config)#macro name confatm
```

- You must specify a macro filename for remotely stored macro files, as in the following example:

```
host1(config)#macro pc:/macros.mac atmOverDs3
```

- You can pass arguments to the macro; if the argument contains a space or other special character, you must enclose the argument within double quotation marks.
- Use the **test** keyword to specify that the macro generate, but not execute, the commands. You can look at the output to verify that it is what you want. The test mode is verbose and displays comments.
- Use the **verbose** keyword to echo commands to the display and display comments as the macro executes. By default the command executes in nonverbose mode.
- There is no **no** version.
- See macro.

**Example** A typical macro application is to iteratively generate a series of commands, as shown in the following macro, *atmOverDs3*:

```
<# atmOverDs3 #>
<# i:=0; while i++ < 3 #>
controller t3 9/<#i;'\'n'#>
no shut
```

```

clock source internal module
framing cbitadm
ds3-scramble
!
interface atm 9/<#i;'\\n'#>
atm vc-per-vp 256
!
<# endwhile #>
!
interface atm 9/1.1
encap pppoe
!
<# i:=1; while i < 100 #>
interface atm 9/1.1.<#i;'\\n'#>
encap ppp
no ppp shut
no ppp keep
atm pvc <# i #> 1 <# i #> aal5mux ip
ip addr 10.1.<#i#>.1 255.255.255.0
!
<# i++ #>
<# endwhile #>
!
<# endtmp1 #>

```

If you stored this macro remotely in the macro file, *pc:/macros.mac*, you issue the following commands to execute the macro:

```

host1>enable
host1#conf t
host1(config)#macro pc:/macros.mac atmOverDs3

```

Alternatively, if you stored this macro locally in the macro file *atmOverDs3.mac*, you issue the following commands to execute the macro:

```

host1>enable
host1#conf t
host1(config)#macro verbose atmOverDs3

```

The following example shows a portion of the output resulting from executing the *atmOverDs3* macro from a local file (the starting and ending comments vary for a remote macro):

```

host1(config)#!Macro 'atmOverDs3' in the file 'atmOverDs3.mac' starting execution
(Id: 103)
host1(config)#controller t3 9/1
host1(config)#no shut
host1(config)#clock source internal module
host1(config)#framing cbitadm
host1(config)#ds3-scramble
host1(config)#interface atm 9/1
host1(config)#atm vc-per-vp 256
host1(config)#controller t3 9/2
host1(config)#no shut
host1(config)#clock source internal module
host1(config)#framing cbitadm
host1(config)#ds3-scramble

```

```

host1(config)#interface atm 9/2
host1(config)#atm vc-per-vp 256
host1(config)#controller t3 9/3
host1(config)#no shut
host1(config)#clock source internal module
host1(config)#framing cbitadm
host1(config)#ds3-scramble
host1(config)#interface atm 9/3
host1(config)#atm vc-per-vp 256
host1(config)#interface atm 9/1.1
host1(config)#encap pppoe

host1(config)#interface atm 9/1.1.1
host1(config)#encap ppp
host1(config)#no ppp shut
host1(config)#no ppp keep
host1(config)#atm pvc 1 1 1 aal5mux ip
host1(config)#ip addr 10.1.1.1 255.255.255.0

[display omitted]

host1(config)#interface atm 9/1.1.99
host1(config)#encap ppp
host1(config)#no ppp shut
host1(config)#no ppp keep
host1(config)#atm pvc 99 1 99 aal5mux ip
host1(config)#ip addr 10.1.99.1 255.255.255.0
host1(config)#!Macro 'atmOverDs3' in the file 'atmOverDs3.mac' ending execution
(Id: 103)

```

## Scheduling Macros

---

You can schedule a macro to run once at a specific time, after a periodic interval, or at a periodic time of day, day of the week, or day of the month. You can schedule macros for automatic configurations and use it for troubleshooting.

A single macro file can contain many macro definitions. You can schedule every definition individually. Scheduled macros must be local files and cannot be deleted from the file system. A directory report lists scheduled macros. The maximum number of scheduled macros is 100. In Global Configuration mode, the setting persists on reboot, but in Privileged Exec mode, it does not persist on reboot.

After unified ISSU is started, scheduled macros do not run. Macro scheduling supports high availability (HA) using mirrored storage. Macros scheduled to run persist during an SRP switchover operation, whether scheduled in Privilege Exec or Global Configuration mode.

To schedule macros to run at a specified time or interval:

1. To schedule a macro to run every 30 minutes:

```
host1(config)#schedule macro interval frequency 30 abc.mac getuptime
```

2. Issue the **show macro** command to verify the scheduled time.

```
host1#show schedule macro abc.mac
abc.mac getuptime scheduled to run at 2007-02-14 11:58:06
```

### Example

Scheduling macro commands.

```
host1#schedule macro interval frequency 30 john.mac getuptime
host1#schedule macro interval time-of-day 00:10 day-of-month 2 fred.mac freddie
host1#configure terminal
host1(config)#schedule macro joe.mac interval time-of-day 00:00 day-of-week sunday
start
host1(config)#exit
host1#schedule macro at 20:00 February 14 john.mac getuptime
host1#schedule macro at 20:00 February 16 larry.mac getuptime
```

To show the set of currently scheduled macros (asterisks indicate persistent macros):

```
host1#show schedule macro
```

macro file name	macro	privilege level	interval time-of-day	interval frequency (minutes)	schedule	started
fred.mac	Freddie	15	00:10 DayOfMonth:2	---	2007-03-02 00:10:00	---
*joe.mac	start	15	00:00 sunday	---	2007-02-18 00:00:00	---
john.mac	getuptime	15	---	30	2007-02-14 14:26:38	---
larry.mac	start	15	---	---	2007-02-16 20:00:00	---
moe.mac	start	15	---	---	2007-02-14 20:00:00	---

To display the run time of one macro scheduled in Global Configuration mode, creating an entry that persists across reboots:

```
host1#show schedule macro joe.mac
joe.mac start is persistent and scheduled to run at 2007-02-18 00:00:00
```

To display the start time of one running macro:

```
host1#show schedule macro john.mac
john.mac getuptime started at 2007-02-14 14:26:39
```

When you show the running configuration, joe.mac is the only one reported, because the other macros were scheduled in Privileged Exec mode.

```
host1#show conf | include schedule
schedule macro joe.mac interval time-of-day 00:00 day-of-week sunday start
```

When you display the directory listing, it shows the scheduled macros are all in-use and cannot be deleted:



file	size	unshared size	date (UTC)	in use
-----	-----	-----	-----	---
disk0:m.mac	438	438	01/26/2007 10:12:26	!
disk0:fc.mac	515	515	01/26/2007 12:29:14	!
disk0:b.mac	7728	7728	02/05/2007 13:55:10	!
disk0:c.mac	146	146	02/07/2007 16:09:12	!
disk0:mmcX2.re1	859484	83859484	02/05/2007 16:01:50	!

```
host1#delete joe.mac
% File in use
```

### Example

Running a scheduled macro one time. Run macro m in m.mac at 14:35 today.

```
host# more m.mac
<# m(left,right,third) #>
<# mult := left * right #>
<# multFinal := mult * third #>
<# env.setResult("operation", "" $ left $ " * " $ right $ " * " $ third) #>
<# env.setResult("theResult", "" $ multFinal) #>
<#endtmpl#>
```

```
host1#schedule macro at 14:35 m.mac m
```

```
host1#show schedule macro m.mac
```

macro file name	macro	privilege level	interval time-of-day	interval frequency (minutes)	schedule	started
-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----
m.mac	Freddie	15	00:10 sunday	---	2008-09-28 00:00:00	---
host1#						

When you show the directory listing, the schedule macro m.mac is marked in use and cannot be modified.

file	size	unshared size	date (UTC)	in use
-----	-----	-----	-----	---
disk0:m.mac	438	438	01/26/2007 10:12:26	!
disk0:fc.mac	515	515	01/26/2007 12:29:14	!
disk0:b.mac	7728	7728	02/05/2007 13:55:10	!
disk0:c.mac	146	146	02/07/2007 16:09:12	!
disk0:mmcX2.re1	83859484	83859484	02/05/2007 16:01:50	!

Observe the macroScheduler log for the execution of macro m.mac:

```
NOTICE 02/14/2007 14:35:01 macroScheduler: macro m.mac started with ID 3
NOTICE 02/14/2007 14:35:01 macroScheduler: macro m.mac with ID 3 ran
successfully
```

```
NOTICE 02/14/2007 14:35:01 macroScheduler: (Id: 3) operation is 7 * 6 * 5
NOTICE 02/14/2007 14:35:01 macroScheduler: (Id: 3) theResult is 210
```

After the macro is executed, it is no longer in the list of scheduled macros.

```
host1#show schedule macro m.mac
```

```
% Command failed
```

file	size	unshared size	date (UTC)	in use
disk0:m.mac	438	438	01/26/2007 10:12:26	
disk0:fc.mac	515	515	01/26/2007 12:29:14	
disk0:b.mac	7728	7728	02/05/2007 13:55:10	!
disk0:c.mac	146	146	02/07/2007 16:09:12	
disk0:mmcX2.rel	83859484	83859484	02/05/2007 16:01:50	!

### Example

Macro `getuptime`, scheduled to run at a regular interval uses regular expression matching to find the system running time in the `show version` report. It then uses regular expression matching on the line containing the system running time to determine the days, hours, minutes, and seconds.

```
host1#schedule macro interval frequency 60 b.mac getuptime
```

```
host1#show schedule macro
```

```
b.mac getuptime scheduled to run at 2007-02-14 11:58:06
```

See the macroScheduler log for the execution of macro `b.mac`.

```
NOTICE 02/14/2007 11:26:20 macroScheduler: macro b.mac started with ID 3
NOTICE 02/14/2007 11:26:21 macroScheduler: macro b.mac with ID 3 ran
successfully
NOTICE 02/14/2007 11:26:21 macroScheduler: (Id: 3) Days: is 0 days
NOTICE 02/14/2007 11:26:21 macroScheduler: (Id: 3) Hours: is 0 hours
NOTICE 02/14/2007 11:26:21 macroScheduler: (Id: 3) Minutes: is 17 minutes
NOTICE 02/14/2007 11:26:21 macroScheduler: (Id: 3) Seconds: is 16 seconds
```

After the macro is run, display the next scheduled run time:

```
host1#show schedule macro b.mac
```

```
b.mac at 2007-02-14 12:59:09
```

```
host1#
```

The file `b.mac` continues to be in use and cannot be deleted.

file	size	unshared size	date (UTC)	in use
disk0:m.mac	438	438	01/26/2007 10:12:26	
disk0:fc.mac	515	515	01/26/2007 12:29:14	
disk0:b.mac	7728	7728	02/05/2007 13:55:10	!
disk0:c.mac	146	146	02/07/2007 16:09:12	
disk0:mmcX2.rel	83859484	83859484	02/05/2007 16:01:50	!

```
host1#delete b.mac
```

```
% File in use
```

The macro macro b.mac runs every 60 minutes.

```
NOTICE 02/14/2007 14:47:47 macroScheduler: macro b.mac started with ID 5
NOTICE 02/14/2007 14:47:49 macroScheduler: macro b.mac with ID 5 ran
successfully
NOTICE 02/14/2007 14:47:49 macroScheduler: (Id: 5) Days: is 0 days
NOTICE 02/14/2007 14:47:49 macroScheduler: (Id: 5) Hours: is 1 hour
NOTICE 02/14/2007 14:47:49 macroScheduler: (Id: 5) Minutes: is 25 minutes
NOTICE 02/14/2007 14:47:49 macroScheduler: (Id: 5) Seconds: is 33 seconds
```

```
host1#show schedule macro
b.mac getuptime scheduled to run at 2007-02-14 14:52:47
```

- Related Topics**
- schedule macro
  - show schedule macro

## Practical Examples

You can use the macros in this section for configuring your router or as examples of useful macros you can build yourself.

### Configuring Frame Relay

You can organize your macros in many different ways to suit your needs. The first sample macro in this section, *ds1mac.mac*, shows a typical method of organization. It consists of a number of related macros for configuring interfaces on CT1 and CE1 modules, as described in Table 52 on page 501.

Some of the macros provide a single configuration function, like configuring the controller. These are invoked by other macros that are executable from the command line. A high-level macro invokes several of the executables, acting much like a script to provide greater functionality.

**Table 52: Contents of ds1mac.mac**

Macro Name	Description
Help	Lists the executable macros in ds1mac.mac
controllerDs1	Executable macro that configures Cx1 ports; calls macro cntrDs1
ds1Encap	Executable macro that configures Frame Relay encapsulation on Cx1 serial interfaces; calls macro cx1Encap
ds1FrCir	Executable macro that configures Frame Relay circuits on Cx1 subinterfaces; calls macro cx1FRCir
configCx1	Executable macro that configures Cx1 serial Frame Relay interfaces; calls macros cntrDs1, cx1Encap, and cx1FrCir
cntrDs1	Configures the Cx1 controller; called by other macros

**Table 52: Contents of ds1mac.mac (continued)**

Macro Name	Description
cx1Encap	Configures Frame Relay encapsulation on serial interfaces; called by other macros
cx1FrCir	Configures Frame Relay circuits on the subinterfaces; called by other macros

The following examples list the complete set of macros contained in ds1mac.mac. You can run the Help macro to list the other executable macros contained in ds1mac.mac. To configure Frame Relay on your router with ds1mac.mac, you can do one of the following:

- Run the controllerDS1, ds1Encap, and ds1FrCir macros in that order
- Run the configCx1 macro

In either case, to run the macros you must provide the required values described in the macros.

```
<# Help #>
! This file contains the following executable macros:
! controllerDs1
! ds1Encap
! ds1FrCir
! configCx1
<# endtmpl #>
<# controllerDs1 #>
<# if env.argc = 0 #>
! This macro configures your Cx1 controller.
! This macro will configure e1 ports as unframed.
! This macro should be called with 4 arguments.
! The argument list should be as follows:
! type; number of numPorts; slot; port; clock; framing; lineCoding
<# return #>
<# endif #>
<# type := env.argv(1) #>
<# ifCount := env.argv(2) #>
<# slot := env.argv(3) #>
<# port := env.argv(4) #>
<# clock := env.argv(5) #>
<# framing := env.argv(6) #>
<# coding := env.argv(7) #>
<# if clock = 'internal' #>
<# clock := 'internal mod' #>
<# endif #>
<# tmpl.cntrDs1(type, ifCount, slot, port, clock, framing, coding) #>
<# endtmpl #>
<# ds1Encap #>
<# if env.argc = 0 #>
! This macro configures Frame Relay encapsulation on Cx1 serial
! interfaces.
! This macro must be called with 4 arguments.
! If the protocol is Frame Relay (fr), then specify the type (DTE
! or DCE) and the lmi type.
! The argument list should be as follows:
```

```

! number of numPorts; slot; port; proto; frType; frLmi
<# return #>
<# endif #>
<# ifCount := env.argv(1) #>
<# slot := env.argv(2) #>
<# port := env.argv(3) #>
<# proto := env.argv(4) #>
<# if proto = 'fr' #>
<# proto := 'frame-relay ietf' #>
<# endif #>
<# tmp1.cx1Encap(ifCount, slot, port, proto) #>
<# endtmp1 #>
<# ds1FrCir #>
<# if env argc = 0 #>
! This macro configures Frame Relay circuits on Cx1
! subinterfaces.
! This macro must be called with 4 arguments.
! The argument list should be as follows:
! number of numPorts; slot; port; numCirs; dlci
<# return #>
<# endif #>
<# ifCount := env.argv(1) #>
<# slot := env.argv(2) #>
<# port := env.argv(3) #>
<# numCirs := env.argv(4) #>
<# dlci := env.argv(5) #>
<# tmp1.cx1FrCir(ifCount, slot, port, numCirs, dlci) #>
<# endtmp1 #>
<# configCx1 #>
<# if env argc = 0 #>
! This macro configures Cx1 serial Frame Relay interfaces.
! This macro must be called with 4 arguments.
! The argument list should be as follows:
! type; number of numPorts; slot; port; clock; framing; coding; proto; frType;
frLmi; numCirs; dlci
<# return #>
<# endif #>
<# type := env.argv(1) #>
<# ifCount := env.argv(2) #>
<# slot := env.argv(3) #>
<# port := env.argv(4) #>
<# clock := env.argv(5) #>
<# framing := env.argv(6) #>
<# coding := env.argv(7) #>
<# proto := env.argv(8) #>
<# tmp1.cntrDs1(type, ifCount, slot, port, clock, framing, coding) #>
<# if proto = 'fr' #>
<# frType := env.argv(9) #>
<# frLmi := env.argv(10) #>
<# numCirs := env.argv(11) #>
<# dlci := env.argv(12) #>
<# tmp1.cx1Encap(ifCount, slot, port, proto, frType, frLmi) #>
<# tmp1.cx1FrCir(ifCount, slot, port, numCirs, dlci) #>
<# else #>
<# tmp1.cx1Encap(ifCount, slot, port, proto, type, type) #>
<# endif #>
<# endtmp1 #>
<# cntrDs1 #>
<# //This macro is called by other macros to configure DS1 ports #>
<# //Parameters in order are interface Type; numPorts; slot; port; clock; framing;
lineCoding #>

```

```

!
! Configure Cx1 Controller
!
<# type := param[1] #>
<# ifCount := env.atoi(param[2]) #>
<# slot := param[3] #>
<# port := env.atoi(param[4]) #>
<# clock := param[5] #>
<# framing := param[6] #>
<# coding := param[7] #>
<# while ifCount-- > 0 #>
controller <# type; ' '; slot; '/' ; port; '\n' #>
<# if framing = 'unframed' #>
unframed
<# else #>
framing <# framing; '\n' #>
linecoding <# coding; '\n' #>
<# endif #>
clock source <# clock; '\n' #>
no shutdown
<# port++ #>
<# endwhile #>
<# endtmpl #>
<# cx1Encap #>
<# //This macro is called by other macros to configure Frame Relay encapsulation
  on serial interfaces. #>
<# //Parameters in order are interface Type; numPorts; slot; port; clock; framing;
  lineCoding #>
!
! Configure Encapsulation
!
<# ifCount := env.atoi(param[1]) #>
<# slot := param[2] #>
<# port := env.atoi(param[3]) #>
<# proto := param[4] #>
<# if proto = 'fr' #>
<# proto := 'frame-relay ietf' #>
<# endif #>
<# while ifCount-- > 0 #>
interface serial <# slot; '/' ; port; ':1'; '\n' #>
encapsulation <# proto; '\n' #>
<# if proto = 'frame-relay ietf' #>
frame-relay intf-type <# param[5]; '\n' #>
frame-relay lmi-type <# param[6]; '\n' #>
<# endif #>
<# port++ #>
<# endwhile #>
<# endtmpl #>
<# cx1FrCir #>
<# //This macro is called by other macros to configure Frame Relay circuits on
  subinterfaces. #>
<# //Parameters in order are interface numPorts; slot; port; numCirs; dlci #>
!
! Configure Frame Relay Circuits
!
<# ifCount := env.atoi(param[1]) #>
<# slot := param[2] #>
<# port := env.atoi(param[3]) #>
<# numCirs := env.atoi(param[4]) #>
<# startDlci := env.atoi(param[5]) #>
<# id := env.atoi('1') #>

```

```

<# while ifCount-- > 0 #>
<# cirs := numCirs #>
<# id := env.atoi('1') #>
<# dlci := startDlci #>
<# while cirs-- > 0 #>
interface serial <# slot; '/' ; port; ':1.' ; id; '\n' #>
frame-relay interface-dlci <# dlci #> ietf
<# id++; dlci++ #>
<# endwhile #>
<# port++ #>
<# endwhile #>
<# endtmpl #>

```

## Configuring ATM Interfaces

This sample macro configures ATM interfaces based on the inputs you provide when prompted by the macro.

```

<# atmIf #>
<# slotPort:=env.getline("slot/port?") #>
<# while (vcType != 1 && vcType != 2);
vcTypeStr :=env.getline("VC type (1 = AAL5MUX IP, 2 = AAL5SNAP)?");
vcType := env.atoi(vcTypeStr);
endwhile #>
<# if vcType = 1; vcTypeStr := "aal5mux ip"; else; vcTypeStr := "aal5snap"; endif
#>
<# encapRouted:=1; encapBridged:=2; encapPPP:=3 #>
<# while (encapType < encapRouted || encapType > encapPPP );
encapTypeStr :=env.getline("encapsulation (1 = routed, 2 = bridged, 3 =
ppp)?");
encapType := env.atoi(encapTypeStr);
endwhile #>
<# if encapType = encapPPP #>
<# authNone:=1; authPap:=2; authChap:=3; authPapChap:=4; authChapPap:=5 #>
<# while (authType < authNone || authType > authChapPap );
authTypeStr :=env.getline("authentication (1 = None, 2 = PAP, 3 = CHAP, 4 =
PAP/CHAP; 5 = CHAP/PAP)?");
authType := env.atoi(authTypeStr);
endwhile #>
<# endif #>
<# vpStartStr := env.getline("Starting VP number?");
vpStart:=env.atoi(vpStartStr)#>
<# vpEndStr := env.getline("Ending VP number?"); vpEnd
:=env.atoi(vpEndStr)#>
<# vcStartStr := env.getline("Starting VC number?");
vcStart:=env.atoi(vcStartStr)#>
<# vcEndStr := env.getline("Ending VC number?"); vcEnd
:=env.atoi(vcEndStr)#>
<# loopbackStr := env.getline("Loopback interface number or <cr>?") #>
<# vp := vpStart; while vp <= vpEnd, ++vp #>
<# vc := vcStart; while vc <= vcEnd, ++vc #>
interface atm <#slotPort $ '.' $ ++i; '\n' #>
atm pvc <# i; ' ' ; vp; ' ' ; vc; ' ' ; vcTypeStr; '\n' #>
<# if encapType = encapPpp #>
encap ppp
<# if authType = authPap#>
ppp authentication pap
<# elseif authType = authPapChap#>
ppp authentication pap chap

```

```

<# elseif authType = authChapPap#>
ppp authentication chap pap
<# elseif authType = authChap#>
ppp authentication chap
<# endif #>
<# elseif encapType = encapBridged #>
encap bridged1483
<# endif #>
<# if loopbackStr != "" #>
ip unnumbered loopback <# loopbackStr;"\n" #>
<# endif #>
!
<# endwhile #>
!
<# endwhile #>
<# if encapType = encapPPP #>
<# authNone:=1; authPap:=2; authChap:=3; authPapChap:=4; authChapPap:=5 #>
<# while (authType < authNone || authType > authChapPap );
authTypeStr :=env.getline(" authentication (1 = None, 2 = PAP, 3 = CHAP, 4 =
PAP/CHAP; 5 = CHAP/PAP)?" );
authType := env.atoi(authTypeStr);
endwhile #>
<# endif #>
<# vpStartStr := env.getline(" Starting VP number?" );
vpStart:=env.atoi(vpStartStr)#>
<# vpEndStr := env.getline(" Ending VP number?" ); vpEnd
:=env.atoi(vpEndStr)#>
<# vcStartStr := env.getline(" Starting VC number?" );
vcStart:=env.atoi(vcStartStr)#>
<# vcEndStr := env.getline(" Ending VC number?" ); vcEnd
:=env.atoi(vcEndStr)#>
<# loopbackStr := env.getline(" Loopback interface number or <cr>?" ) #>
<# vp := vpStart; while vp <= vpEnd, ++vp #>
<# vc := vcStart; while vc <= vcEnd, ++vc #>
interface atm <#slotPort $ '.' $ ++i;' \n'#>
atm pvc <# i; ' '; vp; ' '; vc; ' '; vcTypeStr;' \n'#>
<# if encapType = encapPpp #>
encap ppp
<# if authType = authPap#>
ppp authentication pap
<# elseif authType = authPapChap#>
ppp authentication pap chap
<# elseif authType = authChapPap#>
ppp authentication chap pap
<# elseif authType = authChap#>
ppp authentication chap
<# endif #>
<# elseif encapType = encapBridged #>
encap bridged1483
<# endif #>
<# if loopbackStr != " " #>
ip unnumbered loopback <# loopbackStr;" \n" #>
<# endif #>
!
<# endwhile #>
!
<# endwhile #>
<# endtmpl #>

```



## Chapter 9

# Booting the System

This chapter provides information about booting your E Series router.



**NOTE:** The type of file you must always use for booting your system is a software release file with the extension .rel.

This chapter contains the following sections:

- Platform Considerations on page 507
- Configuring Your System for Booting on page 507
- Rebooting Your System on page 512
- Operations in Boot Mode on page 515
- Displaying Boot Information on page 516

## Platform Considerations

System booting is supported on all E Series routers.

For information about the modules supported on E Series routers:

- See the *ERX Module Guide* for modules supported on ERX7xx models, ERX14xx models, and the ERX310 Broadband Services Router.
- See the *E120 and E320 Module Guide* for modules supported on the E120 and E320 Broadband Services Routers.

## Configuring Your System for Booting

Juniper Networks delivers your E Series router already set up with a factory default configuration and a software release (.rel) file. You can, however, create a new configuration file (.cnf) and select a different software release file to use in future reboots of your router. When you reboot your router, you can use:

- An existing configuration file to be used each time the system reboots
- An existing configuration file limited to a single reboot
- An existing script file to be used on only the next reboot

- An existing script file to be used on the next and every subsequent reboot using backup mode
- The configuration that is already running on the system
- The factory default configuration

In addition, you can configure the system to load a different software release file on its next reboot. Use the **boot system** command to do this. If you do not configure your system with a backup release, it reverts to the release and configuration it had before the crash.

You can use the **boot backup** command to specify a software release and configuration for the system to use in case the system resets too many times in a given period.

The **boot subsystem** command enables you to override the system release setting for a given subsystem—for example, OC3.

## Booting the GE-2 Line Module

The GE-2 line module can now detect whether it supports the software release installed on the primary SRP module in an E Series router. When the GE-2 line module is booting and it detects that it supports the software release on the SRP module, the line module boots successfully with that software release. However, if the GE-2 line module detects that it does not support the software release on the SRP module, the module does not boot successfully and the following messages appear in the system log:

```
ERROR 05/04/2005 06:09:05 system (slot 13): Line card failed diags in slot 13 with
status: Autoboot disabled
ERROR 05/04/2005 06:09:05 system (slot 13): board failed diagnostics
```

### **boot backup**

- Use to set the release version and the configuration to be used when the boot logic chooses backup mode.
- This command does not reboot the system; it configures the system for rebooting.
- You can require the system to reboot from an existing configuration file, from an existing local script file, or with the factory default configuration.
- Example

```
host1(config)#boot backup rel_1_1_0.rel newfile.cnf
```

- Use the **no** version of this command to remove the backup setting.
- See boot backup.

### **boot config**

- Use to specify the configuration with which the system is rebooted.



**CAUTION:** All versions of this command except those using the **running-configuration** or **startup-configuration** keywords erase the current system running configuration. Before issuing one of those versions, you might want to save the running configuration to a .cnf file by issuing the **copy running-configuration** command.

---

- You can require the system to reboot from a configuration file.

To specify an existing system configuration (.cnf) file that the system uses for the next reboot and all subsequent reboots:

```
host1(config)#boot config newconffile.cnf
```

To specify an existing system configuration (.cnf) file that the system uses only on the next reboot. On subsequent reboots, the system will use the running configuration current at the time of that reboot:

```
host1(config)#boot config newconffile.cnf once
```

- You can require the system to reboot from an existing local script (.scr) file that the system uses only on the next reboot. On subsequent reboots, the system will use the running configuration current at the time of that reboot:

```
host1(config)#boot config scriptfile.scr
```

Configuring this option causes the system to ignore—only at the next reboot—an autocfg.scr file that you may also have configured.

- If you specify a .cnf file, upon the next reboot the system resets to the factory defaults; it then opens the .cnf file and begins applying it immediately. If you specify a .scr file, upon the next reboot the system resets to the factory defaults; it then waits for a 600-second countdown timer to expire before applying the script. This period gives the line modules an opportunity to fully initialize before configuration begins. Upon timer expiration or system initialization (whichever occurs first), the script executes regardless of the state of the line modules. You can escape from the countdown by pressing Ctrl + c; the system prompts you to execute the script immediately or return to the system console.
- You can require the system to reboot from the configuration running on the system at the time of the reboot.

If the system is in Automatic Commit mode:

```
host1(config)#boot config running-configuration
```

If the system is in Manual Commit mode:

```
host1(config)#boot config startup-configuration
```

See “Saving the Current Configuration” on page 271 in “Managing the System” on page 245, for information about Automatic and Manual Commit modes.

- You can require the system to reboot from the factory default configuration. On subsequent reboots, the system will use the running configuration current at the time of that reboot:

```
host1(config)#boot config factory-defaults
```

- This command does not reboot the system.
- Use the **no** version to clear a previous request to reboot in a specified manner.
- See boot config.

### **boot force-backup**

- Use to force the system to use the backup release/configuration on the next boot.
- This command does not reboot the system.
- Example

```
host1(config)#boot force-backup mysafe.rel mysafe.cnf
```



**NOTE:** Even if you request the normal release/configuration, the boot logic still checks the reboot history file. It may force the backup mode regardless of your request. To guarantee that the boot logic does not override your request to use the normal release/configuration, do either of the following:

- Delete the reboot history file after issuing the **no boot force-backup** command.
  - Do not configure a backup release or configuration file.
- 

- Use the **no** version to set the system to return to its normal release/configuration on the next boot.
- See boot force-backup.

### **boot revert-tolerance**

- Use to set the reversion tolerances that the boot logic uses to determine whether to use normal or backup settings.
- The default settings tolerate up to three resets in 30 minutes.
- This command does not reboot the system when high availability is not enabled.
- Issuing this command when high availability is enabled results in the system cold-restarting the router and using the backup settings if the tolerance settings are met.
- Example

```
host1(config)#boot revert-tolerance 2 60
```

- Use the **no** version to restore the default values, 3 and 1800.
- See boot revert-tolerance.

### **boot revert-tolerance never**

- Use to set the boot logic to never revert to the backup image/configuration.
- This command does not reboot the system.
- Example

```
host1(config)#boot revert-tolerance never
```



**NOTE:** This command is functionally equivalent to specifying no backup image/configuration, but it allows you to leave the backup settings alone and to toggle autoreversion on and off. This command is undone by using the **no boot revert-tolerance** command, which restores the default settings, or the **boot revert-tolerance** command. The default settings are count = 3 (crashes) and time = 1800 (seconds); that is, 3 crashes in 30 minutes.

---

- There is no **no** version.
- See boot revert-tolerance never.

### **boot subsystem**

- Use to configure the software release the selected subsystem will use the next time it reboots.
- This command does not reboot the subsystem.
- Example 1

```
host1(config)#boot subsystem ct3 rel_1_0_1.rel
```

- The **boot backup subsystem** version of this command enables you to configure a backup subsystem for booting.
- Example 2

```
host1(config)#boot backup subsystem ct3 rel_1_0_1.rel
```

- Use the **no** version to remove the configuration setting.
- See boot subsystem.

### **boot system**



**CAUTION:** This command attempts to reprogram the SRP boot PROMs, if necessary. The SRP has a primary and, typically, a backup boot PROM. If the **boot system** command is executed on an SRP with no backup boot PROM, the following message is displayed: “ Write to Backup Boot ROM failed.” In this instance, this message is correct, and you can ignore it.

---

- Use to specify the software release (.rel) file that your system will use when rebooting.
- This command does not reboot the system.
- In a dual SRP configuration, when this information is synchronized to the standby SRP, the standby SRP is reloaded to boot the specified release. The high availability feature requires the release to be the same on the active and the standby SRP. This means that arming the system to boot with a different release causes the standby to reload and prevent high availability from becoming active or disable high availability if it is active or pending.
- Example
 

```
host1(config)#boot system release1.rel
```
- There is no **no** version.
- See boot system.

## Rebooting Your System

---

You can reboot your system as a whole or select a single slot in the system to be rebooted. You can reboot your system immediately or in a designated interval of time, and can configure the system to prompt you if the modules are in a state that could lead to a loss of configuration data or an NVS corruption.

If you reboot the system before it has completely written configuration updates to NVS, the system will start with the last saved configuration. If you reboot the system after it has written the configuration updates to NVS, but before it has applied those updates to actual configuration data, the configuration update process resumes immediately following the reboot and completes before any application accesses its configuration data.

### **reload**

- Use to reload the software on the system immediately.
- Reloads the system software (.rel) file and the configuration (.cnf) file on the system.
- When you issue this command, the system prompts you for a confirmation before the procedure starts.
- If you specify the **force** keyword, the procedure will fail if the system is updating the boot prom. In this case, the system will display a message that indicates that the procedure cannot currently be performed and the cause. However, if the system is in a state that could lead to a loss of configuration data or an NVS corruption, such as during the synchronization of SRP modules, the system displays a message that describes the state, and asks you to confirm (enter y for yes, n for no) whether you want to proceed.
- If you do not specify the **force** keyword, the procedure will fail if the system is in a state that could lead to a loss of configuration data or an NVS corruption, and the system will display a message that explains why the procedure failed.

- Use the **standby-srp** keyword to reload the system software (.rel) file and the configuration (.cnf) file on the standby SRP module without having to look up its slot number to use with the **reload slot** command.
- When you issue this command, the system prompts you for a confirmation before the procedure starts.
- If you remove a standby SRP module without issuing the **slot erase** command to delete the configuration, the E Series router cannot guarantee that the SRP modules were synchronized. In this situation, you must do either of the following to reload the router:
  - Issue the **reload** command with the **force** keyword.
  - Issue the **slot erase** command followed by the **reload** command.
- Example

```
host1#reload
host1#reload force
```

- There is no **no** version.
- See reload.

### **reload**

- Use to reload the software on the system at an absolute time.
- This command halts the system.
- Reloads the system software (.rel) file and the configuration (.cnf) file on the system. If the system is in a state that could lead to a loss of configuration data or an NVS corruption, it will delay the procedure for one minute. Each time the system delays the procedure, it adds a message to the os log that explains why the procedure was delayed. If the system cannot reload on its sixth attempt, the reboot procedure will fail, and the system will add an explanation to the os log.
- Example

```
host1#reload at 10:10 May 5
```

This command reloads the software 10 minutes after 10 on May 5th.

- There is no **no** version.
- See reload.

### **reload**

- Use to reload the software on the system in a relative period of time.
- This command halts the system.
- Reloads the system software (.rel) file and the configuration (.cnf) file on the system.
- If the system is in a state that could lead to a loss of configuration data or an NVS corruption, it will delay the procedure for one minute. Each time the system delays the procedure, it adds a message to the os log that explains why the

procedure was delayed. If the system cannot reload on its sixth attempt, the reboot procedure will fail, and the system will add an explanation to the os log.

- Example

```
host1#reload in 00:10
```

This command reloads the software in 10 minutes.

- There is no **no** version.
- See reload.

### **reload slot**

- Use to reboot a selected slot on the router.
- Reloads the system software (.rel) file and the configuration (.cnf) file on the module in the selected slot.
- When you issue this command, the system prompts you for a confirmation before the procedure starts.
- If you specify the **force** keyword and the slot number of the primary SRP module, the procedure will fail if the system is updating the boot prom. In this case, the system will display a message that indicates that the procedure cannot currently be performed and the cause. However, if the system is in a state that could lead to a loss of configuration data or an NVS corruption, such as using the synchronization of SRP modules, it displays a message that describes the state, and asks you to confirm (enter yes or no) whether you want to proceed.
- If you do not specify the **force** keyword, the procedure will fail if the system is in a state that could lead to a loss of configuration data or an NVS corruption, and the system will display a message that explains why the procedure failed.
- Example

```
host1#reload slot 3
```

- There is no **no** version.
- See reload slot.

## **Rebooting When a Command Takes a Prolonged Time to Execute**

Although some commands might take a relatively long time to execute, most do not. If the CLI displays no output other than “ Please wait...” for a prolonged period, you can press Ctrl + x to reset the system. Use Ctrl + x only as a last resort; if at all possible, wait until the command is completed, or attempt to connect to the system through a Telnet or SSH client through which you can use the **reload** command.

### **service ctrl-x-reboot**

- Use to enable the Ctrl + x key combination to reset the system from any location.
- Issuing the Ctrl + x command has no effect if you are accessing the system through Telnet.
- This feature is disabled by default.



- Loading the factory default configuration does not override this feature.
- Example

```
host1(config)#service ctrl-x-reboot
```

- Use the **no** version to disable this feature.
- See service ctrl-x-reboot.

## Configuration Caching

Configuration caching prevents the system from being partially configured with changes in the event of a reset. When a script or macro begins execution, the resulting configuration changes are automatically cached in system RAM rather than being committed to nonvolatile storage (NVS). When the script or macro completes execution, the cache is flushed as a background operation, saving the configuration changes to NVS.

If the SRP module resets during the script or macro execution, the system boots as though the script were never started because no NVS files have changed. If the SRP module resets during the flush operation, the system boots with factory defaults.

If you start another script or macro in the middle of an ongoing flush operation, the current flush is halted; now if the SRP module resets during the script, the system boots with factory defaults.

If you issue the **reload** command to manually reset the system, the system checks for an ongoing cache flush and warns you if a flush operation is discovered.

## Operations in Boot Mode

---

To access Boot mode:

1. Reload the system from Privileged Exec mode:

```
host1#reload
```

```
WARNING: Execution of this command will cause the system to reboot.
```

```
Proceed with reload? [confirm]
```

```
Reload operation commencing, please wait...
```

```
7
```

2. Press the < mb > key sequence (case-insensitive) during the countdown that is displayed immediately after the BPOST tests are bypassed. This puts the CLI in Boot mode.

```
:boot##
```

If you do not press the < mb > key sequence before the countdown timer expires, the reloading process continues and returns the CLI to the normal User Exec mode.

## Displaying Boot Information

You can display information about the system's booting configuration, installed hardware versions, and installed software versions.

### **show boot**

- Use to show the current boot settings.
- Example

```
host1#show boot
System Release:      release.rel
System Configuration: running-configuration
```

Note: This system is not configured with backup settings.

- See show boot.

### **show hardware**

- Use to display detailed information about the system hardware.
- Field descriptions
  - slot—Physical slot that contains the module
  - type—Type of module
  - serial number—Serial number of the module
  - assembly number—Part number of the module
  - assembly rev—Hardware revision of the module
  - ram (MB)—Memory capacity of the host processor
  - number of MAC addresses—Total number of Ethernet addresses on an I/O module
  - base MAC address—Lowest Ethernet address on an I/O module
- Example

```
host1#show hardware
```

slot	type	serial number	assembly number	assembly rev.	ram (MB)
0	SRP-10Ge	4305358981	3500005472	A06	2048
1	SRP-10Ge	4305359020	3500005472	A06	2048
2	---	---	---	---	---
3	---	---	---	---	---
4	CT3-12	4305337201	3500010901	A07	128
5	OC3/OC12/DS3-ATM	4605300290	3500103958	A06	256
6	GE/FE	4605340294	3500104554	A08	256

number

slot	type	serial number	assembly number	assembly rev.	of MAC addresses
---	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----
0	---	---	---	---	---
1	SRP-10Ge I/O	4605250426	3500003302	A02	1
2	---	---	---	---	---
3	---	---	---	---	---
4	CT3/T3-12 I/O	4305316605	3500010801	A02	
5	OC3(8)-MM I/O	4304443600	4500001501	A03	4
6	GE-SFP I/O	4605310064	4500002001	A05	1
base					
slot	MAC address				
---	-----				
0	---				
1	0090.1aa0.577a				
2	---				
3	---				
4					
5	0090.1a41.7c68				
6	0090.1aa0.6216				

- See show hardware.

### **show last-reset**

- Use to display the reason for the system's last user-directed reload or error-caused reset.
- Example

```
host1#show last-reset
last reset: power cycle
```

- See show last-reset.

### **show reload**

- Use to display the system's reload status.
- Example

```
host1#show reload
reload scheduled for TUE OCT 2 2001 10:10:00 UTC
```

- See show reload.

### **show version**

- Use to display the configuration of the system hardware and the software version.
- Example

```
host1#show version
Juniper Edge Routing Switch ERX-700
Copyright (c) 1999-2005 Juniper Networks, Inc. All rights reserved.
System Release: erx_7-1-0.rel Partial
Version: 7.1.0 [BuildId 4518] (December 21, 2005 11:23)
```

System running for: 25 days, 3 hours, 31 minutes, 5 seconds  
(since THU DEC 22 2005 11:36:41 UTC)

slot	state	type	admin	spare	running release	slot uptime
0	standby	SRP-10Ge	enabled	---	erx_7-1-0.rel	---
1	online	SRP-10Ge	enabled	---	erx_7-1-0.rel	25d03h:28m:49s
2	---	---	---	---	---	---
3	---	---	---	---	---	---
4	online	CT3-12	enabled	---	erx_7-1-0.rel	25d03h:24m:46s
5	online	OC3-4A-APS	enabled	---	erx_7-1-0.rel	25d03h:24m:22s
6	online	GE	enabled	---	erx_7-1-0.rel	25d03h:24m:44s

- See show version.

## Output Filtering

The output filtering feature of the **show** command is not available in Boot mode.

## Chapter 10

# Configuring the System Clock

Use the procedures described in this chapter to configure the E Series router clock.

This chapter contains the following sections:

- Overview on page 519
- Platform Considerations on page 522
- References on page 522
- Setting the System Clock Manually on page 523
- Before You Configure NTP on page 525
- NTP Configuration Tasks on page 525
- Monitoring NTP on page 531

### Overview

---

You can use the **clock** commands to set the time and date on your system manually. These commands allow you to specify settings such as the source of the time, the time zone, and dates for seasonal time changes.

You can configure your router to update its clock automatically by configuring it as a Network Time Protocol (NTP) client. NTP provides a method of synchronizing the system clocks of hosts on the Internet to Universal Coordinated Time (UTC). Using NTP allows the system to record accurate times of events. You can view the log file of events to monitor the status of the network.

Since there is only one system clock, you can configure an NTP client on one virtual router only. Other virtual routers obtain clock parameters from the system clock. However, multiple virtual routers can act as NTP servers.

### NTP

NTP uses a hierarchical structure of hosts, such as computers and routers, that form client-server and peer *associations*. An NTP client synchronizes with an NTP server, which in turn synchronizes with another time source. If two hosts provide synchronization for each other, they are peers.

*Primary* or *stratum 1* servers synchronize directly with an accurate time source, such as a radio clock or an atomic clock. *Secondary* or *stratum n* servers synchronize with other servers, and are *n* hops from an accurate time source.

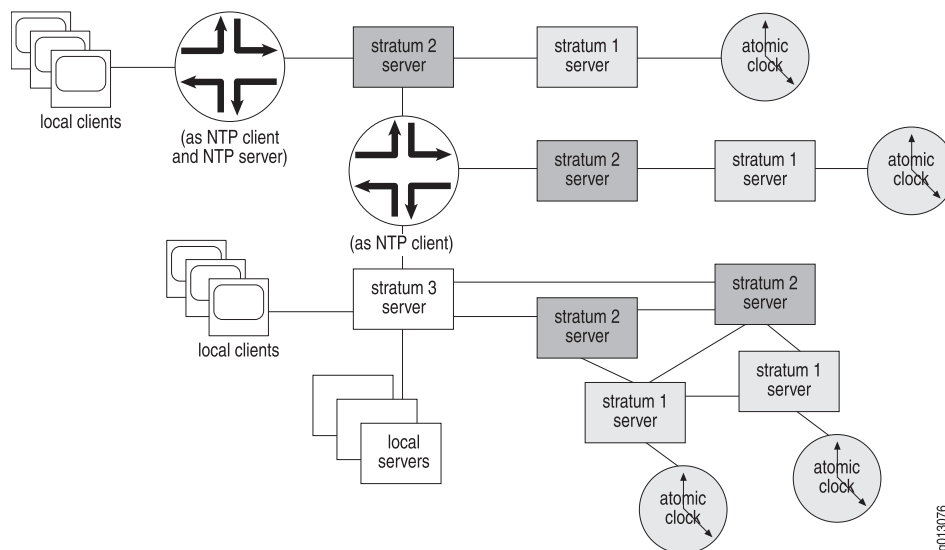
To obtain high precision and reliability with NTP, clients typically synchronize with several NTP servers at different physical locations. Peer associations, especially for stratum 1 and 2 servers, provide redundancy for the network.

Hosts synchronize by exchanging NTP messages through UDP. NTP uses the IP and UDP checksums to confirm data integrity.

By default, the router is an NTP client. You must configure NTP client parameters to start NTP client operation. You can also configure the router as an NTP server, whether or not you configure NTP client parameters.

Figure 27 on page 520 shows an example of an NTP hierarchy.

### Figure 27: Example of an NTP Hierarchy



## System Operation as an NTP Client

To synchronize to the clock of a server, the system must receive time information from NTP servers recurrently. The way the system receives such information depends on how you configure it:

- If you configure the system to poll NTP servers, it sends time requests to the servers periodically. NTP servers receive the requests, add time information to the messages, and send replies to the system.
- If you configure the system as a broadcast client, it receives NTP broadcasts from servers periodically. The broadcasts include time information from the servers.

By default, NTP servers respond to the interface from which an NTP request originated. You can direct responses from all NTP servers to one interface on the system, or from a specific NTP server to a specific interface.



**NOTE:** When the system is not configured as either an NTP client or an NTP server, it responds to NTP requests with an invalid stratum number.

## Synchronization

There are three stages to synchronization:

- Preliminary synchronization
- Frequency calibration
- Progressive synchronization

### Preliminary Synchronization

Preliminary synchronization is a stage during which the system evaluates the initial time situation and decides how to proceed with longer-term synchronization. This stage involves the following steps:

1. The system obtains several readings of time data from NTP servers.
2. The system analyzes time data in the messages and compares the readings from different servers. Using this information, the system identifies the initial best time source (the *best server*).
3. The system calculates the difference between its own clock and the best server's clock (the *offset*) and proceeds as follows:
  - If the offset is greater than 15 minutes, the system disables NTP and displays a message advising you to check the time zone and clock settings.
  - If the offset is less than 15 minutes, the system sets its clock to that of the best server.
4. Provided the system has not disabled NTP, it proceeds to the next stage:
  - If a frequency calibration is available, the system starts progressive synchronization.
  - If the system has never performed a frequency calibration or the calibration has been deleted, the system starts a frequency calibration.

### Frequency Calibration

Frequency calibration takes place the first time you use NTP or when you reboot the system. During this stage, the system evaluates the frequency error of its clock by measuring change in the offset error. A frequency calibration takes 15 minutes.

### Progressive Synchronization

After the system has established initial NTP parameters, it continues to synchronize to a server as follows:

1. The system acquires time information from servers periodically.

2. The system evaluates which server is currently the best time source (the *master*) by analyzing time data in the messages and comparing the data from different servers.
3. The system gradually synchronizes its clock to that of the master.

## System Operation as an NTP Server

The NTP server supports both unicast (user-to-user addressing protocol) and broadcast modes. Depending on the server configuration you choose, the system functions in different ways:

- When the system is configured as a unicast NTP server, it synchronizes clients to its own clock by responding to NTP requests from clients as follows:
  1. Swaps the destination and source addresses in the request packet.
  2. Sets all timestamps and NTP attributes in the packet.
  3. Returns the packet to the client.
- When the system is configured as a broadcast NTP server, it periodically sends NTP time synchronization messages to the local network broadcast address (255.255.255.255). The broadcast server would also respond to any NTP unicast requests from clients.

If the system is configured both as an NTP client and an NTP server, the system effectively synchronizes its clients to its master's clock. If the system is configured as an NTP server but not an NTP client, the system synchronizes its clients to its own clock, which can be set by the **clock** commands.



**NOTE:** When the system is not configured as either an NTP client or an NTP server, it responds to NTP requests with an invalid stratum number.

---

## Platform Considerations

The system clock is supported on all E Series routers.

For information about the modules supported on E Series routers:

- See the *ERX Module Guide* for modules supported on ERX7xx models, ERX14xx models, and the ERX310 Broadband Services Router.
- See the *E120 and E320 Module Guide* for modules supported on the E120 and E320 Broadband Services Routers.

## References

This implementation of NTP meets the following specifications:

- RFC 1305—Network Time Protocol (version 3) Specification, Implementation and Analysis (March 1992)



- RFC 2030—Simple Network Time Protocol (SNTP) (Version 4) for IPv4, IPv6, and OSI (October 1996)

## Setting the System Clock Manually

---

Before you set the system clock, obtain the following information about your time zone:

- The name of the time zone
- The difference (offset) between the time zone and UTC
- The dates and times of transitions to and from summer time (daylight saving time)
- The difference between the standard time and summer time (daylight saving time)

The international Web site [www.timeanddate.com](http://www.timeanddate.com) contains information about time zones.



**NOTE:** Be sure to set the time zone (default is UTC) and summer time dates before you set the clock.

---

You can set the system clock at any time. This process involves the following steps:

1. Set the time zone.
2. Set the summer time dates.
3. Set the time.
4. Check the clock settings.

### **clock set**

- Use to set the time and date on your system manually.
- Use the following syntax for setting the time: HH:MM:SS. This is the current time in 24-hour format—hours:minutes:seconds.
- There are two acceptable date forms for this command. Both produce the same display when you run the **show clock** command.
  - Day:month:year
  - Month:day:year
- Examples

```
host1#clock set 08:12:42 12 March 2000
host1#clock set 11:12:55 March 10 2000
```

- There is no **no** version.
- See clock set.

**clock summer-time date**

- Use to set the clock to switch automatically to summer time (daylight saving time).
- Example

```
host1(config)#clock summer-time PDT date 1 April 200X 2:00
31 October 200X 2:00 60
```

- Use the **no** version to prevent automatic switching to summer time.
- See clock summer-time date.

**clock summer-time recurring**

- Use to set the clock to summer time at the same time each year.
- Example—This overrides the default settings for PDT,

```
host1(config)#clock summer-time PDT recurring first Sunday April 2:00 last
Sunday October 2:00
```

- Use the **no** version to prevent automatic switching to summer time.
- See clock summer-time recurring.

**clock timezone**

- Use to set the time zone for display.
- Example—This sets the time zone to 5 hours behind UTC.

```
host1(config)#clock timezone EST -5
```

- Use the **no** version to set the time zone to UTC, the default setting.
- See clock timezone.

**show clock**

- Use to display the system time and the date.
- Example 1—Shows time source value when clock is manually configured

```
host1#show clock detail
TUE JAN 23 2007 11:50:47 UTC
time source: manually entered by user
timezone: UTC (0 minutes from UTC)
```

- Example 2—Shows time source value when clock is synchronized with NTP

```
host1#show clock detail
TUE JAN 23 2007 11:50:47 UTC
time source: Configured via NTP
timezone: UTC (0 minutes from UTC)
```

- See show clock.

## Before You Configure NTP

---

Before you configure NTP, complete the following procedures:

1. Configure at least one IP address on the router.
2. Check that the system clock reads the correct time to within 15 minutes, and that the time zone and summer time settings are correct.
3. Reset the system clock manually if the time, time zone, or summer time settings are incorrect.
4. If you want to configure the NTP system as an NTP client, choose the NTP servers.

## Choosing NTP Servers

For the system, synchronizing to several stratum 2 or higher servers on the Internet provides sufficient accuracy for the timing of event messages. You can find a list of stratum 2 servers at [www.eecis.udel.edu/~mills/ntp](http://www.eecis.udel.edu/~mills/ntp).

If you have access to an NTP server that you know to be reliable and accurate, you can synchronize the system to that server alone. You may prefer this method if you have used Simple Network Time Protocol (SNTP) with other equipment.

If you know that an NTP server broadcasts on a network to which the system has an interface, you do not need to configure NTP servers. Simply enable the system to accept NTP broadcasts on that interface.

## NTP Configuration Tasks

---

By default, the system is an NTP client. You must configure NTP client parameters to start NTP client operation. You can also configure the system as an NTP server, whether or not you configure NTP client parameters.

## Enabling NTP Services

Before you can configure NTP client parameters or enable a virtual router to act as an NTP server, you must enable NTP services. When you enable NTP services, the NTP client associates itself with the current virtual router. Because there is only one system clock to update, only the virtual router on which you configure NTP can act as the NTP client. However, any virtual router can act as an NTP server. To enable NTP services:

1. (Optional) Access the virtual router with which you want to associate NTP services.
2. Issue the **ntp enable** command.

### **ntp enable**

- Use to enable NTP services on the system.
- This command associates NTP services and the NTP client with the current virtual router.

- Example

```
host1:boston(config)#ntp enable
```

- Use the **no** version to disable NTP polling and clock correction and to remove the association between NTP services and the virtual router.
- See ntp enable.

## ***NTP Client Configuration***

To configure the system as an NTP client:

1. Ping the selected NTP servers to ensure that the system can reach them.
2. Configure the system to acquire NTP data by completing one or both of the following actions:
  - Assign the NTP servers.
  - Enable the system to receive broadcasts on an interface.
3. If you enable the system to receive broadcasts on an interface, set the estimated round-trip delay between the system and an NTP broadcast server.
4. Disable NTP on interfaces that you do not want to receive NTP communications for security or other reasons.

### ***ntp broadcast-client***

- Use to enable the system to receive NTP broadcasts on an interface.
- Example
 

```
host1(config-if)#ntp broadcast-client
```
- Use the **no** version to prevent the system from receiving NTP broadcasts.
- See ntp broadcast-client.

### ***ntp broadcast-delay***

- Use to set the estimated round-trip delay in the range 0 to 999,999 microseconds between the system and an NTP broadcast server.
- Example
 

```
host1(config)#ntp broadcast-delay 2000
```
- Use the **no** version to set the estimated round-trip delay to the default, 3000 microseconds.
- See ntp broadcast-delay.

### ***ntp disable***

- Use to disable NTP on an interface.
- Example

host1(config-if)#**ntp disable**

- Use the **no** version to reenable NTP on an interface.
- See ntp disable.

### **ntp server**

- Use to assign an NTP server to the system and to customize the way the server communicates with the system.
- Specify the **source** option to direct responses from the NTP server to a specific interface on the system and override the **ntp source** command.
- Example

host1(config)#**ntp server 192.35.42.1 version 3 prefer source atm 3/0.1**

- Use the **no** version to terminate communications between the system and an NTP server.
- See ntp server.

### **ping**

- Use to check that the system can reach an NTP server.
- Example

host1(config)#**ping 192.35.42.1**

- There is no **no** version.
- See ping.

## **Directing Responses from NTP Servers**

By default, an NTP server sends a response to the interface from which an NTP request originated. You can now direct responses from all NTP servers to one interface on the system or direct responses from a specific NTP server to a specific interface.

### **ntp source**

- Use to direct responses from all NTP servers to a specific interface. Using the **source** option with the **ntp server** command overrides the **ntp source** command.
- Example

host1(config)#**ntp source atm 3/1**

- Use the **no** version to direct all servers to reply to the interface from which the NTP request was sent (the default setting).
- See ntp source.

## Refusing Broadcasts from NTP Servers

You can prevent the system from receiving certain types of broadcasts and specify the servers from which the system will accept NTP broadcasts. To do so:

1. Issue the **ntp access-group** command.
2. Configure an access list.

### **access-list**

- Use to configure an access list.
- Example
 

```
host1(config)#access-list europe permit any
```
- Use the **no** version to remove the access list.
- See access-list.

### **ntp access-group**




---

**NOTE:** The system can accept, but does not use, NTP control queries.

---

- Use to specify the types of broadcasts that the system will accept and respond to, and to specify an access list of servers from which the system will accept broadcasts. You can enable the system to:
  - Receive time requests, receive NTP control queries, and synchronize itself to the servers specified on the access-list
  - Only receive time requests and NTP control queries from specified servers
  - Only receive time requests from specified servers
  - Only receive NTP control queries from specified servers
- Example
 

```
host1(config-line)#ntp access-group peer europe
```
- Use the **no** version to enable the system to receive all NTP broadcasts on interfaces configured to receive broadcasts.
- See ntp access-group.

## NTP Server Configuration

To enable a virtual router to act as an NTP server:

1. Access the virtual router context.
2. Specify that the virtual router acts as an NTP server.



**CAUTION:** Be sure that you do not override a valid time source if you specify the stratum of the NTP server. Issuing the **ntp master** command on multiple systems in the network might lead to unreliable timestamps if those systems do not agree on the time.

3. (Optional) Specify the stratum of this NTP server.

### **ntp broadcast**

- Use to enable broadcast server on an interface to send NTP broadcast messages periodically.
- The server sends the NTP broadcast messages to the local network broadcast address (255.255.255.255).
- Example—In this example, the interface supports NTP software, version 4, and a poll interval of 5 (32 seconds) for broadcasting NTP messages.

```
host1:boston(config-if)#ntp broadcast version 4 5
```

- Use the **no** version to prevent the interface from sending NTP broadcast messages.
- See ntp broadcast.

### **ntp master**

- Use to specify the stratum number of a virtual router you configured as an NTP server
- By default, the stratum number is set to the stratum number of the master plus one.



**CAUTION:** Although you can specify a stratum number of 1, the system does not support stratum 1 service. The system can synchronize only with an NTP server, and not directly with an atomic clock or radio clock.

- Specify a stratum number for the system in the range 1 – 15. A stratum *n* server is *n* hops from an accurate time source.
- Example

```
host1:boston(config)#ntp master
```

- Use the **no** version to restore the default stratum number.
- See ntp master.

### **ntp server enable**

- Use to enable a virtual router to act as an NTP server.
- Example

```
host1:boston(config)#ntp server enable
```

- Use the **no** version to prevent a virtual router from acting as an NTP server.
- See ntp server enable.

## Configuration Examples

The following examples show how to configure the system as an NTP client and an NTP server.

- Example 1** NTP communications are established on the virtual router boston. The system is a client of the NTP server with IP address 172.16.5.1.

```
host1#virtual-router boston
host1:boston#ping 172.16.5.1
Sending 5 ICMP echos to 172.16.5.1, timeout = 2 sec.
.....
Success rate = 100% (0/5), round-trip min/avg/max = 0/0/0 ms
host1:boston#configure terminal
host1:boston(config)#ntp server 172.16.5.1
host1:boston(config)#ntp enable
```

- Example 2** NTP communications are established on the virtual router boston. The system is specified as an NTP server.

```
host1#virtual-router boston
host1:boston#configure terminal
host1:boston(config)#ntp server
```

- Example 3** NTP communications are established on the virtual router boston. The router is specified as an NTP broadcast server and synchronizes with NTP server 172.16.5.1. The specified interface enabled for NTP broadcasting is configured with version 4 and poll interval 5 for broadcasting NTP messages.

```
host1#virtual-router boston
host1:boston#configure terminal
host1:boston#ntp enable
host1:boston(config)#ntp server 172.16.5.1
host1:boston(config)#interface fastethernet 9/3
host1:boston(config-if)#ntp broadcast 4 5
```



**NOTE:** In Example 3, the router that acts as the NTP broadcast server must either synchronize to another server or master (specified by the **ntp server** command) or act as master (**ntp master** command).

---



## Monitoring NTP

After you configure the system as an NTP client, you can use **show** commands to view information about the NTP servers you assigned and the status of NTP on the interface.



**NOTE:** For about 30 minutes after you configure the system as an NTP client, the data varies rapidly, and then starts to stabilize. Wait at least 1 hour before using the data to make decisions about NTP servers.

Many of the fields in the displays of these **show** commands take their values from the NTP messages. The NTP client uses this data to compare the performance of its NTP servers and to choose a master.

### **show ntp associations**

- Use to view the information about the NTP servers you assigned.
- Field descriptions
  - \* (Master)—System is synchronizing to this server
  - # (Master - unsynchronized)—System has chosen this server as master, but the master has not yet synchronized to UTC
  - + (Selected)—System will consider this server when it chooses the master
  - - (Candidate)—System may consider this server when it chooses the master
  - x (Unusable)—Server does not meet the initial criteria for master
  - p (Preferred)—Server that you specified as the preferred server
  - ~ (Configured)—Server is a configured server; no tilde indicates a broadcast server
  - Peer Address—IP address of server
  - Stratum—Number of hops between the server and the accurate time source
  - Poll—Time between NTP requests from system to server
  - Reachable—8-bit number that shows whether or not the NTP server responded to the last eight requests from the system; one indicates a response, zero indicates no response. For example, 11111111 indicates that the NTP server responded to the last eight requests. If the system reaches one server less often than it does other servers, that server is not a good choice for the master.
  - Precision—Length of the clock tick (interrupt interval) of server's clock
  - Delay—Round-trip delay, with the lowest dispersion value in the sample buffer, between the system and the server

- Offset—Difference, with the lowest dispersion in the sample buffer, between the system's clock and the server's clock
- Disp.—Lowest measure, in the sample buffer, of the error associated with the peer offset, based on the peer delay
- Example

```

host1# show ntp associations
Peer Address    Stratum Poll Reachable Precision Delay  Offset Disp.
- 10.6.129.58    3      512s 01111111 0.000000s 0.000s 0.052s 0.010s
+~152.2.21.1     2      256s 11111111 0.000015s 0.070s 0.039s 0.020s
+~128.182.58.100 2      256s 11011111 0.000004s 0.030s 0.019s 0.074s
*p128.118.25.3   2      256s 10111111 0.000015s 0.020s 0.038s 0.073s

(* Master, + Selected, - Candidate, x Unusable) (p Preferred, ~
Configured)

```

- See show ntp associations.

### **show ntp associations**

- Use to view the information about the NTP servers you assigned.
- Field descriptions
  - Peer—IP address of server, status of the server: configured, master, selected, candidate, correct, or unusable
    - configured—Confirmation that you assigned this NTP server to the system
    - master—System has chosen this server as the master
    - selected—System will consider this server when it chooses the master
    - candidate—System may consider this server when it chooses the master
    - correct—System considers the server's clock to be reasonably correct
    - unusable—Server does not meet the initial criteria for the master
  - stratum—Number of hops between the server and its stratum 1 server
  - Peer is a Broadcast/Configured Server—Type of NTP server: one that broadcasts NTP messages or one you have configured for NTP services
  - version—Version of NTP on the server
  - polled every—Time between NTP requests from the system to the server
  - polls every—Time between NTP requests from the server to its NTP servers
  - Root Delay—Round-trip time between the server and its stratum 1 root server
  - Root Dispersion—Measure of all the errors associated with the network hops and servers between the server and its stratum 1 server

- Sync Dist.—Measure of the total time error since the update in the path to the stratum 1 server
- Peer Delay—Round-trip delay, with the lowest dispersion value in the sample buffer, between the system and the server
- Peer Dispersion—Lowest measure, in the sample buffer, of the error associated with the peer offset, based on the peer delay and precision
- Offset—Difference, with the lowest dispersion in the sample buffer, between the system's clock and the server's clock
- Reachability—8-bit number that shows whether or not the NTP server responded to the last eight requests from the system; one indicates a response; zero indicates no response. For example, 11111111 indicates that the NTP server responded to the last eight requests. If the system reaches one server less often than it does other servers, that server is not a good choice for the master.
- Precision—Length of the clock tick (interrupt interval) of the server's clock
- Source—IP address of the interface to which NTP servers should send NTP responses
- Timestamps of latest time samples from this peer; actual timestamps displayed depends on how the server is configured
  - Root reference at—Last time at which the stratum 1 server sent an NTP reply to the server
  - Last request sent—Last time at which the system sent an NTP request to the server
  - Response/Broadcast was sent—Last time at which the server sent an NTP reply or broadcast to the system
  - Response/Broadcast received—Last time at which the system received an NTP reply or broadcast from this server
- Sample buffer for this peer contains the following samples:
  - Delay—Round-trip delay from client to server
  - Offset—Difference between client's and server's clocks
  - Dispersion—Measure of the errors of the offset values, based on the round-trip delay and the precisions of the system and the server
- Example

```

host1# show ntp associations detail
Peer 10.6.129.58 is selected, stratum 3
Peer is a Broadcast Server, version 3, broadcasts every 64 sec
Root Delay 0.059052 sec, Dispersion 0.189056 sec, Sync Dist. 0.229679 sec
Peer Delay -0.000016 sec, Dispersion 0.009665 sec, Offset 0.050714 sec
Reachability 11111110, Precision 0.000000 sec
'Source' Interface : default (transmit interface)

```

Timestamps of latest time sample from this peer:

Root reference at: Thu, Apr 13 2000 17:27:17.145 from 128.118.25.3

Broadcast was sent: Thu, Apr 13 2000 17:42:02.118

Broadcast received: Thu, Apr 13 2000 17:42:02.067

Sample buffer for this peer contains the following samples:

Delay (sec):	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000
--------------	-------	-------	-------	-------	-------	-------	-------	-------

Offset (sec):	0.049	0.050	0.050	0.050	0.050	0.050	0.051	0.051
---------------	-------	-------	-------	-------	-------	-------	-------	-------

Dispersion(sec):	0.015	0.015	0.014	0.013	0.012	0.011	0.010	0.009
------------------	-------	-------	-------	-------	-------	-------	-------	-------

- See show ntp associations.

### **show ntp status**

- Use to view the configuration and status of the system.
- Field descriptions
  - NTP Status—State of NTP on the system and the stratum number of the server
  - No. of associations—Number of peer associations for the NTP server
  - Clock Status:
    - Offset Error—Time difference between the system and the master, in seconds
    - Frequency Error—Error in the frequency of the system's clock, in seconds per second
    - Last Update—Last time received from the master
    - Root Dispersion—Measure of all the errors associated with the network hops and servers between the system and its stratum 1 server, in seconds
  - Configuration:
    - Admin. State—Status of NTP on the router (enabled or disabled)
    - Virtual Router Name—Name of the virtual router to which you attached NTP
    - Broadcast Delay—Time for a broadcast message to travel between the server and the client, in microseconds
    - Client Mode—NTP client status (True – system is an NTP client; False – system is not an NTP client)
    - Master Mode—NTP server status (True – system is configured as an NTP server; False – system is not configured as an NTP server)
    - Stratum No.—Stratum number of system if configured as NTP server
    - Summer Time—Status of seasonal time, True or False
    - Summer Timezone Name—Name of summer time zone
    - Timezone Name—Name of time zone

- Timezone Offset—Time difference between the time zone and UTC, in hours:minutes
- Access List—Identities of access lists of servers from which the system does not accept broadcasts
- 'Server Source' Interface—Interface through which responses from the NTP server are directed; configured through the **ntp server source** command, which overrides the interface configured through the **ntp source** command.
- 'Client Source' Interface—Interface through which all NTP server responses are directed; configured through the **ntp source** command.
- Source Interface—IP address of the interface to which NTP servers should send NTP responses
- Address—IP address of interface
- Enable—Status of NTP on the interface, On or Off
- BcastClient—Indication of whether or not this interface accepts broadcasts from NTP servers, On or Off
- BcastServer—Indication of whether or not this interface functions as a broadcast server, On or Off
- Name—Type of interface and its location
- Example

```

host1# show ntp status
Network Time Protocol (NTP v.4)
NTP Status :No valid NTP server available
  No. of associations : 0
Clock Status :Initializing: frequency to be calibrated
  Offset Error : 0 sec, amortizing asymptotically
  Frequency Error : 0 sec/sec, compensating every second
  Last Update :
  Root Dispersion : 0 sec
Configuration:
  Admin. State : NTP Enabled
  Virtual Router Name : default
  Broadcast Delay : 3000 microseconds
  Client Mode : True
  Master Mode : False
  Stratum No. : Unspecified
  Summer Time : False
  Summer Timezone Name :
  Timezone Name : UTC
  Timezone Offset : 00:0 hours:minutes
  Access List :
  'Server Source' Interface :
  'Client Source' Interface : Default (transmit interface)
Interface Configuration :

```

Address	Enable	BcastClient	BcastServer	Name
1.1.1.1	ON	ON	ON	FastEthernet1/0

- See show ntp status.

## Chapter 11

# Configuring Virtual Routers

E Series routers allow you to create multiple logical or *virtual* routers in a single router. Each virtual router has its own separate set of IP interfaces, forwarding table, and instances of routing protocols.

This chapter contains the following sections:

- Overview on page 537
- Platform Considerations on page 539
- References on page 539
- Configuring Virtual Routers on page 539
- Monitoring Virtual Routers on page 543

### Overview

---

Multiple distinct routers are supported within a single router, which allows service providers to configure multiple, separate, secure routers within a single chassis. These routers are identified as *virtual routers (VRs)*. Applications for this function include the creation of individual routers dedicated to wholesale customers, corporate virtual private network (VPN) users, or a specific traffic type.

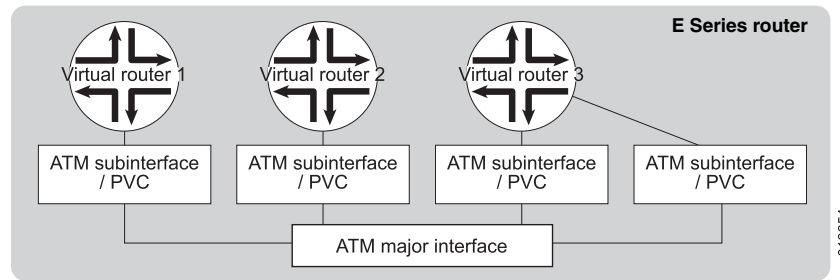
### Default Virtual Router

When you first boot your router, it creates a *default* virtual router. The only difference between the default VR and any other router is that you cannot create or delete the default VR. Just like any other router, the default VR gets its IP addresses when you add interfaces to it.

### Virtual Router Instances

E Series routers can support up to 1,000 forwarding tables; that is, up to a total of 1,000 VRs and VPN routing and forwarding (VRF) instances. Each VRF has a forwarding table. A network device attaching to a router detects a router interface. The attaching device has no notion of the *virtual* router behind the interface.

For example, a physical ATM link may have circuits that are connected to different VRs. The physical and data link layers are not aware that there are multiple router instances. See Figure 28 on page 538.

**Figure 28: Virtual Routers**

VRs and VRFs are tools for implementing VPNs.

## Routing Protocols

Your router implements the VRs by maintaining a separate instance of each data structure for each VR and allowing each protocol (for example, TCP/UDP, RIP, OSPF, and IS-IS) to be enabled on a case-by-case basis. A table of router interfaces associates user connections (for example, PPP or ATM) with one or more IP interfaces within a VR.

## VPNs and VRFs

Your router supports VPNs and VRFs. For information about VPNs and VRFs, see *JUNOS BGP and MPLS Configuration Guide*.

### VPNs

A VPN is a set of sites attached to a common network, but whose data is handled separately from that common network.

VPNs enable private IP traffic to travel over a public TCP/IP network by tunneling that traffic between VPN member sites. Different levels of security are available depending on the security of the tunnel used between sites.

Your router supports VPNs consisting of VRs or VRFs. See *RFC 2547—BGP/MPLS VPNs (March 1999)*. Additionally, your router supports tunnels built from GRE, IPSec, L2TP, MPLS, and tunnels built from layer 2 circuits, such as Frame Relay and ATM.

### VRFs

A VRF is a virtual routing and forwarding instance that exists within the context of a VR. The VRF provides forwarding information to your router. The system looks up a packet's destination in the VRF associated with the interface on which the packet is received. In general, any application that can be enabled in a VR can be enabled in a VRF. VRFs are generally associated with the VPN behavior described in *RFC 4364—BGP/MPLS IP Virtual Private Networks (VPNs)*.

When a VRF receives an update message, it needs to know whether it should add the route to its routing table. Similarly, when a VRF sends update messages, it needs



to identify the VPNs that it wants to receive the updates. See *JUNOSe BGP and MPLS Configuration Guide*.

## Platform Considerations

---

Virtual routers are supported on all E Series routers.

For information about the modules supported on E Series routers:

- See the *ERX Module Guide* for modules supported on ERX7xx models, ERX14xx models, and the ERX310 router.
- See the *E120 and E320 Module Guide* for modules supported on the E120 and E320 routers.

## References

---

For more information about virtual routers, VPNs, or VRFs, consult the following resources:

- *JUNOSe Release Notes, Appendix A, System Maximums*—Refer to the Release Notes corresponding to your software release for information about maximum values.
- *JUNOSe BGP and MPLS Configuration Guide*
- *RFC 2917—A Core MPLS IP Architecture (September 2000)*
- *RFC 4364—BGP/MPLS IP Virtual Private Networks (VPNs) (February 2006)*

## Configuring Virtual Routers

---

This section provides examples of some of the more common virtual router tasks.

There are different uses of the **virtual-router** command. You can create or access VRs and VRFs in Global Configuration mode or map a VR to a domain map in Domain Map Configuration mode. After you have created a VR, you can continue to work in different command modes and configure the same user interface parameters as before the virtual router was created.

For information about the many VR tasks you can configure, see the related chapter; for example, *JUNOSe IP, IPv6, and IGP Configuration Guide* or *JUNOSe BGP and MPLS Configuration Guide*.

To configure a virtual router:

- Create and name a VR in Configuration mode.

```
host1(config)#virtual-router western
host1:western(config)#
```

- Create a VRF to provide forwarding information to your router. In this example, the VRF created is in context with the VR created above.

```

host1:western(config)#ip vrf eastern
Proceed with new VRF creation? [confirm]
host1:western(config-vrf)#virtual-router:eastern
host1:western:eastern(config)#

```

- Access a VRF from the context of a different VR.

```

host1(config)#virtual-router western:eastern
host1:western:eastern(config)#

```

- View your configuration choices from a VR or VRF context.

```

host1:western:eastern(config)#?
aaa                Configure authentication, authorization,
                   and accounting characteristics
access-list        Configure an access list entry
arp                Configure a static ARP entry
bandwidth          Configure slot-group bandwidth control
banner            Define a banner line
baseline           Configure baseline operations
boot              Configure boot time behavior
bulkstats          Configure bulkstats parameters
classifier-list     Configure a classifier list entry
clns               Configure CLNS characteristics
clock             Set the system's clock
controller         Configure controller parameters
crypto             Configure cryptographic parameters
disable-autosync   Disable automatic synchronization of
                   redundant system controller file system
disable-switch-on-error Disable automatic switch to redundant system
                   controller upon software/hardware error
enable            Configure security related options
end               Exit Global Configuration mode
exception          Configure core dump
exclude-subsystem  Exclude copying a subsystem from the release
exit              Exit from the current command mode
ftp-server         Configure FTP Server characteristics
help              Describe the interactive help system
host              Add/modify an entry to the host table
hostname           Set the host (system) name
interface         Enter Interface Configuration mode
ip                Configure IP characteristics
l2tp              Configure L2TP parameters
license           Configure licenses
line              Enter Line Configuration mode
log               Configure logging settings
macro             Run a CLI macro
map-list          Create an NBMA static map
memory            Configure and administer memory operations
mpls              Configure MPLS global parameters
no                Negate a command or set its default(s)
ntp               Configure the Network Time Protocol
policy-list       Enter Policy Configuration mode
pppoe             Configure PPPoE
profile           Specify a profile
radius            Configure RADIUS server
rate-limit-profile Enter rate limit profile configuration mode
redundancy        Perform a redundancy configuration
route-map         Configure a route map

```

router	Configure a routing protocol
rtr	Configure rtr parameters
service	Configure system-level services
set	Configure
sleep	Make the Command Interface pause for a specified duration
slot	Configure and administer slot operation
snmp-server	Configure SNMP parameters
sscc	The SSC Client
telnet	telnet daemon configuration
timing	Configure network timing
traffic-shape-profile	Enter traffic shape profile configuration mode
virtual-router	Specify a virtual router

host1:western:eastern(config)#

- View the VRF configuration choices from VRF Configuration mode.

```
host1:western(config-vrf)#?
exit          Exit from the current command mode
export        Specify VRF export characteristics
help          Describe the interactive help system
import        Specify VRF import characteristics
log           Configure logging settings
macro         Run a CLI macro
no            Negate a command or set its default(s)
rd            Specify route distinguisher
route-target  Specify VPN extended community Target
sleep         Make the Command Interface pause for a
              specified duration
host1:western(config-vrf)#
```

- Access a VR to configure it with an interior gateway protocol (IGP) or exterior gateway protocol (EGP) to learn routes from a customer edge (CE) device. See the related routing protocol chapters for detailed information.

**Example 1**  
**VR with an IGP**

```
host1(config)#virtual-router miami
host1:miami(config)#router ospf 5
host1:miami(config-router)#
```

**Example 2**  
**VR with an EGP**

```
host1(config)#virtual-router western
host1:western(config)#router bgp 359
host1:western(config-router)#
```

- Configure a Telnet daemon to listen in VRs other than the default VR.

```
host1(config)#virtual-router boston
host1:boston(config)#telnet listen port 23
```

- List all VRs and VRFs on the router.

```
host1#show virtual-router
Virtual Router : default
Virtual Router : thursday
Virtual Router : western
```

```

                                VRF : eastern
Virtual Router : boston
Virtual Router : miami
Virtual Router : northern
                                VRF : southern
host1#

```

- Map a VR to a user domain name in Domain Map Configuration mode. The VR must already exist.

```

host1(config)#aaa domain-map jacksonville
host1(config-domain-map)#virtual-router western
host1(config-domain-map)#

```

### **aaa domain-map**

- Use to map a user domain name to a virtual router.
- Examples

```

host1-0-1-90(config)#aaa domain-map juniper.net vrouter_1
host1-0-1-90(config)#aaa domain-map none vrouter__all_purpose
host1-0-1-90(config)#aaa domain-map DEFAULT vrouter_all_purpose

```

- Use the **no** version to delete the domain map.
- See `aaa domain-map`.

### **ip vrf**

- Use to create a VRF or access VRF Configuration mode to configure a VRF.
- You must specify a route distinguisher after you create a VRF. Otherwise, the VRF will not operate.
- Example

```

host1-00-02-80:boston(config)#ip vrf vpn-A

```

- Use the **no** version to remove a VRF.
- See `ip vrf`.

### **telnet listen**

- Use to create a Telnet daemon to listen in a virtual router.
- Example

```

host1(config)#virtual-router 3
host1:3(config)#telnet listen port 3223

```

- Use the **no** version to delete the daemon.
- See `telnet listen`.

### **virtual-router**

- From Global Configuration mode, use this command to create a virtual router or access the context of a previously created virtual router or a VRF.
- From Domain Map Configuration mode, use this command to map the VR to a user domain name. Use the **no** version in this mode to delete the VR parameter and assign the default VR.
- A VR name consists of 1–32 alphanumeric characters.
- After you are in the context of a particular VR or VRF (indicated by the change in the prompt), all subsequent commands you enter apply to that context until you exit the context.
- Use the **no** version of the command only to delete the VR and return the router to the default VR. Issuing the command **no virtual-router vrName.vrfName** has no effect.
- Issuing a **no** version of this command (**no virtual-router : vrfName** or **no virtual-router vrName : vrfName**) that specifies an existing VRF displays only the error message: “Cannot delete a VRF with this command.” You must use the **no ip vrf** command to remove a VRF.



**NOTE:** See the *JUNOS Command Reference Guide* for additional information.

---

- Use the **wait-for-completion** keyword with the **no** version if you require a synchronous deletion of a VR, such as when executing Telnet or console commands through an external script. Alternatively, you might want to use this keyword if the VR being deleted has many configured VRFs and someone might attempt to re-create the VR before all the VRFs have been deleted. If you do not issue the **wait-for-completion** keyword in those circumstances, a **virtual-router** command issued as soon as the prompt appears could fail because the router is still deleting VRFs. You can specify a period during which the CLI waits before it returns a prompt. If you do not specify a wait time, then the CLI does not return a prompt until the operation is complete. You can press Ctrl + c to break out of the wait period early.
- See virtual-router.

## Monitoring Virtual Routers

---

Use the **show virtual-router**, the **show configuration virtual router**, and **show aaa domain-map** commands to display virtual router and user-domain-to-virtual-router mapping information. Use the **show ip forwarding table** command to display information about memory usage by virtual routers.

### **show aaa domain-map**

- Use to display the mapping between user domains and virtual routers.
- The following keywords have significance when used as user domains:
  - **none**—All client requests with no user domain name are associated with the virtual router mapped to the *none* entry

- **default**—All client requests with a domain present that has no map are associated with the virtual router mapped to the *default* entry

- Example

```
host1#show aaa domain-map
Domain: boston; virtual-router: default
```

Tunnel Tag	Peer	Tunnel Source	Tunnel Type	Tunnel Medium	Tunnel Password	Tunnel Id	Tunnel Hostname
31	<null>	<null>	l2tp	ipv4	<null>	<null>	<null>

Tunnel Tag	Tunnel Server Name	Tunnel Preference
31	<null>	2000

- See show aaa domain-map.

### show configuration

- Use to display configuration information for the virtual routers configured on your router.
- You can create a configuration script from the output by saving it as a file with the .scr extension.
- You can exclude information about a particular type of interface.
- You can use the output filtering feature of the **show** command to include or exclude lines of output based on a text string that you specify. See “Command-Line Interface” on page 29, for details.
- Example

```
host1#show configuration virtual-router default
virtual-router default
ip domain-lookup
ip name-server 10.2.0.3
ip domain-name "junipercom.com"
!
host f 10.10.0.129 ftp anonymous null
interface null 0
!
interface fastEthernet 0/0
ip address 192.168.1.155 255.255.255.0
!
ip route 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0 192.168.1.1
no ip multicast-routing
!
mpls rsvp profile default
mpls ldp profile default
!
rtr 1
type echo protocol ipIcmpEcho 10.5.0.200 source fastEthernet0/0
frequency 1
samples-of-history-kept 5
```

```

        timeout 10000
    !

```

- See show configuration.

### **show ip forwarding-table slot**

- Use to display the memory used by each VR configured on a line module and free memory available on the line module.
- Field descriptions
  - Free Memory—Amount of memory free on the line module, in kilobytes
  - Virtual Router—Name of the virtual routers configured on the line module
  - Memory (KB)—Amount of memory consumed by the VR, in kilobytes
  - Load Errors—Counts errors made while loading the routing table on the line module
  - Status—Indicates whether the routing table for the VR is valid
- Example

```

host1#show ip forwarding-table slot 9
Free Memory = 14,328KB

```

Virtual Router	Memory (KB)	Load Errors	Status
vr1	4128	0	Valid
vr2	3136	0	Valid
vr3	2256	0	Valid
vr4	1512	0	Valid
default	1024	0	Valid

- See show ip forwarding-table slot.

### **show virtual-router**

- Use to display the virtual routers and VRFs configured on your router.
- Use the **summary** keyword to display only the total number of virtual routers and the total number of VRF instances.
- Use the **detail** keyword to display the status of the routing protocols configured for each virtual router.
- Use the **summary** keyword with the **detail** keyword to display the number of VRF instances for each virtual router.
- Use the output filtering feature of the **show** command to include or exclude lines of output based on a text string you specify. See “Command-Line Interface” on page 29, for details.
- Example 1

```

host1#show virtual-router
Virtual Router : default
Virtual Router : vr1
    VRF : eastern
    VRF : western
    VRF : northern
    VRF : southern
Virtual Router : vr2
    VRF : eastern
    VRF : western
    VRF : northern
    VRF : southern
Virtual Router : vr3
    VRF : eastern
    VRF : western
    VRF : northern
    VRF : southern

```

#### ■ Example 2

```

host1#show virtual-router detail
Virtual Router : default
    Ip:      Present
    Ipv6:    Not Present
    Mgtm:    Not Present
    Mgtmv6:  Not Present
    Bgp:     Not Present
    Isis:    Present
    Ospf:    Not Present
    Pim:     Not Present
    Rip:     Not Present
    Igmp:    Not Present
    Mld:     Not Present
    Dvmrp:   Not Present
Virtual Router : vr1
    Ip:      Present
    Ipv6:    Not Present
    Mgtm:    Present
    Mgtmv6:  Not Present
    Bgp:     Not Present
    Isis:    Present
    Ospf:    Present
    Pim:     Present
    Rip:     Not Present
    Igmp:    Not Present
    Mld:     Not Present
    Dvmrp:   Not Present

```

#### ■ Example 3

```

host1#show virtual-router summary detail
Virtual Router default      VRF Count: 0
Virtual Router vr1         VRF Count: 4
Virtual Router vr2         VRF Count: 4
Virtual Router vr3         VRF Count: 4

Total VR Count: 4
      VRs with      VRFs Count: 3

```



```
VRs without VRFs Count: 1
Total VRF Count: 12
Total Count : 16
```

- See show virtual-router.



## **Part 2**

# **Reference Material**

- Abbreviations and Acronyms on page 551
- References on page 569



## Appendix A

# Abbreviations and Acronyms

Abbreviation or Acronym	Term
<b>A</b>	
AAA	authentication, authorization, and accounting
AAAA	authentication, authorization, accounting, and address assignment
AAL	ATM Adaptation Layer
ABR	area border router
AC	alternating current; access concentrator
ACCM	Async Control Character Map
ADSL	asymmetric digital subscriber line
AESA	ATM end system address
AF	assured forwarding
AFI	authority and format identifier
AH	authentication header
AIS	alarm indication signal
AIS-L	alarm indication signal – line
AIS-P	alarm indication signal – path
ALG	application-level gateway
ANSI	American National Standards Institute
API	application programming interface
APS	Automatic Protection Switching
ARP	Address Resolution Protocol
AS	autonomous system; Australia (re standards compliance)

Abbreviation or Acronym	Term
AS boundary router	autonomous system boundary router
ASCII	American Standard Code for Information Interchange
ASIC	application-specific integrated circuit
AS number	autonomous system number
ATM	Asynchronous Transfer Mode
AVP	attribute-value pair
<b>B</b>	
backup DR	backup designated router
BECN	backward explicit congestion notification
BER	bit error rate
BERT	bit error rate test
BFD	Bidirectional Forwarding Detection (protocol)
BGP	Border Gateway Protocol
BMA	broadcast multiaccess
BOOTP	bootstrap protocol
B-RAS	Broadband Remote Access Server
BSD	Berkeley Software Distribution
<b>C</b>	
CA	certificate authority
CAC	call admission control (MPLS); connection admission control (ATM)
CAM	content-addressable memory
CAP	carrierless amplitude phase
CAR	committed access rate
CARS	committed access rate service
CBC	cipher block chaining
CBR	constant bit rate
CC	continuity check
CCITT	International Telegraph and Telephone Consultative Committee

Abbreviation or Acronym	Term
CCP	Compression Control Protocol
CDV	cell delay variation
CDVT	cell delay variation tolerance
CE	customer edge device
CHAP	Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol
CIDR	classless interdomain routing
CISPR	International Special Committee on Radio Interference
CLACL	classifier control list
CLEC	competitive local exchange carrier
CLI	command-line interface
CLNP	Connectionless Network Protocol
CLNS	Connectionless Network Service
CLP	cell loss priority
CMDA	code division multiple access
CMTS	cable modem termination system
CoA	change of authorization
cOC	channelized optical carrier
COPS	Common Open Policy Service (protocol)
CORBA	Common Object Request Broker Architecture
CoS	class of service
CPE	customer premises equipment
CPU	central processing unit
CRC	cyclic redundancy check
CR-LDP	Constraint-Based Routed Label Distribution Protocol
CR-LSP	constraint-based routed label-switched path
CSNP	complete sequence number PDU (protocol data unit)
CSU	channel service unit
CT1, CT3	channelized T1, T3

Abbreviation or Acronym	Term
CTI	computer telephony integration
CTS	clear to send
CTT	connection traffic table
CUL	agreement between Underwriter Laboratories and Canadian Standards Association for joint product safety approval
<b>D</b>	
DC	direct current
DCC	Data Country Code
DCD	data carrier detect
DCE	data communication equipment
DCM	dynamic configuration manager
DE	discard eligibility
DES; 3DES	Data Encryption Standard; triple DES
DF	don't fragment (bit)
DHCP	Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol
DIS	designated intermediate system
DLCI	data-link connection identifier
DLCMI	data-link connection management interface
DMZ	demilitarized zone
DNIS	dialed number identification service
DNS	Domain Name System
DNS-ALG	Domain Name System – Application Level Gateway
DOCSIS	Data over Cable System Interface Specifications
DoS	denial of service
DPD	dead peer detection
DR	designated router
DS	digital signal; DiffServ
DS-BGP	dual-stack Border Gateway Protocol



Abbreviation or Acronym	Term
DSI	dynamic subscriber interface
DSL	digital subscriber line
DSLAM	digital subscriber line access multiplexer
DSP	domain-specific part
DSR	data set ready
DSS	Digital Signature Standard
DST	Daylight Saving Time
DSU	data service unit
DTE	data terminal equipment
DTR	data terminal ready
DU	downstream unsolicited
DVMRP	Distance Vector Multicast Routing Protocol
DXI	data exchange interface (abbreviation pronounced “dixie”)
<b>E</b>	
EAP	Extensible Authentication Protocol
EBGP	external Border Gateway Protocol
ECC	error checking and correction; error-checking code
ECMP	equal-cost multipath
ECP	Encryption Control Protocol
EEPROM	electrically erasable programmable read-only memory
EF	expedited forwarding
EFA	egress forwarding ASIC
EGP	exterior gateway protocol
E-LSP	EXP-inferred-PSC LSP
EN	European Norm
EPD	early packet discard
ES	end system
ESD	electrostatic discharge

Abbreviation or Acronym	Term
ESF	extended superframe
ESI	end system identifier
ESP	Encapsulating Security Payload
EXP	experimental (refers to bits in MPLS shim header)
<b>F</b>	
FAT	file allocation table
FCC	Federal Communications Commission
FCS	frame check sequence
FDL	facilities data link
FE	Fast Ethernet
FE-2	dual-port Fast Ethernet
FEC	forwarding equivalence class (abbreviation pronounced “ feck” )
FECN	forward explicit congestion notification
FERF	far-end receive failure
FFA	frame forwarding ASIC
FIB	forwarding information base
FIFO	first-in, first-out
FIN	finish (bit)
FPGA	field programmable gate array
FQDN	fully qualified domain name
FRU	field-replaceable unit
FSM	finite state machine
FTE	forwarding table entry
FTP	File Transfer Protocol
<b>G</b>	
Gbps	gigabits per second
GE	Gigabit Ethernet
giaddr	gateway IP address

Abbreviation or Acronym	Term
GRE	Generic Routing Encapsulation
GRxx	(refers to Bellcore standards)
GUI	graphical user interface
<b>H</b>	
HAR	hierarchical assured rate
HDLC	High-Level Data Link Control; High-Speed Data Link Control
HMAC	Hashed Message Authentication Code
HO-DSP	high-order domain-specific part
HRR	hierarchical round-robin
HSSI	high-speed serial interface (abbreviation pronounced “hissy”)
<b>I</b>	
I/O	input/output
IANA	Internet Assigned Numbers Authority
IAPP	Inter Access Point Protocol
IBGP	internal Border Gateway Protocol
IC CS	Industry Canada Communications Section
ICD	International Code Designator
ICMP	Internet Control Message Protocol
ICRQ	incoming-call request
ID	identification; identifying; identifier
I-DAS	integrated DHCP access server
IDI	initial domain identifier
IDP	initial domain part
IDSL	ISDN digital subscriber line
IEC	International Electrotechnical Commission
IEEE	Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers
IETF	Internet Engineering Task Force
IGMP	Internet Group Management Protocol

Abbreviation or Acronym	Term
IGP	interior gateway protocol
IIF	incoming interface
IKE	Internet Key Exchange
ILEC	incumbent local exchange carrier
ILMI	Integrated Local Management Interface
InARP	Inverse Address Resolution Protocol
IOA	input/output adapter
IP	Internet Protocol
IPCP	Internet Protocol Control Protocol
IPoA	Internet Protocol over Asynchronous Transfer Mode
IPSec	Internet Protocol Security
IRDP	ICMP Router Discovery Protocol
ISAKMP	Internet Security Association and Key Management Protocol
ISDN	Integrated Services Digital Network
IS-IS	Intermediate System-to-Intermediate System
ISM	IPSec Service module
ISO	International Organization for Standardization
ISP	Internet service provider
IS Voice	Intelligent Service Voice application
ITU-T	International Telecommunication Union – Telecommunication Standardization
<b>J</b>	
JATE	Japan Approvals Institute for Telecommunications Terminal Equipment
JDBC	Java Database Connectivity
<b>K</b>	
KB	kilobyte(s)
Kbps	kilobits per second
<b>L</b>	
L2TP	Layer 2 Tunneling Protocol

Abbreviation or Acronym	Term
LAC	L2TP access concentrator
LAG	link aggregation group
LAN	local area network
LCP	Link Control Protocol
LDAP	Lightweight Directory Access Protocol
LDP	Label Distribution Protocol
LED	light-emitting diode
LER	label edge router
LIB	label information base
LIP	Link Integrity Protocol
LLC	logical link control
L-LSP	label-only-inferred-PSC LSP
LMI	local management interface; link management interface
LNS	L2TP network server
LOF	loss of frame
LOP	loss of pointer
LOS	loss of signal
LSA	link-state advertisement
LSDB	link-state database
LSP	label-switched path; link-state PDU; link-state protocol
LSR	label-switching router
<b>M</b>	
MAC	media access control; Message Authentication Code
MAU	medium attachment unit
MB	megabyte(s)
MBGP	multicast Border Gateway Protocol
MBone	multicast backbone
Mbps	megabits per second

Abbreviation or Acronym	Term
MBS	maximum burst size
MD5	Message Digest 5
MDL	maintenance data link
MDx	Message Digest x (hash algorithm)
MED	multiple exit discriminator
MGTM	multicast group table manager
MIB	Management Information Base
MLFR	Multilink Frame Relay
MLPPP	Multilink Point-to-Point Protocol
motd	message of the day
MOTM	message of the minute
MP-BGP	Border Gateway Protocol multiprotocol extensions (sometimes referred to as multiprotocol Border Gateway Protocol)
MPLS	Multiprotocol Label Switching
mrinfo	multicast router information
MRRU	multilink maximum received reconstructed unit
MRU	maximum receive unit
MSDP	Multicast Source Discovery Protocol
MSO	multiple service operator
MSP	Multiplex Section Protection
MSS	maximum segment size
MTU	maximum transmission unit; multitenant unit
<b>N</b>	
NAK	negative acknowledgment
NAPT	Network Address Port Translation
NAS	network access server
NAT	Network Address Translation
NBMA	nonbroadcast multiaccess

Abbreviation or Acronym	Term
NCP	Network Control Protocol
ND	Neighbor Discovery
NEBS	Network Equipment Building System
NET	network entity title
NLRI	network layer reachability information
NMC	Network Management Center
NMS	network management system
NNI	network-to-network interface
NRZ	nonreturn to zero
NRZI	nonreturn to zero inverted
NSAP	network service access point
NSF	nonstop forwarding
NSSA	not-so-stubby area (refers to OSPF routing)
NTP	Network Time Protocol
NVRAM	nonvolatile random-access memory
NVS	nonvolatile storage
<b>O</b>	
OAM	operations, administration, and management
OC	optical carrier
ODBC	Open Database Connectivity
OID	object identifier
OIF	outgoing interface
ORF	outbound route filter; outbound route filtering
OSI	Open Systems Interconnection
OSINLCP	OSI Internet Link Control Protocol; OSI Network Layer Control Protocol
OSPF	Open Shortest Path First
OSS	operations support system
<b>P</b>	

Abbreviation or Acronym	Term
P	provider core router
PADI	PPPoE Active Discovery Initiation
PADM	PPPoE Active Discovery Message
PADN	PPPoE Active Discovery Network
PADO	PPPoE Active Discovery Offer
PADR	PPPoE Active Discovery Request
PADS	PPPoE Active Discovery Session
PADT	PPPoE Active Discovery Termination
PAP	Password Authentication Protocol
PBX	private branch exchange
PCMCIA	Personal Computer Memory Card International Association
PCR	peak cell rate
PDU	protocol data unit
PE	provider edge router
PFC	Protocol Field Compression
PFS	perfect forward secrecy
PHB	per-hop behavior
PHP	penultimate hop pop
PIB	Policy Information Base
PIM	Protocol Independent Multicast; power input module
PIM DM	Protocol Independent Multicast dense mode
PIM S-DM	Protocol Independent Multicast sparse-dense mode
PIM SM	Protocol Independent Multicast sparse mode
PIM SSM	Protocol Independent Multicast source-specific multicast
PKI	public key infrastructure
PLCP	physical layer convergence procedure
PM	policy manager
PNNI	private network-to-network interface



Abbreviation or Acronym	Term
POP	point of presence
POS	packet over SONET
POST	power-on self-test
PPP	Point-to-Point Protocol
PPPoE	Point-to-Point Protocol over Ethernet
pps	packets per second
PROM	programmable read-only memory
PSC	per-hop scheduling class
PSNP	partial sequence number PDU (protocol data unit)
PVC	permanent virtual circuit (or connection)
<b>Q</b>	
QoS	quality of service
<b>R</b>	
RADIUS	Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service
RD	route distinguisher
RDBS	relational database system
RDI	remote defect indication
RED	random early detection
REI	remote error indication
RESV	reservation
RFC	Request for Comments
RIB	routing information base
RIP	Routing Information Protocol
RISC	reduced instruction set computing
RMI	Remote Method Invocation (Java)
RP	rendezvous point (router)
RPF	reverse-path forwarding
RSA	Rivest-Shamir-Adleman (encryption algorithm)

Abbreviation or Acronym	Term
RSVP	Resource Reservation Protocol
RSVP-TE	Resource Reservation Protocol with traffic engineering extensions
RTM	resource threshold monitor
RTR	Response Time Reporter
RTSP	Real-Time Streaming Protocol
RWS	receive window size
RX	receive
<b>S</b>	
SA	security association
SAFI	subsequent address family identifier
SAR	segmentation and reassembly
SC	system controller
SCCRQ	Start-Control-Connection-Request
SCEP	Simple Certificate Enrollment Protocol
SCR	sustained cell rate
SCSI	small computer system interface (abbreviation pronounced “scuzzy”)
SDH	Synchronous Digital Hierarchy
SDRAM	synchronous dynamic random access memory
SDSL	symmetric digital subscriber line
SDU	service data unit
SDX	Service Deployment System (formerly SSC)
SEF	severely errored framing
SES	severely errored second
SFP	small form-factor pluggable transceiver
(S,G)	source (S) of the multicast packet and the destination multicast group address (G)
SHA	Secure Hash Algorithm
SIP	SMDS Interface Protocol

Abbreviation or Acronym	Term
SLA	service level agreement
SLARP	Serial Line Address Resolution Protocol
SM	Service line module
SMF	single-mode fiber
SMM	switch management module
SNAP	Subnetwork Access Protocol; subnetwork attachment point
SNI	SMDS network interface
SNMP	Simple Network Management Protocol
SNPA	subnet point of attachment
SNTP	Simple Network Time Protocol
SODIMM	small outline dual inline memory module
SONET	Synchronous Optical Network
SPD	security policy database
SPF	shortest path first
SPI	security parameter index
SPQ	strict-priority queues
SPVC	soft permanent virtual circuit
SQL	Structured Query Language
SRP	switch route processor
SRT	source-rooted tree
SSC	Service Selection Center (no longer used; <i>see</i> SDX)
SSH	Secure Shell
SSN	short sequence number
STM	Synchronous Transport module
SVC	switched virtual circuit
S-VLAN	stacked virtual local area network
SYN	synchronize (bit)
<b>T</b>	

Abbreviation or Acronym	Term
TAC	Technical Assistance Center
TACACS	Terminal Access Controller Access Control System
TC	transmission convergence
TCP	Transmission Control Protocol
TE	traffic engineering
TFTP	Trivial File Transfer Protocol
TIP	terminal interface processor
TLV	type-length-value
ToS	type of service
TPID	Tag Protocol Identifier
TSM	Tunnel Service line module
TTL	time-to-live
TU	tributary unit
TUG	tributary unit group
TX	transmit
<b>U</b>	
U	unit of measurement for rack-mounted equipment (a U is 1.75 in., or 4.44 cm)
UBR	unspecified bit rate
UDP	User Datagram Protocol
UI	user interface
UL	Underwriter Laboratories
UMTS	universal mobile telecommunications system
UNI	user-network interface (ATM usage); user-to-network interface
UPC	user parameter control
URL	Uniform Resource Locator
USM	user-based security model
UTC	Coordinated Universal Time
<b>V</b>	

Abbreviation or Acronym	Term
VAC	volts alternating current
VBR	variable bit rate
VBR-NRT	variable bit rate, non-real time
VBR-RT	variable bit rate, real time
VC	virtual circuit (or connection)
VCC	virtual channel connection
VCCI	Voluntary Control Council for Interference
VCD	virtual circuit descriptor
VCI	virtual channel identifier
VDC	volts direct current
VDSL	very-high-bit-rate digital subscriber line
VLAN	virtual local area network
VoIP	voice over Internet Protocol
VOQL	virtual output queue length
VP	virtual path
VPC	virtual path connection
VPI	virtual path identifier
VPN	virtual private network
VR	virtual router
VRF	VPN routing and forwarding instance
VRID	virtual router identifier
VRRP	Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol
VSA	vendor-specific attribute (RADIUS)
VT	virtual tributary
VTs	VPN Tunnel Server
vtty	virtual terminal
<b>W</b>	
WAN	wide area network

Abbreviation or Acronym	Term
WAP	wireless access point
WEP	Wired Equivalent Privacy
WFQ	weighted fair queuing
WINS	Windows Internet Name Service (Microsoft)
WLAN	wireless local area network
WLL	wireless local loop
WRED	weighted random early detection
WRR	weighted round-robin
<b>X</b>	
xDSL	combined term used to refer to ADSL, HDSL, SDSL, and VDSL
XFP	10-gigabit small form-factor pluggable transceiver

## Appendix B

# References

This document lists RFCs, draft RFCs, other software standards, hardware standards, and other references that provide information about the protocols and features supported by the system.

- RFCs on page 569
- Draft RFCs on page 582
- Other Software Standards on page 585
- Hardware Standards on page 588

### RFCs

**Table 53: E Series RFCs**

Reference	Protocol or Feature
RFC 4951—Fail Over Extensions for Layer 2 Tunneling Protocol (L2TP) "failover" (August 2007)	L2TP
RFC 4893—BGP Support for Four-octet AS Number Space (May 2007)	BGP
RFC 4816—Pseudowire Emulation Edge-to-Edge (PWE3) Asynchronous Transfer Mode (ATM) Transparent Cell Transport Service (February 2007)	MPLS
RFC 4875—Extensions to Resource Reservation Protocol - Traffic Engineering (RSVP-TE) for Point-to-Multipoint TE Label Switched Paths (LSPs) (May 2007)	MPLS
RFC 4762—Virtual Private LAN Service (VPLS) Using Label Distribution Protocol (LDP) Signaling (January 2007)	VPLS
RFC 4684—Constrained Route Distribution for Border Gateway Protocol/MultiProtocol Label Switching (BGP/MPLS) Internet Protocol (IP) Virtual Private Networks (VPNs) ( 2006)	BGP/MPLS VPNs
RFC 4679—DSL Forum Vendor-Specific RADIUS Attributes (September 2006)	RADIUS
RFC 4661—Signaling Requirements for Point-to-Multipoint Traffic-Engineered MPLS Label Switched Paths (LSPs) (April 2006)	MPLS

**Table 53: E Series RFCs** *(continued)*

Reference	Protocol or Feature
RFC 4447—Pseudowire Setup and Maintenance Using the Label Distribution Protocol (LDP) (April 2006)	VPLS
RFC 4379—Detecting Multi-Protocol Label Switched (MPLS) Data Plane Failures (February 2006)	MPLS; BGP/MPLS VPNs
RFC 4364—BGP/MPLS IP Virtual Private Networks (VPNs) (February 2006)	BGP/MPLS VPNs
RFC 4271—A Border Gateway Protocol 4 (BGP-4) (January 1996)	BGP
RFC 4243—Vendor-Specific Information Suboption for the Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) Relay Agent Option (December 2005)	DHCP 8.0.0b1 RLI-2978 (Bruce)
RFC 4090—Fast Reroute Extensions to RSVP-TE for LSP Tunnels (May 2005)	MPLS
RFC 3847—Restart Signaling for Intermediate System to Intermediate System (IS-IS) (July 2004)	IS-IS
RFC 3784—Intermediate System to Intermediate System (IS-IS) Extensions for Traffic Engineering (TE) (June 2004)	IS-IS
RFC 3748—Extensible Authentication Protocol (EAP) (June 2004)	PPP7.3.0b1 RLI-606
RFC 3715—IPsec-Network Address Translation (NAT) Compatibility Requirements (March 2004)	L2TP over IPsec
RFC 3710—Multicast Listener Discovery (MLD) for IPv6 (October 1999)	IPv6 multicasting
RFC 3706—A Traffic-Based Method of Detecting Dead Internet Key Exchange (IKE) Peers (February 2004)	IPsec 5.3.0b1 -- RLI-322
RFC 3646—DNS Configuration options for Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol for IPv6 (DHCPv6) (December 2003)	DHCP 6.1.0b1 replaces draft -- Bruce
RFC 3633—IPv6 Prefix Options for Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) Version 6 (December 2003)	DHCP 7.1.xFRS replaces draft -- Bruce
RFC 3630—Traffic Engineering (TE) Extensions to OSPF Version 2 (September 2003)	OSPF
RFC 3623—Graceful OSPF Restart (November 2003)	OSPF
RFC 3579—RADIUS EAP (September 2003)	PPP7.3.0b1 RLI-606
RFC 5176—Dynamic Authorization Extensions to Remote Authentication Dial In User Service (RADIUS) (January 2008)	RADIUS
RFC 3569—An Overview of Source-Specific Multicast (SSM) (July 2003)	IP multicasting
RFC 3564—Requirements for support of Differentiated Services-aware MPLS Traffic Engineering (July 2003)	MPLS



**Table 53: E Series RFCs** *(continued)*

Reference	Protocol or Feature
RFC 3539—Authentication, Authorization and Accounting (AAA) Transport Profile (June 2003)	RADIUS 6.0.0b1
RFC 3498—Definitions of Managed Objects for Synchronous Optical Network (SONET) Linear Automatic Protection Switching (APS) Architectures (March 2003)	SONET APS redundancy
RFC 3479—Fault Tolerance for the Label Distribution Protocol (LDP) (February 2003)	MPLS
RFC 3478—Graceful Restart Mechanism for Label Distribution Protocol (February 2003)	MPLS
RFC 3473—Generalized Multi-Protocol Label Switching (GMPLS) Signaling Resource ReserVation Protocol-Traffic Engineering (RSVP-TE) Extensions (January 2003)	MPLS
RFC 3471—Generalized Multi-Protocol Label Switching (GMPLS) Signaling Functional Description (January 2003)	MPLS
RFC 3447—Public-Key Cryptography Standards (PKCS) #1: RSA Cryptography Specifications Version 2.1 (February 2003)	Digital certificates
RFC 3443—Time To Live (TTL) Processing in Multi-Protocol Label Switching (MPLS) Networks (January 2003)	MPLS
RFC 3419—Textual Conventions for Transport Addresses (December 2002)	IP
RFC 3418—Management Information Base (MIB) for the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) (December 2002)	SNMP
RFC 3417—Transport Mappings for the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) (December 2002)	SNMP
RFC 3416—Version 2 of the Protocol Operations for the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) (December 2002)	SNMP
RFC 3415—View-based Access Control Model (VACM) for the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) (December 2002)	SNMP
RFC 3414—User-based Security Model (USM) for version 3 of the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMPv3) (December 2002)	SNMP
RFC 3413—Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) Applications (December 2002)	SNMP
RFC 3412—Message Processing and Dispatching for the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) (December 2002)	SNMP
RFC 3411—An Architecture for Describing Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) Management Frameworks (December 2002)	SNMP

**Table 53: E Series RFCs** *(continued)*

Reference	Protocol or Feature
RFC 3410—Introduction and Applicability Statements for Internet Standard Management Framework (December 2002)	SNMP
RFC 3392—Capabilities Advertisement with BGP-4 (November 2002)	BGP; BGP/MPLS VPNs
RFC 3376—Internet Group Management Protocol (October 2002)	IP multicasting
RFC 3373—Three-Way Handshake for Intermediate System to Intermediate System (IS-IS) Point-to-Point Adjacencies (September 2002)	IS-IS
RFC 3344—IP Mobility Support for IPv4 (August 2002)	Mobile IP
RFC 3318—Framework Policy Information Base (March 2003)	COPS
RFC 3315—Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol for IPv6 (DHCPv6) (July 2003)	DHCP
RFC 3293—General Switch Management Protocol (GSMP) Packet Encapsulations for Asynchronous Transfer Mode (ATM), Ethernet and Transmission Control Protocol (TCP) (June 2002)	ANCP
RFC 3292—General Switch Management Protocol (GSMP) V3 (June 2002)	IP multicasting; ANCP
RFC 3291—Textual Conventions for Internet Network Addresses (May 2002)	IP
RFC 3280—Internet X.509 Public Key Infrastructure Certificate and Certificate Revocation List (CRL) Profile (April 2002)	Digital certificates
RFC 3277—Intermediate System to Intermediate System (IS-IS) Transient Blackhole Avoidance (April 2002)	IS-IS
RFC 3270—Multi-Protocol Label Switching (MPLS) Support of Differentiated Services (May 2002)	MPLS
RFC 3260—New Terminology and Clarifications for Diffserv (April 2002)	QoS
RFC 3246—An Expedited Forwarding PHB (Per-Hop Behavior) (March 2002)	MPLS; QoS
RFC 3210—Applicability Statement for Extensions to RSVP for LSP-Tunnels (December 2001)	BGP/MPLS VPNs
RFC 3209—RSVP-TE: Extensions to RSVP for LSP Tunnels (December 2001)	BGP/MPLS VPNs
RFC 3198—Terminology for Policy-Based Management (November 2001)	Policy management
RFC 3193—Securing L2TP using IPSec (November 2001)	L2TP over IPSec

**Table 53: E Series RFCs** *(continued)*

Reference	Protocol or Feature
RFC 3159—Structure of Policy Provisioning Information (SPPI) (August 2001)	COPS
RFC 3145—L2TP Disconnect Cause Information (July 2001)	L2TP
RFC 3140—Per Hop Behavior Identification Codes (June 2001)	MPLS
RFC 3107—Carrying Label Information in BGP-4 (May 2001)	BGP/MPLS VPNs
RFC 3097—RSVP Cryptographic Authentication -- Updated Message Type Value (April 2001)	MPLS
RFC 3084—COPS Usage for Policy Provisioning (COPS-PR) (March 2001)	COPS
RFC 3065—Autonomous System Confederations for BGP (February 2001)	MPLS
RFC 3046—DHCP Relay Agent Information Option (January 2001)	Dynamic interfaces, RADIUS
RFC 3037—LDP Applicability (January 2001)	MPLS
RFC 3036—LDP Specification (January 2001)	MPLS, VPLS
RFC 3035—MPLS using LDP and ATM VC Switching (January 2001)	MPLS
RFC 3032—MPLS Label Stack Encoding (January 2001)	MPLS
RFC 3031—Multiprotocol Label Switching Architecture (January 2001)	MPLS
RFC 3027—Protocol Complications with the IP Network Address Translator (January 2001)	NAT
RFC 3024—Reverse Tunneling for Mobile IP, revised (January 2001)	Mobile IP
RFC 3022—Traditional IP Network Address Translator (Traditional NAT) (January 2001)	NAT
RFC 3014—Notification Log MIB (November 2000)	SNMP
RFC 2998—A Framework for Integrated Services Operation over Diffserv Networks (November 2000)	QoS
RFC 2993—Architecture Implications of NAT (November 2000)	NAT
RFC 2990—Next Steps for the IP QoS Architecture (November 2000)	QoS
RFC 2986—PKCS #10: Certification Request Syntax Specification Version 1.7 (November 2000)	Digital certificates
RFC 2981—Event MIB (October 2000)	Event Mgr
RFC 2973—IS-IS Mesh Groups (October 2000)	IS-IS

**Table 53: E Series RFCs** *(continued)*

Reference	Protocol or Feature
RFC 2966—Domain-wide Prefix Distribution with Two-Level IS-IS (October 2000)	IS-IS
RFC 2961—RSVP Refresh Overhead Reduction Extensions (April 2001)	MPLS
RFC 2934—Protocol Independent Multicast MIB for IPv4 (October 2000)	SNMP
RFC 2933—Internet Group Management Protocol MIB (October 2000)	SNMP
RFC 2932—IPv4 Multicast Routing MIB (October 2000)	SNMP
RFC 2925—Definitions of Managed Objects for Remote Ping, Traceroute, and Lookup Operations (September 2000)	SNMP
RFC 2923—TCP Problems with Path MTU Discovery (September 2000)	IP
RFC 2918—Route Refresh Capability for BGP-4 (September 2000)	BGP
RFC 2917—A Core MPLS IP Architecture (September 2000)	MPLS
RFC 2890—Key and Sequence Number Extensions to GRE (September 2000)	GRE
RFC 2869—RADIUS Extensions (June 2000)	RADIUS
RFC 2868—RADIUS Attributes for Tunnel Protocol Support (June 2000)	RADIUS
RFC 2867—RADIUS Accounting Modifications for Tunnel Protocol Support (June 2000)	RADIUS
RFC 2866—RADIUS Accounting (June 2000)	Dynamic interfaces; RADIUS
RFC 2865—Remote Authentication Dial In User Service (RADIUS) (June 2000)	Dynamic interfaces; RADIUS; Mobile IP
RFC 2864—The Inverted Stack Table Extension to the Interfaces Group MIB (June 2000)	SNMP
RFC 2863—The Interfaces Group MIB (June 2000)	Ethernet; SNMP
RFC 2858—Multiprotocol Extensions for BGP-4 (June 2000)	BGP
RFC 3392—Capabilities Advertisement with BGP-4 (November 2002)	BGP
RFC 2836—Per Hop Behavior Identification Codes (May 2000)	MPLS; Policy, Management; QoS
RFC 2796—BGP Route Reflection—An Alternative to Full Mesh IBGP (April 2000)	BGP
RFC 2794—Mobile IP Network Access Identifier Extension for IPv4 (March 2000)	Mobile IP

**Table 53: E Series RFCs** *(continued)*

Reference	Protocol or Feature
RFC 2790—Host Resources MIB (March 2000)	SNMP
RFC 2787—Definitions of Managed Objects for the Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol (March 2000)	VRRP
RFC 2784—Generic Routing Encapsulation (GRE) (March 2000)	IP tunnels
RFC 2763—Dynamic Hostname Exchange Mechanism for IS-IS (February 2000)	IS-IS
RFC 2748—The COPS (Common Open Policy Service) Protocol (January 2000)	COPS
RFC 2747—RSVP Cryptographic Authentication (January 2000)	MPLS
RFC 2740—OSPF for IPv6	OSPF
RFC 2737—Entity MIB (Version 2) (December 1999)	SNMP
RFC 2716—PPP EAP TLS Authentication Protocol (October 1999)	PPP7.3.0b1 RLI-606
RFC 2702—Requirements for Traffic Engineering over MPLS (September 1999)	MPLS
RFC 2698—A Two Rate Three Color Marker (September 1999)	Policy management; QoS
RFC 2697—A Single Rate Three Color Marker (September 1999)	Policy management
RFC 2694—DNS extensions to Network Address Translators (DNS_ALG) (September 1999)	NAT
RFC 2685—Virtual Private Networks Identifier (September 1999)	MPLS
RFC 2684—Multiprotocol Encapsulation over ATM Adaptation Layer 5 (September 1999)	ATM
RFC 2668—Definitions of Managed Objects for IEEE 802.3 Medium Attachment Units (MAUs) (August 1999)	Ethernet; SNMP
RFC 2667—IP Tunnel MIB (August 1999)	SNMP; IP tunnels
RFC 2665—Definitions of Managed Objects for the Ethernet-like Interface Types (August 1998)	Ethernet; SNMP
RFC 2663—IP Network Address Translator (NAT) Terminology and Considerations (August 1999)	NAT
RFC 2661—Layer Two Tunneling Protocol “L2TP” (August 1999)	L2TP
RFC 2616—Hypertext Transfer Protocol – HTTP/1.1 (June 1989)	HTTP
RFC 2615—PPP over SONET/SDH (June 1999)	POS

**Table 53: E Series RFCs** *(continued)*

Reference	Protocol or Feature
RFC 2598—An Expedited Forwarding PHB (June 1999)	QoS
RFC 2597—Assured Forwarding PHB Group (June 1999)	MPLS; Policy management; QoS
RFC 2580—Conformance Statements for SMIPv2 (April 1999)	SNMP
RFC 2579—Textual Conventions for SMIPv2 (April 1999)	SNMP
RFC 2578—Structure of Management Information Version 2 (SMIPv2) (April 1999)	SNMP
RFC 2576—Coexistence between Version 1, Version 2, and Version 3 of the Internet-standard Network Management Framework (March 2000)	SNMP
RFC 2558—Definitions of Managed Objects for the SONET/SDH Interface Type (March 1999)	SNMP; cOCx/STMx and OCx/STMx interfaces
RFC 2545—Use of BGP-4 Multiprotocol Extensions for IPv6 Inter-Domain Routing (March 1999)	BGP
RFC 2519—A Framework for Inter-Domain Route Aggregation (February 1999)	BGP
RFC 2516—Method for Transmitting PPP over Ethernet (PPPoE) (February 1998)	PPPoE
RFC 2515—Definitions of Managed Objects for ATM Management (February 1999)	ATM; SNMP
RFC 2514—Definitions of Textual Conventions and OBJECT-IDENTITIES for ATM Management (February 1999)	SNMP
RFC 2513—Managed Objects for Controlling the Collection and Storage of Accounting Information for Connection-Oriented Networks (February 1999)	SNMP
RFC 2496—Definitions of Managed Objects for the DS3/E3 Interface Types (January 1999)	SNMP; cOCx/STMx, CT3, E3, and T3 interfaces
RFC 2495—Definitions of Managed Objects for the DS1, E1, DS2 and E2 Interface Types (January 1999)	SNMP; CE1, CT1, and CT3 interfaces
RFC 2493—Textual Conventions for MIB Modules Using Performance History Based on 15 Minute Intervals (January 1999)	SNMP
RFC 2486—The Network Access Identifier (January 1999)	Mobile IP
RFC 2475—An Architecture for Differentiated Services (December 1998)	MPLS; Policy, Management; QoS
RFC 2474—Definition of the Differentiated Services Field (DS Field) in the IPv4 and IPv6 Headers (December 1998)	MPLS; Policy management; QoS

**Table 53: E Series RFCs** *(continued)*

Reference	Protocol or Feature
RFC 2466—Management Information Base for IP Version 6: ICMPv6 Group (December 1998)	IPv6; Neighbor Discovery
RFC 2465—Management Information Base for IP Version 6: Textual Conventions and General Group (December 1998)	IPv6
RFC 2464—Transmission of IPv6 Packets over Ethernet Networks (December 1998)	IPv6; Neighbor Discovery
RFC 2463—Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMPv6) for the Internet Protocol Version 6 (IPv6) Specification (December 1998)	IPv6
RFC 2462—IPv6 Stateless Address Autoconfiguration (December 1998)	IPv6; Neighbor Discovery
RFC 2461—Neighbor Discovery for IP Version 6 (IPv6) (December 1998)	IPv6; Neighbor Discovery
RFC 2460—Internet Protocol, Version 6 (IPv6) (December 1998)	IPv6
RFC 2459—Internet X.509 Public Key Infrastructure Certificate and CRL Profile (January 1999)	Digital certificates
RFC 2453—RIP Version 2 (November 1998)	RIP
RFC 2439—BGP Route Flap Damping (November 1998)	BGP
RFC 2427—Multiprotocol Interconnect over Frame Relay (September 1998)	Frame Relay
RFC 2410—The NULL Encryption Algorithm and Its Use With IPSec (November 1998)	IPSec
RFC 2409—The Internet Key Exchange (IKE) (November 1998)	IPSec
RFC 2408—Internet Security Association and Key Management Protocol (ISAKMP) (November 1998)	IPSec
RFC 2407—The Internet IP Security Domain of Interpretation for ISAKMP (November 1998)	IPSec
RFC 2406—IP Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP) (November 1998)	IPSec
RFC 2405—The ESP DES-CBC Cipher Algorithm With Explicit IV (November 1998)	IPSec
RFC 2404—The Use of HMAC-SHA-1-96 within ESP and AH (November 1998)	IPSec
RFC 2403—The Use of HMAC-MD5-96 within ESP and AH (November 1998)	IPSec
RFC 2402—IP Authentication Header (November 1998)	IPSec

**Table 53: E Series RFCs** *(continued)*

Reference	Protocol or Feature
RFC 2401—Security Architecture for the Internet Protocol (November 1998)	IPSec
RFC 2390—Inverse Address Resolution Protocol (September 1998)	ATM
RFC 2385—Protection of BGP Sessions via the TCP MD5 Signature Option (August 1998)	BGP
RFC 2373—IP Version 6 Addressing Architecture (July 1998)	IPv6
RFC 2370—The OSPF Opaque LSA Option (July 1998)	OSPF
RFC 2364—PPP over AAL5 (July 1998)	E3 and T3 interfaces
RFC 2362—Protocol Independent Multicast-Sparse Mode (PIM-SM): Protocol Specification (June 1998)	IP multicasting; SNMP 6.1.0 - removed draft reference (not needed; Mark)
RFC 2338—Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol (April 1998)	VRRP
RFC 2328—OSPF Version 2 (April 1998)	OSPF
RFC 2308—Negative Caching of DNS Queries (DNS NCACHE) (March 1998)	System management
RFC 2284—PPP Extensible Authentication Protocol (EAP) (March 1998)	RADIUS
RFC 2270—Using a Dedicated AS for Sites Homed to a Single Provider (January 1998)	BGP
RFC 2246—The TLS Protocol Version 1.0 (January 1999)	PPP7.3.0b1 RLI-606
RFC 2236—Internet Group Management Protocol, Version 2 (November 1997)	IP multicasting
RFC 2233—The Interfaces Group MIB using SMIPv2 (November 1997)	Frame Relay
RFC 2211—Specification of the Controlled-Load Network Element Service (September 1997)	MPLS
RFC 2210—The Use of RSVP with IETF Integrated Services (September 1997)	MPLS
RFC 2209—Resource ReSerVation Protocol (RSVP) -- Version 1, Message Processing Rules (September 1997)	MPLS
RFC 2205—Resource ReSerVation Protocol (RSVP) -- Version 1, Functional Specification (September 1997)	MPLS
RFC 2153—PPP Vendor Extensions (May 1997)	PPP
RFC 2132—DHCP Options and BOOTP Vendor Extensions (March 1997)	DHCP



**Table 53: E Series RFCs** *(continued)*

Reference	Protocol or Feature
RFC 2131—Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (March 1997)	DHCP
RFC 2115—Management Information Base for Frame Relay DTEs Using SMIv2 (September 1997)	Frame Relay; SNMP
RFC 2104—HMAC: Keyed-Hashing for Message Authentication (February 1997)	MPLS
RFC 2096—IP Forwarding Table MIB (January 1997)	SNMP
RFC 2030—Simple Network Time Protocol (SNTP) (Version 4) for IPv4, IPv6, and OSI (October 1996)	NTP
RFC 2013—SNMPv2 Management Information Base for the User Datagram Protocol using SMIv2 (November 1996)	SNMP
RFC 2012—SNMPv2 Management Information Base for the Transmission Control Protocol using SMIv2 (November 1996)	SNMP
RFC 2011—SNMPv2 Management Information Base for the Internet Protocol using SMIv2 (November 1996)	SNMP
RFC 2006—The Definitions of Managed Objects for IP Mobility Support using SMIv2 (October 1996)	Mobile IP
RFC 2003—IP Encapsulation within IP (October 1996)	IP tunnels
RFC 1998—An Application of the BGP Community Attribute in Multi-home Routing (August 1996)	BGP
RFC 1997—BGP Communities Attribute (August 1996)	BGP
RFC 1994—PPP Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol (CHAP) (August 1996)	MLPPP; PPP
RFC 1990—The PPP Multilink Protocol (MP) (August 1996)	MLPPP
RFC 1966—BGP Route Reflection An alternative to full mesh IBGP (June 1996)	BGP
RFC 3065—Autonomous System Confederations for BGP (February 2001)	BGP
RFC 1930—Guidelines for creation, selection, and registration of an Autonomous System (AS) (March 1996)	BGP
RFC 1901—Introduction to Community-based SNMPv2 (January 1996)	SNMP
RFC 1877—PPP Internet Protocol Control Protocol Extensions for Name Server Addresses (December 1995)	PPP
RFC 1863—A BGP/IDRP Route Server alternative to a full mesh routing (October 1995)	BGP

**Table 53: E Series RFCs** *(continued)*

Reference	Protocol or Feature
RFC 1850—OSPF Version 2 Management Information Base (November 1995)	OSPF
RFC 1812—Requirements for IP Version 4 Routers (June 1995)	IP
RFC 1774—BGP-4 Protocol Analysis (March 1995)	BGP
RFC 1773—Experience with the BGP-4 protocol (March 1995)	BGP
RFC 1772—Application of the Border Gateway Protocol in the Internet (March 1995)	BGP
RFC 1745—BGP4/IDRP for IP—OSPF Interaction (December 1994)	BGP
RFC 1724—RIP Version 2 MIB Extension (November 1994)	RIP
RFC 1702—Generic Routing Encapsulation over IPv4 Networks (October 1994)	IP tunnels
RFC 1701—Generic Routing Encapsulation (October 1994)	IP tunnels
RFC 1700—Assigned Numbers (October 1994)	IP tunnels
RFC 1662—PPP in HDLC-like Framing (July 1994)	POS
RFC 1661—The Point-to-Point Protocol (PPP) (July 1994)	PPP; MLPPP; cOCx/STMx, channelized E1, channelized T1, channelized T3, E3, and T3 interfaces
RFC 1657—Definitions of Managed Objects for the Fourth Version of the Border Gateway Protocol (BGP-4) using SMIPv2 (July 1997)	BGP; SNMP
RFC 1587—The OSPF NSSA Option (March 1994)	OSPF
RFC 1493—Definitions of Managed Objects for Bridges (July 1993)	Transparent bridging
RFC 1490—Multiprotocol Interconnect over Frame Relay (July 1993)	Frame Relay
RFC 1483—Multiprotocol Encapsulation over ATM Adaptation Layer 5 (July 1993)	ATM; E3 and T3 interfaces
RFC 1473—The Definitions of Managed Objects for the IP Network Control Protocol of the Point-to-Point Protocol (June 1993)	SNMP
RFC 1472—The Definitions of Managed Objects for the Security Protocols of the Point-to-Point Protocol (June 1993)	SNMP
RFC 1471—The Definitions of Managed Objects for the Link Control Protocol of the Point-to-Point Protocol (June 1993)	SNMP

**Table 53: E Series RFCs** *(continued)*

Reference	Protocol or Feature
RFC 1407—Definitions of Managed Objects for the DS3/E3 Interface Types (January 1993)	SNMP; cOCx/STMx, channelized T3, E3, and T3 interfaces
RFC 1406—Definitions of Managed Objects for the DS1 and E1 Interface Types (January 1993)	SNMP; channelized E1, channelized T1, and channelized T3 interfaces
RFC 1350—Trivial File Transfer Protocol (TFTP) (Revision 2) (July 1992)	TFTP; System management
RFC 1332—The PPP Internet Protocol Control Protocol (IPCP) (May 1992)	PPP
RFC 1305—Network Time Protocol (version 3) Specification, Implementation and Analysis (March 1992)	NTP
RFC 1215—A Convention for Defining Traps for use with the SNMP (March 1991)	SNMP
RFC 1213—Management Information Base for Network Management of TCP/IP-based Internets: MIB-II (March 1991)	SNMP
RFC 1212—Concise MIB Definitions (March 1991)	SNMP
RFC 1195—Use of OSI IS-IS for Routing in TCP/IP and Dual Environments (December 1990)	IS-IS
RFC 1158—Management Information Base for Network Management of TCP/IP-based internets: MIB-II (May 1990)	TCP/IP
RFC 1157—A Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) (May 1990)	SNMP
RFC 1155—Structure and Identification of Management Information for TCP/IP-based Internets (May 1990)	SNMP
RFC 1122—Requirements for Internet Hosts—Communication Layers (October 1989)	IP
RFC 1112—Host Extensions for IP Multicasting (August 1989)	Ethernet; IP
RFC 1094—Network File System Protocol Specification (March 1989)	NFS
RFC 1058—Routing Information Protocol (June 1998)	RIP
RFC 1057—Remote Procedure Call Protocol Specification (June 1988)	RPC
RFC 1042—A Standard for the Transmission of IP Datagrams over IEEE 802 Networks (February 1988)	Ethernet
RFC 1035—Domain Names – Implementation and Specification (November 1987)	System management

**Table 53: E Series RFCs** *(continued)*

Reference	Protocol or Feature
RFC 959—File Transfer Protocol (FTP) (October 1985)	FTP; System management
RFC 950—Internet Standard Subnetting Procedure (August 1985)	IP
RFC 922—Broadcasting Internet Datagrams in the Presence of Subnets (October 1984)	IP
RFC 919—Broadcasting Internet Datagrams (October 1984)	IP
RFC 894—A Standard for the Transmission of IP Datagrams over Ethernet Networks (April 1984)	Ethernet
RFC 854—Telnet Protocol Specification (May 1983)	IP
RFC 826—An Ethernet Address Resolution Protocol (November 1982)	Ethernet
RFC 793—Transmission Control Protocol (September 1981)	IP
RFC 792—Internet Control Message Protocol (September 1981)	IP
RFC 791—Internet Protocol DARPA Internet Program Protocol Specification (September 1981)	IP
RFC 768—User Datagram Protocol (August 1980)	IP

## Draft RFCs



**NOTE:** IETF drafts are valid for only 6 months from the date of issuance. They must be considered as works in progress. Please refer to the IETF Web site at <http://www.ietf.org> for the latest drafts.

**Table 54: E Series Draft RFCs**

Reference	Protocol or Feature
Address Prefix Based Outbound Route Filter for BGP-4—draft-chen-bgp-prefix-orf-07.txt (March 2004 expiration)	BGP
A Policy Control Mechanism in IS-IS Using Administrative Tags—draft-ietf-isis-admin-tags-02.txt (January 2005 expiration)	IS-IS
A “traceroute” Facility for IP Multicast—draft-ietf-idmr-traceroute-ipm-07.txt (January 2001 expiration)	IP multicasting
BFD for IPv4 and IPv6 (Single Hop)—draft-ietf-bfd-v4v6-1hop-00.txt (January 2005 expiration)	BFD

**Table 54: E Series Draft RFCs** *(continued)*

Reference	Protocol or Feature
BGP Extended Communities Attribute—draft-ietf-idr-bgp-ext-communities-07.txt (February 2004 expiration)	BGP
BGP-MPLS VPN extension for IPv6 VPN—draft-ietf-l3vpn-bgp-ipv6-03.txt (December 2004 expiration)	BGP/MPLS VPNs
Bidirectional Forwarding Detection—draft-ietf-bfd-base-00.txt. (January 2005 expiration)	BFD
Connecting IPv6 Islands across IPv4 Clouds with BGP—draft-ietf-ngtrans-bgp-tunnel-04.txt (July 2002 expiration)	BGP
Cooperative Route Filtering Capability for BGP-4—draft-ietf-idr-route-filter-09.txt (February 2003 expiration)	BGP
Definitions of Managed Objects for SONET Linear APS Architectures—draft-ietf-atommib-sonetaps-mib-05.txt (November 2001 expiration)	SONET APS redundancy
Distance Vector Multicast Routing Protocol—draft-ietf-idmr-dvmrp-v3-11.txt (April 2004 expiration)	IP multicasting
Dynamic Capability for BGP-4—draft-ietf-idr-dynamic-cap-04.txt (February 2004 expiration)	BGP
Encapsulation Methods for Transport of ATM Over MPLS Networks—draft-ietf-pwe3-atm-encap-07.txt (April 2005 expiration)	Layer 2 services
Encapsulation Methods for Transport of Ethernet Frames Over IP/MPLS Networks—draft-ietf-pwe3-ethernet-encap-05.txt (June 2004 expiration)	Layer 2 services
Encapsulation Methods for Transport of Layer 2 Frames Over IP and MPLS Networks—draft-martini-l2circuit-encap-mpls-08.txt (March 2005 expiration)	Layer 2 services
Encapsulation Methods for Transport of PPP/HDLC Over IP and MPLS Networks—draft-ietf-pwe3-hdlc-ppp-encap-mpls-03.txt (October 2004 expiration)	Layer 2 services
Encapsulating MPLS in IP or Generic Routing Encapsulation (GRE)—draft-ietf-mpls-in-ip-or-gre-03.txt (September 2003 expiration)	MPLS
Extended Authentication within IKE (XAUTH)—draft-beaulieu-ike-xauth-02.txt (April 2002 expiration)	Dynamic IPSec subscribers
Extended Authentication within ISAKMP/Oakley (XAUTH)—draft-ietf-ipsec-isakmp-xauth-06.txt (May 2000 expiration)	Dynamic IPSec subscribers
Extended Ethernet Frame Size Support—draft-ietf-isis-ext-eth-01.txt (November 2001 expiration)	IS-IS
Extensions to a Method for Transmitting PPP over Ethernet (PPPoE)—draft-carrel-info-pppoe-ext-00.txt (November 2000 expiration)	PPPoE

**Table 54: E Series Draft RFCs** *(continued)*

Reference	Protocol or Feature
Fail Over extensions for L2TP “ failover” —draft-ietf-l2tpext-failover-06.txt (April 2006 expiration)	L2TP
Framework for Pseudo Wire Emulation Edge-to-Edge (PWE3)—draft-ietf-pwe3-arch-06.txt (April 2004 expiration)	Layer 2 services
Graceful Restart Mechanism for BGP—draft-ietf-idr-restart-10.txt (March 2004 expiration)	BGP
GSMPv3 Base Specification—draft-ietf-gsmp-v3-base-spec-06.txt (May 2005 expiration)	ANCP
GSMP extensions for layer2 control (L2C) Topology Discovery and Line Configuration—draft-wadhwa-gsmp-l2control-configuration-00.txt (July 2006 expiration)	ANCP
IGMP-based Multicast Forwarding (“ IGMP Proxying”) )—draft-ietf-magma-igmp-proxy-00.txt (May 2002 expiration)	IP multicasting
IGMP/MLD-based Multicast Forwarding (“IGMP/MLD Proxying”)—draft-ietf-magma-igmp-proxy-06.txt (October 2004 expiration)	IPv6 multicasting
L2TP Proxy Authenticate Extensions for EAP—draft-ietf-l2tpext-proxy-authen-ext-eap-01.txt (December 2006 expiration)	PPP7.3.0b1 RLI-606
Layer 2 VPNs over Tunnels—draft-kompella-l2vpn-l2vpn-01.txt (July 2006 expiration)	L2VPNs
LDP IGP Synchronization—draft-jork-ldp-igp-sync-01.txt (August 2005 expiration)	MPLS
Management Information Base for IS-IS—draft-ietf-isis-wg-mib-16.txt (January 2005 expiration)	IS-IS; SNMP
Multicast Group Membership Discovery MIB—draft-ietf-magma-mgmd-mib-06.txt (October 2004 expiration)	IPv6 multicasting
Multicast in MPLS/BGP VPNs—draft-rosen-vpn-mcast-06.txt (April 2004 expiration)	Multicast VPNs
Multicast in MPLS/BGP IP VPNs—draft-rosen-vpn-mcast-08.txt (June 2005 expiration)	Multicast VPNs
Negotiation of NAT-Traversal in the IKE—draft-ietf-ipsec-nat-t-ike-08.txt (July 2004 expiration)	L2TP over IPSec
Point-to-point operation over LAN in link-state routing protocols—draft-ietf-isis-igp-p2p-over-lan-05.txt (January 2005 expiration)	IS-IS
Protocol Independent Multicast MIB for IPv4—draft-ietf-idmr-pim-mib-10.txt (July 2000 expiration)	IP multicasting

**Table 54: E Series Draft RFCs** *(continued)*

Reference	Protocol or Feature
Pseudowire Setup and Maintenance Using LDP—draft-ietf-pwe3-control-protocol-08.txt (January 2005 expiration)	Layer 2 services
Requirements for Pseudo-Wire Emulation Edge-to-Edge (PWE3)—draft-ietf-pwe3-requirements-08.txt (June 2004 expiration)	Layer 2 services
Routing IPv6 with IS-IS—draft-ietf-isis-ipv6-06.txt (April 2006 expiration)	IS-IS
Source-Specific Multicast for IP—draft-ietf-ssm-arch-06.txt (March 2005 expiration)	IP multicasting
Source-Specific Protocol Independent Multicast in 232/8—draft-ietf-mpboned-ssm232-08.txt (September 2004 expiration)	IP multicasting
Subcodes for BGP Cease Notification Message—draft-ietf-idr-cease-subcode-05.txt (March 2004 expiration)	BGP
The ISAKMP Configuration Method—draft-dukes-ike-mode-cfg-02.txt (March 2002 expiration)	Dynamic IPsec subscribers
The TACACS+ Protocol, Version 1.78—draft-grant-tacacs-02.txt (January 1997 expiration)	TACACS +
Transport of Layer 2 Frames Over MPLS—draft-martini-12circuit-trans-mpls-11.txt (October 2003 expiration)	Layer 2 services
UDP Encapsulation of IPsec ESP Packets—draft-ietf-ipsec-udp-encaps-09.txt (November 2004 expiration)	L2TP over IPsec
Virtual Private LAN Service—draft-ietf-l2vpn-vpls-bgp-05.txt (October 2005 expiration)	VPLS

## Other Software Standards

**Table 55: E Series Non-RFC Software Standards**

Reference	Protocol or Feature
ANSI T1.107a-1990 Standard for Telecommunications—Digital Hierarchy – Supplement to Formats Specification (August 1990)	MDL (T3 interfaces)
ANSI T1.403-1989 Standard for Telecommunications—Network and Customer Installation Interfaces – DS1 Metallic Interface – Robbed-bit Signaling State Definitions (1989)	FDL (T1 interfaces)
ANSI T1.404-1994 Standard for Telecommunications—Network-to-Customer – DS3 Metallic Interface Specification (1994)	Remote loopback (T3 interfaces)
ANSI T1.617 Annex D	Frame Relay

**Table 55: E Series Non-RFC Software Standards** *(continued)*

Reference	Protocol or Feature
AT&T Technical Reference 54016—Requirements for Interfacing Digital Terminal Equipment to Services Employing the Extended Superframe Format (September 1989)	FDL (T1 interfaces)
ATM Forum—ATM User-Network Interface Specification, Version 3.0 (September 1993)	ATM
ATM Forum—ATM User-Network Interface Specification, Version 3.1 (September 1994)	ATM
ATM Forum—Integrated Local Management Interface (ILMI) Specifications, Versions 3.0, 3.1, and 4.0 (September 1996)	ATM
ATM Forum—Traffic Management Specification, Version 4.0 (April 1996)	ATM
ATM Forum—User-Network Interface (UNI) versions 3.0, 3.1, 4.0	ATM
Draft Standard P802.1Q/D9 IEEE Standards for Local and Metropolitan Area Networks: Virtual Bridged Local Area Networks	Ethernet; VLANs; Transparent bridging
DSL Forum Technical Report (TR)-059—DSL Evolution - Architecture Requirements for the Support of QoS-Enabled IP Services	QoS; DSL
DSL Forum Technical Report (TR)-101—Migration to Ethernet-Based DSL Aggregation (April 2006)	Dynamic VLANs; PPPoE; DHCP
ERX system Cisco HDLC is compatible with Cisco Systems HDLC protocol	Cisco HDLC
Frame Relay Forum—Frame Relay Fragmentation Implementation Agreement, FRF.12 (December 1997)	Frame Relay
Frame Relay Forum—User-to-Network Implementation Agreement (UNI), FRF 1.1 (January 1996)	Frame Relay
IEEE 802.1D—Media access control (MAC) bridges	Transparent bridging
IEEE 802.1q (Virtual LANs)	Ethernet; VLANs
IEEE 802.1w (Rapid Reconfiguration of Spanning Tree)	Ethernet
IEEE 802.1x-2001—Port-Based Network Access Control	Wireless authentication
IEEE 802.3 (Fast Ethernet and Gigabit Ethernet)	Ethernet
IEEE 802.3ad (Link Aggregation)	Link Aggregation, Layer 2 over MPLS
IEEE 802.3ae (10-Gigabit Ethernet only)	10-Gigabit Ethernet
IEEE 802.3u (Fast Ethernet only)	Ethernet
IEEE 802.3z (Gigabit Ethernet only)	Ethernet



**Table 55: E Series Non-RFC Software Standards** *(continued)*

Reference	Protocol or Feature
ISO International Standard 8473-1:1993—Information technology – Protocol for providing the connectionless-mode network service	IS-IS
ISO International Standard 9542:1988 (E)—Information processing systems – Telecommunications and information exchange between systems – End System-to-Intermediate System Routing Exchange Protocol for use in conjunction with the protocol for providing the connectionless-mode network service (ISO 8473)	IS-IS
ISO/IEC 10589:1992—Information technology – Telecommunications and information exchange between systems – Intermediate System-to-Intermediate System Intra-Domain Routing Exchange Protocol for use in conjunction with the protocol for providing the connectionless-mode network service (ISO 8473)	IS-IS
ITU O.151—Error performance measuring equipment operating at the primary rate and above (October 1992)	BERT Patterns
ITU O.153—Basic parameters for the measurement of error performance at bit rates below the primary rate (October 1992)	BERT Patterns
ITU-T Draft Recommendation I.363 (AAL5 support) (January 1993)	ATM
ITU-T G.783—Characteristics Of Synchronous Digital Hierarchy (SDH) Multiplexing Equipment Functional Blocks: Annex A – Multiplex Section Protection (MSP) Protocol, Commands And Operation (1990)	SDH MSP redundancy
ITU-T Q.933 Annex A	Frame Relay
ITU-T Recommendation I.610—B-ISDN Operation and Maintenance Principles and Functions (February 1999)	ATM
ITU-T Recommendation Q.922, Integrated Services Digital Network (ISDN) Data Link Layer Specification for Frame Mode Bearer Services; Annex A (February 1992)	Frame Relay
ITU-T V.35: Data transmission at 48 kbit/s using 60-108 kHz group band circuits (October 1984 - now obsolete)	V.35
ITU-T X.21: Interface between Data Terminal Equipment and Data Circuit-terminating Equipment for synchronous operation on public data networks (September 1992)	X.21
Lawfully Authorized Electronic Surveillance (LAES) for IP Network Access, American National Standard for Telecommunications, version PTSC-LAES-2006-084R6	Packet Mirroring
Multilink Frame Relay UNI/NNI Implementation Agreement, FRF.16 (April 2000)	Multilink Frame Relay
T1M1.3 Working Group—A Technical Report on Test Patterns for DS1 Circuits (November 1993)	BERT Patterns

**Table 55: E Series Non-RFC Software Standards** *(continued)*

Reference	Protocol or Feature
Telcordia document GR-253—Synchronous Optical Network (SONET) Transport Systems: Common Generic Criteria, Revision 3 (September 2000)	SONET APS redundancy

## Hardware Standards

**Table 56: E Series Hardware Standards**

Reference	Protocol or Feature
ACA TS 016-1997	Telecom
ANSI T1.102-1993 Digital Hierarchy – Electrical Interfaces (1999)	Cables
ANSI T1.646-1995 Telecommunications – Broadband ISDN—Physical Layer Specification for User-Network Interfaces Including DS1/ATM (1995)	Cables and connectors
ANSI T1.646a-1997 Telecommunications – Broadband ISDN—Physical Layer Specification for User-Network Interfaces Including DS1/ATM (1997)	Cables and connectors
AS/NZS 3260:1993, Safety of Information Technology Equipment Including Electrical Business Equipment	Safety
AS/NZS 3548:1995 (CISPR 22 Class A)	EMC
CAN/CSA C22.2, No. 60950-00, 3rd Edition, Safety of Information Technology Equipment	Safety
CTR13—Commission Decision of 9 July 1997 on a common technical regulation for attachment requirements for terminal equipment interface for connection to 2048 kbit/s digital structured ONP leased lines: 97/521/EC – OJ No. L215 Vol. 40, August 1997	Telecom
CTR24—Commission Decision of 9 September 1997 on a common technical regulation for attachment requirements for terminal equipment interface for connection to 34 Mbit/s digital unstructured and structured leased lines: 97/639/EC – OJ No. L271 Vol. 40, 3 October 1997	Telecom
EIA-310-D Cabinets, Racks, Panels, and Associated Equipment, September 1992	Mechanical
EMC Directive (89/336/EEC)	EMC
EN300 386-2:1997 EMC requirements for Telecom Network Equipment-Telco Centers	Telecom
EN55022 Class A (CISPR-22 Class A)	EMC
EN55024, Annex C for WAN Equipment Performance Criteria A, B, and C	EMC

**Table 56: E Series Hardware Standards** *(continued)*

Reference	Protocol or Feature
EN60825-1, Safety of Laser Products - Part 1: Equipment Class, Requirements, and User's Guide (2001)	Safety
EN60950:2000, 3rd Edition, Safety of Information Technology Equipment	Safety
ETSI 300-386, Telecommunication Network Equipment; ElectroMagnetic Compatibility (EMC) requirements	EMC
FCC Part 15 Class A	EMC
FCC PART 68	EMC
GR-63 (LSSGR, FD-15): Network Equipment Building System (NEBS) Requirements: Physical Protection, Issue 1, October 1995	NEBS
GR-1089 (LSSGR, FD-15): Electromagnetic Compatibility and Electrical Safety - Generic Criteria for Network Telecommunications Equipment, Issue 2, Revision 1, February 1999	NEBS
IEC 825-1, Safety of Laser Products - Part 1	Safety
IEC 60950-1 (2001-10) Ed. 1.0 Information technology equipment - Safety - Part 1: General requirements	Safety
IECS-003 Issue 3 Class A	EMC
ITU-T G.703, Physical/electrical characteristics of hierarchical digital interfaces (November 2001)	Cables
Low Voltage Directive (73/23/EEC)	Safety
PD7024—Essential requirements for terminal equipment intended for connection to unstructured digital leased circuits of the public telecommunications network using a CCITT recommendation G.703 interface at a rate of 2048 kbit/s with a 75 ohm unbalanced presentation, 1994	Telecom
RTTE Directive (1999/5/EEC)	Telecom
SR-3580 (FD-15): Network Equipment Building System (NEBS) Criteria Levels, Issue 1, November 1995	Safety
UL 60950, 3rd Edition, Safety of Information Technology Equipment	Safety
VCCI (Voluntary Control Council for Interference by Information Technology Equipment)	EMC



## **Part 3**

# **Index**

- Index on page 593



# Index

## Symbols

--More-- prompt.....	40, 41, 43, 67, 69
.cnf files.....	271, 272, 273, 285, 507
.dmp files.....	285, 317
.hty files.....	285
.log files.....	285
.pub files.....	285
.rel files.....	285
specifying for reboot.....	509, 511
.scr files.....	285
.sts files.....	285
.txt files.....	285
3des-cbc encryption algorithm for SSH.....	433, 435
? command.....	33, 64, 66

## A

AAA (authentication, authorization, accounting)	
configuring.....	423
aaa commands	
aaa accounting vr-group.....	89
aaa authentication enable default.....	426
aaa authentication login.....	427
aaa domain-map .....	89, 541
aaa local database .....	89
aaa local username.....	89
aaa new-model.....	428
aaa profile.....	89
AAA Profile Configuration mode.....	70, 90
AAL5 layer (ATM).....	19
abbreviating keywords.....	67
abbreviations and acronyms.....	551
access and uplink methods.....	5
access levels (CLI).....	48
access lists.....	25
for Telnet sessions.....	431
access-class in command.....	431
access-list command.....	431, 528
adapter commands	
adapter accept.....	363
adapter disable.....	356
adapter enable.....	356
adapter erase.....	364
Address Family Configuration mode.....	70, 90

address-family ipv4 command.....	90
address-family vpnv4 command.....	90
agent, SNMP.....	150
algorithm negotiation, SSH.....	432
arrow keys.....	34, 67, 69
assembly numbers, displaying for hardware.....	516
assembly revisions, displaying for hardware.....	516
assigning an IP address.....	129, 134, 135, 139
ATM interfaces.....	19
ATM VC Class Configuration mode.....	70, 91
ATM VC Configuration mode.....	70, 90
attributes, SNMP.....	155
authentication	
AAA.....	423
FTP server.....	303
hmac-md5 for SSH.....	433
hmac-sha1 for SSH.....	433
hmac-sha1-96 for SSH.....	433
new model AAA.....	423
SSH user.....	432
authentication trap, SNMP.....	170
authorization	
AAA.....	426
Automatic Commit mode.....	271
automatic synchronization	
disabling.....	376
enabling.....	376
autoupgrade.....	247
avp command.....	105

## B

B-RAS applications	
overview.....	26
B-RAS commands	
aaa accounting vr-group.....	89
backing up software configuration.....	137
Backspace key.....	67
backup router.....	25
bandwidth	
associated error messages.....	371
line modules.....	367
SRP modules.....	367
bandwidth errors	
troubleshooting.....	371

bandwidth oversubscription	
configuring.....	371
monitoring.....	371
overview.....	367
bandwidth oversubscription command.....	371
banner command.....	279
banners	
configuring.....	279
baseline commands	
baseline show-delta-counts.....	331
baseline snmp.....	233
BGP (Border Gateway Protocol).....	24
blowfish-cbc encryption algorithm for SSH.....	433
boot commands	
boot backup.....	507
boot config.....	509
boot config factory-defaults.....	509
boot config once.....	509
boot config running-configuration.....	509
boot config startup-configuration.....	509
boot force-backup.....	509
boot hotfix.....	387
boot revert-tolerance.....	509
boot revert-tolerance never.....	509
boot subsystem.....	509
boot system.....	509
Boot mode.....	378, 381
accessing.....	139
software installation.....	139
booting the system.....	132, 137, 140, 507
rebooting.....	512
while running scripts or macros.....	515
Border Gateway Protocol. <i>See</i> BGP	
bottom-up approach to network configuration.....	6
bridge commands	
bridge subscriber-policy.....	89
broadcasts, NTP.....	528
bulk statistics, SNMP	
collecting.....	197, 231
configuring	
collectors and receivers.....	197
schemas.....	218
formatter.....	231
if-stats objects.....	218
mapping to MIBs and CLI.....	222
monitoring	
collection statistics.....	202
schema statistics.....	229
bulkstats commands.....	202
bulkstats collector.....	182, 202
bulkstats collector collect-mode.....	202
bulkstats collector description.....	202
bulkstats collector interval.....	202
bulkstats collector max-size.....	202
bulkstats collector primary-receiver.....	202
bulkstats collector secondary-receiver.....	202

bulkstats collector single-interval.....	202
bulkstats file-format endOfLine-Lf.....	231
bulkstats interface-type.....	202
bulkstats interfaces description-format	
common.....	202
bulkstats receiver remote-name.....	202
bulkstats schema.....	218
bulkstats schema subtree.....	218
bulkstats schema subtree policy.....	218
bulkstats traps.....	202
bulkstats virtual-router-group.....	202
<i>See also</i> show bulkstats commands	

## C

caching, configuration.....	515
capitalization. <i>See</i> case sensitivity	
case sensitivity.....	67
channelized E1 interfaces	
configuring.....	15
channelized T1 interfaces	
configuring.....	14
channelized T3 interfaces	
configuring.....	12
line rates.....	10
characters on terminal screen, setting bits for.....	277
Classifier Group Configuration mode.....	71, 92
clear commands	
clear line.....	255
CLI (command-line interface).....	249
abbreviating keywords.....	30, 67
accessing.....	48
command modes. <i>See</i> command modes	
context-sensitive help.....	64, 249
editing keys.....	67
editing on.....	67
logging in.....	48
pausing.....	249
system prompts.....	43
CLI access levels, VSA descriptions.....	443, 444
CLI command execution by macro file.....	471
CLI messages	
configuring.....	279
CLI status indicator.....	43
client, SNMP.....	150
configuring access.....	161, 162
clock.....	523
clock commands.....	523
clock set.....	523
clock summer-time date.....	523
clock summer-time recurring.....	523
clock timezone.....	523
cOCx/STMx interfaces	
line rates.....	10
coldStart, SNMP trap.....	170
Color Mark Profile Configuration mode.....	71, 92



color-mark-profile command.....92  
 command history keys.....67  
 command modes.....29, 30  
     accessing.....70  
     exiting.....49, 249  
 command-line interface. *See* CLI  
 command-line prompts.....31  
 commands  
     abbreviating.....67  
     editing on CLI.....67  
     issuing from other command modes.....249  
     listing available.....64  
     pausing before executing.....249  
     using.....33  
 commands for troubleshooting.....317  
 community table, SNMP  
     community name.....161  
     configuring.....161  
     IP access list.....161  
     privilege levels.....161  
 community, SNMP.....150, 161  
 configuration caching.....515  
 configuration file.....507  
     running.....271  
 configuration modes. *See* command modes  
 configuration tasks, general.....9  
 configuration, software.....132, 137  
 configure command.....89  
 configuring. *See* specific feature or protocol  
 confirmations explicit command.....46  
 console  
     monitoring settings.....281  
     password.....420  
     restricting login.....278  
     setting speed.....276  
 console lines  
     clearing.....255  
 contact person for SNMP server.....162  
 context-sensitive help.....64, 249  
 control flow monitoring.....448  
 Control Plane Configuration mode.....93, 95, 97  
 control plane security.....447  
 control-plane command.....93  
 controller commands.....93  
 Controller Configuration mode.....71, 93  
 conventions  
     notice icons.....xxvii  
     text and syntax.....xxviii  
 copy commands  
     copy.....296, 321  
     copy running-configuration.....271  
     copy running-configuration  
         startup-configuration.....271  
     copy startup-configuration.....271  
     examples.....296  
 copying the software release file.....132, 137, 140

core dump files for troubleshooting.....285, 317  
 core dumps.....325  
 corrupted files. *See* flash cards, scanning  
 crypto key dss command.....434  
 Ctrl-key combinations (CLI)  
     command history.....69  
     command-line editing.....67  
 current configuration  
     saving.....271  
 customer support.....xxix  
     contacting JTAC.....xxix  
     gathering information for.....326

## D

data link-layer interfaces  
     configuring.....17  
 data set ready signal. *See* DSR  
 data-character-bits command.....277  
 default version.....35  
 default virtual router.....537  
 delete command.....289  
 Delete key.....67  
 denial of service (DoS).....457  
     attaching groups.....457  
     attacks.....447  
     group parameters.....457  
     protection.....446  
     protocol mapping.....457  
 DHCP Pool Configuration mode.....71, 93  
 diag command.....401  
 diag-level command.....401  
 diagnostics  
     enabling at warm restart.....400  
 Diffie-Hellman key exchange.....432  
 digital subscriber line access multiplexers. *See*  
     DSLAMs  
 dir command.....289  
 disable command.....49, 249  
 disable-autosync command.....378  
 disconnect ssh command.....442  
 display terminal  
     configuring.....276  
 displaying configuration information. *See* show  
     commands  
 distributed denial of service (DDoS) attack.....447  
 distribution lists.....25  
 DNS (Domain Name System).....314  
     configuring.....314  
 do command.....35, 249  
 documentation set  
     comments on.....xxix  
 Domain Map Configuration mode.....72, 94  
 Domain Map Tunnel Configuration mode.....72, 95

DoS protection group commands	
atm dos-protection-group	457
bridge1483 dos-protection-group	457
dos-protection-group	457
ethernet dos-protection-group	457
frame-relay dos-protection-group	457
hdlc dos-protection-group	457
ip dos-protection-group	457
ipv6 dos-protection-group	457
lag dos-protection-group	457
ppp dos-protection-group	457
pppoe dos-protection-group	457
priority burst	457
priority over-subscription-factor	457
priority rate	457
protocol burst	457
protocol drop-probability	457
protocol priority	457
protocol rate	457
protocol skip-priority-rate-limiter	457
protocol weight	457
use canned-group	457
vlan dos-protection-group	457
Down Arrow key	69
draft RFCs	582
Drop Profile Configuration mode	72, 96
drop-profile command	96
DS1 channels	12
DS3 channels	12
DSLAMs (digital subscriber line access multiplexers)	5, 17, 19, 26
DSR (data set ready), restricting login with	278
dsr-detect command	278
dump files, core	317

## E

E Series routers	413
assigning IP address to	139
booting	132, 137, 140
remote access. <i>See</i> B-RAS applications	
E120 and E320 Broadband Services Routers	
managing	350
E3 interfaces	
line rates	10
E320 Broadband Services Routers	
interface specifiers	3
edge aggregation applications	4
private line aggregation	4
editing on command-line interface	67
enable commands	
enable	49, 70, 249, 443
enable password	416
enable privilege-level	418
enable secret	416
enable passwords, erasing	418

encrypt passwords	416
encryption	
3des-cbc for SSH	433
blowfish-cbc for SSH	433
configuring SSH	433
twofish-cbc for SSH	433
end command	249
Enter key	34, 67, 69
Enterprise SNMP MIB	150
entity, SNMP	150
environment, system	332
erase secrets command	419
Esc-key combinations (CLI)	68
Ethernet	
Telnet on	313
Ethernet port on SRP module	397
monitoring	398
events	
SNMP	150
exception commands	319
exception dump	319
exception gateway	319
exception monitor	321
exception protocol ftp	319
exception source	319
<i>See also</i> show exception commands	
exclude-subsystem command	309
exec-banner command	280
exec-timeout command	279
exit command	49, 249
exiting the system	49
Explicit Path Configuration mode	72, 96

## F

Fast Ethernet interfaces	
specifying an interface	398
file corruptions	383
file system configuration, saving current	271
files	
copying	296, 321
deleting	289
macro	471
managing	284
monitoring	289
redirecting	296
renaming	287
transferring	295
types of	285
viewing	289
flash (NVS or nonvolatile storage) cards	373
copying	378
device names	373
different capacities	373
E120 and E320 Broadband Services Routers	
features	373

formatting.....	378
halt command to prevent corruption.....	373
installing .....	373
managing.....	373
monitoring.....	378
primary.....	373
rebooting and configuration data.....	373
rebooting in response to corrupt sectors.....	373
replacing.....	373
scanning	
physical errors.....	378
structural errors in data.....	378
scanning utility.....	373
secondary.....	373
synchronizing.....	376
synchronizing with different capacities.....	376
validating and recovering file integrity.....	378
flash-disk commands	
flash-disk compare.....	378
flash-disk duplicate.....	378
flash-disk initialize.....	378
flash-disk scan.....	378
Frame Relay interfaces.....	17
FTP access.....	131, 140
configuring.....	134
FTP client.....	295
FTP server.....	295
authentication.....	303
configuring.....	303
monitoring.....	306
ftp-server enable command.....	305

## G

Get operation, SNMP.....	158
GetBulk operation, SNMP.....	158
GetBulk PDU type, SNMP.....	158
GetNext operation, SNMP.....	158
GetNextRequest PDU type, SNMP.....	158
GetRequest PDU type, SNMP.....	158
GetResponse PDU type, SNMP.....	158
Global Configuration mode.....	29, 73, 89
exiting.....	249
group, SNMP.....	150

## H

halt command.....	357, 375
hardware	
monitoring information.....	403
standards.....	588
versions, displaying.....	403, 516
HDLC parameters.....	12
help.....	249
CLI system.....	64
help command.....	64, 66, 252

history command.....	67
hmac-md5 authentication for SSH.....	433
hmac-sha1 authentication for SSH.....	433
hmac-sha1-96 authentication for SSH.....	433
host command.....	310
host ftp command.....	296
host table, modifying.....	296, 310
hostname command.....	246
hotfix activate command.....	391
hotfix files, monitoring.....	387
hotfixes.....	387
activating.....	387
arming.....	387
backup settings and.....	387
compatibility.....	387
dependencies.....	387
displaying.....	393
hot-patchable.....	387
startup.....	387
synchronizing on SRP modules.....	387

## I

I/O adapters. <i>See</i> IOAs	
I/O modules	
software compatibility.....	366
if constructs, macro.....	481
ILMI (integrated local management interface).....	20
image on primary SRP module, copying.....	378
installing system software.....	127, 376
required information.....	129, 134, 139
interactive help system. <i>See</i> help	
interface commands	
interface.....	89
interface fastEthernet.....	398
interface loopback .....	312
Interface Configuration mode.....	73, 89
interfaces.....	8
configuring.....	89
Fast Ethernet.....	398
physical, configuring.....	89
shared interfaces.....	23
subscriber interfaces.....	23
IOA configurations	
deleting.....	363, 364
IOAs	
disabling.....	356
enabling.....	356
erasing configurations.....	363, 364
replacing.....	362
IP access list, SNMP.....	161
IP addresses	
assigning.....	129, 134, 139
configuring.....	129

ip commands	
ip atm-vc.....	89
ip dhcp-local pool.....	89
ip domain-lookup.....	315
ip domain-lookup transit-virtual-router.....	316
ip domain-name.....	315
ip ftp source-address.....	296
ip ftp source-interface.....	296
ip name-server.....	316
ip vrf.....	89, 541
IP multicast.....	24
IP NAT Pool Configuration mode.....	73, 98
ip nfs commands	
ip nfs.....	310
ip nfs host.....	310
ip rate-limit-profile command.....	115
ip ssh commands	
ip ssh authentication-retries.....	433
ip ssh crypto.....	433
ip ssh disable-user-authentication.....	433
ip ssh mac.....	433
ip ssh sleep.....	433
ip ssh timeout.....	433
IP support	
IP/ATM.....	18
IP/Ethernet.....	22
IP/FR.....	17
IP/HDLC.....	21
IP/PPP.....	20
IP tunnels.....	23
ip vrf commands	
ip vrf.....	541
IPSec (IP Security)	
AH.....	10
ESP.....	10
IPSec CA Identity Configuration mode.....	99
ipsec commands	
ipsec ca identity.....	89
ipsec identity.....	89
ipsec ike-policy-rule.....	89
ipsec key manual.....	89
ipsec key pubkey-chain rsa.....	89
IPSec Identity Configuration mode.....	74, 99
IPSec IKE Policy Configuration mode.....	74, 100
IPSec Manual Key Configuration mode.....	74, 100
IPSec Peer Public Key Configuration mode.....	75, 101
IPSec Transport Profile Configuration mode.....	75, 101
IPSec Tunnel Profile Configuration mode.....	102
IPv6 Local Configuration mode.....	103
IPv6 Local Pool Configuration mode.....	76
IS-IS protocol.....	24
issuing commands from other CLI modes.....	249

**J**

Juniper Networks E Series enterprise SNMP MIB.....	150
--	-----

**K**

keywords.....	31, 32
partial-keyword .....	64

**L**

L2 Transport Load-Balancing-Circuit Configuration	
mode.....	76, 103
L2C commands	
l2c.....	89
neighbor.....	89
L2TP (Layer 2 Tunneling Protocol).....	26
l2tp commands	
l2tp destination profile.....	89
l2tp rate-limit-profile.....	89
l2tp switch-profile.....	89
L2TP Destination Profile Configuration mode.....	76, 104
L2TP Destination Profile Host Configuration	
mode.....	76, 104
L2TP Tunnel Switch Profile Configuration	
mode.....	77, 105
Layer 2 Control Configuration mode.....	77, 105
Layer 2 Control Neighbor Configuration	
mode.....	77, 105
Layer 2 Tunneling Protocol. <i>See</i> L2TP	
layered approach to network configuration.....	6
LDP Configuration mode.....	77, 106
Left Arrow key.....	67
levels of CLI access.....	442
line command.....	420, 424, 429
Line Configuration mode.....	77, 106
line module configurations	
deleting.....	364, 365
line modules	
allowed combinations.....	367, 371
bandwidth.....	367
combinations.....	367
disabling.....	354
enabling.....	355
erasing configurations.....	364, 365
initialization sequence.....	48
line rates.....	10
performance rate.....	367
replacing.....	358
restricted combinations.....	371
slot groups.....	367, 371
software	
compatibility.....	366
switch usage.....	367
troubleshooting.....	317
line rates.....	10
line vty command.....	106, 253
lines	
clearing.....	255
configuring.....	252

- monitoring.....252
- setting on terminal screen.....276
- link-up, link-down traps, SNMP.....175
- linking to an FTP server. *See* FTP access
- listing commands available.....64
- listing configuration settings. *See* show commands
- listing files on system.....289
- LMI (local management interface).....18
- Local IPsec Transport Profile Configuration
  - mode.....78, 83, 107
- Local User Configuration mode.....78, 107
- location of SNMP server.....162
- log commands.....317
  - log severity.....175
- logging in to system.....48
- logging system events
  - viewing logs.....489
- login banner.....279
- login commands
  - login.....276, 420, 423
  - login authentication.....429
- login conditions
  - configuring.....278
- long scripts, copying.....376

## M

- MAC (media access control) addresses
  - configuring for SSH.....433
- macro (.mac) files.....285, 471
- macro command.....495
- macros
  - comments.....471
  - conditional execution.....481
  - control expressions.....471
  - environment commands.....471
  - if constructs.....481
  - invoking from another macro file.....487
  - literals.....471
  - naming.....471
  - noncontrol expressions.....471
  - operators.....471
    - arithmetic.....481
    - assignment.....478
    - extraction.....481
    - increment and decrement.....478
    - logical.....481
    - miscellaneous.....481
    - relational.....481
    - string.....481
  - resetting system while running.....515
  - variables.....471
  - while constructs.....485
  - writing.....471, 487
- managed object, SNMP.....150
- Management Information Bases. *See* MIBs

- Manual Commit mode.....271
- manuals
  - comments on.....xxix
- Map Class Configuration mode.....78, 108
- Map List Configuration mode.....78, 108
- map-class frame-relay command.....108
- map-list command.....108
- master router.....25
- master, NTP.....531
- MD5 authentication
  - SSH.....433
- memory (hardware), displaying.....516
- memory management.....284
- memory warning command.....164
- message authentication code. *See* MAC addresses
- message-of-the-day (MOTD) banner.....279
- MIBs (Management Information Bases)
  - definition of.....150
  - Juniper Networks E Series enterprise.....150
  - standard SNMP.....150
- modules
  - disabling.....354
  - E Series, managing.....349
  - E120 and E320 Broadband Services
    - Routers.....350
  - enabling.....354
  - monitoring.....408
  - replacing.....358
- monitor. *See* terminal
- more command.....289
- motd-banner command.....279
- mount command.....375
- mounting a CD on an FTP server.....131, 137, 141
- MPLS (Multiprotocol Label Switching).....24
- mpls commands
  - mpls explicit-path name.....89
  - mpls ldp profile.....89
  - mpls rsvp profile.....89
  - mpls tunnels profile.....89
- Multiprotocol Label Switching. *See* MPLS

## N

- names
  - renaming local files.....287
  - system name.....246
- network configuration.....3
  - layered (bottom-up) approach.....6
  - routing protocols.....24
- network elements, SNMP.....150
- Network File System. *See* NFS client
- network planning.....3
  - access lists.....25
  - BGP.....24
  - COCX-F3 modules.....13
  - configurable HDLC parameters.....12

configuration overview.....	4
CT3 12-F0 modules.....	12
data link-layer interfaces.....	17
distribution lists.....	25
E3 modules.....	13
Ethernet modules.....	15
general configuration tasks.....	9
interfaces and subinterfaces.....	8
IP multicast.....	24
IP/ATM.....	19
IP/Frame Relay.....	17
IP/HDLC.....	22
IP/PPP.....	20
L2TP.....	26
layered approach.....	6
line module features.....	11
MPLS.....	24
non-PPP equal access.....	26
OSPF.....	24
physical layer interfaces.....	10
policy management	
configuring.....	26
private line aggregation.....	4
RIP.....	24
route maps.....	25
routing policy.....	25
routing protocols.....	24
SONET.....	14
virtual routers.....	10
VRRP.....	25
network servers, displaying list of.....	338
Network Time Protocol. <i>See</i> NTP	
new model AAA authentication.....	423
NFS client	
configuring.....	310
overview.....	310
no boot hotfix all-releases command.....	391
no command.....	35
non-PPP equal access.....	26
nonvolatile storage. <i>See</i> flash (NVS or nonvolatile storage) cards	
notice icons.....	xxvii
NTP (Network Time Protocol)	
best server.....	531
broadcasts.....	528
client-server associations.....	519
configuring.....	525
master.....	531
monitoring.....	531
overview.....	519
peers.....	519
replies.....	525
requests.....	520
servers.....	519, 525, 528
synchronization.....	521
virtual routers.....	519, 525
NTP client	
configuring the system as.....	525
system operation as.....	520
ntp commands.....	528
ntp access-group.....	528
ntp broadcast.....	528
ntp broadcast-client.....	525
ntp broadcast-delay.....	525
ntp disable.....	525
ntp enable.....	525
ntp master.....	528
ntp server.....	525
ntp server enable.....	528
ntp source.....	525
<i>See also</i> show ntp commands	
NTP control queries.....	528
NTP servers	
assigning.....	525
best.....	521
choosing.....	525
configuring virtual routers as.....	528
enabling NTP broadcasting.....	528
enabling on a virtual router.....	528
primary.....	519
selecting.....	525
system operation as.....	522
<b>O</b>	
objects, tracking reachability.....	326
OC48/STM16 interfaces, configuring.....	14
OCx/STMx interfaces	
configuring.....	15
Open Shortest Path First. <i>See</i> OSPF	
OSPF (Open Shortest Path First).....	24
output filtering	
from the --More-- prompt.....	43
show command.....	37
oversubscription, bandwidth	
configuring.....	371
monitoring.....	371
overview.....	367
overview, NTP.....	519
<b>P</b>	
packet mirroring	
and SNMP.....	151
packet size, SNMP.....	164
pagination keys.....	67
parameters.....	31, 32
parent-group command.....	109, 110
partial releases, copying.....	306
password command.....	253, 421, 424, 430

passwords.....67, 70, 87, 413  
     enabling.....416  
     encryption.....414  
     erasing console passwords.....420  
     *See also* Privileged Exec mode  
 passwords and secrets  
     deleting.....418  
 patching the system with hotfixes.....387  
 pausing before command execution.....249  
 PDU (protocol data unit).....155  
 performance rate, line modules.....10, 367  
     configuring.....367  
 physical errors in flash cards.....378  
 physical interfaces, configuring.....89  
 physical slots  
     rebooting selected.....512  
 ping command.....87, 527  
 platform considerations  
     installing JUNOS software.....129  
     macros.....471  
     managing modules.....350  
     network planning.....3  
     passwords and security.....413  
     SNMP.....158  
     system booting.....507  
     system clock.....522  
     system management.....246  
     using the CLI.....48  
     virtual routers.....539  
 Policy List Configuration mode.....79, 109  
 Policy List Parent Group Configuration  
     mode.....71, 72, 73, 78, 79, 109, 110  
 policy management.....26  
     QoS classification and marking.....26  
     rate limiting.....26  
     types of services.....26  
     xDSL session termination.....5  
 polling NTP servers.....520  
 POS interfaces.....20  
 PPP (Point-to-Point Protocol)  
     protocol support.....20  
 PPPoE Service Name Table Configuration  
     mode.....79, 110  
 pppoe-service-name-table command.....111  
 primary flash card  
     initializing.....378  
     reformatting.....378  
 primary NTP servers.....519  
 private line aggregation.....4  
 privilege groups.....52  
 privilege level  
     accessing.....49  
     ambiguous commands.....52  
     changing command privileges.....52  
     command exceptions.....52  
     defining CLI.....49

keyword mapping.....52  
 password encryption.....414  
 setting  
     default line.....60  
     multiple commands.....59  
     no or default versions.....52  
 SNMP.....161  
     viewing information.....60  
 privilege level command.....62  
 Privileged Exec mode.....49, 80, 87, 129, 134, 249  
     accessing.....49, 70, 129, 134, 249  
     exiting.....49, 249  
     *See also* passwords  
 privileged-level access (CLI).....48, 49  
     *See also* Privileged Exec mode  
 profile commands  
     profile.....89  
 Profile Configuration mode.....80, 111  
 progress indicator (CLI).....47  
 prompts, CLI system.....43  
 protocol data unit. *See* PDU  
 proxy, SNMP.....155, 233  
 pvc command.....91

## Q

QoS (quality of service).....25  
 QoS commands  
     qos-profile command.....89  
 QoS Interface Set Configuration mode.....80, 111  
 QoS Interface Superset Configuration mode.....80, 112  
 QoS Parameter Configuration mode.....112  
 QoS Parameter Definition Configuration  
     mode.....80, 112  
 QoS Profile Configuration mode.....81, 113  
 QoS Shared Shaper Control Configuration mode.....81  
 qos-profile command.....113  
 qos-shared-shaper-control command.....113  
 Queue Profile Configuration mode.....81, 114  
 queue-profile command.....114

## R

RADIUS (Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service)  
     authentication, restricting access.....443  
     password authentication.....432  
     per-user enable authentication.....442  
     restricting access to commands.....442, 445  
     user authentication.....433  
 radius commands  
     radius accounting server.....89  
     radius authentication server.....89  
     radius dynamic-request server.....89  
 RADIUS Configuration mode.....81, 114

radius relay commands

- radius relay accounting server.....89
- radius relay authentication server.....89

RADIUS Relay Configuration mode.....81

Rate Limit Profile Configuration mode.....82, 115

rate limiting

- per priority.....447
- per protocol.....447

reachability, tracking.....326

reaching an FTP server. *See* FTP access

reboot history (reboot.hty) file.....285

reboot history, displaying.....340

rebooting the system.....507, 516

*See also* booting the system

redistribute routes.....25

Redundancy Configuration mode.....82, 116

references

- draft RFCs.....582
- hardware standards.....588
- non-RFC software standards.....585
- RFCs.....569

refusing NTP broadcasts.....528

regular expressions.....37, 41

- metacharacters.....41
- specifying as literals.....41

releasing available memory.....284

reload commands

- reload.....319, 512
- reload at.....512
- reload in.....512
- reload slot.....512

Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service. *See* RADIUS

remote host command.....104

Remote Neighbor Configuration mode.....82, 116

remote-neighbor command.....117

rename command.....287

renaming files.....287

replies, NTP.....525

reset button, software.....420

resetting while running scripts or macros.....515

resource commands

- resource if-type.....329
- resource threshold.....329

resources

- monitoring.....408

revisions, displaying assembly.....516

RFC 1213 interface numbering.....230

RFCs.....569

- draft.....582

Right Arrow key.....67

RIP (Routing Information Protocol).....24

Route Map Configuration mode.....82, 117

route maps.....25

route-map command.....117

router commands

- router.....89
- router bgp.....89
- router ospf.....89
- router pim.....89
- router rip.....89

Router Configuration mode.....83, 117

routers. *See* system

Routing Information Protocol. *See* RIP

routing policy

- configuring.....25

routing protocols.....24

- configuring.....24

routing, IP

- configuring other protocols.....24
- monitoring.....543

RSVP Configuration mode.....83, 118

rtr commands

- rtr.....89

RTR Configuration mode.....83, 119

run command.....35, 249

## S

schedule-profile command.....119

Scheduler Profile Configuration mode.....83, 119

screen. *See* terminal

script files.....285

scripts

- resetting system while running.....515

secondary NTP servers.....519

secure IP tunnels.....16

Secure Shell Server protocol. *See* SSH

security

- administration through SSH instead of Telnet.....432
- SSH issues.....433

security features of SNMP.....150

send command.....284

sending messages to terminals.....283

serial numbers, displaying for hardware.....516

servers, NTP.....520

service commands

- service.....89
- service ctrl-x-reboot.....68, 512
- service manual-commit.....271
- service password-encryption.....414, 416
- service unattended password-recovery.....419

Service Manager commands

- service-management service-session-profile.....89

Service Session Profile Configuration mode.....83, 120

Set operation, SNMP.....158

SetRequest PDU type, SNMP.....158

SFMs (switch fabric modules)

- accepting configurations.....364
- disabling.....354, 400



- enabling.....355
  - erasing configurations.....365
  - overview.....350
  - replacing.....362
- shared interfaces.....23
- show aaa commands
  - show aaa domain-map.....543
- show bandwidth oversubscription.....371
- show boot command.....516
- show bulkstats commands .....161
  - show bulkstats.....202
  - show bulkstats collector interface-type.....202
  - show bulkstats collector interval.....202
  - show bulkstats collector max-size.....202
  - show bulkstats collector transfer-mode.....202
  - show bulkstats receiver.....214
  - show bulkstats router-group.....214
  - show bulkstats statistics.....214
  - show bulkstats traps.....214
- show command output, filtering.....37
- show commands.....35, 37
  - show output filtering feature.....543
  - show policy-list.....447
  - show redirecting output.....40
- show configuration commands.....262
  - show configuration.....332, 433
  - show configuration category.....260
  - show configuration interface.....260
  - show configuration virtual-router.....260, 543
- show dos-protection-group.....468
- show environment command.....332
- show exception commands
  - show exception dump.....319
  - show exception monitor.....321
- show fabric weights command.....337
- show flash command.....386
- show ftp-server command.....306
- show hardware command.....403, 516
- show hosts command.....338
- show hotfix command.....393
- show ip commands
  - show ip domain-lookup command.....317
  - show ip forwarding-table slot.....543
  - show ip ssh.....433
- show ip nfs command.....312
- show last-reset command.....517
- show line console 0 command.....281
- show line vty command.....254, 425
- show log commands
  - show log data.....489
- show ntp commands
  - show ntp associations.....531
  - show ntp associations detail.....531
  - show ntp status.....531
- show nvs command.....386
- show processes command.....284, 339
- show reboot-history command.....340
- show reload command.....517
- show running-configuration command.....264, 343
- show secrets command.....420
- show snmp commands
  - show snmp.....234
  - show snmp community.....161
  - show snmp interfaces.....165, 447
  - show snmp notificationLog.....234
  - show snmp trap.....234
  - show snmp trapstat.....234
- show subsystems command.....309
- show suspicious-control-flow-detection commands
  - show suspicious-control-flow-detection counts.....447
  - show suspicious-control-flow-detection flows.....447
  - show suspicious-control-flow-detection info.....447
  - show suspicious-control-flow-detection protocol.....447
- show tech-support command.....328
- show terminal command.....281, 282
- show timing command.....249
- show users command.....306
- show utilization command.....284, 408
- show version command.....48, 325, 343, 516
- show virtual-router command.....545
- Simple Network Management Protocol. *See* SNMP
- sleep command.....249
- slot commands
  - slot accept.....364
  - slot disable.....354
  - slot enable.....355
  - slot erase.....364, 365
- slot groups and module arrangements.....367
- SNMP (Simple Network Management Protocol).....149
  - agent software.....150
  - attributes.....155
  - bulk statistics collection.....197
  - client software.....150
    - configuring access.....161, 162
  - communities.....150, 161
  - compressing interfaces.....165
  - configuration tasks.....160
  - enabling.....161
  - encoding method.....164
  - engine.....155
  - entity.....150
  - group.....150
  - interface numbering.....165
  - management features.....150
  - managing interface sublayers.....165
  - memory warning.....164
  - monitoring interface tables.....165
  - monitoring status.....233, 234
  - multiple virtual routers.....155, 233

operations.....	155	software.....	366
packet mirroring.....	151	compatibility.....	366
packet size, setting.....	164	configuration.....	132, 137
PDU.....	155	backing up.....	132
proxy, creating.....	155	saving.....	132
RFC 1213 compatibility.....	165	installing.....	127, 376
schema.....		line rates.....	10
configuring.....	218	release file.....	132
monitoring.....	229	updating.....	387
security features.....	150	upgrading.....	127, 143, 144
server.....	150	software release file.....	285
server parameters, setting.....	162	accessing.....	132, 137, 140
traps. <i>See</i> SNMP traps.....		specifying for reboot.....	509
users, configuring.....	162	software reset button.....	420
versions.....	150	software standards.....	
view.....	150, 151	draft RFCs.....	582
viewing status.....	234	non-RFC standards.....	585
virtual routers.....	150	RFCs.....	569
SNMP commands.....	161	software versions, displaying.....	343, 516
agent context-name.....	182	Space key.....	64, 69
bulkstats interfaces rfc 1213.....	229	speed command.....	276
delta-sampling.....	182	SRP module configurations.....	
enable.....	182	deleting.....	364, 365
event.....	182	SRP module redundancy.....	
frequency.....	182	hotfixes and.....	387
notification id.....	182	validating and recovering file integrity.....	378
resource.....	182	SRP modules.....	
trigger.....	182	bandwidth.....	367
<i>See also</i> bulkstats commands.....		configuring.....	350
snmp commands.....		copying image.....	378
snmp interfaces description-format.....	164	core dump file.....	321
snmp trap ip link-status.....	170	disabling.....	354
snmp trap link-status.....	175	enabling.....	355
snmp-server.....	161	erasing configurations.....	364, 365
snmp-server community.....	161	overview.....	350
snmp-server contact.....	163	removing.....	357
snmp-server enable traps.....	170	replacing.....	362
snmp-server host.....	170, 175, 179	reset button.....	420
snmp-server interfaces compress.....	165	synchronizing.....	376
snmp-server interfaces compress-restriction.....	165	SSH (Secure Shell Server).....	432
snmp-server interfaces rfc 1213.....	165	algorithm negotiation.....	432
snmp-server location.....	163	client configuration.....	433
snmp-server notificationLog ageOut.....	175	configuration prerequisites.....	433
snmp-server notificationLog entryLimit.....	175	configuring.....	433
snmp-server notificationLog log.....	175	connections.....	432
snmp-server packetSize.....	164	disabling.....	433
snmp-server trap-proxy.....	175	enabling.....	433
snmp-server trap-source.....	170	encryption algorithms.....	
snmp-server user.....	162	3des-cbc.....	433
SNMP Event Manager Configuration mode.....	84, 120	blowfish-cbc.....	433
SNMP traps.....	151, 169, 234	twofish-cbc.....	433
enabling.....	170	encryption, configuring.....	433
		generating host keys.....	433
		host key management.....	433
		key exchange.....	432

- message authentication
  - configuring.....433
  - hmac-md5.....433
  - hmac-sha1.....433
  - hmac-sha1-96.....433
- monitoring.....433
- performance issues.....433
- security concerns.....433
- server public key files.....285
- terminating.....433
- user authentication.....432
  - configuring.....433
- user key management.....432
- standards
  - draft RFCs.....582
  - hardware standards.....588
  - non-RFC software standards.....585
  - RFCs.....569
- startup configuration
  - saving.....271
- static host maps, adding.....296, 310
- static tunnels.....23
- statistics
  - SNMP.....197, 231
- statistics (.sts) files.....285
- Statistics Profile Configuration mode.....84, 120
- statistics-profile command.....121
- status indicator (CLI).....43
- stratum 1 servers. *See* NTP servers, primary
- structural errors in flash data.....378
- Subinterface Configuration mode.....84, 121
- subinterfaces.....8, 89
  - configuring.....89
- subscriber interfaces.....23
- subscriber policy commands
  - subscriber-policy.....89
- Subscriber Policy Configuration mode.....84, 121
- summer time, specifying.....523
- support, technical *See* technical support
- suspicious control flow detection.....447
  - display options.....447
  - logs.....447
  - parameters.....447
  - traps.....447
- suspicious control flow monitoring.....448
- suspicious-control-flow-detection commands
  - baseline suspicious-control-flow-detection
    - counts.....447
  - clear suspicious-control-flow-detection.....447
  - suspicious-control-flow-detection
    - grouping-off.....447
  - suspicious-control-flow-detection off.....447
  - suspicious-control-flow-detection protocol
    - backoff-time.....447
    - suspicious-control-flow-detection protocol
      - low-threshold.....447
    - suspicious-control-flow-detection protocol
      - threshold.....447
- switch fabric modules. *See* SFMs
- switch usage, line modules.....367
- synchronization process.....376
- synchronization reserve file.....377
- synchronize command.....377, 381
- system
  - autoupgrade feature.....247
  - basic parameters.....413
  - booting.....507, 516
    - rebooting.....512
  - command-line interface. *See* CLI
  - configuring automatically.....270
  - environment information.....332
  - exiting.....49
  - FTP client.....295
  - FTP server.....295
  - initializing line modules.....48
  - levels of access.....442, 443
  - logging in.....48
  - logging/troubleshooting, commands
    - for.....317, 343
  - managing.....245
  - monitoring.....331
  - passwords.....413
  - patching with hotfixes.....387
  - physical slots, rebooting.....512
  - RADIUS password authentication.....432
  - software reset button.....420
  - system configuration files.....285
  - system name.....246
  - TFTP client.....295
  - timing.....247
  - updating with hotfixes.....387
  - virtual router limitations.....537
- system clock
  - setting.....523
- system commands
  - privilege.....52
  - privilege-group alias.....52
  - privilege-group membership.....52
  - privilege-group membership clear.....52
  - write core.....321
- system configuration
  - saving current.....271
  - saving startup.....271
- system passwords. *See* passwords
- system security.....413
- system.log file.....285

## T

- T1 lines, controllers for.....12

T3 interfaces	
configuring.....	13
controllers for.....	12
line rates.....	10
Tab key.....	34, 64
TACACS+	
aaa authentication login.....	427
restricting access to commands.....	442
tag-group command.....	264
tech-support encoded-string command.....	328
technical support	
contacting JTAC.....	xxix
Telnet	
access lists.....	431
client, using.....	313
configuring to listen in nondefault virtual	
router.....	313
logins.....	48
telnet commands	
telnet.....	313
telnet listen.....	313
terminal	
configuring display.....	276
displaying configuration.....	281
displaying international characters.....	277
sending messages to.....	283
setting length (in lines).....	276
setting width (in characters).....	276
terminal commands.....	281
terminal data-character-bits.....	277
terminal length.....	276
terminal speed.....	276
terminal width.....	276
<i>See also</i> show terminal command	
text and syntax conventions.....	xxviii
text files.....	285
TFTP client.....	295
thermal protection mode.....	332
time limits, setting	
for user input.....	279
for user login.....	278
time zone, specifying.....	523
timeout login response command.....	278
timing commands	
timing disable-auto-upgrade.....	247
timing select.....	247
timing source.....	247
timing, system.....	523
configuring.....	247
monitoring.....	247
<i>See also</i> system clock	
trace command.....	87
tracking objects.....	326
Traffic Class Configuration mode.....	84, 122
Traffic Class Group Configuration mode.....	85, 122
traffic-class command.....	122

traffic-class-group command.....	122
transport protocols, xDSL.....	6
traps command.....	175
traps, SNMP	
categories.....	170
configuring.....	169
configuring notification logs for.....	175
configuring trap queues.....	175
operation.....	158
PDU type.....	158
recovering lost traps.....	179
severity levels.....	170
specifying an egress point for.....	175
statistics.....	234
status information.....	234
troubleshooting core dump files.....	317
tunnel commands	
tunnel.....	89
Tunnel Group Configuration mode.....	85, 123
Tunnel Group Tunnel Configuration mode.....	85, 123
Tunnel Profile Configuration mode.....	85, 124
Tunnel Server Configuration mode.....	86, 124
tunnel-server command.....	124
tunnels, IP.....	23
twofish-cbc encryption algorithm for SSH.....	433

## U

Universal Coordinated Time. <i>See</i> UTC	
Up Arrow key.....	69
updating the system software.....	127
updating the system with hotfixes.....	387
upgrading software	
systems with one SRP module.....	127
systems with two SRP modules.....	143
uplink methods.....	5
user access, restricting.....	442
user authentication, configuring.....	433
<i>See also</i> authentication	
User Exec mode.....	29, 86, 249
<i>See also</i> Privileged Exec mode	
user interface commands.....	249
user interface, customizing.....	276
user level access (CLI).....	48
UTC (Universal Coordinated Time).....	519, 524

## V

vc-class atm command.....	91
vendor-specific attributes. <i>See</i> VSAs	
versions	
default.....	35
displaying for hardware.....	403
displaying for hardware/software.....	516
displaying for software.....	343
SNMP.....	150

- view, SNMP.....150, 151
- viewing files.....37, 289
  - See also* show commands
- virtual interfaces (subinterfaces).....8
- virtual router commands
  - ip vrf.....541
  - virtual-router.....150, 445, 541
- Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol (VRRP). *See* VRRP
- virtual routers.....10, 537
  - configuring.....10, 539
  - default virtual router.....537
  - map VR to domain map.....539, 541
  - monitoring.....543
  - name resolvers for multiple.....316
  - NTP.....519, 525, 528
  - restricting access.....443
  - SNMP.....150, 155
    - managing.....233
  - VPNs.....537
  - VRFs.....537
  - VSAs.....444
  - with routing protocols.....538, 539
- VPN routing and forwarding instance. *See* VRF
- VPNs (virtual private networks).....539
- VR Group Configuration mode.....86, 125
- VRF (VPN routing and forwarding instance).....537
- VRF Configuration mode.....86, 124
- VRRP (Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol).....25
- VSAs (vendor-specific attributes)
  - levels of CLI access.....442
  - restricting access to virtual routers.....443
- vtty lines
  - clearing.....255
  - configuring.....252
  - managing.....252
  - monitoring.....252
  - users of.....306

## W

- waiting before command execution.....249
- warm restart
  - enabling diagnostics at.....400
- warmStart, SNMP trap.....170
- while constructs, macro.....485
- width of terminal screen, setting.....276
- write memory command.....271
- writing macros.....471

## X

- xDSL
  - protocols.....6
  - session termination.....5

